A HISTORY OF THE CRUSADES

Kenneth M. Setton, General Editor
A HISTORY OF THE CRUSADES

Kenneth M. Setton, General Editor

I  The First Hundred Years

II  The Later Crusades, 1189-1311

III  The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries

IV  The Art and Architecture of the Crusader States

V  The Impact of the Crusades on the Near East

VI  The Impact of the Crusades on Europe, together with
    a Bibliography of the Crusades
Volume V

THE IMPACT OF THE CRUSADES ON THE NEAR EAST
Francis of Assisi before al-Kāmil, sultan of Egypt. Courtesy of Eratelli Fabri, Milan
A HISTORY OF THE CRUSADES

KENNETH M. SETTON
GENERAL EDITOR

Volume V
THE IMPACT OF THE CRUSADES ON THE NEAR EAST

EDITED BY
NORMAN P. ZACOUR
AND
HARRY W. HAZARD

THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN PRESS
Sudor certaminis
CONTENTS

Foreword xiii
Preface xv
A Note on Transliteration and Nomenclature xvii
Abbreviations xxi

I Arab Culture in the Twelfth Century 3
Nabih Amin Faris† (American University of Beirut)

II The Impact of the Crusades on Modern Lands 33
Philip Khuri Hitti† (Princeton University)

III Social Classes in the Crusader States: the "Minorities" 59
Joshua Prawer, The Hebrew University of Jerusalem

IV Social Classes in the Latin Kingdom: the Franks 117
Joshua Prawer

V The Political and Ecclesiastical Organization of the Crusader States 193
Jean Richard, Université de Dijon

VI Agricultural Conditions in the Crusader States 251
Jean Richard

VII The Population of the Crusader States 295
Josiah C. Russell, Texas A&M University

VIII The Teutonic Knights in the Crusader States 315
Indrikis Siemons, Muhlenberg College
IX  Venice and the Crusades  379
    Louise Buerger Robbins, University of Missouri

X  Missions to the East in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries  452
    Marshall W. Baldwin (New York University)

Gazetteer and Note on Maps  519
Index  553
ILLUSTRATIONS

Francis of Assisi before al-Kamil, sultan of Egypt
(Fratelli Fabri, Milan)  
frontispiece

Jerusalem. From a fourteenth-century French illuminated manuscript (Bibliothèque nationale)
page 116

Young king Baldwin III refuses the suzerainty of his mother, Queen Melisende (Bibliothèque nationale)
page 214

Moslem pilgrims on their way to Mecca (Bibliothèque nationale)
page 252
MAPS

following page 242

1 The Near East
2 Western Europe
3 Central Europe
4 Frankish Greece
5 The Straits and the Aegean
6 Northern Syria
7 Palestine
8 Cyprus
9 Venice and the Levant in 1300
10 The Ottoman Empire 1300-1451
11 The Ottoman Empire 1451-1522
12 Mongols and Missions in the Thirteenth Century
13 Missions and Mongols in the Fourteenth Century

Maps compiled by Harry W. Hazard and executed by the Cartographic Laboratory of the University of Wisconsin, Madison
FOREWORD

It has been a long journey. We have, however, almost reached our destination. In the foreword to Volume IV I expressed the hope that the end might be in sight, and indeed it is, for we have also turned over the sixth and final volume to the University of Wisconsin Press. From one volume to the next over a period of almost thirty years we have lost a number of our fellow pilgrims and crusaders on what has proved to be a rocky road to the Holy Land. I wish they could have lived to see the publication of the final volume. Yielding sometimes to necessity, sometimes to the possibility of improvement, we have introduced several changes into our plans for Volumes IV–VI, on the whole (we think) for the better.

Once more I express my gratitude to Dr. Harry W. Hazard, the most painstaking editor I know. In earlier forewords I have indicated his numerous and invaluable contributions to these volumes. He has generously borne a heavy load through the years. Without his stalwart, unflinching assistance, these volumes would never have appeared. Both Dr. Hazard and I are much indebted to Professor Norman P. Zaslow, who has given much time and strength to this volume just as years ago, he stepped into a breach, and helped us with the second volume. We are likewise indebted to Mrs. Jean T. Carver, who has retyped hundreds of pages in this volume, kept track of every change we have made either in planning or in the text, handled a sometimes voluminous correspondence, read proof, and helped us in numberless other ways. Dr. Susan M. Rabbitt has arranged interlibrary loans, run down and corrected numerous references, and assisted us in the proof-reading. And of course we owe the most to those who have joined us in this enterprise, and who have waited so long and with such patience for the appearance of their work in print.

KENNETH M. SETTON

The Institute for Advanced Study
Princeton, New Jersey
March 14, 1983
This volume deals less with the cry of battle and the clash of arms than with the daily affairs of the Near East and its inhabitants—Moslems, Christians, and Jews—whose lives were wrested this way and that by more than two hundred years of violence. It is about crusaders too; not those who came and went, but those who came and stayed, and "for the love of Christ," to quote Alexander III, "put them fighting blood at the disposal of king and magnates." Among much else it examines the Arab culture of the twelfth century and the lasting impact that crusading belligerence had on Moslem lands and peoples; the social structure of the crusaders' states whose problems were as stubborn as they themselves were ephemeral; the long, tenacious exploitation of the eastern Mediterranean, especially by the Venetians, surely the most fortunate heirs of the crusading inheritance; and finally the new direction given to the European drive eastward by missionaries rather than warriors. The missionary movement drew much of its early inspiration from St. Francis of Assisi, whose brief mission to the sultan of Egypt remained green in the memory of his followers, and most of its energy from a long line of mendicants, Franciscans and Dominicans alike. Their devotion brought increased knowledge and a deeper understanding of the peoples of the east, but not, alas, any real awareness of the futility of warfare against Islam. Only time would do that.

NORMAN P. ZACOUR

The Centre for Medieval Studies
University of Toronto
Toronto, Canada
March 21, 1983

"E. Martini and U. Dietzel, Monumenta graeca et romanica ad usum scholarum collecta, III. col. 748. "qui ferunt..." fere passim."
A NOTE
ON TRANSLITERATION
AND NOMENCLATURE

One of the obvious problems to be solved by the editors of such a work as this, intended both for general readers and for scholars in many different disciplines, is how to render the names of persons and places, and a few other terms, originating in languages and scripts unfamiliar to the English-speaking reader and, indeed, to most readers whose native languages are European. In the present volume, and presumably in the entire work, these comprise principally Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and Armenian, none of which was normally written in our Latin alphabet until its adoption by Turkey in 1928. The analogous problem of Byzantine Greek names and terms has been handled by using the familiar Latin equivalents, Anglicised Greek, or, occasionally, Greek type, as has seemed appropriate in each instance, but a broader approach is desirable for the other languages under consideration.

The somewhat contradictory criteria applied are ease of recognition and readability on the one hand and scientific accuracy and consistency on the other. It has proved possible to reconcile these, and to standardise the great variety of forms in which identical names have been submitted to us by different contributors, through constant consultation with specialists in each language, research in the sources, and adherence to systems conforming to the requirements of each language.

Of these, Arabic presents the fewest difficulties, since the script in which it is written is admirably suited to the classical language. The basic system used, with minor variants, by all English-speaking scholars was restudied and found entirely satisfactory, with the slight modifications noted. The chief alternative system, in which every Arabic consonant is represented by a single Latin character (t for th, h for kh, d for dh, s for sh, g for gh) was rejected for several reasons, needless proliferation of characteristic marks to bother the eye and multi-
ply occasions for error, absence of strong countervailing arguments, and, most decisively, the natural tendency of non-specialists to adopt these spellings but omit the discursive marks. The use of single letters in this manner leads to undesirable results, but the spellings adopted for the present work may be thus treated with confidence by any writer not requiring the discriminations which the remaining discursive marks indicate.

The letters used for Arabic consonants, in the order of the Arabic alphabet, are these: ʾ, ʿ, t, th, j, h, kh, d, dh, t, z, s, sh, ẓ, ž, ṣ, gh, f, q, k, l, m, n, r, w, y. The vowels are a, i, u, lengthened as ā, ī, ū, with the alif ša‘-shā‘-lā‘ distinguished as ʾā, initial ʾ it omitted, but terminal macrons are retained. Diphthongs are an and at, not aw and ay, as being both philologically preferable and visually less misleading. The same considerations lead to the omission of ī of at- before a duplicated consonant (Nūr-ʾad-Dīn rather than Nūr-al-Dīn). As in this example, hyphens are used to link words composing a single name (as also ʿAbd-Allāh), with weak initial vowels elided (as Abū-l-Ḥasan). Normally at- (meaning “the”) is not capitalized; ibn- is not when h means literally “son of,” but is otherwise (as ibn-Khaldūn).

Some readers may be disconcerted to find the prophet called “Muḥammad” and his followers “Mūsulems,” but this can readily be justified. These spellings are valid English proper names, derived from Arabic originals which would be correctly transliterated “Muḥammas” and “Mūsulūmīn” or “Muḥāmmadin.” The best criterion for deciding whether to use the Anglicized spellings or the accurate transliterations is the treatment accorded the third of this cluster of names, that of the religion “-Islām.” Where this is transliterated “Islam,” with a macron over the ā, it should be accompanied by “Muslim” and “Muḥammad,” but where the macron is omitted, consistency and common sense require “Moslem” and “Muḥammad,” and it is the latter triad which have been considered appropriate in this work. All namesakes of the prophet, however, have had their names duly transliterated “Muḥammad” to correspond with names of other Arabs who are not individually so familiar to westerners as to be better recognized in Anglicized forms.

All names of other Arabs, and of non-Arabs with Arabic names, have been systematically transliterated, with the single exception of ʿAbd-ʾad-Dīn, whom it would have been pedantic to call that rather than Saladin. For places held, in the crusading era or now, by Arabs, the Arabic names appear either in the text or in the gazetteer, where some additional ones are also included to broaden the usefulness of this feature.
Large numbers of names of persons and groups, however, customarily found in Arabicized spellings because they were written in Arabic script, have been restored to their underlying identity whenever this is ascertainable. For example, Arabic "Saljūq" misrepresents four of the six component phonemes: ș is correct, ș replaces Turkish e, for which Arabic script provides no equivalent, ŋ is correct, ŋ replaces the non-Arabic ch, ğ substitutes a non-Turkish long ă for the original ğ, and ă as distinguished from k is non-existent in Turkish, this quadruple rectification yields "Selçuk" as the name of the eponymous leader, and "Selçuklu"—on the model of 'Abbāsid and Timurid—for the dynasty and the people.

It might be thought that on Turkish is now written in a well-conceived, modified Latin alphabet, there would be no reason to alter this, and this presumption is substantively valid. For the same reasons as apply to Arabic, ch has been preferred above ç, sh above ş, and gh above ă, with ă in a few instances given as a preferred alternative of h, from which it is not distinguished in modern Turkish. No long vowel has been indicated, as being functionless survivals. Two other changes have been made in the interest of the English-speaking reader, and should be remembered by those using map sheets and standard reference works: e (pronounced ğğ) has been changed to i, so that one is not visually led to imagine this the Turkish name for the Tigri—Djile/Dicle—rhymes with "tickle," and what the eminent lexicographer H. C. Hony terms "that abomination the undotted i" has, after the model of The Encyclopaedia of Islam, been written i.

Spellings, modified as above indicated, have usually been founded on those of the Turkish edition, İslâm Ansiklopedisi, hampered by occasional inconsistencies within that work. All names of Turks appear thus emended, the Turkish equivalents of almost all places within or near modern Turkey appear in the gazetteer.

In addition to ğğ, Middle Turkish utilized a few other phonemes not common in modern Turkish: žh (modern ž), ãh, ŋg, and ă (modern e); the first three of these will be used as needed, while the last-mentioned may be assumed to underlie every medieval Turkish name now spelled with ă. Pluriform eyebrows may be raised at our exclusion of q, but this was in Middle Turkish only the alternate spelling used when the sound k was combined with h against instead of front vowels, and its elimination by the Turks is commendable.

Persian names have been transliterated like Arabic with certain modifications, chiefly use of the additional vowels e and o and replacing ǧ and ţh with z and ă, so that Arabic "Āḏharbâjān" becomes Persian "Azerbaijan," more accurate as well as more recognizable. Omission
of the definite article from personal names was considered but eventually disapproved.

Armenian presented great difficulties: the absence of an authoritative reference source for spelling names, the lack of agreement on transliteration, and the sound-shift by which classical and eastern Armenian d, g became western Armenian p, z, k and—incidental as it may seem to the novice—wise verse; similar reciprocal interchanges involved ks and dz, and ch and j. The following alphabet represents western Armenian letters, with eastern variants in parentheses: a, p (b), k (g), l (d), e, z, é, ë, t, zh, l, l, kh, dz (ts), g (k), h, ts (dz), gh, j (ch), m, y, n, th, a, ch, b (p), ch (i), r, s, v, c (t), r, y, n or v, ñ, l, ê, f. Many spellings are based on the Armenian texts in the Recueil des historiens des croisades.

In standardizing names of groups, the correct root forms in the respective languages have been identified, with the ending -"id" for dynasties and their peoples but "ite" for sects, and with plural either identical with singular (as Kargiz) or plus "-a" (Khazar) or "-en" (Uzes). In cases where this sounded hopelessly awkward, it was abandoned (Muwahhidus, not Muwahhidids or Muwahhidites, and certainly not Almohads, which is, however, cross-referenced).

The use of place names is explained in the note preceding the gazetteer, but may be summarized by saying that in general the most familiar correct form is used in the text and maps, normally an English version of the name by which the place was known to Europeans during the crusades. Variant forms are given and identified in the gazetteer.

Despite conscientious efforts to perfect the nomenclature, errors will probably be detected by specialists; they are to be blamed on me and not on individual contributors or editorial colleagues, for I have been accorded a free hand. Justifiable suggestions for improvements will be welcomed, and used to bring succeeding volumes nearer that elusive goal, impeccability in nomenclature.

Harry W. Hazard

[Princeton, New Jersey, 1962]
ABBREVIATIONS

APP Archivum Studiorum Patristicorum (Instutio marica Santa Sabina, Rome, 1930-).


BF Bullarium franciscanum, ed. Johannes H. Schulte et al. (Rome, 1759 ff.).

BGF Bibliotheca biobiblographica della Terra Santa e dell'Oriente franciscano, ed. Giovanni Galubovich et al. (9 vols., Quaresmi, 1926-1927).

BOBP Bullarium ordinis praedicatorum, ed. Thomas Ripoll et al. (Rome, 1737 ff.).

CSCQ Corpus scriptorum christianorum orientalium, Scriptores IV, ed. John A. Chabot et al. (Paris und Churwissen, 1903 ff.).

CSHB Corpus scriptorum historiae byzantinae, ed. Hartfield O. Niebuhr, Immanuel Bekker et al. (50 vols., Bonn, 1823-1897).

CURC Columbia University Research of Civilisation, Sources and Studies (New York, 1913 ff.).

CPD NO Institut français de Damas, Bibliothèque orientale.


PC Fontes Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicum curia canonici orientalia Pontis (Vatican: City, 1944-).


Late. Les Annales de Jérusalem (2 vols., 1844-1843).


Or Historiae orientales Arabum (5 vols., 1877-1906).

RHDFE Revue historique de droit français et étranger (Paris, 1855-).


ABBREVIATIONS


Volume V

THE IMPACT OF THE CRUSADES ON THE NEAR EAST
I

ARAB CULTURE
IN THE TWELFTH CENTURY

The study of Arab culture in the twelfth century is limited to those areas in the Arab world in which the events of the crusades unfolded, and where east and west, Islam and Christendom, Arab and Frank met face to face. These areas comprise Egypt and the lands of the Fertile Crescent, although the eastern part of the Crescent remained for the most part peripheral. Most of the drama was enacted on the eastern shores of the Mediterranean, from Antioch in the north to Damietta in the south. The crusaders' early thrust into the interior as far as the Tigris river was permanently arrested and pushed back before the middle of the century.

At the outbreak of the crusades, eastern Islam was divided in loyalty between the 'Abbasid caliphate in Baghdad and the Fatimid Imamate in Cairo. The 'Abbasids of Baghdad were virtual prisoners of the Seljukids (Seljuks), who had, some five decades earlier, readily responded to the appeals of al-Qadi (1031-1073) to save the caliphate from the pro-Shiite Buwayhids. Indeed, the Seljukids had in 1055 supplanted the Buwayhids and saved the caliphal throne; they had given the state a new lease on life, particularly during the reign of the first three Great Seljukids, Toghrul Beg (1038-1063), Alp Arslan (1063-1072), and Malik-Shah (1072-1092). The Seljukids had come as rescuers, but, as often happens, had remained as conquerors. Their domination over the caliphate continued to the last decade of the twelfth century, and their endless strife weakened the caliphate and facilitated the success of the Christian invaders. When, after the fall of Jerusalem in 1099, a Muslim delegation arrived in Baghdad

The author is indebted to the students AlF Hadi Habib, M T Haruna, Sadik Khayyat, and Mikhail Khirki for help in collecting some of the material for this study.


to seek the aid of the central government, all it received was words of sympathy from the caliph al-Mustas̄uf (1094–1118) and tears from the outraged populace. The sultan Barquq (1094–1105), to whom the matter was referred by the caliph, had nothing to offer. Nine years later, in 1106, a second delegation, now from beleaguered Tripoli, appeared at the capital, but its mission fared no better than that of the first. When, at long last, sultan Muhammad (1105–1118) bestirred himself and led an expedition against the Franks in 1111, his troops, in the words of a Medieval chronicler, “spread havoc and destruction throughout the land, far exceeding anything which the Franks were wont to do.”

Not only the eclipse of the power of the caliphate by the Seljukid sultans and the constant struggle among the Seljukid princes, especially after the death of Malik-Shah in 1092, but also the deep-rooted enmity between the Sunnite ‘Abbāsids of Baghdad and the Shi‘ite Fāṭimids of Cairo plagued Arab society and sapped a great deal of its ability both to defend itself against the invaders and to maintain the stability necessary for development and progress. To the Sunnite ‘Abbāsids it seemed more urgent to deal with the threat raised by the schismatic Fāṭimids than to face the dangers to the entire region implicit in the Christian invasion. In fact, it was not until this rival schismatic caliphate was finally liquidated in 1171 that the defender were able to concentrate all their energies against the invaders.

Politically, the twelfth century witnessed struggles between Moslems and Franks, between Sunnis and Shi‘ites, between Sunnite caliph and Sunni sultan, between Sunnite princes in the various urban centers and those in outlying districts, between ambitious dynasts and predatory valets, and between the mass of the population, mostly Arabs, and the foreign elements, mostly Turks. Each of these struggles was sufficient to disrupt the normal course of life and to ravage the general good of society. Together, they wrought havoc throughout the empire, rendered communications unsafe, increased lawlessness, and gave rise to various forms of brigandage. The memoirs of Usamah, one of the best sources of information available, abound with references to highway robbers infecting the vicinities of urban centers, such as Mosul,4 Baalbek, Shazzar, and Nablus.

Perhaps the most terrifying form of lawlessness, however, was the rise of the Isma‘ili Assassins, whose “new mission” or “new dispensa-

3 Ilūr, Rūh al-ğarb, Mtbr. muqāmāt fī muqadim al-fā’il (Hamburg, 1984), p. 3
5 Ibid., p. 79.
tions terrorized both invaders and defenders alike throughout the greater part of the century, and whose agents made two attempts on the life of Saladin himself. 7

When treating of the crusades, it has been easy to make sweeping generalizations. More often than not the dichotomy of invaders and defenders, Christians and Moslems, has obscured the heterogeneous nature of each of the two groups. Actually, the crusaders, in spite of their various origins, were more homogeneous than the defenders, who were deeply divided racially, linguistically, and culturally. Within the Islamic community (al-jam'ī) itself, the Arab elements, though always a majority in the area, had already lost their hegemony, and were bitterly pitted against such non-Moslems as the Turks, the Persians, and the Kurds. Arab feelings, against the first two in particular, were marked by the growing resentment of the Arabs against the loss of their hegemony in the jami'ī. Arabic literary sources invariably speak of the heretical (muhaddith) Persians and the uncouth (‘ullā) Turks. A Damascene poet, living at the time of the first sultan Ayyūb, hesitates to say anything in praise of the dynasty for fear of its being lost on “mean and potty non-Arab.” 8 Another poet wonders how he could possibly eulogize any of the Turks, who are incapable of appreciating any poetry and therefore continue to neglect it. 9

While they had their detractors, the Turks also had their defenders. According to one poet they were responsible for the glory of Islam. Another speaks of “bands of Turkish soldiers whose forays against the enemy would make the sound and fury of thunder seem like child’s play. In looks, they resemble the angels, in valor and battle they match the supernatural power of the jinn.” 10

This tension runs through the course of Arab history. In the twelfth century, it seems to have gained in intensity, because of a soldier whose debauchery and rapacity preyed upon the populace and whose leaders were unwilling or unable to curb the excesses of their followers. Except for the periods of Nūr-ad-Dīn (1146–1174) and Saladin (1169–1193), when the authority of the sultan was too strong to be contested, conflicts among the different dynasts, on the one hand,

8 Ad-dhewwah al-jam‘ī.
9 See Bernard Lewis, “The Humility and the Assumption,” in volume I of the present work, chapter IV.
10 Ibn-Umar (1154–1228); see him Dārūs, ed. Khallī Marduma (Damascus, 1946); p. 59.
11 See Id. Shamsib, Fi'il ad-ramlat-an f ad-dhewwah al-jam‘ī (Cairo, A.M. 1267 [1870/71], 1, 240.
and with the invaders, on the other, plunged the entire area into a state of near-chaos. To establish their authority over the various dynasts and adventurers, both Nur-ad-Din and Saladin spent the greater part of their reigns in active combat against enemies both Moslem and Frank.

The constant warfare was disruptive, not only politically, but also socially and economically. Manpower was depleted, farmers left their land uncultivated rather than have their crops pillaged, public security all but collapsed, and in the face of a rising wave of brigandage and crime the populace often took the law into its own hands, organizing itself into special units for self-defense. These "youth units" (al-makhtush) were at times enlisted by the caliph himself, who issued arms to them whenever he found himself faced with danger. The breakdown in security and the inability of rulers to cope with the situation threatened to disrupt the annual pilgrimage, which, as one of the divinely ordained pillars of Islam, was obligatory for every Moslem. Furthermore, the frequent epidemics of plague and smallpox, and the recurrent outbreak of endemic diseases like malaria, decimated large areas. Famines of major proportion, in part caused by the forced neglect of the land, led to widespread dislocation in the population center of the area. In 1177/1178 drought hit many areas; people left their homes and roamed the countryside in search of food, and whole villages lay desolate. To avoid starvation, people ate the flesh of dogs and cats. In 1200 famine in Egypt was so severe that people were reported to have fed on dead animals and even on human flesh, only to be destroyed by the "ravaging" pestilence. For three years, beginning in 1178 and continuing through 1181, rain did not fall in either Iraq or Syria. Prices rose abnormally, and a general famine, extending to Egypt, ravaged the entire area. On top of all these catastrophes was an additional blow to the area in the form of a severe attack by the Mongol hordes in 1260, which inflicted heavy losses on the local population.

11 (Abū-l-Fath) Ibn al-Jandil, Al-omanugār fi ʿawālih al-mulūk, XII (Hyderbad, A. in 1358 [1358/59]), 13; Ibn al-Athir, Al-ahadith al-sarih al-maʿlūm, ed. Carl E. Turner, X (Leiden, 1964) 444. 12 In 1158 Bedouin attacked the pilgrim caravans between Mecca and Medina and slaughtered most of them (Abū-l-Fath) Al-omanugār fi ʿawālih al-mulūk, Cairo, ed. 1131, 231). In 1157 and 1160 the pilgrims found it necessary to change their return route in order to avoid Bedouin attacks (Ibn al-Athir, Al-ahadith, XII, Leiden 1834, 284, 206; Ibn al-Jandil, Al-omanugār, X, 210). In 1161 the Bedouin tribes attacked and burned the pilgrim caravans with the result that the Egyptians did not go on pilgrimage (Al-omanugār, X, 222). 13 Ibn al-Jandil, Al-omanugār, XII, 112. 14 "Syria" encompasses not the present-day Syrian Arab Republic but Dura and Shaykhun, the area extending from the Taurus mountains in the north to the Sinai Desert in the south, and from the Mediterranean in the west to the Syrian Desert in the east.

trophies, an earthquake hit the region in 1157, devastating “Aleppo, Hamah, Shanzar, and most of Syria and the east.”

In spite of these misfortunes life went on, its pleasures undiminished and its vices unchecked, as we are often reminded by the moralists. One poet, reviewing the mores of his time as reflected in the conduct of the judges of Damascus, summed up the situation in the following words:

To drink wine in Ramadan, to play the lute
At the call for prayer.
To omit prayer and neglect the reading of the Koran,
Adultery and sodomy in the sacred house of God—
All these are now deemed lawful and in good taste.
You upright people of Damascus, the judge has now
given permission to his friends to do what they please.
Therefore, gambol, drink, and procure,
Federally practice and sequester insole,
And God himself deny—
All these you may do with impunity.

In a community where heresy and treason were considered one and the same thing, it was only natural that anyone who questioned a single tenet of Islam was pronounced at once a heretic and a traitor, and that anyone who rose up against the state was declared at once a traitor and a heretic. The Islamic community was, of course, facing invasion by foreign adherents of a rival religion which Islam had from the beginning recognized as being of divine origin. The conflicts between the rising Arab state and the Byzantine empire deepened the cleavage between the two faiths and accentuated the hostility between their respective adherents. Islam had been on the offensive from the seventh century to the end of the eleventh, not only in Syria and Anatolia but also in Sicily and Spain. The reconquest of Sicily and northern Spain in the west, and the crusade in the east, represented the first successful Christian reaction against Islam. Even so, Islam could not, at least in theory, wage a holy war against Christianity as such, but only against Christians who had allegedly “ignored the teachings of their own divine dispensation.”

It is this kind of distinction which explains in part the uncompromising and intense hatred which Islam reserved for its own schismatic groups, particularly the Shiites, who, considered at once heretics and

27 Ibn Tabishir. ‘Ulu-l ‘ulam‘a wa-aqwa‘al bi-mdm‘All al-ma‘al-Qudsib (Cairo, 1933), V, 223
18 Al-Kalubi, Farahat al-mujaddid wa Muhammad al-Din al-‘Abd-al-Hamid (Cairo, 1951), 1, 123
traitors, never ceased to be a thorn in the side of Sunnite Islam and authority. Suppression of Shi'ism, therefore, always commanded wide popular support. The spread of Fatimid power to Egypt and Syria in the tenth and eleventh centuries, and the rise of the neo-Shafi'iite terror in the twelfth century, made holy war against all forms of Shi'ism one of the most urgent preoccupations of the Sunnite community. The neo-Shafi'ites, for their part, hit back against the Sunnites by launching a series of raids on Sunnite strongholds, mangurating a wave of assassinations, and even inviting the Franks to come to Damascus.19

Sectarian feuding among the Muslives was not limited to Sunnite-Shi'ite strife; it often flared up among adherents of the various Sunnite rites or juridical schools (madhāb).20 One of the more serious clashes took place in Baghdad in 1177-1178 between the Hanbalites and the Hanafites.21 To reduce friction and control the feuding jurists, the caliph found himself, in 1210, compelled to license the official representatives of the four rites.22 Besides these religious disputes, regional conflicts were not uncommon, and at times led to violence, even during the pilgrimage, the sacredness of which could not, in 1227, avert an open clash between pilgrims from Iraq and those from Egypt.23

Because of the incessant conflicts which rendered the twelfth century one of dissenion and violence, and because of the serious setbacks to the temporal fortunes of Islam which established foreign and non-Muslim states in Muslim lands and subjected, for the first time in a millennium, great numbers of the "faithful" to the rule of the "infidels," Muslives have seen this century as the beginning of the period of decline in Arab civilization. It is unfortunate that a number of modern scholars, both Muslim and non-Muslim, have encommoded to this oversimplification II by "decline" to mean the drying up of the wells of creativity in Arab society, the beginnings should be pushed back at least two and a half centuries to the time of the suppression of the Mutazilites by the caliph al-Mu'tawakkil (847-861). In the tenth century, too, al-Ash'ar (d. 935/936) had established the hegemony of his scholastic theology over the dead body of Mutazilite thinking.

Another setback to free thought had occurred in 1017, when be-

19 Ibn al-Quhanni, Diwan as-sul-h Dimashq, ed. Henry P. Amundson (Beirut, 1903), p. 221
20. These are the Hanbalite, Shafi'ite, Hanafite, and Malikite.
21 Ibn Tughril, As-wna, VI, 87
22. Abu-Shukr, Diwan as-sul-h Dimashq (Cairo, a.d. 1346 [1866/77]), p. 69
caused by the growing intensity of the polemical controversy between Sunnite and Shi'ite Islam, often leading to conflict and strife, the caliph al-Qādir (991–1031) issued an edict against Shi'ites and Mu'tazilites alike, and forced their leaders to recant and return to the narrow path of Moslem orthodoxy. 24 Not long after, in 1041, al-Qādir published in Baghdad the so-called Qādiri creed (al-'iqāda 'l-Qādir), 25 the first official statement of doctrine issued by a caliph, to which all were required to subscribe and conform. By the beginning of the twelfth century Moslem orthodoxy was already established and Moslem conformity (ittibā') was no longer challenged or contested.

In fact, except for a decline in intellectual creativity which had begun much earlier, the twelfth century was in many ways a period of revival resulting from the mutual confrontation of two cultures. Indeed, the crusades seem to have delayed, for a while at least, the impending stagnation of Arab life and vigor.

As a result of the Christian–Moslem encounters of the twelfth century, the commercial activities of Italian cities—notably Venice, Genoa, and Pisa—were greatly stimulated, and the east-west trade between the ports of Syria and those of Italy enjoyed a great revival. From the point of view of the Arab east, the resulting benefits were indeed timely, for Arab trade with the Far East had already come to a standstill, primarily because of the prevailing universal unrest, which disrupted trade routes and strangled commercial enterprise. In the eleventh century, too, trade with Russia and the north and gradually diminished and all but disappeared. Therefore the revival of Mediterranean commerce, as a result of the crusades, partially compensated the Arab area for commerce lost elsewhere.

As commerce expanded, agriculture and industry shared the benefits. Furthermore, throughout the ascendancy of the two Zengid rulers, Imād-ad-Dīn Zengi and Nūr-ad-Dīn Mahmud (1127–1124), and the first Ayyūbids, Saladin (1169–1193), special attention was paid to agriculture, which had always been the main industry of the area. Ibn Jabbār (b. 1145, d. 1217), while on pilgrimage, visited Egypt, Syria, and Iraq between the years 1183 and 1185, and has left us a vivid description of life and conditions in these areas in his famous Kāfīrīs. 26

"Damascus was adorned with the bright blossoms of fruit trees and flowers, and resplendent in the glittering green of its gardens and or-

25. Ibid., VIII, 109–111.
chards." 27 As he crossed through Iraq toward Baghdad, he noted the country's "thriving villages and fertile lands, abounding with rich crops and palm groves." 28 He expected to find Mecca, which the Koran describes as "a valley blank for cultivation", 29 a place devoid of everything, but instead found its markets teeming with all manner of goods and fruits, such as figs, grapes, pomegranates, quinces, plums, lemons, walnuts, watermelons, cucumbers, and all kinds of herbs and vegetables such as eggplants, pumpkins, turnips, carrots, beets, and cabbages. 30 Although these were probably not grown in Mecca itself, but in nearby Taif, the account reflects a flourishing agriculture. Other travelers were impressed by the prosperity of Tripoli. Nāṣir-ı Khusrav describes it as "suburbs which consisted of vast stretches of fields covered with blooming ears of wheat, vineyards bursting with their luscious clusters of grapes, farms crowded with sugar cane, vast orchards of trees heavily laden with oranges, and lemons and other fruits." 31 William of Tyre (d. about 1187) mentions the sugar-cane plantations and the sugar industry in and around his native town Syria paid special attention to the olive tree, the fruit of which has always been part of the staple fare of the area, and its oil the principal fat for eating and cooking. It was also the mainstay of the flourishing soap industry in towns like Tripoli and Nahlin. 32

The revival of trade led to a revival of industry. The major cities of Iraq—Baghdad, Damascus, and Mosul—continued to excel in weaving. Syria produced, in addition to woven fabrics, stained glass, sugar, and paper, while Egypt's leading manufactures were cotton, woolen, and silk fabrics, silk brocades, mattress beds, rugs, tents, silks, saddles, metalwork, gold and silver jewelry, pottery, glassware, and woodcarvings. The exigencies of war also gave impetus to shipbuilding and the manufacture of weapons.

In spite of the disruptive effects of war and political instability, the area retained a measure of prosperity. How widespread this was is difficult to determine with any degree of certainty, since sources for the most part ignore rural areas and concentrate their attention on urban centers. The majority of the population, however, did not live in cities; being largely peasants or seminomadic, they dwelt in scattered villages, farms, and constantly changing campgrounds. It
is difficult, therefore, to generalize about their condition. Furthermore, Arab culture in general was a "palace culture". Its ramifications were not widespread, and rarely reached those segments of the population which did not reside in urban centers.

Eyewitness reports of contemporary travelers preserve a clear picture of prevailing conditions in cities like Baghdad, Damascus, Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Cairo. Baghdad of the twelfth century had two parts, one on each side of the Tigris. The older part, on the west bank, was in ruins; the newer, on the east bank, consisted of seventeen quarters (sing., mash'alah), each of which formed an independent unit. Though considerably run down and neglected, each quarter had its own quota of public baths and a number of mosques. There were thirty schools, each housed in an imposing building and supported by its own separate endowment (waqf). Baghdad also had its own great hospital, which Ibn-Jubair visited. Physicians made regular calls every Monday and Thursday, and prescribed the necessary medical treatment, prepared and administered to the patients by regular hospital attendants.

Notwithstanding civil wars and preoccupation with the holy war against the Franks, Syria during the greater part of the twelfth century enjoyed the most brilliant period of its Muslim history since the Umayyad age. Under the Zengids and the Ayyubids, particularly under Nur-ad-Din and Saladin, its principal cities—especially Damascus, Aleppo, and to a certain extent Jerusalem after its recovery from the crusaders—underwent a spectacular revival. Damascus still shows evidence of the architectural and educational activities of these two rulers. Nur-ad-Din rebuilt the walls of the city, established the first school exclusively devoted to the study of Muslim tradition, built the celebrated hospital bearing his name, and introduced the first of a number of schools modeled after the famous Niyamiyah of Baghdad. This enlightened patronage of learning was continued, with added zeal, by the great Saladin, who seems to have transformed Damascus into a school city. Ibn-Jubair, who visited the city in 1184, enumerates in its twenty madrasahs, two hospitals, many inns, and numerous centers of Sufi fraternal orders.

31 Ibn-Jubair, Kitab, p. 229
34 Ibid., p. 225
Saladin introduced the madrasah type of school into Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Cairo, where they became known as Ṣalāḥiyah or Naṣrīyah. Under him, too, Egypt witnessed a general revival. Both Alexandria and Cairo became beneficiaries of his enlightened and energetic rule. Ibn-Jubair was especially impressed by the apparent prosperity of Alexandria, its public buildings, marble colonnades, and wide streets, and by the various madrasahs and the philanthropic institutions set aside for the benefit of strangers. 37

Cairo was specially favored by the first Ayyubid. Besides the two hospitals which he maintained in the city, he established the Cairo Ṣalāḥiyah and several similar madrasahs, restored the citadel and strengthened its fortifications along Norman lines, using prisoners of war in its construction, and began building aqueducts to tap the waters of the Nile for irrigation. Above all, he patronized the arts and surrounded himself with men of talent, including his two learned vizires al-Qādi al-Fāḍil (d. 1200) and Tūmād-ad-Din al-Iṣláhī (d. 1201), the great Jewish philosopher-physician Maimonides, and the historian-physician 'Abd-al-Lāzīz al-Baghdādī (d. 1231).

Saladin's educational activities in Damascus, Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Cairo not only continued Nūr-ad-Dīn's educational reforms in Damascus and other Syrian cities, such as Aleppo, Home, Hamah, and Hama, but also revived the practical policies of the great Seljuq vizir Nizām-al-Mulk (d. 1092), whose main interest was to supply the rising Seljuk empire with civil servants and to combat Shi'ite teachings and propaganda emanating from the Azhar. The Nizām al-Mulk type of school or academy launched by Nizām-al-Mulk in 1065–1067 became a model for later institutions of higher learning, and the Ṣalāḥiyah type inaugurated by Saladin served the same purpose. Both were instruments of the state, but both also brought progress throughout the land.

In spite of the heroic efforts of the two Zangids and of Saladin to weld the population into one harmonious society dedicated to the task of repelling the invader and restoring Islamic solidarity, twelfth-century Arab society still lacked the attributes of a united people. Made up of heterogeneous ethnic elements not yet fused together in the crucible of time, it was further divided by its social stratifications. There were extreme contrasts of wealth and poverty, enlightenment and ignorance, comfort and squalor, refinement and crudeness. At the top of the social scale stood the caliph and his immediate family and relatives, who, being denied actual authority by the ruling sul-

37 Ibn-Jubair, Miṣkāt, pp. 40–45.
ians, with few exceptions took to a life of indulgence. The court of al-Muqtadī (1136-1160) required eighty mules to carry its daily supply of drinking water, which the sultan was only too willing to provide in order to divert the caliph from affairs of state toward those of his harem, where his concubines, young male slaves (ghilman), and eunuchs left him little time for public affairs. The personal fortune of the caliph al-Mustadī (1170-1180), excluding precious articles and clothes, took 170 mules to carry. The relatives of the caliph were comfortably confined in sumptuous homes from which they were not allowed to emerge or make a public appearance, but they enjoyed handsome emoluments.

Next to the caliph stood the wāli, who sometimes surpassed him in extravagance and pomp. Ibn-Jahsh tells of watching the military chief of the caliph an-Náṣir (1180-1223) emerge from the palace, "surrounded by his Turkish and Dālāsilı officers and escorted by about fifty men with drawn swords." The predatory behavior of vīzīs, who usually amassed great personal fortunes, remained unchecked except by the occasional confiscation (muṣhabihā) of their ill-gotten property by caliph or wāli. In fact, the muṣhabihā became a common practice during the twelfth century.

Next came the learned men (al-`ulamā`) and religious leaders (afṣafahā) who enjoyed great repute and special privileges primarily because they were the servants of the state and the defenders of religious orthodoxy. From the late eleventh century, under the auspices of the great Seljuk vizir Nizām al-Mulk, their aid was enlisted in combating the Shīʿite "heresy" and in providing the state with its much-needed corps of civil servants. They filled teaching posts in the various Nizāmiyyah schools and academies. These functions continued to attract men of learning during the twelfth century, especially because of the surge of Bāṭinī teachings and Ismāʿīlī propaganda.

The incursion of militant Christianity placed an added burden on these scholars. They had to combat not only Muslim heresy but also Christian Inroads, and to exhort the believers and arouse their zeal for the defense of the faith. Both the Zengids and the Ayyūbids leaned heavily on this class and exploited their talents in various activities. From their ranks came viziers, judges, and lecturers in the new schools. Furthermore, the state often cultivated members of the class

---

40. Ibid., p. 999
41. Ibid., p. 227.
because of their unscrupulous influence on the populace. Even discerning individuals like Ibn-Luban, who criticized the people of Baghdad for their hypocrisy and deceit, exempted from this harsh judgment “their religious leaders, who were versed in the science of tradition, and their preachers, who ceaselessly admonished their followers to do right. Indeed, in the pursuit of preaching and admonishing, in warning and reprimanding, in constantly forewarning and reproving, they have attained such high stations as would win for them enough of the mercy of God to decrease their burden of sin.” 

Nevertheless, it would seem that the ranks of the learned were not infrequently infiltrated by unscrupulous men who exploited their position for material gain, and made a mockery of their calling, transforming their religious circles into meetings for illicit revels and mirth by men and women, thereby making it necessary for the muftis to intervene and lay down rules for the profession of preaching.

The general public, consisting of small merchants, artisans, farmers, peasants, nomads, and slaves, shared a common adversity. Oppressed by their rulers, exploited by the wealthy few, and impoverished by war levies and marauding soldiers, they developed an attitude of callous indifference and apathy to the vicissitudes of life. Their principal interest was to ward off hunger and to survive. They were suspicious of all outsiders, whom they cheated in business dealings, or fawned over in order to gain them whenever possible. Not were the beduins better than their urban neighbors. Their much-trumpeted pride was nothing but a myth. They might feed on carcases, and still brag that they were the noblest Arabs. Slavery was rampant, and traffic in slaves and concubines was popular and profitable. To forestall possible abuse, the muftis was entrusted with the task of supervising the slave market and requiring slave merchants to adhere to a strict trade code.

As usual, non-Muslims continued, for the most part, to occupy a peripheral place in Arab society, and formed a distinct social group which lived in its separate quarters (sing. ḥārām). They were governed through their religious leaders, who were responsible to the authorities for regulating the affairs of their followers, supervising their pious

---

46 Ummūl al-Iḥrāfīyya, Al-Ṭalibī, p. 62.
foundations, and adjudicating their differences in all matters of personal status. The advent of the Franks led to the tightening of governmental supervision over these dhimmis communities, to forestall possible collaboration with the invaders; necessary powers to carry out this supervision were granted to the mukhtars. Strangely enough, however, the twelfth century witnessed little increase in Moslem hostility toward native non-Moslems, partly because of Moslem preoccupation with the struggle against Brakanite and Ismaili activities. In spite of the state of war existing between Moslems and Franks, some friendly relations existed between them, especially between Moslems and those Franks who had spent some time in the East and had become "domesticated."

Nevertheless, as time went on intolerance grew, and expressed itself in popular uprisings against the continued employment of dhimmis in government offices. In 1184 an-Nāṣir ordered all non-Moslem employees removed and forbade their future employment, and in 1196, while in Damascus, the Ayyubid al-Ansary (1193-1196) decreed that no dhimmis should be given employment in the royal service, and required that they revert to wearing distinctive garments (ghiyâr). Though these laws were directed against all dhimmis, Jews and Christians alike, the Christians bore the brunt of the discriminatory treatment. They constituted a greater danger than Jews, because of their larger numbers and their obvious sympathies with their coreligionists, the Franks, to whom they extended help whenever possible. This explains why the Ayyubids, for example, made greater use of Jewish medical talent. Saladin himself was served by three Jewish physicians, Ibrahîm al-Ishaqî, Ibn-Jamî al-Ishaqî, and Ibn-al-Mudawwar, and the great Maimonides. Both Jews and Christians, however, continued to play an important role as merchants, money-changers and lenders, and jewelers. Both had to pay the poll-tax (jizya), each adult male appearing in person before the officer in charge and paying the tribute in the manner mentioned in the Koran.
It has already been suggested that Arab culture was a palace culture, flourishing under the patronage of caliph, sultan, or prince, its benefits rarely reaching beyond the confines of the royal or princely court. It should be added, too, that Arab culture has been, for the most part, a masculine culture, in which women played a very minor role. By the end of the tenth Christian century Arab women had lost the greater part of their freedom and dignity. Under the Fatimids, the system of total segregation of the sexes and stringent seclusion of women had become general. Coupled with concubinage, moral laxity, and sensual indulgence, these practices and so undermined the position of women that they had come to be looked upon as the source of all base sentiments.

Conditions in the twelfth century brought no radical change, although several unusual cases command special notice: an old woman who drew a sword and joined the men in battle; another who drowned herself in a river to avoid capture by the enemy; still another who killed her own husband because he collaborated with the Franks; and one from Shajar who, single-handed, captured three Frankish warriors and led them home as prisoners of war. These and similar exceptions elicited from the twelfth-century Arab-Syrian gentleman and warrior with recorded them in his memoirs the observation that "it is undeniable that noble women do possess pride, courage, and good judgment." Otherwise, women seem to have excelled in palace intrigues and harem diplomacy, which were to reach their climax in the middle of the following century, when Shajar-ad-Durr, widow of the last Ayyubid, Ya’qub ‘Abd al-Aziz Ayyub (1240–1249), assumed sovereign power and for eighty days maintained her position as sole ruler of the entire kingdom, before being forced to marry the first Mamluk sultan, Aybeg (1250–1257). The fact that a few women distinguished themselves in the field of poetry, perspicacity (fikhr), and tradition was the exception rather than the rule. Arab literature, too, continued to be a masculine literature, not usually suitable for mixed company.

In art and architecture, the twelfth century was no more than a continuation of the achievements of the Fatimid period in Egypt and those of the Seljukids in the Arab countries of western Asia. The return to the use of stone instead of brick as monumental structures belongs to the late Fatimid age, and the Zengids and Ayyubids did

57. Ibid., p. 136.
59. Ibid., p. 129.
60. Ibid., p. 125.
no more than perpetuate the restored tradition, adding to it what they had learned of military masonry from the Franks. This influence can be discerned in the citadel of Aleppo, restored by Nūr-ad-Dīn, and the citadel of Cairo, for which Salādīn was responsible. The several crusader castles and churches which still dot the length of Syria from Mt. Cæsarea in the north to Gaza in the south, such as the Krak des Chevaliers, Belfort, the church of Notre Dame at Tortosa, and the church of St. John (now the Umayyād mosque) in Beirut, are all of Frankish workmanship and therefore cannot be described as part of the indigenous culture.

Under the Zengids and Ayyubids, too, the achievements of the Fāṭimid and the Seljuqids in decorative art and industry were continued and in some cases refined, as in wood-, ivory-, and bone-carving, metalwork, ceramics, glassware, stained glass, and stained glass. Similarly, the arts of bookbinding and illumination received great impetus, and Arabic calligraphy was fast breaking away from the angular Kufic in favor of the cursive nastaliq, which was to reach its finest artistic development during the Mamluk period.

It is, however, in its intellectual life and activity that the real nature of Arab culture in the twelfth century is best revealed. Here its main features are best portrayed, its special characteristics depicted, and its spirit and breadth reflected. It has already been mentioned that intellectual activity lacked the lustre of earlier achievements, being more concerned with preserving a glorious heritage than with adding to it. There was no real sign of creativity. Causes for this are not far to seek: the community was on the defensive, especially against persistent Shī'ite assaults, which had already become serious enough in the eleventh century to demand special refutation by al-Ghazzālī (d. 1111), whose book Al-Mustaqbil fi sāḥiḥ al-Baytīnyah61 (On the shameful actions of the Bābitine) represents the classic Sunnite argument and position. It did little, however, to stem the Bābitine movement, the "new dispensation" of which was to be pushed forward with added vigor and violence by al-Hāmīn ibn-ṣaḥīḥ (d. 1124) and his marauding followers, the Iṣma'īlī Assassins, who terrorized the world of Islam for the greater part of the twelfth century.

The Moslem community was also on the defensive against the Franks and their church militant, not so much out of fear that Islam would lose some adherents to Christianity—actually there was little to fear in that respect—but rather because of a habit of thinking character

61 Dedicated to and named after the reigning caliph al-Mustanṣir (1094–1118); ed. Ignace Goldsmidh (Leiden, 1946).
istic of all Moslems, who, in accordance with the religio-political nature of Islam, were unwilling and unable to separate the spiritual from the temporal, the sacred from the profane. Any setback to the temporal fortunes of the community, therefore, was seen as a setback to the spiritual fortunes of Islam. This had been true of Moslem thinking since the battle of Badr (624), in which the Prophet, with about four hundred followers, had routed some four thousand Mecceans and inflicted on them heavy losses, which was interpreted as a divine sanction of the new faith.

In the eleventh century the Seljuqids had rescued a dying state and given it a new lease on life. But by the beginning of the twelfth century the unity they had forged was already shattered. In spite of the efforts of the Zengids and the first Ayyubids, the community remained religiously divided and politically shattered. Not only did the community have to face religious schisms, but it also had the task of delivering its holy places from “infidel” control and restoring Moslem rule over enemy-occupied territory. The community was almost completely preoccupied with survival, politically, philosophically, and religiously. The walls of Moslem orthodoxy had to be repaired and reinforced. Conformity in thought, belief, and conduct to the exemplary lives of the righteous fathers (sing., as-salıf as-salıhi) became mandatory for all believers. Consequently, intellectual activity turned from innovation to compilation, from speculation to systematization. Except for al-Ghazzali and Maimonides, the twelfth century produced no first-class thinker, theologian, or philosopher.

Al-Ghazzali set the pattern for the religious and philosophical activities of the century. He viewed with horror the unbridled speculations of both the Mutazilites and the Bāqīrites, disdained the intellectual prostitution and sophistry of scholastic theologians, and distrusted the collective bent of popular thinking. He dedicated his life to the task of refuting the first, castigating the second while debunking their “concatenations of proofs and arguments,” and shielding the third from the miasma of error by urging orthodoxy upon the people. He attached to philosophers the stigma of unbelief, pronounced scholastic theologians two-faced fakers and their discipline of little value in healing the malady of unbelief, and consigned the general public to the fetters of conformity and the chains of authority. More serious still, al-Ghazzali relegated reason to a limited role, asserting that its function was “to bear witness to the trustworthiness of prophecy and

to confess its own inability." 63 Similarly, "it does not point the way to that which is useful [or warn against] that which is harmful in words, works, ethics, and doctrines. It does not distinguish between the propitious and the benefic. . . . When it is, however, informed, it comprehends and believes." 64

In spite of his importance, al-Ghazzâlî should not be considered a philosopher but rather a student of philosophy who used his talents to destroy philosophy. His contribution was in the field of mysticism, which he grafted onto Islam, establishing its orthodoxy. Through it he revitalized the law by making personal religion and individual experience a part of Islam. His orthodoxy safeguarded the faith against unbridled emotionalism, and his writings led Muslims back from scholastic labor upon theological dogmas and minutiae to a living contact with the Koran. He freed Islam from the dead formalism of scholastic literalism, and quickened it by the warmth of the living spirit. And it was exactly this warmth for which Islam was groping. Though cursed as a heretic in Baghdad, Damascus, Jerusalem, Cairo, and North Africa, al-Ghazzâlî later became "the authority of Islam" (hujja al-Islam).

His most popular, though not his most important, work was the Ihya' 'ilm al-din (The revival of the sciences of religion), in which he preserved a summation of medieval Moslem thought. For this reason the work occupies a unique position throughout the Moslem world. In the words of an-Nawawi (d. 1272), a famous thirteenth-century Moslem scholar, "Should all other Moslem writings be destroyed, the Ihya', if spared, would make up for all the loss." 65 Al-Ghazzâlî set the pattern for the intellectual activities of the twelfth century: preservation rather than innovation, compilation rather than creation. This trend continued throughout the century, spreading to the various intellectual endeavors of the Arabs, and would reach its climax by the middle of the fourteenth century in the encyclopedic compilations of an-Nuwa'irî (d. 1332) and Ibn-Faadl-Allah al-Umari (d. 1349).

Maimonides (d. 1204) was, next to Averroës (Ibn-Rushd), the greatest philosopher of his time. Averroës belonged completely to western Islam, however, where he flourished and died (1198). Maimonides, though Jewish by faith, belonged to the Arab world of both the west and the east. He was born in Cordova in 1135. His family left the city after its conquest by the fanatical Muwahhids (Almohads) in 1148.

63 Al-Ghazzâlî, Ihya' 'ilm al-din, p. 174.
64 Al-Ghazzâlî, Al-Ihya' 'Ilm al-din, p. 296.
and for twelve years lived in various places in Spain. In 1160 the family settled in Fez, but was soon obliged to move eastward, arriving in 1165 in Cairo, where Maimonides spent the remaining thirty-nine years of his life, and where he wrote, in Arabic, all but one of his works. His intellectual endeavors, unlike those of al-Ghazālī, were not directed toward either preserving medieval thought or refuting earlier philosophers, but rather toward reconciling Jewish theology with Moslem Aristotelianism, in other words faith with reason, which Averroës too had successfully undertaken on behalf of Islam. In this both were in line with earlier Arab philosophers such as al-Fārābī (d. 950) and Avicenna (Ibn-Sīnā, d. 1037), both of whom were pronounced heretical by al-Ghazālī. In spite of the fact that Maimonides' concern was with Judaism rather than Islam, his place in Arab philosophical thought has remained secure, not only because he wrote in Arabic, but also because he was an heir to Arab philosophical thought, a product of Arab society, and a beneficiary of Arab patronage.

Between al-Ghazālī and Maimonides no Arab philosopher of note can be cited, perhaps because the main concern of the century was not in speculation but rather in systematization, as evidenced in the works of Fakhru’d-Dīn ar-Rūżī (d. 1259) and Najm-al-Dīn an-Nasaff (d. 1142), whose ‘Aqāʾid (Articles of faith) became the most popular statement of the Moslem creed, the nearest thing to a Moslem catechism, forming the basis for innumerable commentaries and glosses. The trend toward systematization is further seen in the intellectual activities of ash-Shāhrazūrī (d. 1133), whose Kitāb al-mīlāt wa-al-nīḥān66 (Book of religious and sects) presents a complete and detailed statement of the various philosophical opinions and religious sects, Moslem and non-Moslem alike. Two thirds of the work is devoted to non-Moslem sects. Though not the first work of its kind in Arabic, it is far more objective than that of Ibn-Tāhir al-Baghdadī (d. 1037),67 though less so than that of the Cordovan scholar Ibn Ḥazm (d. 1064).68 The importance of ash-Shāhrazūrī’s work, however, rests on its being, after that of Ibn-Ḥazm, the earliest attempt in any language in the field of the history of religion.69

With the community thrown on the defensive by pressures from within exerted by the Būyainites, and pressures from without exerted by the Franks, measures to organize the faithful in face of the grow

---

66. Cairo, n.p. 1263, 1317-1320 (1847/8; LEPP 1900-1901/2).
67. Al-furūq hāj al-ḥijī (Cairo, n.v. 1128 (1900/1901)).
68. Al-furūq hāj al-ḥijī (Cairo, n.v. 1128 (1900/1901)).
69. George Sarton, Introduction to the History of Science, II-1 (Baltimore 1931) 246.
ing danger had to be taken not only in the field of religious thought but also in that of religious organization. Inspired partly by Christian monasticism and partly by the two great military religious orders of the crusades, the Templars and the Hospitallers, Islam, which had no priesthood and no monasticism, forged their counterparts in self-perpetuating corporations organized by prominent Sufis. The first fraternal order (tariqah) to be established on a permanent basis was the Qadiriyya order, so named after its founder 'Abd-al-Qâdir al-Gilânî (1077–1166); the second was the Rifai' order, named after its founder, Ahmad ar-Rifai'î (d. 1133) of Baghdad. Both orders still exist and claim followers in all parts of the Moslem world.

"At the beginning of the twelfth century it was impossible to become a full-fledged mathematician and astronomer without a good knowledge of Arabic." A 70 Thus, of course, refers to Arabic mathematical and astronomical achievements in the period which began about the middle of the tenth century and had ended by the middle of the eleventh. Although the intellectual activity which produced this rich heritage had continued unabated through the eleventh century, the Arabs seem to have reached the end of their effort by the beginning of the twelfth century. While Europeans were busy translating Arabic mathematical and astronomical works—people like Adelard of Bath, Robert of Chester, Michael Scot, John of Seville, Hugh of Santalla, and, most important of all, Gerard of Cremona—the Arabs themselves were content to rest on their oars. In fact, the Arab east in the twelfth century produced no first-class mathematician and astronomer except 'Umar al-Khayyâmaî (d. 1123/4), whose main contribution really belonged to the previous century, and whose death marked the end of the golden age of Arab scientific creativity. 74 Other mathematicians and astronomers, though often cited, were either compilers and redactors, depending on earlier Arab works, such as al-Khwarzîmî (d. 1138/1139), 72 who learned heavily on Ibn-al-Haitham (d. about 1039), 71 or technicians skilled in the construction of astronomical instruments, such as al-Bâdir al-Ashashîbî (d. 1139/1140), 73 or mere summarizers who abridged earlier masterpieces, such as 'Abd-al-Malik ash-Shirrâzi (d. about 1203), 75 who wrote in Arabic a summary of the

70 Ibid., II, 7–7.
71 Ibid., I (Baltimore, 1977), 728.
72 Ibid., II 263–267.
74 Ibid., op. cit., II, 264.
75 Ibid., II, 294, 400–406.
treatise of Apollonius on optics, based on the ninth-century translation of the work by Thabit ibn Qurrah (d. 901).

In physics and technology the twelfth century was not lacking in skill. Abu'l-Fath 'Abd-ar Rahman al-Khazin, who flourished during the first quarter of the century, was the author of the Sunnati astronomical tables, which gave the positions of the stars for the year 1115-1116, and the latitude of the city of Marv. He also wrote a remarkable book on mechanics, hydrostatics, and physics, dealing with the specific gravities of many liquids and solids, leaving largely on the works of al-Hiruni (d. 1048). He discussed the history of the theory of gravity, the universal force directed toward "the center of the universe," that is, the center of the earth, and made some observations on capillary attraction and on the use of an aerometer to measure densities and the temperature of liquids. He also discussed the theory of the lever and the application of the balance to leveling and to the measurement of time. At these things, however, al-Khazin was drawing on earlier Arabic translations of some of the works of Pappos, a Greek mathematician who flourished in the latter part of the third and the early part of the fourth centuries.

Another technician worthy of note, illustrating Arab interest in the construction of automata and other contrivances, is Muhammad ibn-'Ali ibn-Rusam al-Khurafi al-Sadiq (d. about 1083), who constructed an elaborate clock which was placed in the Bab Jayrun of Damascus. Ibn-Jubair mentions seeing it in his Kitab al-Rijal. Rijwan, the son of Muhammad, repaired and improved the clock, and in 1203 wrote a book to explain its construction and use. Next to the work of his contemporary al-Jazar on mechanical contrivances (Al-jiyal al-khamsiyah), Rijwan's work is the most important source on early Arab clocks.

In the field of alchemy, which might be called proto-chemistry, the Arabs of the twelfth century added nothing new to their lore, but continued the tradition of Jabir ibn-Hanafiyyah (Geber) of the second half of the eighth century, and persisted in their quest for the two alchemical wits-of-the-wisps, the "philosopher's stone" by which base metals could be transmuted into gold or silver, and the "elixir of life" by which life could be indefinitely prolonged. The most important
figure in this field in the twelfth century was ʿAlī Ẓāhirī, who was put to death about 1121 on a charge of atheism.

Several factors spurred Arab interest in geography. There was the need of Muslim communities to determine the direction of the Kaʿbah both for orienting mosques toward it and for the individual faithful to face it at the time of prayer; the interest in establishing correct latitudes and longitudes for astrological purposes and practice; the practical problems of pilgrims from the whole eastern hemisphere, traveling to Medina and Mecca; and the normal demands of commerce and trade by land and sea. Nevertheless, no important additions to geographical knowledge, descriptive or astronomical, were made during the twelfth century. The works of the literary geographers of the tenth century continued to embody the bulk of geographical knowledge at the disposal of the Arabs until the end of the first quarter of the thirteenth century, when Yaqūt (d. 1229) completed, in 1228, the final draft of his monumental geographical dictionary.

The advent of the crusades increased opportunities for travel, especially for the Christians of Europe. Like their Muslim adversaries they too had their Holy Land and holy cities, notably Jerusalem, Bethlehem, and Nazareth, pilgrimage to which, though not obligatory, was considered extremely meritorious. Inevitably, the appearance of crusaders and pilgrims among the peoples of the Arab east broadened the geographical horizons of the native inhabitants. But Arab interest in lands beyond the Dar al-Islam remained limited, and whatever contribution Arab geographers and travelers made during this period was almost exclusively the work of western Arabs, such as az-Zuhri (flourished about 1140), al-Idrisi (d. 1166), al-Majishi (d. 1169/1170), and Ibn-Juhain (d. 1217). One should not, however, overlook ‘Abd ibn-Abī-Bakr ibn-Ṣāliḥ al-Harawi (d. 1215), who wrote an excellent guidebook for pilgrims entitled Kitāb al-mawṣul al-firṣat al-ziyārāt (Instructions for the knowledge of places of pilgrimage), which deals successively with Syria, Palestine, Egypt, the Byzantine empire, Iraq, India, the Arabian peninsula, the Maghrib, and Abyssinia. Except for the last two, the information he gives, though brief, is first-hand.11

---

13 Ed. Jean-Clément Komor (Damascus, 1933).
In natural history, Arab fondness for precious stones and interest in the occult qualities of minerals prompted the production of many lapidaries. Their scholars’ best efforts, however, were devoted to the study of plants for medicinal purposes. Their interest in antidotes remained undiminished, and in this they were able to make a definite contribution to knowledge during the twelfth century Ibn-Sarafiyun (or Ibn-Saraib), who probably flourished during the first half of the twelfth century, wrote Kitab al-adwiyah al-mufradah (Book of simple drugs), which was based on Byzantine and Arab sources. Another who contributed to the field of antidotes was Ibn-al-Tilmidh (d. 1165), whose Agreed-dhik (Book on simples) superseded earlier Arab works on the subject. In this field, too, as in astronomy, mathematics, and geography, the contribution of western Arabs was more considerable than that of their eastern brethren.

Commerce in precious stones, drugs, and perfumes gave rise to special works or handbooks to prevent fraud and to regulate transactions. These handbooks were sometimes specially written for the benefit of the mahdah, the official in charge of the supervision of markets, in which case they might be loosely described as manuals for the bureau of standards. In fact, literature on rules to govern the regulation of market practices and public morals increased, probably because of the breakdown of public morals as a result of the political and social instability characterizing the century. To this category belongs the unusual work of Ja’far ibn-All ad-Dimashq, who flourished in the second half of the twelfth century, on commerce and trade, entitled Al-iskahrih fi-i madhain al-tajraiha wa ma-risat al-jayyid al-wadad wa-ruluha wa ghamshiaf al-mudallalih in-fish (On the benefit of commerce and on knowing the good and bad qualities [of wares] and the fraudulent practices of counterfeiters). The work, however, is more than a practical manual for market inspectors. It treats of other questions such as the true meaning of wealth (majlqat al-ma’lul), kinds of possessions, the origin of money, how to preserve goods, how to determine their average prices, and how to protect

85 He should not be confused with Fefe al-Sarafiyun, who flourished during the second half of the ninth century.
property. In this respect the work may be considered among the earliest Arabic treatises on economics, although it draws on the *Iltadür al-manāzil*, the Arabic version of a Greek work on domestic economy, ascribed to the Pythagorean Bryson.

Although the illustrious names of Arab medical lore belong to an earlier period, the Arabs of the twelfth century retained their interest in the art of medicine (sengah) and maintained their superiority over others in its practice. This is well demonstrated by the contemporary reports of Usamah ibn-Munquillah, who devotes a number of pages in his memoirs to this subject. Nevertheless, no great medical contribution was made during the century. Furthermore, while the art remained a near monopoly of Abbasid physicians, those who distinguished themselves in its practice were, for the most part, Jews. The Frankish-Muslim struggle was already bearing its poisonous fruits of_laneh_, which destroyed the confidence of the public in Christian practitioners and helped make Arab medicine, from the late twelfth century through the thirteenth, largely Jewish. With the exception of ibn-at-Tilmidah, who was a Christian, all the first-class physicians of the century were Jews: Ibn-Jami’ al-Jarāṭ刑 (d. 1193), who served as a personal physician to Saladin; Ibn-al-Mudawar (d. 1193), who served both the last Fatimid caliph and then Saladin as coniprincipal physician; Ibn-an-Naqid (d. 1183/1189), and Abu-l-Maddi ibn-Hibat-Allah al-Yahudi (d. 1222), who served Saladin and later the fourth Ayyubid sultan, al-Adil (1199–1218).

While these and many others of lesser stature made an significant contribution to Arab medical lore, as practitioners they observed high standards of ethics and skill. Furthermore, stringent rules governed the profession. No person was permitted to practice the "art" unless he was first licensed by a well-known authority. He also had to take the oath of Hippocrates, and to bind himself to pay the bloodwit of any patient who might die as a result of his treatment, if it were established that it was not in accordance with the best medical practice, or that he himself had been negligent in his care for the patient. He had to be well acquainted with the anatomy and the cardiac lin-

---

30 Barrow, op. cit., p. 1, 462–463; for analysis of the work see Pellegrino Riccio, in Der Islam, VII (1917), 1–91.
32 See above, p. 29.
34 Barrow, op. cit., II, 432.
36 Ibn-Ad, p. 217.
more of the body, and familiar with the various diseases to which man is susceptible and with the medicines which should be prescribed for each. Similar conditions were required of oculists (see kahhāt), who were expected to know the treatise on ophthalmology Al-'ashr maqālāt fī-l-'aṣā (The ten treatises on the eye), commonly ascribed to Hizān ibn-Isḥāq (d. 773). Bone-setters were required to know the exact number of bones in the human body and the shape and form of each. Surgeons were expected to know Galen's works on anatomy and physiology and to be familiar with all the members of the body and all its veins, arteries, and nerves. 95

The tradition of caring for the sick in hospitals supported by endowments, which goes back to the tenth century, was continued, especially by the two Zangids and Saladin. 96 Almost every large urban center, such as Baghdad, Aleppo, Damascus, Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Cairo, had its own hospital. Usually the building had two pavilions, one for men and one for women. One of the Cairo hospitals, visited by Ibn-Jubair, had a third pavilion for the insane. 97 Some of these hospitals functioned also as schools of medicine.

As the religious and political unity of the Islamic community had already been shattered long before the twelfth century, it was natural for Arab historiography to reflect this breakdown by becoming increasingly provincial, turning its attention to local and dynastic histories, biographies, and biographical dictionaries. This trend, which would increase during the thirteenth century and reach its greatest development in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, reflects not only the breakdown of the political unity of the Arab and Moslem world, but also an increased tendency to look backward as an escape from the painful realities of the present. Of particular interest among the historians who flourished during this period is ash-Shahrastānī (d. 1153), whose main contribution was in the field of the history of religion. He also wrote a history of philosophers (Ta'rikh al-hukama') Another author exemplifying the same trend is Abd-al-Karim as-Sam'ānī (d. 1167), whose Kitāb al-aswād (The book of genealogies) preserves a vast number of Arabic patronymics but is chiefly valuable for what it contains about the history and proper names of Persia, Transoxiana, and Central Asia, although it seems to depend very much on the narratives of the Ta'rikh Isfahān of Hamzah al-Iṣfahānī (d.

95 Ibn-al-'Ujamī, adh-Dhīdā, pp. 165-169
96 See above, pp. 118 f.
97 Ibn-Jubair, Rihā'il, p. 51
98 See above, p. 20; Ibn-Khīṭārī, Nāṣīḥāt, III, 408-409.
970), the Tarikh Nishābūr of al-Ḥakīm an-Nisābūrī (d. 1014), and, in particular, the Tarikh Bagdad of al-Khāṣîb al-Baghdādī (d. 1071). With the age of compilation began, an age which was to reach its fullest development in the fourteenth century in works like those of an-Nuwayri (d. 1332) and Ibn-Fadl Allāh al-'Umarī (d. 1349). While such works preserved the Arab cultural heritage and were therefore extremely valuable, they reveal little originality or creativity.

Another compiler reflecting the same trend is 'All ibn-Za'd al-Balhaqī (d. 1169), who is chiefly known for his biographical dictionary, entitled Tarikh ḫukumāt al-Islām (The history of the learned men of Islam), which was a supplement to an earlier biographical dictionary of learned men, the Ṣūrūn al-ḥālmāt of Muḥammad an-Sijistānī of the second half of the tenth century. Al-Balhaqī also wrote, in Persian, a history of his birthplace, Balhaq, which he completed a year before his death.

The shift in emphasis from general to local histories is likewise demonstrated by the work of 'Umārah ibn-'All al-Yamani (d. 1174), who wrote the Tarikh al-Yamān (The history of Yemen). For his part in a plot to restore the Faṭimid imamate to power with the help of Amalric, the Frankish king of Jerusalem, 'Umārah was executed on the order of Saladin.

By far the greatest Arab historian in the twelfth century, however, was Abū l-Qāsim 'All ibn-al-Hasan ibn-'Asākir (d. 1176), whose Tarikh Dimashq (The history of Damascus) was patterned after al-Khāṣîb al-Baghdādī's history of Baghdad. In eighty volumes, the work deals casually with the history of the city, but records the biographies of celebrated learned men who either were born in Damascus or spent part of their lives there. Though abridged later by various scholars, the work, of which a complete copy is preserved in the Zāhiriyah library in Damascus, has never been published. Ibn-'Asākir was so esteemed by his contemporaries that, on his death, Saladin himself attended his funeral.

The trend toward dynastic histories is represented by 'Imād-ad-Dīn al-Isfahānī (d. 1201). Persian by birth, he studied in Baghdad and wrote his works in Arabic. His best-known historical contribution is the Kitab al-fath al-qawmī fī al-fath al-Qawādî (The Qawādî interpretation...
tion of the crusades, 103 which is an account of Saladin’s conquest of Syria and Palestine. He also wrote the Nusrat al-
fiṣrak wa ‘udrat al-qarrah (The victory of the true faith [of Islam] and the haven of the wayfarer), a history of the Seljukids and their vizirs based on a Persian original by Sharaf-ad-Din Afnisharwān (d. 1137). Another of his works is a seven-volume history of his own times, including his autobiography, Al-burj wa-sh-arbīl (The Syrana lightning); only one of the seven volumes, dealing with the years 1182–
1184, is now extant. Al-Imād, as al-Isfahānī is commonly known, was a stylist of the first order, whose literary remains are esteemed by modern critics.

An exception to the general trend toward local and dynastic histories was the work of one of the most versatile and prolific authors in Islam, the renowned Ḥabīl al-Farsī ‘Abd-ar-Rahmān Ibn al-Jauzi (d. 1201). 105 Though he wrote many works on diverse subjects, such as biography, medicine, jurisprudence, ethics, medicine, geography, and Koranic studies, his most important contribution was a history of the world from its creation to 1180, entitled Al-kitāb al-mantazam wa mušaqat al-muntazam 106 (The well-arranged book of selected essentials). In spite of its comprehensive scope it contributes little new to Arab historiography. It does, however, demonstrate that the community could still produce, in times of crisis and amidst the splinter movements afflicting it, a personality capable of transcending provincial barriers and of relating his subject to the general current of Arab and Moslem history.

Though he was not a historian in the strict sense of the word, mention should be made of Usdah ibn-Munṣih, better known as Usdah Ibn-Munṣih (d. 1083), perhaps the first Arab to produce an autobiography. In his memoirs, entitled the Kitāb al-Aḥādīr (The book of example [and reflection]), he has included the earliest Arabic treatise on falconry and the chase, of which he himself was a master. The book preserves eyewitness reports and observations on Fāṭimid Egypt and Zengid and Ayyūbid Syria, as well as many details about Moslem-Frankish relations during the second half of the twelfth century.

Mention should also be made of Bahā’-ad-Dīn Yūnus ibn-Rašīd ibn-
Shaddād (d. 1234), 107 who had a distinguished career as a teacher

103 Ed. Carlo von Landburg (Leiden, 1885).
104 Ibn-Ḫalilḫān, Ǧīrāfāt, II, 323–324.
105 Von V–Z, VI–X (see more published), Hyderabad, a.h. 1387–1392 (1938–1943).
at the Nizārīyyah of Baghdad, as a military judge of Jerusalem under Saladin, and as the founder of two madrasah-type schools at Aleppo. As a historian he turned his attention to biography and local history, writing the life of his patron and hero Saladin, entitled Ḥaḍrat ir-rasūlīyyah wa-l-maḥāzin al-Yamanīyih (The celebrated words of the sultan and his distinguished works), and the history of his adopted city, Aleppo.

In Arab historiography, Ibn-Shaddad belongs to both the twelfth and thirteenth centuries and exemplifies, perhaps more than any other, the main characteristics of Arab historiography during the period under consideration, with its emphasis not on universal or general but on local and dynastic history as well as on biography.

The twelfth century, unlike the eleventh, was strikingly poor in legal studies both quantitatively and qualitatively, and those few works which come down from the period were more concerned with practice than with theory. Here again the absence of creativity is conspicuous. The sterility of the century in that vital field is exemplified by what might be called reference manuals on the conduct of state and administration. One comes from the pen of Abū Bakr Muḥammad Ibn al-Walīd at-Ṭurṭūshī (d. 1131), 109 who was by birth an Andalusian from Tuttal and by education a Hispanic-Arab educated in Saragossa and Seville. After performing the pilgrimage in 1033-1034 and traveling extensively in the Near East, he settled in Alexandria, where he died. While in Egypt he wrote the Sīrāṭ al-muṭlaq (The torch of kings), a guide to royal conduct, which he completed in 1122 at Fustat and dedicated to the Fatimid vizir al-Maḥmūd. Another comes from the pen of Muḥammad ibn-Abī ʿAli ibn-ad-Dabīl (d. 1194), 110 who was born in Baghdad but whose career carried him also to Syria and Egypt. Being also an astronomer, he seems to have modeled his legal work on the popular astronomical tables and called it the Taqvīm an-nāzzar fi-l-maḥāzin al-khiliṣīyih (The legal tables on disputed problems). The tables, preceded by an introduction, contained ten columns which gave for each question the views of the four orthodox schools of Islamic law, the principles involved, and other observations. A third work, intended as a handbook for the benefit of market officials charged with the task of verifying weights and measures and testing wares and products, comes from the pen of ʿAbd-ar-Rahmān ibn-Salihīn ibn-Salihīn (1272/3).
mān ibn-Nasrallāh ash-Shīrīnī,³³ a contemporary of Saladin. The most interesting of this group of works, however, is that of Ja'far ibn-Allad-Dīnāshīfī, already mentioned under natural history and commercial activities in connection with precious stones. In general the value of these works lies not in their contribution to the subject matter discussed but in the light they shed on the life of the times.

Language and literature have always occupied a prominent place in the Arab mind and, together with calligraphy, have continued to be the main instrument of artistic expression. Arabic belles lettres (al-adab), which began with al-Jāhiz (d. 869/969) in the ninth century, reached its highest level of development in the twelfth. A trend away from the simple expression of earlier days and toward a more ornate one was already discernible in the late tenth and early eleventh centuries in such works as those of Abū Bakr al-Khwārizmī (d. about 993) and Badr ad-Dīn al-Hamadhānī (d. 1008). It reached its full development during the twelfth century and became, next to the Koran, the norm for literary excellence for all succeeding generations. Its elegant style, polished expression, elaborate similes, and rhymed couplets still captivate its Arab readers and listeners even today. The style pervaded all subsequent prose writing whether belles-lettres, governmental correspondence, or even historical writings, as the Fa'īḥ al-qawṣī of 'Imād-ad-Dīn al-Iṣfahānī clearly reveals.¹¹²

The greatest of all Arab belles-lettres was Abū-Maḥammad al-Qāsim al-Ḥarīrī (d. 1122),¹¹³ with whom the Maqāmāt (assemblies), initiated by al-Hamadhānī at the end of the tenth century, reached their fullest development. Fifty picaresque stories, recounting the adventures of an amiable rascal, provided the device through which the author exhibited his mastery of the Arabic language and displayed his sophisticated literary culture. Their profound influence on Arabic letters and thought has never diminished, and a literary revival in the nineteenth century was launched with an excellent imitation of their form and style by the shāghīd Nāṣīf al-Yaziji (d. 1871).

Al-Ḥarīrī also wrote on grammar, treating in particular of linguistic mistakes which educated persons make in their writings. His work in this field was carried on by a younger contemporary, Abū-Mansūr Māshūḥ ibn-Abū-ʾAlā al-Jawālīqī (d. 1144),¹¹⁴ who wrote on incorrect expressions current in the vernacular. Both men seem to have

---

¹¹³. Brockelmann, op. cit., I (Leiden, 1949), 428 (ann. 31).
¹¹⁴. See above, p. 24
¹¹⁵. See above, note 104
¹¹⁶. Yaqūt, Toponym, XVI, 368-369
¹¹⁷. Ibn-Khaldūn, Waqiyatān, IV, 424-426; Yaqūt, Arabiad, XXIX, 369-369
been increasingly aware of the dangers confronting Arabic as a result of the influx of foreign elements, particularly Turkish, which came with the Seljukids. Ibn-al-Jawzî also compiled a list of the foreign words introduced into the Arabic language.

The influx of foreign elements into the Arab world and the transfer of authority from Arab to non-Arab dynasties whose mother tongue was either Persian, like the Buwayhids, or Turkish, like the Seljukids, or Kurdish, like the Ayyûbids, had a depressing effect on Arabic poetry. These new overlords, as Ibn-Uqaila demonstrated, were incapable of appreciating poetry. Indeed, the twelfth century produced few first-class poets. But the trend, which seems to have started with the Buwayhids in the tenth century, encouraged the growth of a new class of prose writers, known as court secretaries (mugābīl), who displaced the court poets, and whose services gave rise to a special type of court correspondence (masâ'il) which, according to a favorite Arabic saying, “began with ‘Abd-al-‘Uslām” and reached maturity with Ibn-al-‘A‘mid.” Its full development into a flowery branch of belles-lettres, however, came in the writings of al-Qâqî al-Fâqîl (d. 1200), the famous vizir of Saladin. These notes are characterized by verbosity and profuseness, excessive quotations, lavish use of simile and metaphor, word-play, balanced rhymed phrases, unusual words, and grandiloquent expression. In the hands of a lesser master, the style was stilted and artificial, but in the hands of the Qâqî al-Fâqîl, the execution has the touch of a consummate artist, and the result, though formal, is nevertheless pleasing. It won considerable following, and still enjoys an eminent place in Arabic letters as the Fâqîl style. Its genius, however, remained confined to form; a sort of literary gymnastics, displaying skill and agility, but lacking in spirit and creativity. This type of development reflects the spirit of a civilization which has reached its limits and settled down to live on its intellectual capital.

Perhaps the best embodiment of this trend toward collection rather than invention is to be found in the works of abû-l-Faqîl al-Maḍînî (d. 1124), whose Ma‘mûr al-amîthâl (Collection of proverbs) re-

---

111 See above p. 5
112 This 790–945, a summary of the last Umayyad caliph, Harun al-Rashid (744–780); see Ibn-Khûlînî, Dîwân al-Dîwân, ii, 394–397
113 Vira al-Dîwân al-Rasûl al-Dînawârî (912–974); see Ibn-Khûlînî, Dîwân al-Dîwân, iv, 186–187
114 Ibid., ii, 135–137
115 Ibid., i, 123–125
116 George W. Freytag, ed. and tr. (1910–1925), Arabic proverbs (4 vols. in 2. edn., 1836–1843), i, ii
mains one of the most delightful and useful anthologies of Arabic folklore and fables. A more profound contribution to Arabic letters in the twelfth century was made by abū-l-Qāsim Mahmud ibn-Umar az-Zamakhsharī (d. 1144). A Persian by birth, he devoted his varied talents to the service of Arabic and Islam, defending both against the Arabophobes among his countrymen. In this respect, he presents a reaction against the Shurūbi movement, for which the disparagement of Arabic and Islam was the main pastime. In his attitude toward Arabic he stands in striking contrast to Firdausī (d. 1021), the Dante of the Persians. Both as a lexicographer and as a grammarian az-Zamakhsharī rendered a great service to his adopted language, but his greater contribution was made as a Mu'tazili theologian and Koran commentator. In spite of his heterodox Mu'tazili beliefs, his commentary on the Koran, entitled the Khāq al-kashf 'an ḥaqiqat al-rasūlī (The revealer of the truths of revelation), still commands respect and acceptance among Moslems. Through it and through the Asāb al-dalīlah (The foundation of eloquence), he sought to resolve the problems of the matchless and miraculous (fi/'zī) nature of the Koran, which he believed, as a good Mu'tazili, to be not eternal but created. Although his systematic method in dealing with the subject and his positive conclusions with regard to the matchlessness of the Koran have been accepted by Moslems, his premise that it was a created Koran has been rejected. Withal, he was the last great Mu'tazili to leave an indelible mark on Koranic studies, and all systematic studies of this problem start with the standards which he set.

Arab intellectual activity during the twelfth century shows no decline in output and productivity. In volume, the results of the intellectual activity of the Arabs remained impressive, and a goodly portion of the Arabic library has come down to us from that period. In quality, the works are less impressive, and often little originality. Except for this slackening of intellectual creativity there were no signs of real decay. Conflict and war seem to have acted as a stimulant. The Moslem-Christian confrontations gave a petrifying culture new vigor and postponed its final hardening. Heirs of a great heritage, the Arabs focused all their efforts on the task of preserving what they had, and paid little attention to the challenge of new ideas.

II
THE IMPACT
OF THE CRUSADES
ON MOSLEM LANDS

Rich in picturesque episodes and dramatic events, the crusades were poor in the contribution they made to the edification or enlightenment of the area of their operation. The chain reaction of counter-crusades and of the anti-Christian and anti-western feeling they generated has not ceased. The festering sore they left refuses to heal, and scars on the face of the lands and on the souls of their inhabitants are still in evidence. As late as the twentieth century the ant crusading ghost was invoked in connection with the mandates imposed on Syria and Iraq and the Anglo-French attack on Egypt in 1956.

At the launching of the crusading movement the religious unity of Islam had already been shattered, and its political state was fragmented. The caliphate, which personified the double unity, was then itself triple. The Umayyad caliphate of Cordova was a traditional enemy of its counterpart in Baghdad, and both were considered illegitimate by the Shi'ite Imamate of Cairo. The Baghdad caliphate had been subordinated since 1055 to newly Islamized Seljukid (Seljuk) Turks, whose loosely united—yet not utterly disjunct—states and sultanates had mushroomed all over the area, extending into Byzantine Anatolia. Almost every sizable city in Syria had its own Seljukid or Arab ruler, often at odds one with the other. Hostility between Ridvan (1095-1113) and Aleppo, who had Isma'ilite leanings, and his orthodox brother Duhak (1093-1104) in Damascus formed, together with battles against crusaders, the central theme of their reigns. Sharrar on the Oreotes near Hamah was defended by the Samite Arab Banu-Munqidh. Tripoli was under the Shi'ite Arab Banu-'Azm. The Byzantines were seizing and losing towns along the coast and on Syria's northern frontier Jerusalem, the ultimate crusading goal, was being tossed from one hand to another: in 1070 the Seljukid general Ata'z had wrested it from the Fatimids; in 1096 it had reverted to their control.
At the advent of the crusaders, therefore, not only was the unity of Islam fundamentally impaired but the possibility of its repair under Turkish or Arab sultans looked equally hopeless. In fact, through most of its history, except for a short period under the Orthodox caliphs and another under the Ummayads, Moslem unity was more nominal than real.

Into this semichotic political-military situation the crusading element was injected, and to it was owed the initial success, which constituted the bulk of the total success. One after another the states in the way of the crusaders were wiped off the map. First to fall (1097) was the most substantial and consolidated, that of Seljukid “Rum,” based on Niçæa. This victory restored to emperor Alexius I Comnenus (1081-1118) his lost province and delayed the Turkish—in the event, Ottoman—invasion of Europe for two and a half centuries. Next came Edessa (ar-Ruha’, Urfa), whose large Armenian population prompted a special detour. Unsurprisingly, Armenian Christians cast their lot with crusading Catholics. With them they shared common feelings of hostility to Turks and sympathy toward Byzantines. Edessa’s ruler Toros of the Roupenid dynasty enthusiastically welcomed Baldwin (February 6, 1098) and formally declared him son and heir. A month later the adopted son replaced the father (d. 1098). Antioch’s surrender three months later, through the treachery of an Armenian officer commanding was of its towers, ended a long and arduous siege. Tripoli’s Arab governor Ibn-‘Ammar bought off the invaders, and contacts were established between the Franks and the Maronites, who furnished guides and forces. No serious resistance was offered until Jerusalem was reached. The fall of the third holiest city in Islam evoked no more than an expression of regret from al-Mustazhir, the caliph-defender of Islam at Baghdad. But in the words of a contemporary poet:

Tears are the most effective of weapons,  
When swords illumine the fires of war.

On Christmas day of 1099, count Baldwin of Edessa was crowned at Bethlehem as ruler of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem. A few years thereafter Tripoli was captured by Raymond of Toulouse (d. 1105). With the creation of the kingdom, to which the county of Tripoli...

---


the principality of Antioch (including Cilicia), and the county of Edessa were loosely held by feudal bonds, the mission of the cross-wearers was fulfilled, all within the compass of a few short years.

As refugees from Palestine flocked into Baghdad, a group of Sûfis, merchants, and faqûhs (canon lawyers) headed by a noble Hashimite, forced the preacher in the grand mosque to descend from the pulpit, which they tore to pieces. At last the Arab caliph al-Mustazîh and the Seljuk sultan Berkyaruk bestirred themselves; they sent a token contingent.

Response to the challenge came from an unexpected quarter. It started with the son of a Turkish slave, Zengi, who from Mosul spread his dominion through northern Syria and in 1144 took Edessa. The first to be lost, Edessa was the first to be regained. Its recapture marked the beginning of the end of the Latin states. With the spirit of the holy war (jihâd) shifted to the Moslem camp, II sparked a dormant pan-Islamic spirit which materialized in counter-crusades that continued until the last crusader was thrown out of the land.

Zengi ushered in a series of counter-crusader heroes which included his son Nûr-ad-Din and culminated in the Kurdish Salâh-ad-Din (Saladin) and the Mamluk Baybars. Nûr-ad-Din’s capture of Damascus in 1154 removed the last barrier between his expanding kingdom and that of the Latins in Jerusalem. Saladin managed to inherit the Nûrîd territory and built on the foundation of a united Syrian monarchy laid by his two predecessors. By the conquest of Jerusalem in 1187, following the dramatic victory at Hattin, the watershed in the military history of the crusades was reached and the unification of all Syria was potentially assured. Saladin’s destruction of the Shi’ite Fatimid Imamate of Cairo in 1171 was more than the ending of a dynasty; it was the destruction of the possibility of the future development there of a dissident Moslem power. Saladin’s sultanate now extended from Diyar Bakr to Nubia and included Hijaz. Tam did the crusades unwittingly contribute to reversing the centrifugal forces in political Islam and to halting sectarian expansion in religious Islam. A devout Sunnite, Saladin suppressed heterodoxy, championed orthodoxy, and more than any other Moslem hero personified the counter-crusading pan-Islamic spirit. With him the clumsy, incompetent leadership, and low morale which had characterized Islam at the end of the eleventh century completed the shift to the enemy’s side.

This achievement, which began with Zengi and culminated in Sala-

---

dan, may be considered the first both in chronology and in significance of the positive effects of the crusades on Moslem lands. The liquidation of the Seljukid and petty Arab states was the first of the negative effects.

Baybars resumed with telling effect the devastating blows of his great predecessor, specializing in taking Templars' and Hospitallers' castles, the main strongholds of the crusaders. His seizure of Antioch in 1268 ended the career of the second-oldest, and at this time the strongest, of the Frankish states. Not much more was left than mopping up.

The military ventures which technically began with pope Urban II's speech in 1095 and ended with the fall of Acre to Mamluk armies in 1291 and antecedents which may be traced back through Byzantine, Roman, and Alexandrian periods to earlier wars with Persians in the fifth century before Christ. Their counter-crusading sequels extended for centuries. 4

The reawakened, vitalized combative spirit of Islam found expression in the literature of the age. The war was on both hot and cold levels and had to be met accordingly. Christian propaganda was met by Moslem counterpropaganda. True, jihad was a basic and favored theme in Islam, approaching the status of a sixth pillar, but now, as it stood in confrontation with a Christian counterpart, it assumed new meaning and urgency. In the new literary genre not only was the military aspect emphasized but new maras (ṣafaʿāʾi'ī) of the places held or menaced by foreign intruders were discovered, and the promised advantages of visits (ziyārat) to them were multiplied. The holy pilgrimage (hajj) to Mecca had been established as a pillar of faith by the Koran, but the new literature contended that to perform a complete pilgrimage the faithful must include in their visitations not only the tomb of the Prophet at Medina but tombs of his companions who fell in battle and other prophets, mostly of biblical origin, mentioned in the Koran. As Moslems wrested from Franks cities with Islamic associations, veneration of those cities was intensified. The value of holy shrines was enhanced by their temporary loss and by the struggle for their restoration. The new literary output urged visits to such cities and shrines—promising all kinds of religious rewards—and provided the pilgrim with helpful information and polemical material. New treatises served as guidebooks.

4. Aziz S. Atiya, Crusades, Commerce and Culture (Bloomington, Ind., 1962), pp. 146 ff.; consider even the Geteoman Turkish invasions of Europe a counter-crusade.
and counter-crusade propaganda in which Jerusalem, the most cherished city after Mecca and Medina, of course figured prominently, a Baghdad historian, Ibn-al-Jawzi (d. 1209), wrote Fath al-Quds (The merits of Jerusalem), which served as a model for other productions. A preacher in the Umayyad mosque in Damascus, Ibn-al-Firka (d. 1329), assured his readers that the Prophet had declared that a believer’s prayer in his own home is worth but one prayer, whereas if offered in the Aqsa mosque of Jerusalem it becomes worth fifty thousand prayers, the exact equivalent of a prayer at the mosque of Medina and exceeded only by a prayer in the mosque of Mecca. Ibn-al-Firka wrote another treatise (unpublished) entitled Al-islam fi fath al-aqsa (Information about the merits of Syria). His example was followed by a Palestinian, Muhammad ibn Ahmad ibn-Hafiz al-Maqdisi, who in 1350 entitled his book Mustir al-gharim fi ziyarat al-Quds wa-sh-Sham (Arousing love for visiting Jerusalem and Syria).

In 1401 al-Sufi wrote Al-kawakib as-sajadah fi tarit al-sajdah fi-gharim safin al-kubra, in which instructions for pilgrimages to the venerated tombs in Cairo and a description of those tombs are given. Abdul-Fida’ at-Tadmuri (d. 1429), a preacher in the mosque of Hebron, wrote Mustir al-gharim fi ziyarat al-Khalil as-salim (Arousing love to visit Abraham the friend of God), and in which the reader is told that the Prophet had said, “Whoever cannot make pilgrimage unto me (in Medina) let him make it unto the tomb of Abraham al-Khalil.” Muslim tradition locates the tomb in Hebron. This type of literature extended to the early sixteenth century, but its excessive veneration for shrines produced a theological reaction which was first vehemently voiced by a Damascene teacher, Ibn-Taimiyah (d. 1328). Four centuries later Ibn-Taimiyah’s doctrinal would germinate in the pan-Islamic Wahhabi movement of Najd.

One other noticeable effect of the crusades on the literature of the age is the widening of the authors’ horizon. Hitherto eastern Muslims had known very little indeed about western Christians, the only contact having been limited to a few pilgrims and fewer merchants. To them practically all Europeans were Kur (‘Romans’, Byzantines), with a few exceptions of Saqibah (Slavs). Now, however, a new peo-

6 "Tel el-ehuda as-sajdah al-Quds al-mahara" (Arousing love to visit Jerusalem the Guardian [by God], in Journal of the Palestine Oriental Society, XV (1925), 281; Charles Matthews, Palestine: Muslim Diggers after Land (New Haven, 1949), p. 10.
7 ME in Princeton. (Ar Ports, Wad.)
people was discovered: *franj.* Franks, whose religious background and military practices aroused Muslim interest.

Next to the political, the economic transformation was the most pronounced and important effect on Muslim lands. The crusader impact had its negative economic effects in the form of destruction of life and property, but, it should be remembered, the periods of peace were of longer duration than those of war. Trade—at least in the case of Genoese, Venetians, and Franks, the shrewdest money-makers of the age—was a primary motivation in the venture.

Hitherto trade had flowed mostly from east to west, but now there was a strong reverse current, while the east-west stream was both enhanced and accelerated. The textile industry, as old as Phoenicia, the trade in spices, which went back to Subbean-Roman days, the export of pottery and glassware from Sidon and Tyre, of drugs and perfumes from Damascus, wine from Gaza, and sugar from the maritime plain—all these activities received fresh impetus as a result of opening new markets and widening old ones. Goldwork, ironwork, the manufacture of swords, silk, and soap, and the weaving of rugs flourished as never before. The incoming Europeans introduced new techniques in industry, but crusaders, pilgrims, businessmen, and sailors returned to their homelands with newly acquired or developed desires and tastes for semi-tropical oriental products. Fabrics such as muslin (from Mosul), baidachin (from Baghdad), damask (from Damascus), scarnevet (from Saracen), and atlas (spices) were increasingly in demand. New tastes, acquired for artes (Ifr), sugar (sukkar), ginger (zamabah), and other aromatics, spices, and products of India and Arabia, had to be satisfied on behalf of returning crusaders through commercial channels. The Syrian merchant enlarged his traditional function as the middleman between east and west, between Europe on the one hand, and Arabia, India, and the Far East on the other, for the route around the Cape of Good Hope was not yet known. After Tyre, Acre, "the rendezvous of Moslem and Christian merchants from the four quarters of the world," became a flourishing center of maritime trade. From their Beirut warehouse (Ar. *fanduq*, from Gr.) Venetians lost in value in one day 10,000 *daará*' worth of pepper, a figure which gives an idea of the enormous riches accumulated in the agencies or factories of the Levant. 11

9. This term is still used in Arabic for Europeans, especially western, and Americans.
Woolen fabrics from England, Flanders, France, and Italy went first to Venice or some other Italian port and thence on galleys to Syrian and Egyptian ports.\(^{12}\) Venetians in Syria exchanged western for eastern glassware; Genoese and Florentines carried on the same kind of trade. Besides wool, linen was a desired commodity. Linen from Rheims normally passed through Marseilles on its route eastward. Fire, Genoa, and Venice had with their fleets assured in the conquest of the land and in return enjoyed commercial and political privileges, including the occupation of special quarters in certain cities. There the merchant colonies grew. From Syrian ports, trade found its way into the interior, into Mesopotamia, Persia, and even Central Asia.

In Cairo, merchants who imported western cloth occupied a special bazaar known after them by the name suk al-jawwāblīn.\(^ {13}\) A kind of European cloak became so popular that the “Franks imported unlimited quantities of it.”\(^ {14}\) Al-bundugi (the Venetian), for cloth imported from Venice, became a familiar word in Arabic.\(^ {15}\) Merchants wore bundugi cloaks. The same term was also used for a sequin struck in Venice.\(^ {16}\) “Sequen” comes from Arabic sikkah, a coin or stamp.

Brisk trading and manufacturing enabled Moslem merchants, especially in the interior cities, to amass huge fortunes. Ibn Juhain, who visited Syria in the 1180’s, cites the case of two such Damascus merchants.\(^ {17}\) He was impressed with the uninterupted and unimpeded march of caravans between Egypt and Damascus through the “land of the Franks.”\(^ {18}\) His and later evidence leaves no doubt that Ayūbīd Syria enjoyed a period of unusual prosperity. By that time the shock of the invasion had abated and the two sides had evidently adjusted themselves to the strange new life. One scholar goes so far as to say that the occupation of Syria revolutionized the entire economy of commerce in the Mediterranean, helped to raise the country to the international level, and bestowed on it a prosperity previously en-

18. Ibid., pp. 287-288, 293
joyed only under the Romans. Another, however, representing the German school, dwells on the miseries of the natives—which they no doubt suffered in the early stages—and claims that Moslem citizens were expelled or exterminated systematically, native Christians were put to flight, and Palestine assumed a desolate aspect.

To meet the financial needs of the new situation a larger supply and a more rapid circulation of money became necessary. The *byzan tus sarracenaus*, probably the earliest gold coin struck by Latins, was minted in the Holy Land and bore an Arabic inscription. The Templars began to issue letters of credit and perform other banking functions. In fact, all these military orders—Templars, Hospitalers, and Teutonic Knights—which had started as charitable religious organizations and evolved into military institutions, gradually became to a certain extent commercial companies. The earliest consul in history was a Genoese accredited to Acre in 1180. Saif-ad-Din (the sword of religion, “Saphadur”) al-Ádil (1199–1238), younger brother and successor of Saladin, allowed the Venetians to establish markets with India in Alexandria and allowed the Franks to institute consulates there. Al-Kāmil (1218–1233) followed in the footsteps of his father and signed a commercial treaty with Venice. Clearly occasional military clashes did not prevent members of the Ayyübids dynasty from inaugurating a series of trade treaties with Christian countries.

Uninvited though they were, the Mamluk successors of the Ayyübids followed the precedent of enlightened foreign relations and extended their economic horizon beyond the Italian cities. Kalavun (1279–1290) signed trade treaties not only with the Genoese but also with Peter III, the king of Aragon and Sicily. The monumental manual for the secretaries of the chancery completed by al-Qalqashandi in 1412 and titled *Subh al-ašāl* has preserved numerous documents relating to European trade. Thanks to this commercial intercourse Syria and Egypt maintained their positions as transit lands for the rich Indian trade of the Italian republics and other European states. These treaties formed the antecedent of the capitulations later granted by Ottoman sultans, traces of which have lingered to the present day. It was largely from the great revenues of this international trade that the Mamluks were able to undertake their huge building projects, including mosques, schools (*madrasahs*), and mausoleums that rival or excel those of any other Arab era and still attract tourists to the valley of the Nile.

Two common words in finance testify to this international trade relationship promoted by the crusades and continued in the post-crusading period. English "check" is related to Arabic جَرْكَة, which appears perhaps for the first time in a geography written about 975 by Ibn-Hauql.11 This Arab geographer states that in the Maghrib he saw an I.O.U. (جركة) for 42,000 dinars. An Arabic word still used for a unit of currency is غَرْش (colloquial, quirsh), originally from Latin grossus (thick), but borrowed from German Groschen through Turkish.12 The coin was first struck in France by Louis IX, himself a crusader, in 1250.13 It had its first official mention in Turkish in a document of Bayazid I in 1392. A Danish traveler13 found it current in Yemen. The term occurs in an Arabic report sent by an agent of France in Moche (Mukhtá) to Napoleon.14

For the lower strata of Moslem society the conquest probably meant little by way of direct economic change. To them it was an exchange of one set of rulers, the Selçukids, strange in race and language, or native emirs unconcerned with their subjects' welfare, for another set of rulers, Europeans, equally strange and unconcerned. Local sultans and emirs, whether Turks or Arabs, had previously accorded territorial concessions (قُرْض) to their lieutenants for services rendered by troops under them. The mass of people lived as serfs on those feudal lands. Their daily life now went on unaffected. In country places a clearcut differentiation in treatment between Frankish-held and native-held domains hardly existed; only cities were delimited and subjected to customs duty. The crusaders belonged mostly to nuns, not farming, populations, and when they lost a city to Moslems, it was usually stipulated that they evacuate it. Traces of European feudalism, however, did linger in the land, as indicated by linguistic evidence. In his encyclopedic work the Egyptian an-Nuwaštī (d. 1332) remarks that Syrian fief-holders used a word جَرْوَة (vassal) of Frankish derivation. He coins a past participle from it جَرْوَة, applying it to lands once held in fiefs, and voz جَرْوَة, an obvious translation of "feudal lord".15

Pilgrimage, whether Moslem, prompted by the new propaganda in the aftermath of the crusades, or Christian, stimulated by the Frankish possession of the land, contributed substantially to its econ-

13 Carsten Niebuhr, Description de l'Arabie (Copenhagen, 1773), p. 194.
15 An-Nuwaštī, Maḥāfīz al-'Arab al-fawā'id al-adabī (Cairo, 1938), 264, 260, 201
omy. From the dawn of the Christian era there were those who felt the urge to set foot on the soil rendered hallowed by the steps of Jesus, but the practice did not develop into an institution until the mid-fourth century, after Constantine I and his mother, Helena, had marked the sacred sites with monuments and basilicas. It was then that the cult of the holy places was firmly established. The influence of St. Jerome and the rise of asceticism in the east increased interest in the pilgrimage. The eastward march of the pilgrims' caravan was hampered in the mid-seventh century, on the morrow of the conquest of Islam, but not stopped. Intensified in the days of Charlemagne, who in 800 received a delegation from George, the patriarch of Jerusalem, and the keys of the church of the Holy Sepulcher from caliph Harun ar-Rashid, the practice was again checked when the Selçukids lorded it over Ani and northern Syria. The disabilities imposed on pilgrims by the Turks and the destruction of the church of the Holy Sepulcher in 1009 by the Fatimid Imam al-Hakim (996–1021) were among the contributory causes of the crusades. What Pope Urban had in mind, as he preached the first crusade at Clermont, was not a purely military expedition but a combination of pilgrimage and holy war.

With the establishment of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem and the two principalities of Antioch and Tripoli, the cause of the pilgrimage was naturally greatly promoted and improved. Once in Palestine, the pilgrim left Lebanon with its cedars, Damascus of Paul, and Antioch of Peter beckoning to him. Of the native shrines, Notre Dame de Surdunay (Ṣākānāyā), north of Damascus, and St. Catherine of Sinai were special objects of pilgrimage. The image of Notre Dame was said to sweat oil that had healing properties; the account of its miraculous sweating lingered for centuries. Bertrand de Broquière, who wrote the image and told the story in 1432, thought “it was a mere trick to get money.” Not only the Christians but “the Saracens” were said to be nicely devoted to this Mary.

The church of St. Catherine was built in the days of Justinian I (527–565) but often altered since. No priest or layman could enter it except barefoot, as is the case of mosques. In fact this was a most admired Moslem visitant also. Then there was Notre Dame of Tortosa (Anṭartūn, modern Tarżnah), whose cathedral is the best-preserved religious structure of the crusades. This Mary, too, achieved so many

---

healings that, we are told, even Saracens took their children there in great numbers to receive baptism. 19 Pilgrims who reached Antioch were often tempted to pay homage to St. Simeon Stylites, who for thirty years before his death in 459 had chosen to make his domicile atop a high pillar. The ruins of the church which was built there stand today among the most monumental of the early Christian structures. Pilgrims included prelates, priests, and laymen. Some brought guidon with them from the Syrian colony in Gaul, whose origins go back to Merovingian days. Some of the pilgrims settled in the land.

The remains of churches rising in cities along the coast and of castles crowning Lebanese hills form the most conspicuous of crusader relics in Syria. The first church to be built was St. Paul of Tarsus, finished before 1021 in the Romanesque style of northern France. Later (1149) the church of the Holy Sepulcher in Jerusalem was restored to the same style, after its destruction by lightning. Many churches have since been converted into mosques. The church of Sidon, built by Hospitallers, is now al-Jami’ al-Kubra (the great mosque), that of St John of Eleuther, erected by Baldwin I in 1110, is today al-Jami’ al-Umari (mosque of ‘Umar). Belmonte, built south of Tripoli by Frankish monks in 1107, is at present Dair al-Balamand, a Greek Orthodox monastery and seminary. Its chapel is genuinely crusader, and its heirry the only one of its kind in Lebanon. The cathedral of Notre Dame of Tortosa, the most magnificent of all, was recently equipped with a minaret. A doorway taken from the church of Acre and incorporated into the mosque of au-Nasir in Cairo is the most artistically relic of those days. The extensive alterations made by crusaders in the church of the Holy Sepulcher are still traceable.

Of the castles, Hisn al-Akrad (Krak des Chevalliers) stands out in the best preserved of all medieval structures of its kind. Until a few years ago it housed an entire Moslem village. Al-Marqab (watchtower, Margat) still looks like a dreamtorn parched on a crest overlooking the Mediterranean and the road between Tripoli and Latakia (Laodicea). Qal’at ash-Shafi (Sheaif Amun, Bellport) rises above the pass along the Litani (Leontes), linking the maritime plain between Sidon and Tyre with the inland plateau.

Many of the crusader cathedrals and castles stood on the sites of earlier Christian churches and Moslem fortresses respectively. Hisn al-Akrad perpetuates in its name the memory of a Kurdish garrison which was housed therein in precrusading days. “Krak” in its same (originally Crat) is a corruption of Akrad (Kurds, colloquial Krad).

29 Ibid., p 82.
and should be distinguished from its analogue in Krak de Montréal and Krak des Moabites (Karak, al-Kara). This "krak" is a corruption of karak, originally Aramaic for town. Such Arabic words as qasr (citadel, palace, from L. castrum), burj (tower, from burgus) and qasat (castle, water pipe, from castrum), said to have been introduced into the language in this period,\(^{30}\) were rather popularized now but had been introduced earlier, in the Byzantine-Roman age, into Aramaic, whence they were borrowed by Arabic. Al-Qasat, as the designation of a fortress in Transjordan, was used by a Moslem historian who died about 965 and who ascribes the structure to a Ghassanid prince of the mid-sixth century.\(^{31}\)

Crusaders from Normandy and Italy brought with them a substantial knowledge of military manors, but what underlay the military crusading architecture was mainly the Byzantine art of fortification, with which Arabs were already familiar. Such castles as Shalzar on the Orontes, which was defended by the family of Ushahab ibn-Munqidh,\(^{32}\) and Masyaf and al-Qasraw'a in the Nusairiyah (Alawite) region, which were occupied by the Assassins, antedate the crusades. The architecture of the citadel of Cairo, the greatest architectural monument of Saladin, betrays crusading influence. The church bell and its tower were evidently introduced into the Near East at this time from the west. Previously Near Eastern churches had used only the gong. But on the whole, in architecture as in other fields, the crusaders borrowed more than they lost.

In the minor arts, the Christians possessed an older, richer, and more highly developed tradition, placing the Westerners almost entirely on the receiving end. Likewise in science, letters, and other purely intellectual achievements the Arabs had more to give than to receive, especially since soldiers and merchants formed the bulk of the colonists. When two differing cultures stand in confrontation, the normal flow is from the higher to the lower, and this case was no exception.

In his delightfully entertaining memoirs Ushahab (d. 1288) presents the most elaborate details about contemporary social intercourse between Moslems and Franks. A warrior, hunter, gentleman, poet, and

---

30 Cf Pritt, op. cit., p. 401.
man of letters, he defended his picturesque castle, Shaizar on the \textit{Ceroates}, in times of war and fraternized with the Franks in times of peace in and around Hamah (Epaphia), in Ascalon (Ascalon) and other Palestinian towns, in Sinai and Egypt, in Mosul and other places of Mesopotamia; he witnessed or took part in battles against Franks and Arabs, Christians and Moslems. The information he offers is often first-hand, candid, and unique. His appraisal of Frankish character no doubt reflects the then-prevailing Moslem public opinion. To him “the Franks are void of all zeal and jealousy” in sex affairs, \textsuperscript{32} their methods of ordeal by water and duel are far inferior to the Moslem judicial procedure; \textsuperscript{33} their system of medication appears odd and primitive when compared with the more highly developed system of the Arabs.\textsuperscript{34} Usmah credits them with possessing “the virtues of courage and fighting, but nothing else.”\textsuperscript{35} Again and again Usmah draws the distinction between the outlandish, rude “recent comers” and the “acclimatized” Franks in Moslem lands.\textsuperscript{37} One knight was on such intimate terms of friendship with Usmah that he began to address him as “my brother.”\textsuperscript{38} Many crusaders must have realized that baggy clothes and heavy headgear were preferable in a warm climate, and they consequently adopted native dress.\textsuperscript{36} Their preference for native dishes is also attested. A Frank in Antioch who shunned European dishes employed an Egyptian cook, and never had pork in his kitchen,\textsuperscript{37} but we know of no cases of Arabs adopting European clothes or preferring western food. For one thing, Islamic dietary laws involving pork and the manner of slaughter would stand in the way. Nor do we know by name any Moslem attracted by a visit to Europe. When the knight who called Usmah “brother” asked Usmah to permit his fourteen-year-old son to accompany the knight to Europe, Usmah felt as if there fell upon his ears words which would never come out of the mouth of a sensible man.\textsuperscript{38} Nevertheless, he apologetically told his friend that the only reason for rejecting the request was the unusual attachment of the grandmother to her grandson.

\textsuperscript{32} Fitzhugh p. 133 Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, p. 164.
\textsuperscript{33} Fitzhugh pp. 131-132; Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, pp. 167-168.
\textsuperscript{34} Fitzhugh pp. 132 ff., Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, pp. 162 ff.
\textsuperscript{35} Fitzhugh, p. 132; Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, p. 161.
\textsuperscript{36} Fitzhugh, pp. 134-135, 140-141; Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, pp. 162-164, 169-170.
\textsuperscript{37} Fitzhugh, p. 132; Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, p. 161.
\textsuperscript{39} Usmalai, Fitzhugh, pp. 140-141, Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, pp. 169-170.
\textsuperscript{40} Fitzhugh, p. 132. Arab-Syrian Gesta Historiarum, p. 161.
Physicians served at times to bridge the social gap between the two peoples. Some of these were native Christian doctors, as in the case of one Thabit, of whom an anecdote is charmingly told by Usāmah. So impressed was King Amalric, when on a visit to Egypt, by the skill of an Arab physician, abū-Salāma ibn-ahd-Fīnah, that he offered him through the reigning caliph the position of court physician and took him back with his five children to Jerusalem. But when the “king of the Franks in Ascalon” sought the services of a physician from the Egyptian court, and Maimonides was offered the position, he flatly refused. It was a Saracen who cured John of Joinville (d. 1319) of a malady contracted while captive in Egypt.

Knighthood was another social link. It is reported that early in his career Salādīn was consecrated knight by the lord of Krak de Montferrat (aš-Sha‘bakk). His nephew al-Kāmil was knighted with full ceremony by Richard the Lion-Hearted. It is probable that more than one emir sought the privilege. The order of āfīwāz, through which Islamic chivalry associated us its origins, the crusades, was reformed and patronized by the ‘Abbāsid caliph an-Nāṣir (d. 1223), who might have been impressed by reports about Templars and Hospitalers. The caliph granted the hereditary rank of āfīwāz to various persons and elaborated the ceremonies of initiation, which included wearing spangled gowns (āfīwāz or ḥāla al-āfīwāz) and drinking the sīyān’s cup (ku‘īs al-sīyān). The canons of initiation show degrees of āfīwāz which roughly correspond to degrees of European chivalry. The āfīwāz, however, was and remained a Moslem institution with a deeply rooted religious basis, and it participated in the character of the guild, whereas European chivalry was based on a regulated system of land grants.

Intermarriage is a fair criterion of social equality and relationship, but such marriages were contracted mostly between European men and native, generally Christian, women. Baldwin I set an early example by marrying (1098) an Armenian princess, Arda. Armenian princesses figured in the courts of Antioch and Jerusalem.

42 Tihāra, pp. 163-164; Arab-Syrian Chronology, p. 163.
43 Ibn-Bāšir, Dabqūd al-umūr fī asbab al-umālāt; ed. August Müller (Königsberg 1852), II, 121.
45 Histoire de St. Louis, ed. Maurice de Wailly (Pamph., 1856), chap. 324 (p. 176).
46 Bernard and Bernard de Trésor, Chroniques, ed. Louis de Mot Laric (Paris 1871), pp. 35-36.
Isabel (Zabîl), daughter of the last Armenian prince Leon II, married the Latin Philip of Antioch, who in 1222 was elevated to the Armenian throne on condition that he accept the Armenian faith. Especially in the principalties of Antioch and Edessa mixed marriages were numerous. Richard the Lion Hearted proposed a marriage between his sister Joan and Saladin's brother al-'Adîl with the hope that the wedlock might contribute to ending the strife between east and west. The half-caste progeny of native mothers, designated pouleums (young ones), lived mostly in cities, jealously secluded their wives, and often followed the mothers' religion rather than the fathers'. Moslems on rare occasions married Christian wives but often used female captives as concubines. Usâmah's father, Murshid (d. 1137), once presented a friend of his, the lord of Qur'at Jabur, with a beautiful captive maid. The son of this union succeeded his father, but the mother ran away and married a Frankish shoemaker.

After the annihilation of the crusading power in Syria, some families no doubt settled in the land and were ultimately fully assimilated. Names and traditions of certain Christian families—such as Şâlib (crusader) and Farâujîn—suggest European origin. Among place names Şanjîl (or Şanjîl, Saint Gilles), ar-Ranâs (Reynold), both in Palestine, and Sabkhat Barãnâlî (Balbûnî) in Sinai perpetuate Frankish names.

Two serious barriers to social intercourse and cultural cross-fertilization were, and remained, language and religion. We know of several crusaders' studying and mastering the Arabic tongue but we know of no Syrian or Egyptian Moslem by name who controlled Latin or French. For one who spoke the "tongue of the Angels," studying such a foreign language was not only useless but sheer condescension. Some native Christians, especially among the clergy and merchant class, were no doubt versed in European tongues. Bar Hebraeus (d. 1286) mentions a Jacobite physician from Antioch who mastered Latin, migrated to Europe, and settled in the court of Frederick II, but later became so homesick that he fled on a ship bound for Acre. A number of Syrian-born Europeans, such as William of Tyre and William of Tripoli, knew not only the colloquial but the classical Arabic, too. In their writings they used Arabic historical and literary works. A Pisan named Stephen translated in Antioch (1127) "Ali ibn-al 'Abbâs

49 James of Vitry, op. cit., pp. 137-138; see below, chapter IV, note 1
50 Usâmah, Philip é, 130; Arab-Syrian Genealogies, pp. 159-160. The lord was MARZ ROYL-SLIM, the son Badrîn.
("Haly Abbat", d. 994) al-Majdul's Al-kitaab al-malaki (The royal treatise) into Latin. This medical work was the only known major scientific text rendered into a western tongue throughout the crusading period. Masters of the Templars and Hospitallers, high officials in the courts of Jerusalem, Tripoli, and Acre, and envoys to native rulers could communicate in Arabic. Reginald of Chatillon, lord of Kersk (d. 1187), who audaciously made an attempt on Mecca and Medina, was especially facile in the use of Arabic. Saladin's biographer reports a visit to the sultan by Reginald Grenier, the lord of Belfort, "who knew Arabic and was able to speak it, he also possessed some knowledge of history."55 Joinville singles out certain companions who could express themselves in Arabic.56

Certain Moslems, no doubt, made it a point to acquire control over the French tongue. This was especially true of the Assassins, dissident Moslems, who entertained friendly relations with the Franks and at times allied themselves with them. When Saladin was pressing the siege against Acre he received from the Old Man of the Mountain, Rashid-ad-Din Sinan (d. 1193), two messengers who spoke "Frankish" (faranj) and offered their services to kill the king of the Franki.57 But when Louis IX in Acre received a friendly delegation from the Old Man, two knights served as interpreters.58 We know of no Latin or French work rendered into Arabic at this time.

About 1172 Sinan had sent an envoy named abu-'Abd-Allah to Amalric to negotiate the possibility of conversion to Christianity on the part of his Assassins in consideration of the remittance of the 2,000-gold-piece annual tribute which the Assassins were then paying the Templars. As ultra-Shi'ites, Assassins could practice dissimulation in religion. The king agreed, but the envoy was killed by the knights after passing Tripoli on his way back.58 The ranks of both religious camps were recruited from slaves and prisoners of war who found it to their advantage to be converted. Among the Frankish captives who fell into the hands of Ushmah's father was a lad with his mother and sister. The youth accepted Islam, was offered a home and a wife by his master, and produced two sons. When they were about six years old the father took them with their mother and the

furniture of the house and joined the Franks in Apamea (Afrîn), where they all reverted to Christianity. 96 Josaphate relates the story of a knight from Provins who embraced Islam and established himself in Egypt. 97 The Arabian Nights (nos. 895-896) tells the story of a Frankish woman captive of Acre bought by an Upper Egyptian linen merchant, a ransom was later offered to secure her return to her knight husband, which she spurned. A Mamluk sultan, Lâkim (1286-1291), is said to have been originally a Teutonic Knight who fought in Syria. James of Vitry (d. 1240) reports some Saracens who took refuge in the grace of the baptism of Jesus Christ. 98 But such cases were undoubtedly sporadic. On the whole, it may be assumed that the typical attitude of the Moslems was that expressed by Ustamah when a Frank in Jerusalem exhibited a picture of Mary with Jesus and offered to show Ustamah “God as a child” and Ustamah remarked: “God it exceeded far above what the infidels say about him!” 99

The Christian military venture left Islam more militant, less tolerant, and more self-centered. In its formative stage Islamic culture enthusiastically entered upon the Greek heritage through the intermediacy of Syrian (Syriac-speaking) Christians. But the lowering of the cruciform curtain shut it off entirely from that source. The venture created another barrier between Moslems and their Christian countrymen. The alienation between the two societies has lingered to the present.

But whereas Islam can show some items on the credit side of the balance sheet, eastern Christianity has hardly any to show. Its followers, upholders of a tradition more venerable than that of Rome or Byzantium, entrepreneurs of classical science and philosophy, Hellenic officers between east and west, were by the end of the crusading period weakened to the point of impotence. The enterprise which had its inception in the urge to defend Christendom came near to destroying Christendom’s eastern wing.

We have thus far treated the area as a Muslim land with a Christian minority. But in Syria-Lebanon-Palestine the Christian minorities in total must have amounted to a majority at the dawn of the crusades, though not a united one. 60 In the aftermath of the crusades they

96 Ustamah, Ebd. pp. 120-121, Arab-Syrian Gentlemen, p. 266.
99 Ibid. p. 135, Arab-Syrian Gentlemen, p. 146.
60 Consul Claude Cahen, La Syrie du nord à Périgord des croisants et la principauté franque d’Antioche (IFD, 190, 1, Paris, 1900, pp. 286-287).
dwindled into an insignificant minority. Especially strong were the Armenian and Greek Orthodox elements in Antioch, Edessa, and the rest of northern Syria, extending through Cilicia. In Palestine the Greek Orthodox alone probably formed half the total population. The western branch of the Syrian (Suryâni) church, commonly called Jacobite and once based in Edessa, was spread all over the area. Maronites controlled northern Lebanon. Copts were not numerous but did figure in the Egyptian population and manned high administrative and government positions. True, all these Christians were second-class citizens in the Moslem state, but their rights and obligations were clearly defined by the Koran and Islamic law and the adherents were generally reconciled to their status. The crusaders' advent introduced a most disturbing factor. It gave Moslems occasion to suspect their Christian neighbors of sympathy with their western coreligionists, and offered native Christians the temptation to turn collaborationists. The Latins considered eastern Christians as schismatics, and Rome considered it its duty to "reunite" them with the mother church. Through pressure or persuasion and for political reasons certain groups yielded to the new disruptive force, were then cut off from their respective denominations, and became separate "Uniate" sects. But Moslems, rulers and ruled, were not fully cognizant of the fact and of its implications. To them Gregorian Armenians, Syrian Jacobites and Nestorians, Lebanese Maronites, Egyptian Copts, and Latin Franks were all simply Christians. They had to pay a heavy price after the restoration of Moslem control. Certain communities were decimated, others converted. With the exception of Lebanon, the area began to assume the Moslem aspect it still maintains. First among the Christians in establish close relations with crusaders were the Armenians. This community in Cilicia and northern Syria cherished nationalist memories of an Armenian kingdom farther east and yearned for independence from Seljuk and Byzantine yokes. Even before the crusaders' advent an Armenian bishop had gone to Rome to seek help from pope Gregory VII (1073–1085). The first arrivals from the west found Armenians ready to make common cause against their Christian and Moslem enemies, hence the welcome accorded Baldwin on his entry into Edessa in 1098.

In Antioch, it will be recalled, it was through the treachery of an Armenian officer that the city fell into the hands of storming knights in June 1098. Two years later a Latin patriarch was installed in the

63. William of Tyre, tr. Hibben and Krey, 1, 297, he was Bernard of Valence (1100–1135).
city where the Christians were first so named. The gradual extension of Latin ecclesiastical domination over native Christian churches was consequent upon the establishment of Latin patriarchates first in Antioch and then in Jerusalem.

Eighteen years before the first crusaders entered Edessa, Armenian refugees fleeing Seljuk destruction of their kingdom had sought safety behind the Taurus and established a principality under a Rupenid. From the hills Rupenid princes had extended their control to the plains and laid the basis of Latin or Cilician Armenia. Friendly intercourse characterized the relations of the principality with the Franks on both the religious and the secular levels. Though Monophysite in its theology, the Armenian church was not now treated by Rome as heretical. Negotiations for recognition were initiated early by the catholicoتد Gregory III (d. 1103), who received the pallium from the pope. Certain Armenian bishops of Cilicia in common with those of Edessa advocated full union with Rome. Nerses of Lampron, archbishop of Tarsus (d. 1198), an eloquent and persuasive champion of the movement, received support from the ruling prince, Leon II, whose main ambition was to obtain a royal crown, which he did in 1198 under Frankish auspices. The establishment of this kingdom may, therefore, be considered a direct result of the crusades. The rapprochement between the two communions culminated in the acknowledgment (1307) by the synod of Sis, the Armenian capital city, of Roman supremacy. But the action, so large extent politically motivated, was so unpopular that serious riots broke out.

In 1342, when the male succession of the Hetonmals came to an end, the crown passed to Guy de Lusignan of Cyprus, whose mother, Isabel (d. 1323), was the daughter of King Leon III (1269-1289). Guy ruled as Constantine III (1342-1344). Thirty-three years later (1375), the last Armenian fortified city, Sis, fell to the Egyptian Mamluks, who in 1266, 1273, and 1275 and 1275 had attacked the country to punitive expeditions for its alliance first with the crusaders and later with the Mongol invaders. Armenian independence therewith ended, though for a few years thereafter the kings of Cyprus continued to bear the title king of Armenia, and down to the present the Armenian word for "master" (maister) remains our word for baron, a relic of borrowed feudal nomenclatures.

The West Syrians (Jacobites), who once formed the basic Christian

---

element of northern Syria, were at the advent of the crusaders dispersed over the whole area extending to Palestine. Like their Armenian neighbors, Jacobites courted closer relations with the Roman church as a measure of self-protection if not self-preservation. The crusaders, on their part, reciprocated and for reasons of policy allowed them to practice their religious rites in peace. When the crusaders took possession of Jerusalem, they found the Jacobite metropolitan seat vacant, bishop Cyril and other high clergymen having fled to Egypt before Seljukid fury. When the metropolitan returned he claimed and was given back the vacant ecclesiastical properties.

The renowned Jacobite patriarch of Antioch, Michael the Syrian (d. 1199), asserts that the Franks "never raised any difficulty on the subject of faith."\(^66\) A successor of his, Ignatius II (1222–1252), visited Jerusalem in 1237 and offered his submission to Rome in the presence of the Dominican provincial, a submission reiterated ten years later in a letter to Innocent IV,\(^67\) but this was not considered binding by his church as a whole. The union was evidently as insincere and unpopular as that of its Armenian precedent.

The Greek Orthodox was the largest eastern denomination and, by virtue of its Byzantine associations, the least responsive to Latin advances. When the crusaders seized Jerusalem they found the patriarchal seat vacant, its incumbent, Symeon II, having retired to Cyprus under Seljukid oppression. The higher clergy had followed him into exile, where he died. Arabic-speaking patriarchs were not reluctant to accept the ecclesiastical jurisdiction of the newly established Latin patriarchate. But years later the conquest of Jerusalem by Saladin included among its results the restoration of the Greek patriarchate, which to the present day maintains its seat in Jerusalem with a Greek-speaking incumbent.

In Antioch, which with its Greek-speaking settlers had remained a stronghold of orthodoxy, even under the Seljukids, union with Rome presented more difficulties. After prolonged negotiations the Latins offered the maintenance of the autonomy of the Orthodox church with its own hierarchy and Greek ritual. In the 1240's the patriarch David accepted these terms, but his successor, Eubelmius, rejected papal authority and was excommunicated by the Latin patriarch of the city and banished.\(^68\) Damanacus became the new seat, whose

---


\(^68\) For further details see Joseph Runciman, op. cit., III, 201. The Latin patriarch was Opticus Thrones (1267–1268).
incumbent has since the end of the nineteenth century been an Arabic-speaking native of the land.

In their inter-Christian relations in the Near East the Latins achieved no enduring results except among the Maronites of Lebanon. For a time the Armenian and Jacobite communions professed interest in full union with Rome, but the ultimate failure of the crusading venture radically changed the situation. Consecration had to pass before French Catholic missionaries succeeded in detaching sufficient members to form two new Uniate communions.

As the first crusaders wound their weary way along the eastern Mediterranean coast they passed through the territory of the Maronites, who furnished them with guides and later provided the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem with a contingent of archers. The Maronites formed then the largest and certainly the most cohesive Lebanese Christian community. James of Vitré (d. 1240) found them established in Lebanon and Palestine, to which they must have drifted as a result of the crusades. This French prelate, who became bishop of Acre and a cardinal, was impressed by their skill in battle and in the use of the bow and arrow. Referring to their religion he calls them followers of "one Maro, a heretic, who taught that Christ had one will and one energy." 69 In this charge of monothelitism he was preceded by William of Tyre, William goes on to say that in 1180 the Maronites repudiated their heresies and returned to the Catholic Church. 70 They were subsequently accorded all the privileges of the Latins, both ecclesiastical and civil, and enjoyed the juridical rights of the Latin bourgeoisie. 71 Maronite scholars, however, have claimed continuous orthodoxy for their church throughout the ages. The fact remains that it was during this period that the rapprochement between Rome and the national church of Lebanon was inaugurated, a rapprochement which culminated in union in the eighteenth century.

The first Maronite patriarch to visit Rome was Jeremiah of 'Arshhit (Irmiya al-'Arshhit) in about 1213. 72 On his return, he undertook several "reforms" relating to liturgy and ordination. Through his legate, pope Innocent III (1198–1216), who brought papal power to its height, prescribed baptism with three immersions. This marks the beginning of the Romanization of the Maronite rite. Since then several pontifical letters have highly commended this church of Lebanon, likening

69 James of Vitré, op. cit., p. 156. This Minte interviewed about 700.
it to a rose among thorns and to a firm rock in the midst of dashed waves. In 1584 pope Gregory XIII founded in Rome a seminary designed to train Maronite students for clerical life. The seminary graduated a number of men who distinguished themselves as historians, bishops, and patriarchs and who contributed to the process of Romanization. The final touch came when a graduate of this institution, the renowned ab-Samʿan ("Assomani"), in 1736 participated in the Maronite synod in Lebanon as a delegate of the pope. This church of Lebanon, however, has retained to the present its Syrian liturgy and noncelibate clergy. Its friendship with the French, dating from the crusading period, is still cherished. Louis IX is still popular in Lebanon. A Maronite family, al-Khazn, supplied France with a number of consular agents for Beirut, beginning with abū Nantul, who was appointed in 1655 by Louis XIV. This amitie traditionelle has since been repeatedly invoked by both sides and was strengthened in 1860, when Napoleon III sent troops to halt the civil war, and at the close of the First World War when the French mandate was established over Lebanon.

In their Christology Copts, like Jacobites, embraced the Monophysite doctrine. For both sects it was one way of expressing their independence from Byzantium and Rome. Under the Fatimids Egyptian Christians had two disastrous experiences, first under al-Hakim (996-1021), who imposed humiliating disabilities on chīmis, and later under al-ʿĀbid (1160-1171), by whose vizir's orders 20,000 pounds of naphtha were poured over the old capital Fustat and set ablaze to save it from falling into the hands of Amalric, king of Latin Jerusalem. The incredible conflagration rendered thousands of Copts destitute overnight.

Saladin inaugurated his regime by replacing high government officials—Moslems and Christians—with relatives and friends from Syria. As clerics, secretaries, tax collectors, and treasurers, Copts had filled a national need in the country. Under Saladin's successors, Arabic began increasingly to replace Coptic. The worst was yet to come under the Mamluks, who in 1250 dispersed the Ayyubids. Not only did they follow the policy of discrimination against Coptic employees but whenever the government treasury needed replenishing, as it frequently did, they found a ready source to tap in the cash or property

of their Christian subjects. Conversions to Islam mounted. When in 1249 Louis IX landed in Egypt and gained possession of Damietta, he found the Coptic element of its citizenry ready to welcome him. In turn he treated them with special consideration. But when a later crusade was directed against Alexandria (1365) and temporarily occupied it, its Christians were pillaged by the Franks no less than were their Moslem neighbors. The vizier Mamluk, Muhammad an-Naşir, reactivated the discriminatory laws against dhimmis, and the end of his reign in 1341 may be considered as marking the extinction of an effective Christian presence in the valley of the Nile. Between 1279 and 1447 no less than forty-five churches and unnumbered monasteries in the Cairo region were reportedly destroyed.

As the Sunniite Mamluks began to establish their ascendancy over Syria, the day of reckoning came not only for the Christians but also for the schismatic Moslem minorities. It should be recalled, however, that at times native Christians fought side by side with Moslems against crusaders, and Sunniite Moslems fought on the side of crusaders against fellow Moslems. Several Moslem cities of Syria and many Bedouin tribes on more than one occasion sought Latin aid, and more than one native state allied itself with a Latin state. At one time the Assassins (iscā'īlīs), whose fortresses in the north formed a frontier between crusaders and Moslems, coded their stronghold in the south, Dāniya (Dāniya), to the Franks. The Latin kingdom had in its service a body of light cavalry, Tercopole (sons of Turks), recruited mainly from Moslems.

As now professors of Islam, the Mamluk sultans were eager to impress their subjects with their zeal. They also endeavored to keep alive the spirit of jihad. In their hostility toward their Christian subjects, they may have been reacting against the contemporary treatment of Moslems in Spain by rising Christian states. On the Lebanese coast the Egyptian sila'ah followed a scorched-earth policy and methodically ravaged Lebanon, razed its forts, and deported its population; even the earth was to be punished. They also insisted on conformity on the part of all dissident Moslems. Ismā'īlīs and Nāṣirīs, who had compromised their loyalty, were now systematically decimated. Baybars (1260–1277) forced the Nāṣirīs (Alawīs) to build mosques in their villages, but could not force them to pray in them. Large

numbers of Nusairis had been slaughtered by the first crusaders. Even the Druzes, who had generally cast their lot with the Moslems, were now enjoined to conform. Between 1292 and 1305 three punitive expeditions were directed against the Maronites and heterodox Moslems in Kasrawan. The last, by Muhammad an-Nasir, practically annihilated the Shi'ite population of Kasrawan.\textsuperscript{37} This Sultan's reactivation of the anti-Shi'ite laws was applied in the area, thousands of Maronites fled to Cyprus. They had begun their migration earlier, at the time of Saladin's occupation of Beirut. Documents establish their existence in Cyprus even earlier.\textsuperscript{78} After the occupation of the island by Guy of Lusignan in 1192 more Maronite refugees flocked to it. An estimated 30,000 Maronites once flourished in Cyprus; some 4,000 still do, mainly in Kormakiti, which today has a Maronite cathedral. Their colloquial speech, a mixture of Syriac and Arabic, is reminiscent of their twelfth-century ancestral tongue. Northern Syria, Lebanon, and Palestine, which for a time had been oriented westward, reassumed the general cultural aspects that they maintained till the early nineteenth century.

Not only the territories of minorities but the entire maritime coast felt the disastrous effects of the aftermath of the crusades. Fearing the return of the Franks, some of whom had simply moved to nearby Cyprus, the Mamluks undertook the dismantling of such cities as Acre, Arsuf, Caesarea, Tyre, and Tripoli. The Mongol invasions of Syria, which began with Hulagu after the destruction of Baghdad (1258), added to the disastrous effects upon the country in general and the minorities in particular. In the battle of Homs (1299) Armenians and Franks fought in the ranks of the Mongol army. In the following year Druze bowmen from Lebanon harassed the Mamluk army on its retreat. Ibn-Inbar in 1185 found Tyre a fortified town;\textsuperscript{79} Abu-l-Fida (d. 1331) a century later found it utterly desolate.\textsuperscript{80} Especially striking are the observations of Ibn-Battuta, who traveled in that area in 1326: “I journeyed to the fortress of Acre, now a heap of ruins . . . Then I arrived in Acre, once capital of the Franks in Syria but today a ruin . . . Thence I journeyed to Tyre, which is a ruin, with a populous village outside it. Next I went to Tiberias, once a large imposing city of which nothing remains today

\textsuperscript{77} al-Walid, ibn-Makdis, ap. cit., p. 136
\textsuperscript{78} ibid., p. 239.
\textsuperscript{79} Cyp. cit., p. 304.

He was twelve years old at the time.
but vestiges witnessing to its former size and glory."11 Bertrandon of La Broquère, who visited Syria in 1432, reported in Jaffa nothing but tents covered with reeds, in Acre not more than three hundred houses, and Beirut "has been more considerable than it is now."12

One interesting and enduring byproduct of the crusades was the initiation of missionary work among Moslems. With the failure of Christians to subdue the "infidel" by force, the theory prevailed that his soul might be subdued by persuasion. The possibility of substituting peaceful, spiritual conquest for a military one took root as a reaction from the crusading methods and as a result of the newly generated interest in the east. Launched in the early thirteenth century, the missionary activity, with its many ramifications, has persisted down to the present time.

The two earliest missionary organizations were the Franciscan and the Dominican, both originating in Syria. Francis of Assisi himself started the mission named after him when in 1219 he arrived in Acre and sent eleven disciples across the land. This city became the headquarters of the Franciscan effort. He also presented himself before the Alyübid al-Kamil, nephew of Saladin, in Egypt and discussed religion with him. About the same time the Dominican mission was launched; it established a convent in Damascus and another in Tripoli. The Carmelite order, monastic and contemplative rather than missionary, also had a Syrian origin; it was organized earlier by a veteran crusader and took its name from a Palestinian mountain Ṣaḥṭ ibn-Yahyā (fl. about 1437) refers to a Franciscan convent and church in Beirut which his ancestors had converted into a stable.13

The results of this early missionary effort among Moslems were disappointing. The protagonists thereupon sought new channels directed toward native Christian communities. The creation of the Uniate churches, Syrian and Greek, in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries was the crowning achievement of Catholic missionary activity.

As the idea of converting Moslems was permeating in Christian minds, Mongol hordes were pouring into western Asia, thus providing the missionaries with a wider field for their activity. The victorious march of the Mongols landed them in Syria, where they and the crusaders found themselves facing a common enemy—the Moslems.

---

Negotiations were carried on for concerted action. Embassies were exchanged with popes and khan. For a time these heathens from Central Asia flirted with Christianity. Hulagun, whose wife, Toqiz Khatun (d. 1265), was a member of the cossyrian church, sympathized with this faith. His general Kutbogha, who had led the army triumphantly into Palestine, professed the same form of Christianity. But the routing of the Mongol army at 1260 at ‘Ain Jalut, the first major check the Mongols experienced, and the subsequent expulsion of the Franks from the land must have convinced these heathens that Islam was the more powerful religion. In 1293 the seventh il-khan, Ghazan, adopted the Arabic name Mahmut and declared Islam to be the Mongol state religion.

In Europe the champion of the policy of peaceful penetration was a Catalan, Raymond Lull, who persuaded the king of Majorca to found a school of Arabic studies to train missionaries whose only weapon would be “love, prayers, and the outpouring of tears.” Acting on Lull’s plea the Council of Vienne in 1272 ordered the teaching of Arabic in the universities of Rome, Paris, Oxford, Bologna, and Salamanca. The study of Arabic led to the study of other oriental languages. In the course of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, Catholic bishoprics were established not only in Syria, Armenia, and Persia but also across Central Asia to eastern China.

In the wake of the missionary went the trader. Travelers and merchants, especially from Italy, penetrated by land from Acre to Peking. Others circumnavigated northern Asia from Baku to Canton. Both of these land and sea routes had been known to Moslems and frequented by them for centuries, but to Europeans the experience amounted to a discovery of interior Asia and the Far East, resulting in an expansion of geographical knowledge that ranks in importance second only to that entailed by the discovery of the New World two centuries later.

64 Lawrence E. Browne, The Eclipse of Christianity in Asia. (Cambridge, Eng. 1938)
65 See chapter X., below.
"Minority" is used in this chapter in the sense of "a group of people, differentiated from others in the same society by race, nationality, religion, and language, who both think of themselves as a differentiated group and are thought of by the others as a differentiated group with negative connotations. Further, they are relatively lacking in power and hence are subjected to certain exclusions, discriminations, and other differential treatment." This definition is particularly useful, since although the "minorities" dealt with formed in total an overwhelming numerical majority in the areas conquered by the crusaders, their legal, social, and economic position was determined by the European conquerors who settled in Syria and Palestine. We shall be concerned, however, with more than a single minority. The term as applied to the crusader states covers many groups quite varied in culture, although the conquerors paid little attention to distinctions among them, looking upon the entire non-Frankish population of whatever kind as a single entity. Despite the efforts of some modern historians to distinguish different policies followed by the crusaders respecting natives who were Christians and those who were not, in law—as distinguished from practice—no such difference existed.

Contemporary sources written by Europeans are very much aware...
of the kaleidoscopic variety of peoples, something almost unknown in the west. Willibrord of Oldenburg describes the city of Antioch in 1212 as follows: “It has many rich inhabitants: Franks and Syriens, Greeks and Jews, Armenians and Moslems, all of whom are ruled by the Franks and each of whom follows his own laws.” A few years later, in 1217, Thietmar lists “Greeks, Jacobites, Georgians, Armenians, Nestorians, Jews, Sadducees [probably the Jewish sect of Qerutes], Samaritans, and Assassins.” As time passes, the list grows. James of Vitry (d. 1240) adds the forgotten Maronites, and Burchard of Mount Sion (1283), having already mentioned Moslems, Syrians, and Greeks, adds “Armenians, Georgians, Nestorians, Jacobites, Chaldeans, Medes, Persians, Ethiopians, Egyptians, and many other people who are Christians.” Even a Jewish native of Modern Spain, Benjamin of Tudela, far more familiar with varieties of people of different languages and religions, says of Jerusalem about 1167 that it “has many inhabitants; and the Ismaelites [Moslems] call them Jacobites, Aramaeans [Armenians or Syrians], Greeks, Georgians, and Frank.” To get a clearer view of the different communities involved, however, it will be necessary first to draw a rough picture of their geographical distribution in the Syro-Palestinian area held by the crusaders.

In the narrow stretch of land running some 530 miles in length from the confines of Cilicia to the Red Sea the crusaders met with a variety of races, religions, and languages. The aim of the First Crusade, to destroy the “infidel” and liberal eastern Christendom and the Holy Land, came up against hard realities, the existence of which could not have been suspected. It was one thing to lump all “infidels” together for general condemnation and destruction, but how to deal with eastern Christians? It was well known in the cultural and political centers of Europe that the Greek church was not in communion with Rome, but as for other Christian denominations, the Franks had never encountered them before. Among scholars there was some historical knowledge of their heresies, but none whatsoever of their identity as “nations” or, as the crusaders would sometimes call them,

---

5 Burchard of Mount Sion, in Peterson, verum et quovis verum: ed. Leuret, p. 19.
"languages"; and there was no idea that non-Moslems were densely settled by them, or that indeed they even formed a numerical majority in some places. As for knowledge of Islam in general, let alone its internal divisions, it was practically nil. Though merchants of Amaisfi and Venice were in contact with the Levant, their knowledge had little diffusion in Europe. Only in the second half of the twelfth century did the image of Islamic peoples become clearer. It was a permanent loss to European cultural history that the first Latin history of Islamic peoples, by one who lived in the Levant and had an intimate knowledge of its inhabitants, namely William of Tyre, did not survive.

It is not easy to draw an accurate picture of the Moslem inhabitants of the crusader states. They disappeared almost entirely from all the fortified cities and fortresses during the ten years of conquest (1100-1110). Almost all places which ended in victory for the crusaders were followed by the massacre of Moslem and Jewish inhabitants (and occasionally also of eastern Christians, whose external appearance did not differ from that of the others). Moslems remained in only a few places, usually those taken without fighting, such as Nablus in Palestine. Even where the city capitulated, as did Tyre in 1124 and Ascalon in 1153, the Moslems to whom the Franks guaranteed their lives preferred to abandon their homes. After the initial conquest, however, with greater security and the economic development of the coastal cities, Moslems began to return. Some were probably former inhabitants, others migrated from the countryside, but in what numbers we cannot say. Certainly the Turkish garrisons of northern Syria and the interior of Palestine disappeared completely, as did the mamluk garrison of the Fàtimids in the coastal towns. The Moslem city element seems to have been stronger in the north than in the south. Hauris and Salé in the kingdom of Jerusalem, Jubala in the county of Tripoli, and Lattakia in the principality of Antioch, all seem to have had large Moslem populations—indeed a majority, according to one Moslem source. There were probably large Moslem concentrations in other crusader ports such as Antioch, Tripoli, Tyre, and Acre. But there were none in Jerusalem. Both western and Jewish sources attest to the fact that immediately after the conquest the crusaders promulgated a law barring Moslems and Jews from the holy city.

7. As late as 1136, after Zangi’s conquest of Masqat ad-Nurimah, the Moslems who had taken up property were allowed to recover it. Others had to find their lives as the slaves of Aleppo (Bin-el-Ath, in RNC, Or., l. 423).
8. Ibn-ad-Din, an Arab-Shahni, "Livre des douze jardins," RNC, Or., iv, 529.
9. The relevant sources are analyzed as Prawer, "The Jews in the Latin Kingdom" (in Hebrew, with English summary), Zew., xi (1946), 28-82.
Though the Moslems abandoned the cities during the period of conquest they did not abandon their farms and villages, although there were refugees from Syria and Palestine to Damascus as well as in Egypt. After a period of silent hostility, the most spectacular expression of which was the abandonment of their farms, the Moslem peasants, with some exceptions, and the Frankish seigneurs established a modus vivendi.

Whatever had been their historical background, the Moslem peoples of the crusader states formed a linguistic and ethnic bloc by the twelfth century. Arabic was spoken by everybody, and former ethnic differences in Syria ceased to be important (they had never been important in Palestine, which had hardly been colonized by the Arab invaders of the seventh century). Within the frontiers of the Latin states there were virtually no Turks or nomadic Turcomans. Only the beduins, called "Arabs" in Moslem sources, stood out as a separate group.

Within this Moslem bloc, however, there were religious differences, in particular between the Sunnites, who acknowledged the 'Abbasid caliphs of Baghdad, and the Shiites, who accepted the Fatimid imams of Egypt. In addition, there were sectarian Shiites, unimportant within the crusader states but numerous along the frontier. During the last quarter of the eleventh century when the Seljukid Turks, the secular arm of the 'Abbasids, pushed the Fatimids out of Syria and Palestine, there probably followed some strengthening of the Sunnah. Turkish garrisons in the newly conquered territories were Sunnites. Local shuras, qadis, and imams lost their independence or their links with Cairo, pronounced the Ashabah or Friday prayer in the name of the 'Abbasid caliphs. It is doubtful, however, that the allegiance of the mass of the local population changed. On the other hand, Fatimid rule lasted for only a hundred years, during which Sunnite elements certainly continued to exist. On the whole, it seems that the Shiites were predominant in northern Syria, whereas southern Syria and Palestine were to a large extent Sunnite, but there were exceptions. By the end of the tenth century, the northern parts of Palestine and Transjordan

13. Cahou, Syrie de naud, p. 166.
were overwhelmingly Shi'a (especially Tiberias, Kadesh in Galilee, Nablus, and Amman).  

The Shi'a underwent many schisms. Only the Druzes, however, who accepted the eccentric imam al-Hakim (996-1021) as the last in a line of divinities, were to be found, at least partially, within the borders of the Latin states. They were in Jabal as-Summaq and Duzat'ah in northern Syria, though their special area was on the confines of the kingdom of Jerusalem and the county of Tripoli. "Some ten miles outside Sidon," writes Benjamin of Tudela, "there is a nation fighting those [Franki] of Sidon. This nation is called Druzes and they are pagan and have no religion. They inhabit the high mountains and the recesses of the rocks, and there is no king or judge over them. And they stretch as far as Mount Hermon, some three days' march."  

This is the earliest description of the Druzes which has come down to us. In all probability there were also other heretical communities in this area near Bethoron (Qal'at ash-Shaqif), Danyas, and Wadi-l-Tham. A contemporary Moslem source describes the area as a concentration point of Nusairis, Druzes, Zoramasrians, and other sects. The most spectacular of the Isma'ilite sects was the dāʿīyyah (esoteric) sect of Assasaima (Hashishinyya) organized by the Persian Hasan-i-Sabbah (al-Hasan ibn-mu-Sabbāh, d. 1124) at the end of the eleventh century in the stronghold of Alamur. From their fortresses at al-Kahf and other places near the Frankish frontiers, they massacred the lives of Moslem and Frankish leaders from time to time, but they can hardly be considered part of the local population.  

On the fringes of the cultivated area and the desert, as often within the Latin states as without, were the nomadic beduins. The main tribe, of which the others were branches or related clans, were the

16. In 1126 the city of Nablus was handed over by Nizārīs to the Ismai'īli who sold it to the Qarmatians. They in turn handed it over to the Franks in 1129; Renal d'Adgrin in RHC, Or. I, 366-368, 383-385; Mazor, "Latin Moslems and Greeks in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," History, LXIII (1974), 173-192.  
Banū-Tayy, who roamed the large expanses between Egypt, Palestine, and southern Syria. In northern Syria and Iraq they met with other tribes the Kūlāh, Uqail, and others. East and north of Egypt there were the Darmah and the Banū-Kindaq on the Egyptian border, some suspected of cooperating with the Franks. In the half-deserted area between Gaza and Hebron were branches of the Banū-Tayy, namely the Jamr Qudā'ah and, on the coast to the south of Gaza and Darum, the Banū-Ghaur (suggesting the valley of the Jordan) and Banū-Buqaid. In the area between Smār and Transjordan, the sources also mention the Banū-Ṣadr (perhaps connected with Wādī Ṣadr in western Sinai), Banū-Ādān, Banū-Φuqaiḍ, and Banū-Ṭibanī, the last having a reputation as eaters of dead animals, located in the al-Ṭaits and Hamah area. Southern Transjordan was a place much favored by the boduins, who found a prosperous market for their horses and cattle at the great annual fair in the plain of Ma'dīn, near Muzairib, in the Haūran. Around 1115 the Banū-Rabīḥah roamed here, from around Petra to 'Ajlūn. Then they moved to the Haūran and broke up into the powerful Fāqīl, who moved to the north, and the Hamah and Mīrāh, who remained in the Haūran. In southern Transjordan there were other tribes from Egypt, seemingly colonies of frontier defenders. They included the Banū-Kisinah, the Banū-Ḥašbar, and the Banū-Xabīl. To the north, near the crusader castles of Krak de Montréal (as-Shawābak) and Kerak, were the Banū-Uqba and Banū-Zuwan. Further north still, near 'Ajlūn, were the Banū-'Afn, who gave their name to the high plateau of the area. Here they joined with the powerful Banū-Rabīḥah of the Ta'īy, the successors of the Banū-Jarrāh, former rulers of central Palestine with their capital in Ramla (eleventh century), who roamed as far as the Haūran. Unspecified nomadic tribes pressed on the northern borders of the kingdom near the sources of the Jordan, and in the Marj Ṭūlūn and Wādī-T-Taim, drawn by their excellent pastures.


19 Ummayy, Neo-Mesopotamia, An Arab-Syrian Gymnasia, p. 36. The establishment of the Banū Ranaq with the Franks (1132–1135) is mentioned by Ibn al-Qāsim, op. cit. in: H. & N. Gill, p. 130. He also mentions the Amra of the Ta'īy, Kūlāh, and Khudjāb tribes as participating in the attack on Tiberias in 1133.


21 Among them were certainly the Banū-Ūmālan; see below, note 120. Cf. Maurice Godefroy-
It is a remarkable fact that the bedouins never threatened the security of the crusader kingdom. Until the Seljukid conquest of Palestine, the bedouins were often its real rulers, but their raids and invasions then ceased for over two hundred years; only with the decline of Mamluk power in the late fifteenth century did the bedouins reappear in force.

As we shall see, the Franks, faced with the problem posed by these nomadic tribes, soon found a way to deal with them.

The second most numerous element among the minorities were the eastern Christians, living in solid groups, but often, especially south of Tripoli, in enclaves amid a mixed population. As a whole they were more numerous in Syria, in the principality of Antioch and in and around Edessa, than in Palestine, although there was an important Christian enclave, the Maronites, in the mountains of Lebanon.

In the city of Antioch, and in the countryside almost as far as the eastern frontier of the Orontes river, the Christian element probably comprised a majority of the local population. Byzantine domination of Anatolia well into the eleventh century, the renewed Byzantine rule in Antioch during the century which preceded the First Crusade, the strong position of the Greek church under Byzantine rule, and the strengthening of the position of the non-Chalcedonian crooks after the Moslem conquest—all these factors had helped to preserve Christianity in Antioch and Edessa.


23 There are a large number of studies relating to eastern Christians which occasionally deal with the period of the crusades, but there is no special study of the problem as a whole. Of the greatest importance is Gilbert Dreyfus, "Missions catholiques et religieuses dans l'Orient byzantin à la fin du Xe et au Xi siècle, l'intervention syrienne," Revue d'histoire et de civilisation de Byzance, VII (1970), 277-294. For numismatics and bibliographies see: Religion, Politique des Orientaux à la fin de la démocratie, ed. Berthold Schindler, I Die Nach katholischer Zeit (VIII Religio, part 2; Leyden and Cologne 1990); Guimar Calo, Geschichte der christlichen arabischen Literatur (Stuttgart, 1950); S. Johnstone, Bibliotheque orientale chrétienne-musulmane, II De Syriaca (Paris 1950); M. Amal, Orientale orientale e le vinte annuenni (Paris, 1928); Donald Ayers, "The Christian Church of the East," (2 vols., Millivrenc, 1950); Adolf Schramm, A History of Eastern Christianity (London, 1960); and Anna O. von der Straten, Die "Vereinigte Christenrömische Konstitution" im Verständnis der lateinischen Historiographie von der Mitte der 12. bis zur zwanzigsten Jahrhundert (Cologne and Vienna, 1973), with copious bibliography, pp. 463-509.
There were also significant Christian elements farther east. The Nestorian church was the dominant Christian community in Mesopotamia and Persia, and had branches reaching into Central Asia and even farther. Their patriarch was the only Christian prelate allowed a seat in the ‘Abbasiid capital of Baghdad. The geographic area of Nestorianism lay for the most part well beyond the area of the crusader states and their immediate Muslim neighbors. Driven eastward by early persecution, the Nestorians found a home in the Persian empire, there to develop the famous Nestorian missions, the first to penetrate eastern Asia. The Muslim conquest did not bring about any significant return of Nestorians to Syria, Lebanon, and Palestine. Consequently, by the time of the crusades they were not numerous in those areas, although they were to be found in the county of Edessa, both in the cities and in the countryside.

Whereas Nestorians, Orthodox Georgians (often confused by the crusaders with Monophysites), Monophysite Armenians, Copts, and Abyssinians formed an outer Christian periphery, within the area of the crusader states the major Christian groups were the “Syrians” or Melkites, the Jacobites, and the Maronites of Lebanon. The overwhelming majority of eastern Christians were the “Syrians” and the Jacobites. Both were in large measure indigenous, going back to the native populations converted to Christianity during the fourth and fifth centuries. The “Syrians”—whose name led some crusaders to fanciful etymologies, connecting them with “Assyrian”—were Greek Orthodox in creed, and used Greek in their liturgy, although their normal language of communication was Arabic. The generic name “Syria” sometimes led to confusion, with some sources using it indiscriminately to denote all the eastern Christians of Syria and Palestine.

In contrast, the Greek Orthodox and “Syrians,” called by their adversaries “Chalcedonians,” and in Syria “Maqlul” (Arabic: مكلل) and so Melkites, were the Monophysite Jacobites, whose creed was...

24 There were virtually no Nestorians in the crusader states other than Edessa. A Nestorian monastery near Jericho existed between the fifth and eighth centuries, but was later abandoned, see Helmut Steinhart, “A Nestorian Monastery between Jericho and the Jordan,” Quarterly of the Department of Antiquities of Palestine, IV (1953), 80–86. A Nestorian school in Tripoli in the thirteenth century was the center of the great Arabic liturgical translation known as the Chronicarum monachorum, ed. and tr. (with Latin) by Jean B. Satinroman, and Thomas J. Lamy (2 vols., Paris and Louvain, 1972–1977), II, 670. It is very likely that the “Monachism” of the Abbess of Ararat or Armenia were Nestorians rather than the Monophysites themselves. See Richard, “La Confrérie des Monseigneur d’Acre et les Nestoriens, de Monastir au XIIe siècle,” L’Orient syrien, XI (1960), 451–460.

that also embraced by the Armenians, Captes, and Abyssinians. But while these last were ethnic groups with what were in effect national churches, the Jacobites were never such. They were stronger in the north than in the south, but their communities could be found in all the crusader cities as well as in the countryside.

The relative numbers of “Syrians” and Jacobites are impossible to estimate. In the area of the principality of Antioch the Byzantine or Greek Orthodox church was important, although it has been alleged that even here the Jacobite church was stronger. It has been estimated that by the end of the tenth century the Orthodox hierarchy had lost a third of its former 152 episcopal sees, while the Jacobites counted some 160. In Antioch itself the Jacobites were apparently more numerous than the Orthodox when the city fell to the crusaders. In the south, in Lebanon and Palestine, the Byzantine church was certainly weaker, but it controlled the great sanctuaries, such as the churches of Nazareth, Bethlehem, and the Holy Sepulcher. The number of Byzantine Christians was of course small, their clergy probably recruited in the Byzantine empire. But the protection given by the heil necessaries was tangible enough. In the eleventh century, formal treaties were concluded between the empire and the caliphate to ensure the safety and property of the Byzantine church in the Holy Land. As a matter of fact, the last reconstruction of the church of the Holy Sepulcher before the crusades was the outcome of such an agreement.

The Armenian church enjoyed a somewhat similar position in the county of Edessa, where autonomous or semi-autonomous Armenian communities preserved their identity and their own hierarchy. Out side this area, however, Armenian communities were small, probably consisting only of collegiate chapters and monastic communities, although around these there sometimes gathered secular communities. Such was the case, for example, in Jerusalem under the Moslems and later under the crusaders, with its Armenian sanctuary of St. James.\^17

The Jacobites, who had successfully opposed Byzantine pressure, preserved a well-developed church organization.\^16 It was the persistence of their church which is a large measure kept the community alive, preserving it from annihilation through conversion to the Orthodox or to the ruling Moslem creed. From the Jacobite point of

\^27 On the Armenians see below, note 96, text of Dogme, "Divinorum officiorum"


view, even the Moslem conquest of the seventh century was advantageous, for it allowed them to spread into predominantly Nestorian Mesopotamia and Persia. Likewise the Seljukid conquest of Antioch freed them from the dominance of the Byzantine church.

The various Christian communities formed solid blocs in the north, but were little more than small enclaves in the predominantly Moslem population of the south. "Syrians" and Jacobites might be found in all crusader cities, there were some villages mostly of Christians of one or the other denomination. Elsewhere they lived side by side with their Moslem neighbors in the villages, as they had for many generations in the cities before the crusader conquest. It is remarkable that, despite the poverty of eastern Christian sources, Frankish sources mention some twenty villages with an eastern Christian population in addition to the important communities in the cities, their monasteries, and some semi-nomadic Christian tribes living in Transjordan. Some areas seem to have had a special attraction for eastern Christians, especially the neighborhood of shrines, such as Bethlehem, Nazareth, and Mount Tabor. It is possible that these enclaves survived because the churches of the Orthodox and other Christian denominations had landed possessions in these areas and thus could more effectively shelter their Christian inhabitants from Moslem pressure for conversion than in areas where the Christian peasant had to face a Moslem landlord or a Moslem official alone.

In addition to Moslems and Christians, almost every city of importance in Syria, Lebanon, and Palestine had its Jewish inhabitants, although the Samaritans, who at least as the seventh century could still rise against Byzantium, were no more than a small community in the city of Nablus. The Jews suffered greatly during the First Crusade and the following period of expansion. There was a flourishing Jewish community in the capital of the province, and Jerusalem, with its "Academy of the Holy Land" or "Yeshivat Gaon Ya'akov," were the major centers of the Fatimids and their schismatic brothers, the Qarrites. It withered with the Seljukid invasion. The crusader conquest destroyed all the urban centers, among them Jerusalem and Haifa, where the Jews took up arms in their defense together with Moslems. Yet the Jews did not disappear. Some two dozen villages in Galilee preserved their Jewish communities as did the two cities, Tyre and Ascalon, which were not taken by storm but

29. See Prawer, Lands of the Republic, p. 225, no. 31. With the completion of the new archaeological survey the list will certainly be enlarged.
capitulated. Moreover, once the conquest was over, the Jews again settled in the cities although, as has been mentioned, they were barred from Jerusalem.

The variety of ethnic groups and religious posed problems of which, naturally, the crusaders had no knowledge before they arrived in the east. The situation varied in the different states; the population of the two northern principalities was in a great measure Christian, whereas from Tripoli northward the Moslem element was by far the dominant one. The law books which enshrined the “official” policy respecting minorities pertained to the kingdom of Jerusalem proper, rather than to the principalities. But it was a policy which probably applied to the entire conquered area, namely to treat all the natives as a single legal class of second-rate subjects, with fatal results for ultimate Latin survival.

Although the crusaders soon became aware of the internal divisions of the native Christian population, they lumped them all into a single category of people “who do not obey Rome.” To these they added the Moslems, Jews, and Samaritans, all in the same legal class. In contrast to these were those who were obedient to Rome, that is, all Latin Europeans. Though themselves subdivided into distinct classes—nobility, burgesses, and nationals of the communes—they all belonged to the dominant group, the conquerors.

There is no better evidence of the relative legal position of the Franki and the minorities than their respective money compositions for criminal offenses. If a Frankish burgess is convicted of assaulting another burgess, “he has to give the court 100 bezants and to the assaulted man 100 sous.” If the assailant is a Syrian, however, “the court has to have from the Syrian 50 bezants and the assaulted Frank 50 sous, because the Syrian does not pay for assault but half the law and does not receive but half the law.” We may compare this with the fines for a similar offense involving a knight and a burgess. A knight who assaults a burgess pays him 100 sous, and for costs to the lord’s court his horse, mule, and harness. A burgess who assaults a knight loses his right hand or can redeem it by payment of 100 bezants to the

30 Philip of Novara, cap. 28 (RHC, Enn., 1, 582): “Gens etSuitre et tout blaver Creations qui ne vont de la ley de Rome.”
31 Livre des Anciens de la Cour des Bourgeois, cap. 305 (RHC, Liv., U 221)
32 Ibid., cap. 294 (p. 222). This is also the general rule applied to Moslems living in Moslem lands. Their diyaq, which corresponds to the wargali, is half that of the Christians. See Clemen, s.v., “Dhima,” in The Encyclopaedia of Islam, rev. ed., 3 (Leiden and London, 1965), 226–291.
33 Livre en rat., cap. 39 (RHC, Enn., 1, 460).
knights and 5,000 bezants to the court if he cannot pay the latter (roughly the annual income of two average villages, or two years' income of a knight's fee), he is to remain in prison at the mercy of the court.

The compositions for assault make no distinction even between native Christians and non-Christians. In everyday life the crusaders may have felt a greater affinity for eastern Christians, and showed them more favor, but the law made no such distinction. Although the legal treatises, with one exception, date from the mid-thirteenth century, there is no doubt that the general policy toward the natives was fixed at an early period, probably during the first two decades after the fall of Jerusalem. Moslems, Jews, and Samaritans were left complete freedom of worship, but the Moslems, and in some measure the Jews, saw their sanctuaries destroyed or converted into Latin churches. This happened in Jerusalem where the two great Moslem sanctuaries, the Dome of the Rock (the mosque of 'Umar) and the al-Aqsa mosque, became the Temple Domus and Templum Salomonis respectively. It happened in all the maritime cities, like Ascalon where the mosque called al-Khdir (the Green One; or possibly connected with the prophet Elijah) became Sancta Maria Cathara. In many cases the mosques, which the crusaders called maqamur, became simple lodgings. With the disappearance of the Moslem population from those cities taken by force, their mosques disappeared as well, and we do not know if any were reestablished under crusader rule. On the other hand, mosques remained in villages and possibly in some cities. With the reconquest by Saladin in 1187 there followed a complete reconversion of churches to mosques; in the process even churches founded by the crusaders became mosques or pious foundations.

A similar process, but on a smaller scale, probably took place with regard to the synagogues. The most numerous community of Jews and Quirrites was that of Ramla, although it had diminished in importance almost a generation before the First Crusade. The synagogues of Jerusalem were burned down together with the Jews who had sought within them a last refuge in prayer. This must also have happened

34 Ibid., cap. 17 (pp. 617-618). There was no money composition between nobles and
35 A Moslem who assails a Christian pays living expenses and indemnities, otherwise he is beaten and expelled. U be an account upon of a similar offense, see Lull, Hist. des Assises de la Cour des Bourgeoys, vol. 240 (RHC. Loris, 16, 172).
36 Cf. Saladin's description of his conversion to the mosque of St. Amnu into a Shifting Montague, preserved in the symposium of the church, For Ave and Jostjamae u<

[Note: The document continues with more text, but it is not fully legible due to the image quality.]
in other places. However, with the great waves of Jewish immigration into Palestine at the end of the twelfth century and during the thirteenth, synagogues were rebuilt or houses were converted into places for prayer. There were academies in Tyre and especially in Acre. By the time of Saladin’s reconquest, Jewish prayer places had been rebuilt in some cities, foremost among them in Jerusalem about 1190 and again in 1267.

What might have been expected to happen to mosques and synagogues surprisingly happened to Christian churches also, though for different reasons and in a different way. Urban II’s call at Clermont clearly included as a major aim the liberation of eastern Christians from the Muslim yoke. Yet three years later the leaders of the army of liberation, having captured Antioch and refused to hand it over to the Christian beardens of Constantinople, could write to the pope: “We conquered the Turks and pagans, but we could not defeat the heretics, the Greeks, Armenians, Syrians, and Jacobites.” They then invited the pope to join them, “and all the heretics, whatever they might be, you will eradicate and destroy by your authority and our valor.” Clearly, crusading ideology had not survived confrontation with the Christian east. Eastern Christians might very well be liberated from the Muslim yoke, but voices in the army also demanded the eradication of the schismatic and heretical churches. No such policy was pursued, but the attitudes revealed a fatal impact on the social and political organization of the crusader states, and quite possibly on their political destiny.

The attitude to these different Christian denominations, though the same in principle, was not so in practice. Generally speaking, the “schismatic” Byzantine and the “Syrian” or Melkite churches found themselves worse off than under the rule of Islam, whereas the “heterodox” churches were better off than before. The establishment of

39 The position of the Greeks and Melkites can be gathered from some Orthodox itineraries: “Viso el pellegrinaggio de Damiel, Inglesiuee atra, 1196-1197,” in Itinerarioe russa en Orient, ed. and tr. Sofia de Kimuna (Kimuna), (SOL, SG, V, Geneva, 1899), pp. 1-25; tr. Charles W. Wilson in PPXX V-3 (London, 1903); and John Phoenix, “A Brief Description of the Holy Land, 1185,” in Aubrey Stewart in PPXX V-3 (London, 1906) for a monograph to discuss here the pertinent literature regarding the attitude of the inhabitants to the Greek and Melkite church. Of the western denominations, those of James of Viny and Burcard of Mt. Sion pay more attention to the eastern churches than do the others.
the Latin church in Syria and Palestine was accompanied by the destitute of the Greek and Melkites hierarchies and by an almost wholesale spoliation of the Byzantine sanctuaries. The holiest places, such as the church of the Annunciation at Nazareth, the church of the Nativity at Bethlehem, and the Holy Sepulcher, became the property of the Latin church, though the Byzantine and other denominations preserved the right to celebrate offices there.

The Greek patriarchs John of Antioch and Symeon II of Jerusalem were replaced by the Latins Bernard of Valence and Dambert of Pisa, respectively. The Byzantine church continued to appoint patriarchs who lived in Constantinople. This was more true for Jerusalem than for Antioch, not only because in Antioch there was a large Byzantine population, but also because the claims of the Byzantine emperor to the possession of the city of Antioch sometimes resulted in the acceptance there of a Greek patriarch.

Although the Byzantine church was not in communion with Rome, the idea of one church and one faith was never abandoned. It would have been scandalous, therefore, to have two bishops, one Greek and one Latin, in the same place, a practice which had been rejected by the church from the earliest times of Christianity. In effect, this meant that Byzantine bishops were replaced by Latins, and the lower Byzantine clergy subordinated to the jurisdiction of Latin prelates. This was put into practice almost immediately, although more thoroughly in Jerusalem than in Antioch, and had consequences far beyond the frontiers of the kingdom. When Greek Cyprus was captured, and later when the Byzantine empire became the Latin empire of Constantinople following the Fourth Crusade, the same principles were applied to these new areas, where there were few Moslem inhabitants and the population was overwhelmingly Orthodox. The policy had already become one of long standing when explicitly defined in a canon of the Fourth Lateran Council. Since in many places in the same city and diocese there are people of different languages, who have different rites and customs under one faith, we order strictly that the bishops of such cities or dioceses should appoint suitable men who

46. In 1127 Raymond of Penne, prince of Antioch, promised to invert a Greek patriarch (Champlain, Les Campes, I, 323, note 3); see also Raymond of Toulouse (regent 1153-1160; ibid. II 445, 446). In 1163 Stephen III installed the Greek patriarch Anthimius (1162-1157), and the Greek Symeon II was installed in 1208—1217. B. St. and E. Saintmier followed in the middle of the century (Kemfer), in Dictionnaire d'histoire et de geographie ecclésiastiques, III, cols. 656-657.

47. The succession of Honorius III for Cyprus ingeniously cite the election of the crusader monarch of Alexius I. Thus, ed., Acta Honorii III (1227-1227) et Gregorii IX (1227-1241) a vernaculum, pluteo romanum iumento (PC, Romae, 1850, vol. III, Vatican City, 1850), nos. 106, 140.
will celebrate the divine offices and administer the sacraments according to the diversity of rites and languages, instructing them both in words as by example. But we prohibit celerity that one and the same city or diocese should have different bishops, like one body with many heads, as though a monster. In the case of grave necessity, however, the local bishop might appoint a prelate to such "nations" as his vicar, who would be directly subject to him.

This was generally applicable also to the Syrians or Melkites. Since they were of the same race as the Greeks, they should have been dealt with in the same way. In fact, however, we do not know how things worked out. There may have been "Syrian" bishops in cities and in the countryside, perhaps a remnant of the once-numerous hierarchy of the Byzantine church. With the disappearance of the Byzantine population proper, the "Syrians" may have continued the tradition. But we do not find their bishops in the great sees, while those we know about were subject to the patriarchs of Antioch or Jerusalem.

The policy of replacing Greek patriarchs and bishops, like the removal of Greeks in Nazareth and Sebastia, could not be imposed on the lower clergy. Nor were the monastic establishments affected. The lower clergy and monasteries were required to recognize the supremacy of the Latin prelates; this was mere lip-service. The "Syrians" had in fact their own Arabic-speaking clergy as well as their Greek liturgy. Consequently, despite wholesale uprooting, they succeeded in hanging on in some churches and property. We have already mentioned Greek services in the Holy Sepulcher and in Bethlehem. On Mount Tabor the Greek monks kept the monastery of St. Elijah when...

---


44. From lightmates in an act of the council of St. John at Nice was the Greek archbishop of Cucus and BasAEA, now Melkite, as well as of Greek clergy of the chapter of the Holy Sepulcher with the gulf of Antioch (Aubert), Damascus (preet), Jerusalem (archbishop), and some towns (J. Dubalville Le Roux, "Preti charter" in A.H. 11881 reipr, Bruges, 1961). 634-636. Heimholtz, Beispiele engl. Herausdrukken 1297-1299. In his book, 1899, repr. New York, 1900, no. 992. As an example of the extreme clause, the Melkite bishop was spiritually affiliated with the see. The Greek bishop of Phmea (Fama, in Mt. Sinai) was dependent on the Latin archbishop of Philadelphia (Ammunian); John of Ptolemais. Cap. 166 (RHC, Lit 1, 417). Meyen, "Die Landen die bi Salam und die adelrahee Hl. Sepulcher von St. Jób," Helmut Klieger und Stefanos im Kniepruch Jerusalem (MGI, Schriften, 36 Stuttgart, 1977), pp. 498-499.

44. I now prelude like Jason of Vitry, doctor of Acre, who complained of their singularity, a complaint so often repeated in summares and historians and by the peers that we can be sure there was some reason. See Acts Benedict III, ed. Tittmon, pp. 116-117 (nos. 36-37) and passim.
the Benedictines took over their former home. In the greater cities there were Greek parish churches and hospices, for example, the monastery of St. Catherine in Acre, and the hospice of St. Moses, the church of St. Abraham, and the monasteries of St. Sabas and St. Chariton in or near Jerusalem. It was a small remnant of what had belonged to the Orthodox church before. A considerable amount of landed property was taken over by the newcomers, some thirty villages with the Holy Sepulcher, and twelve villages belonging to Mount Tabor.

The position of the Greek church under the crusaders was precarious. In the principalities of Edessa and Antioch it was almost permanently on the brink of revolt. Yet the Greek and "Syrian" churches had their moments of triumph, almost always as a result of Byzantine military, or sometimes political, intervention. In Antioch there were times when Greek patriarchs were allowed to take over the cathedral of St. Peter and were accepted by the prince, though naturally excommunicated by the Latin clergy. When Byzantine-Frankish diplomacy allowed, as under Manuel I Comnenus (1143–1180), imperial support was made available to Greek churches and the great common Christian sanctuaries. Thus Manuel covered the tomb in the Holy Sepulcher with gold and installed marvelous mosaics in the chapel of Golgotha. At the same time Byzantine artists and money embellished the church of Bethlehem with mosaics where bilingual inscriptions, Latin and Greek, testified to a kind of medieval ecumenism of convenience.

The basilicas also helped the Greek monasteries to hold their own when other ecclesiastical establishments were disappearing. These were

---

46. Rohlfs, Regesta, no. 409.
47. As late as 1143 the chapter of the Holy Sepulcher was claiming possession in Antioch which had originally belonged to St. Catherine and St. Sabas, and it was regularly renewed. Empereur de Reinaud, ed., Cartulaire de l'église du Saint-Sépulcre de Jerusalem (Paris, 1889), p. 179 (no. 97). rep. in PL, 155 (Paris, 1860), cols 1280–1282.
48. Phoenix, in PPTS, V, 3, 39. A beautiful mosaics of this period, no apocryphal, is still preserved in the Latin part of the Golgotha.
venerable institutions, some going back to the earliest period of Christian monasticism. Latins did not replace Greek monks in the monasteries, which were often in almost inaccessible places of the desert of Judea or on the banks of the Jordan, some surviving to our times. Moreover, even literary activity continued in them under crusader rule.

There is no doubt that the relative situation of the non-Greek denominations was more favorable. In the northern principality, there were the two Monophysite groups, Armenians and Jacobites; only the latter were really important in the county of Tripoli and in the kingdom of Jerusalem, although there was an important Armenian sanctuary in Jerusalem, and churches and hospices in Tripoli, Acre, and other places.

Though never accepted by or integrated into Frankish society, these communities were accorded better treatment for various reasons. The Armenians were a political factor in Byzantine-Frankish relations, especially in the thirteenth century in the principality of Antioch. As the Armenian state, and even more their church, had long suffered from Byzantine persecutions, they were, in a sense, natural allies of

52 The following Greek monasteries are mentioned in contemporaneous sources. St Elijah (Mt Hyla), on the road from Jerusalem to Bethel, destroyed by earthquake and rebuilt by Manuel Comnenus; St. Vasilios, St. Ibenos (Old Saida) St Christou, Calanias in the area of Kibbou near the Wadi al-Qelt, St. Comnenos (today Leigh), and St John (Qasr al-Yahud) near the banks of the Jordan, also restored by Manuel Comnenus. The list is based on the itinerary of the Russian writer Daniel, POSTS, IV, 1854, and Deodoro, POSTS, V, 1852, of Otto F. Reusch: 

"Notes on the Lateran and Monasteries of the Wilderness of Judea," Liber monast. XV (1844-1845), 220-236; also, "Woll Piantine in the Monastic Chloritis, of Judea "Orient Christiannus 1. (1866) 46 ff. C. P. Sandor, "Recherches archéologiques des monastères de Palestine" (Paris 1900; republished from ROC, IV [1899]); Robert Davenne, "Les Anciens établissements de Palestine," (Revue des Missions de la Palestine, 1909). Mr. A. Leibnitz, "Recherches sur la Palestine," La Monarchie du Saint-Siècle, Écrits d'Orient, III [1899] 347 ff. and Albert Farber, "Des gréco-byzantins Klöstern Mar Saba in Palästina," Archiv für Orient, VII [1903] 304-307; the most important monastery was that of St Theodosius. A partial restoration of its possessions mentions the church of St Theodosius in Jerusalem with hospice, a hospital, the monastery of St John the Baptist, and St. George; property in Ascalon and Ramla, the church of St. James; and Jaffa with hospice and church, in "Zeva" (Jebel), and another (for the main place) of St. Peter and Paul with hospice near Jaffa (Jebel) in the title Sanctae Theodosii Consacratae de Libano singla et referre de Libano, the northern sector of Judea in crusader terminology.

the Franks. The Jacobites were in a somewhat similar position. They never played any political role and had no military value, but the fact that they had been persecuted by Greeks and Melkites, which had led them to favor the Seljukid invasion, brought them the favor of the Franks. The Jacobites would emphasize the fact that Monophysite blood ran in the veins of the royal dynasty (from Melkite's mother Morphia). As "heirs" rather than just "schismatics" they retained their own hierarchy, simply recognizing their subjection to the Latin. Their patriarch at Antioch, Athanasius VII, and their bishops were neither expelled nor replaced by Latin. The Latin hierarchy and the papacy deplored the situation 10 but, in fact, required only a nominal obedience from them. Of course the relatively favorable attitude of the Franks, well attested by the great chroniclers, and historians Michael the Syrmian (d. 1199), Jacobite patriarch at Antioch, did not prevent the confiscation of property in the early years of the kingdom, or later spoliations in the country of Edessa.11

Yet on the whole the Jacobites, with bitter memories that in the eleventh century their patriarch had been expelled by the Greeks from Antioch, now enjoyed freedom of worship. Given the particular structure of the Jacobite church, it was the patriarch at Antioch who was in direct contact with the Franks, whereas the realm of his view, the "Maphrian" (from Μαφραντς, fertilizers—that is, the ordinance of bishops) was in the east. The Franks often showed the patriarch favor, but not without a good deal of compromise.

The area of heaviest Jacobite population seems to have been between Antioch and Edessa in the north and in Palestine in the south. Jacobite bishops functioned in Acre, in Tripoli,12 and in Jerusalem with its churches of St. Mary Magdalen and St. Simeon the Pharisee. Although built by a Copt, Macarius of Nahrawan, under the patriarch of Alexandria Mar Ya'qub (810-830), the former became Jacobite under the benevolent Seljukids, through the exertions of a Jacobite in that service, Mansur al-Bilbawi (the rendering of the name is not

54. Acta Synod. XI, ed. Tawad, pp. 479-480 (no. 20). “Tomus, statutum Nomocanon. nee archiepiscopos praeclarae, nee praeclarae episcopum Latium, nee ecclesiae demuelli eremita, non recto antistate et in ecclesiis iuris.” Consequently the pope ordered: “Saepeam Sinarum, Jacobitum et Nomocanonem ut quadammodo archiepiscopum et suffragantiam illius imperii praeclaram, per ecclesias stetatassimus, pertinentem remota, evagens.” The bull is written in Cyprus, but was sent by Ralph of Vermand, the patriarch of Jerusalem, Prince of Lusignan, the archbishop of Carthage, and bishop Rainer of Bethleem.


56 Bar Hebraeus, Chronicum, i, ed. 798.
clear). It was consecrated in 1092, in the presence of the delegates of Cyril II, the Coptic patriarch of Alexandria. Here lived the Jacobite bishops of Jerusalem, with a hospice and a residence for the patriarch when he visited Jerusalem. In a sense it was a Monophysite center where Jacobites mixed with Copts. The church was built in what had been the old Jewish quarter, colonized through the efforts of Baldwin (about 1115), who brought in eastern Christians from Transjordan. It is therefore possible that, although the inhabitants are described as “Syrians”, they were really Jacobites, perhaps with an admixture of Greeks and Melkites who probably kept to their own old quarters near the Holy Sepulcher. Not only was the monastery of St. Mary Magdalene an administrative center, but there was some literary activity there also.

Contacts between Jacobites and Franks were frequent, more so in Acre than in Palestine. On the whole they were friendly, but mutual ecclesiastical quarrels brought about the intervention of Frankish rulers and clergy. The Frankish authorities, whether lay or ecclesiastical, were called on to confirm ecclesiastical elections, which opened the way to bribery. Bar Hebraeus (d. 1286) goes so far as to accuse the West Jacobite church of simony “like that practised by the Armenians.”

No doubt the custom inherited from the earlier Moslem period, the confirmation of election by the local emirs, which continued now under the Franks, encouraged simoniacal practices.

---


59 Between the street of Joseph and the city walls, up to the gate of Joseph (today the Gate of Lions): “a ruin now covered with mud…laid on the site of the ruins of the Jerusalem.” In the center of the courtyard on the southern side of the church it is possible to see a stone slab on which a Latin inscription appears. Cf. Michael the Syrian, op. cit., III, 197, 211, 385-388, the rebellion in Jerusalem. Bar Wahbeh, Buried Huracus, the corrupt Latin patriarch of Jerusalem, to get possession of St. Mary Magdalene.

60. Bar Hebraeus, Chronicon, ii, 316. Cf. Michael the Syrian, op. cit., III, 197, 211, 385-388, the rebellion in Jerusalem. Bar Wahbeh, Buried Huracus, the corrupt Latin patriarch of Jerusalem, to get possession of St. Mary Magdalene.
The relations between the Monophysite denominations were on the whole very friendly. This was the result in part of their common hatred for the Greeks, the "Chalcedonians," in part of their creed, which, despite minor differences in ritual, was virtually the same for them all. Their leaders played down the differences, this did not prevent the writing of critical interdenominational tracts, but the polemical tone was less sharp than when they dealt with Franks and Greeks.

The Jacobite patriarch and the Armenian and Coptic prelates announced their elections to one another, and customarily received mutual congratulations, sometimes with pious exhortations. Their elections were also announced in the different patriarchates. The only important quarrel under crusader rule was the interference of the Coptic patriarch of Alexandria in Jerusalem and that of the Jacobite patriarch of Antioch in Ethiopia. Ethiopia's bishops were usually ordained by Alexandria, and were Egyptians. But Ignatius II in a dispute with Cyril III, the patriarch of Alexandria, appointed a black named Thomas for Ethiopia, after Cyril in 1236 appointed a Copt named Basil as archbishop of Jerusalem, even though Jerusalem depended on Antioch. The new archbishop, appointed it seems under the pressure of Copts who visited the holy places, was confirmed by the Franks when he promised to unite his church with that of the Franks.

Friendly relations with the Franks not only allowed the repatriation and enlargement of the church of the Magdalen in Jerusalem, but also the erection of a new church in Antioch in 1156, the consecration of which was celebrated in the presence of the Frankish patriarch Almydy of Limoges. There was even a rumor that the Maphrian Ignatius IV, who died in Tripoli in 1251, had left half his fortune to

---

(1168-1174) as well as Baldwin IV (1174-1185) confirmed the Jacobite patriarch Joseph, who played the role of protector of the Jacobites, insisting that the consecration of the new patriarch Abdellatim, though he was elected in Mersin, should be celebrated in his presence at Tell belkhi; Michael the Syrian, op. cit., III, 233. Bar Hebraeus, Chronicles, II, 654.

61 For polemical tracts written by Joseph the Antiochian bishop of Mersin, against Armenians and Franks see Michael the Syrian, op. cit., III, 238; Bar Hebraeus, Chronicles, 61, 486. C1 Michael the Syrian, op. cit., II, 236, 244-245

62 Bar. III, 231, 234-235

63 The famous quarrel is described in detail by Bar Hebraeus, Chronicles, II, 656-664. There is reason to suppose that this began a permanent rift among the Monophysites and the establishment of an independent spirituality of Copts in Jerusalem. Saladin seems to have later confirmed the Coptic and Abyssinian in these places in the church of the Holy Sepulcher see Theophanes, Histories, Les Copts dans l'empire byzantin, Jerusalem, 1909, p. 44. cited by Michael, Copti in Jerusalem, p. 49.

64 Bar Hebraeus, Chronicles, III, 657; Michael the Syrian, op. cit., III, 243-245.
the Frankish churches and half to Jacobite churches and monasteries. In some cases Jacobites baptized their children in Frankish churches in Edessa, \(^7\) in the light of which the plundering in 1148 of the great Jacobite monastery of Bar Şanma by Joscelin II of Edessa\(^8\) with the participation of Armenian troops seems to have been a sad episode, though local chicanery was never wanting.

Despite the seemingly amicable relations, and despite the efforts of Michael the Syrian to emphasize the friendliness of the Franks, something not too apparent in the Chronicle of Bar Hebraeus, it was all very superficial. As for the Anonymous Syrian Chronicle of 1234, it is clear that the chronicler’s Christian perspective did not lead him to favor the crusader establishments. He judged Moslems and Latin Catholics according to their attitudes toward and relations with the “orthodox” (non-Chalcedonian) nation of the Syrians.

The great Jacobite church, comprising in the eleventh and twelfth centuries some seventeen metropolitans and thirty bishops in the west (and some eighteen under the Mahphian in the east), never accommodated itself to the new conditions of a crusader state on the coast. Though the patriarchal see was Antioch, no Jacobite patriarch, except Mar Ignatius II (1222–1252), ever stayed there. Amida, Hîn Zîyâd (Kharput), Bar Şanma, and Mardin were the normal places of residence. The great centers of Jacobite learning remained the monasteries of Bar Şanma in the west and Bar Mattai (near Mosul) in the east, though Bar Hebræus studied rhetoric and medicine with a Nestorian in Frankish Tripoli.\(^9\) Other than in times of war, Jacobite patriarchs moved so freely between Moslem and Christian lands that one has the impression of a single region peopled by the Jacobite or Syrian “nation.”\(^9\) Frankish Syria and Palestine had no attraction for them. Their locus of religious and community life remained in the lands of Islam. Whatever hopes they might have entertained at the moment of the crusader conquest, the event had no meaningful impact on their customary organization. When Jerusalem became a center of western Christendom, and the Jews, as always in times of...
crisis, turned their eyes in expectation to Jerusalem, the holy city never
ranked as a Jacobite patriarchate, but only as a bishop's see. Bar
Ṣaumā remained their great sanctuary, and even Michael the Syrian
wrote in the shadow of the great altar.

This attitude, whether dictated by experience or by a detached, un-
sentimental approach to the majority of Jacobites lived in Mos-
lem lands, led to an ambivalent view of the crusades and of the Franks.
Jacobite writers, despite their "official" hatred of Moslems, judged
events and people, Moslems and Christians alike, from a particular
Jacobite perspective. This is true even with a Francophile like
Michael the Syrian or the Armenian Matthew of Edessa (d. about 1136).
They praised the Seljūqids, for example, for allowing the construc-
tion of two Jacobite churches (St. Mary and St. George) in Antioch
after its capture from the Byzantines. 71 The liberality of the Seljūqids
was put on the same level as that of the Franks in allowing complete
religious freedom to the Jacobites. The former drove out the Greeks,
who could "no longer force the Orthodox [the Jacobites], as was their
cruel custom, to be converted to their heresy." The Franks "never
created difficulties in the matter of faith... in arriving at a single
formula for all the nations and languages of the Christians, but re-
garded as Christian everyone who adhered the cross, without further
inquiry or examination." 72

This did not prevent the Syrian patriarch from condemning Joscelin
II and his Armenian soldiers for the spoliation of the monastery of
Bar Ṣaumā, 73 or Nūr-ad-Din for renewing crucifictional legislation
against Christians and Jews. 74 On the other hand, when Kılıç Arslan
II, the Seljūqid sultan, in 1181 invited the Jacobite patriarch Michael
to meet him at Melitene, Michael barked praises upon him, while
"all the Christians lit candles, raised crosses on high, and lifted their
voices to sing the office." 75

The Jacobite point of view was a function of the local attitudes
they met as a minority. Their precarious position is clear from an
episode, described by the Jacobite patriarch, which occurred in 1141
in Melitene. The Turks invaded the monastery at Zahar and sacked
It. In May 1242 the crusaders decided on vengeance: "They robbed
the goods of the Christians, but did not confront the Turks. And when

71 Ibid. p. 170, 174.
72 Ibid. pp. 222.
73 Ibid. pp. 383 n
74 Ibid. pp. 342 n
75 Ibid., p. 331.
the Franks left, the Turks came again, pillaged, and departed. Thus the Christians were robbed by both sides. 76

In times of tension, the Moslem population often gave vent to anti-Christian feelings, even though the Jacobites were in no way involved. Thus, after the battle of Harran, the repercussions were felt by the Jacobites. "How much courage, injury, and contempt the Moslems then heaped on the persecuted Christians in Damascus, Aleppo, Harran, Edessa, Amidu, Mardin, Mosul, and in the rest of their dominion, no words can describe," 77 complains the Jacobite patriarch.

For the Jacobites there was only one consolation, the providence of God. No words are more illuminating than those of Michael the Syrian: "If, because of our sins, God has allowed Arabs or Turks to rule over us, nevertheless in his mercy he has never abandoned us and never will, at no time and in no way. By his providence he watches over us and delivers us from all our enemies, because of his love for his church." 78 The Franks did not consciously favor the Jacobites. Their attitude was one of tolerance mixed with suspicion. As our sources are often one-sided, it is not easy to judge events. Yet in some cases not much is left in doubt: Armenians of Albitian, calling in Moslems in 1106 against the Franks, and shouting the equivalent of "Franks go home!" is a revealing incident; it led the pro-Frankish Armenian Matthew to explain that the great Frankish warriors of the time of the conquest were dead and their principalities were in the undeserving hands of their descendants. 79 Earlier, in 1101, we are told that the holy fire (a pious fraud) did not appear on time, to punish the Franks "because they chased from their monasteries the Armenians, the Greeks, the Syrians, and the Georgians," and established connections. The Franks thus reopened (the holy fire having appeared after the prayers of the Jacobites) and "reinstated each nation in what belongs to them." 80

In 1104, after the defeat of the crusaders at Harran, when Chōkūr-mash of Mosul attacked Edessa and Rīdwan of Aleppo Antioch, the Christian population opened the gates of the surrounding cities to Rīdwan. 81 The same thing happened less than a generation later after

76. 1106, p. 249.
77. Ibid., p. 436.
78. Ibid., p. 343.
79. Matthew of Edessa, m. ARM, Arm., I, 30.
the crusaders’ defeat at Darb Sarmadil (the “ager sanguinis”). In 1148 the Jacobites (though not the Armenians) were ready to accept Zangi in what was left of the county of Edessa. In 1182, when Habib Jaldak in Transjordan fell to Farraj-Shah of Damascus, its commander Fulk of Tiberias was accused of having left the place to a native Christian garrison. All this culminated in the famous accusation in 1189 that the eastern Christians had conspired at turning over Jerusalem to Saladin. The Coptic chronicler of Alexandria pointed an accusing finger at the Jerusalem-born Malkite Joseph al-Baili, who moved to Damascus and entered the service of the Ayyubids. In Egypt he met Saladin and tried to ensure the safety of his community. Saladin used him as an envoy in his dealings with the Franks, but also as a spy and agent. In this latter capacity he was sent with bribery money to Jerusalem in return for Saladin’s favor for his community. It is impossible to know what really happened, but the story spread to the Franks and to Europe.

Quite possibly Zangi, Ayyubid, and Manukluk attitudes toward eastern Christians explained Frankish suspicions, although in some cases there is no doubt about their pro-Muslim sentiments. Zangi tried to drive a wedge between the Franks and the eastern denominations. On his order the massacres in Edessa in 1144 were stopped. The Jacobite bishop Basil Dar-Simmah became his adviser. The same favor was shown to Ananias, the Armenian bishop of Edessa. The churches and their spoils were restored and former Latin churches were handed over to them. Saladin’s proclamation that Christians who wanted to remain in the formerly Frankish cities would be allowed to do so was clearly aimed at the eastern Christians, since no Frank would have thought to remain. In fact, eastern Christians and Jews remained in Acre, Nablus, and Jerusalem. In the last, like the Franks, they had to pay tamar, and also the jizya which they had earlier paid as capitatio to the Franks. There is no reason to suppose that they evacuated other places. Strangely enough, when the Muslims and Jews abandoned Jerusalem in 1219 after the destruction of its walls by al-

82. Ibid., p 180
83. Ibid., pp 298-299
84. Ibid., p 680
86. Rādī, Kānyum-um, muṣlaḥ, dūr, 44:46.
Malik al-Mu'azzam of Damascus, the eastern Christians remained
behind.  

While the Melkites were often held suspect, and the Jacobites were treated, or mistreated, more or less according to local circumstances, the Armenian church enjoyed a more privileged position. The presence of independent principalities and later of an Armenian state had a decisive influence on Franco-Armenian relations. Furthermore, the Armenians and Maronites were the only local Christians whom the Franks appreciated as excellent warriors.

Within the boundaries of the Latin states the Armenian community was to be found mainly in Antioch and in Edessa. In the latter, on the eve of the crusade, they enjoyed a kind of precarious independence under both the Byzantines and the Seljuks. Together with the Jacobites they formed the majority of the local population. It was the Armenians who elevated Baldwin to the throne in place of their local Armenian ruler Toros (c. 1098), and they kept faith with the Franks until the fall of Edessa and even afterward.

There was a marked difference in their position in the north and in the south. In Edessa Frankish rule was based on their cooperation. In Antioch their standing was enhanced by the Armenian principalities and later on by the kingdom in Cilicia and was thus often a function of interstate relations. Further south their numbers diminished, but Armenian communities were to be found in the crusader ports, Acre, as well as in Jerusalem. According to an ancient Armenian tradition, they had some seventy monasteries at the end of the
Byzantine domination, clearly an exaggeration. Still, there is no doubt that Jerusalem had an Armenian and Georgian community at a very early period (mid-fifth century) centered around the Georgian monastery of St. Mena, which later became the great sanctuary of St. James. Beautiful mosaics outside the walls of Jerusalem near the so-called granary of Jeremiah, and mosaics on the Mount of Olives, with tombs of Armenian abbots, testify to the high artistic level of these establishments.

On the eve of the First Crusade, almost contemporary with the reconstruction of St. Mary Magdalen, the Georgian monk Prokhor rebuilt the church of St. James the Elder (1072–1088). The Spanish legend about the miraculous voyage of the head of St. James to Santiago de Compostela (known since the ninth century), was commemorated in crusader Jaffa, where a person marked the place of his alleged embarkation.

Before the middle of the twelfth century, relations between Francia and Armenia were friendly enough for a great pilgrimage of the Armenian catholics, Gregory III Bahavous (1133–1166), to Jerusalem. Received with pomp in Antioch, he participated in the church council of 1142, where he is supposed to have accepted the Latin dogma and the supremacy of Rome. This was the opening of a long series of promises to be given by the heads of eastern communities during the two hundred years of crusader domination. It was possibly on this occasion that the catholics received permission to reconstruct the cathedral and to add an Armenian hospice to it. This may have happened, however, a few years later during the visit of prince Turco (I) (1152–1166) of Cilician Armenia to the court of Amalric. Whatever the case, the new Armenian cathedral in Jerusalem in the rue des Arméniens (Hermits) was functioning by 1165, its architecture a mixture of Armenian and Frankish romanesque styles.

Armenian pilgrims, the "Musulmâni" (Musulmans), those visiting the
holy places, were quite numerous. The Armenian monastery near the grotto of Jeremiah in Jerusalem still has an inscription: "To the souls of all Armenians." Among the pilgrims was prince Toros II. A Frankish chronicler tells an illuminating story of how the Armenian prince, very much aware of the problems of population and security facing the Franks, proposed an Armenian immigration of 30,000 peasants to colonize the country. The plan fell through when the Latin clergy insisted that the new settlers should pay the ecclesiastical tithe. 96

The Armenians certainly regarded the kingdom as a haven. When Saladin and his Kurdish and Syrian troops became lords of Egypt, the Armenian patriarch of Alexandria left Egypt (1172) and settled in Jerusalem, bringing with him seventy-five codexes, among them a marvelous illuminated gospel. Thus were probably laid the foundations for the rich library of the Armenian patriarchate of Jerusalem. He established the monastery of St. Shalkin (Ahû-Sirjah) with twenty monks, in the vicinity of Jerusalem. This initiative was supported by the Franks. He died soon afterward, and it was rumored that he was poisoned by the Armenian bishop of Jerusalem. 97 An Armenian bishop officiated in Jerusalem, and besides the cathedral he was in charge of some other places which belonged to the Armenians, such as the chapel of St. Mary in the Holy Sepulcher and a chapel in the courtyard of the property of the Holy Sepulcher on Mount Zion. 10

The fall of Jerusalem to Saladin was lamented in far-off Cilician Armenia, where the catholics Gregory IV Dgha (the Child, 1173-1193) wrote a dirge to commemorate the event. 99 Saladin, pursuing a policy of favoring the eastern Christians in the crusader kingdom, confirmed the Armenians in their possession of the cathedral of St. James after the fall of the city (1187). 100 The Armenians also kept their property in Bethlehem, and in 1227 a magnificent carved wooden

96 It is not clear on what basis the Latin clergy demanded the tithe, which was paid by the Franks only — by the peasants from their crops, by the landowners from their income. Possibly Toros stipulated that they were to be landowners, and the peasants from whom the Franks had received a part of the tithe. This may explain Toros's answer: "The Armenians will not move to another state's land to be taxed." 97 *The Churches and Monasteries of Egypt and Some Neighboring Countries* (London, 1895), pp. 6-7. The catalogue of the Armenian patriarchate in Jerusalem now in print does not mention any MSS. originating at the place during the crusader period.

98 Theodoric, "Description of the Holy Places," in *PPTS*, V.4 (London, 1894), 13, 20. There is more confusion regarding the monastery of St. Christos in Jerusalem, which Theodore, ibid, p. 49, assigns in 1172 to the Armenians, but which belonged to the Jacobites. Similarly, the monastery of St. Salim is erroneously assigned in 1163 by John of Würzburg to the Armenians, *PPTS*, V.2 (1896), 29, whereas in reality it belonged to the Greeks.


door with Armenian and Arab inscriptions was brought as a gift to the church of the Nativity from the Armenian king Hetoum I, 101 son of Constantine of Lampron. The only other Armenian community in the kingdom was in Acre, with a hospice for the needs of their pilgrims. 102 But it was in Jerusalem 101 and Bethlehem (and later Jaffa) that Armenian sanctuaries assured the survival of the community.

A very similar position to that of the Armenians was enjoyed by the less numerous Cretanian (Georgians, Iberians) community. 103 Their distant homeland in the Caucasus had long-standing connections with the Holy Land, almost since their conversion to Christianity in the fourth century, and after the fall of the first “Armenian” monastery in Jerusalem, St. Menas, was really Georgian. Some monasteries were founded in the second half of the fifth century and later rebuilt by Emperor Justinian. Their number in the crusader area was rather small, but they are mentioned in various western and eastern descriptions of the Holy Land. According to Georgian tradition, king Inguri IV of Georgia received from the Byzantine emperor Constantine IX half of Calvary and established a Georgian hegumen (bishop) in Jerusalem (about 1050). Whatever the case, the Georgian center under the crusaders was the church of the Holy Cross on the main road which led to the Jaffa gate in Jerusalem. It was a Georgian monk, Prokhor, who built the sanctuary (1036–1055). It was probably at that time or slightly later that the two famous versions of the legend which explained or justified the name of the Holy Cross (the place where the true cross from which the cross was made) came into being. 101 Some


102 Röhrich, Regesta, p. 496. An Armenian monastery is also mentioned near Jerusalem, ibid., pp. 590

103 Echternach à Armavir, ed. Michel:ant and Raymond, p. 104: “agres i peden en l'Église des Haroutoun [sic. Haroutun], wo nous laqox de Catholico de donats.”


105 According to one version, Adam voted to plant here a branch of the forbidden tree from Eden. Stuck into the mouth, it imprint itself in the bud. The True Cross was cut from its branches, and from the blood of the Saviour the blood of Adam. According to another version, it was Lot who planted these trees: he, a type of Christ, a disciple, and a gene. They became
Georgian traditions have it that king David II (1089–1125) sent presents to the Holy Sepulcher and built a monastery on Mount Sain. His daughter, or a widow of a Georgian king, became a nun in Jerusalem and with the consent of the patriarch Gebel of Sabran (1108–1112) established a Georgian monastery there. It is not clear if the isolated monastery outside Jerusalem suffered from the Seljukid conquest (1071) or was partially destroyed by the Muslims a generation later in preparation for the defense of the city against the crusaders (1099), or both. However, when the English pilgrim Saewulf visited Jerusalem (1102), he saw it damaged, but a few years later (1106–1107) the Russian hegumen Daniel of Kiev merely mentioned it as belonging to the Georgians without referring to any damage. It is possible that king David II of Georgia restored it. The monastery is mentioned in every crusader itinerary of the twelfth century, and some modern itineraries also mention Georgian hermits, usually near monastic establishments of other riche.

The Georgians did not disappear with the conquest of Saladin. Their monks remained in Jerusalem, and a crusader source has it that when Christian pilgrims hardly dared to go to the holy city, the Georgians were allowed to enter it with pomp carrying their banners. This seems rather an strange statement, but apparently the Georgian queen Tamar (1134–1212) actually established friendly relations with Saladin. It was during her rule that the Georgian monk Shota Rustaveli went to Jerusalem and wrote the greatest of the Georgian national epics, Vepkhis Tavrosani (The man on the leopard's skin), celebrated throughout Georgia in 1937 at the 750th anniversary of its composition. The monastery, which proudly stands now on the road to the Hebrew University, became the property of the Greek patriarchate...
in the sixteenth century. Some years ago, a Grassian archaeological expedition discovered a magnificent painting of the national poet in a seventeenth-century fresco of the monastery.

There are few histories more obscure than that of the Maronites in Lebanon. Since the sixteenth century, when the ties between the Maronites and Rome became stronger and scholars of Maronite origin began writing their history, their early history has been a subject of controversy. There has been little agreement either on the question of Maronite orthodoxy or heterodoxy (in the Latin sense) or on their relations with the crusaders, or even on the area in which they were settled at the time. What makes the study difficult is the fact that the documentation regarding Maronites is extremely poor, some scattered remarks in the chronicles which cannot be assigned with any certainty to the Maronites. Given such little evidence one can dismiss such notions as the continual preoccupation of the Franks with their fate. As a matter of fact nowhere in the rich literature of crusader jurisprudence are the Maronites even mentioned. As for the chronicles, they sometimes mention Christians in the mountains of Tripoli, or Syrians, or inhabitants of the mountainous regions of the

county of Tripoli, without specifying ethnic group or religion. There is certainly no reason to think that the majority of the inhabitants of the county of Tripoli were Maronites.

One reason it is so hard to establish the most elementary facts about the Maronites is that the mountains and deep valleys lying east of the narrow coastal plain were for hundreds of years an asylum of persecuted denominations under both Islam and Christendom. On the other hand, religious propaganda might find there an undisturbed area almost cut off from the outside world. Ramon llii has described the mountain of Lebanon as a tomb of history, and Philip Hitti writes of "the mountains . . . honey-combed with schisms," which is close enough to what was said by the Moslem chronicle Ibn-al-Athir, a contemporary of the crusades.

Since the tenth century, following al-Marjut (about 950) and his contemporary Sa'id ibn-al-Bariq (Ewychias), it was believed that the Maronites had been Monothelites and from the seventh century a heterodox denomination. William of Tyre introduced this view to the crusader world. It was then repeated by James of Vitry, bishop of Acre, and Marino Sanudo (d. 1337), and became accepted in the west. Since the sixteenth century Maronite scholars have energetically combatted this view. An interesting explanation of this question has recently been suggested, namely that we are dealing not with two Maronite schools, St. Maro (d. 410) and John (Yuhannan) Maro (about 707), the organizers of the church, but with a Nestorian Maro of Edessa (d. 580), whose William of Tyre confused with his namesake, the first patriarch of the Maronites. If this thesis is accepted then the famous union of the Maronites during the patriarchate of Aimery of Limoges at Antioch (about 1102) must have another meaning—not the forswearing of heretical views, but the recognition of the supremacy of Rome by an orthodox church under its own primate of patriarch. The reforms mentioned then, and a generation later by Innocent III (1198-1216), were more in the nature of a unification of rites and

113 Hist, Lebanon in History p. 201.
114 Mar al-Athir, in RHC, Ch. 1, 383.
115 Possibly more correctly than Dib; see above, note 112.
116 Crawford, "William of Tyre and the Maronites," pp. 222 ff. This ingenious explanation also suggests that the ninth ecclesiastical council, which, according to William of Tyre (XXI, RHC, Ch. I, 1067-1089) annulled the Monothelites, in fact had nothing to do with it. Although this seems to be a very plausible explanation, one wonders how William of Tyre, who wrote two or three years after the Monothelites were united with the Latin church, could have been so mistaken. For what it is worth, we may note that the French translator of William of Tyre left out the note in the manuscript. Of course, he may have shortened the text, or perhaps used another version.
customs than of a union through acceptance of the orthodox dogma of the two wills in Christ.

It is in connection with this occasion that William of Tyre describes the Maronites as a Christian nation, 40,000 strong, living in the mountains of Lebanon.\[^{117}\] This would be repeated a generation later by James of Vitry, who adds a comment on their prowess as archers.\[^{118}\] The unsolved question is the area of Maronite settlement. It is usually accepted that in the seventh century they migrated southeastward from the Orontes valley and its tributaries into the mountains. They are mentioned by al-Marwâdî in the tenth century as being not only in the mountains, but also in Homs, Hamah, and Ma'arrat an-Nu'mân. The area is badly defined.

In the southern part of Lebanon, on the confines of the county of Tripoli and the Latin kingdom, the mountains seem to have been occupied partly by the Druzes. According to Benjamin of Tudela, the only available source,\[^{119}\] they stretched from the mountains east of Sidon to Mt. Hermon, which means that the area included the Wâdi 'Il-Taim, Marj 'Uyun, and the sources of the Jordan. It is quite possible that they were not with the bedouins of the 'Amilah tribe.\[^{120}\]

The Druzes adjoined to the north another heretical Moslem sect, the Nusairis,\[^{121}\] and it is this problem of the Nusairis which seems to be crucial in demarcating the Maronite area. Unfortunately the question cannot be easily resolved. It has been convincingly argued that the Nusairis were probably among the Persian Shiites on the Lebanese coast and that they were the predominant factor in the mountains of Lebanon, not only in Jabal 'Akár but also at Botron and 'Aqūrah; moreover, that the whole of the Kafrawan area was Nusairi and not Maronite.\[^{122}\] If this is so, then the Maronites were in reality north of the Nusairis and moved into southern Lebanon only after

\[^{117}\] William of Tyre, XXII, 6 (RHC, vol. 4, 1978).

\[^{118}\] James of Vitry, op. cit., cap 31.

\[^{119}\] Benjamin of Tudela, History of All Asia, p. 78.

\[^{120}\] The wandering of the Beisti-'Amillab, who were near similar to upper Gauls, is not very clear. In Gauls they lived with the West-Arabs and at the beginning of the eleventh century moved into the hilly upland in eastern Lebanon of Lattata, in The Encyclopedia of Islam, new ed., 1 [Leiden and London, 1965], 436, a.o. "'Amillah," an expansion of the view that they moved to some in particular to the north. Cf. Lattata, "Notice de géographie syrienne," Mémorial de l'Université de Saint-Joseph, 2 (Beirut, 1906), 175.

\[^{121}\] Henri, Lebanon in History, p. 281.

\[^{122}\] On the Nusairis see Revé Dessauz, Histoire des religions de Nusairie (Paris, 1905). The crucial problem of relations between the Maronites and Nusairis was dealt with very convincingly by Lammens, "Les Nusairis dans le Liban," RHC, VIII (1902), 452-477. In his later Le Syrie des chiffres historiques (2 vol., Beirut, 1923) the problem of text mentioned, strangely enough, the most recent studies do not refer to it. See Wael Hosseini, "The Relations of the Maronites of Lebanon to the Maronites and Nusairis," Memrain, XLIV (1964), 397-404. Daher, "Nusair..."
the destruction of the Nusairi power. The Maronites, as far as can be ascertained, probably occupied a part of the coastal plain outside the maritime cities and the area from Jubaib through Bostan to Tripoli and the Bekaa valley as the mountains to the east.

This not only suggests that the Maronites, far from being the majority of inhabitants of Lebanon, were in reality pressed into a relatively small and well-defined area (although some groups were probably to be found outside), but it may help in explaining the paucity of notes preserved by chroniclers contemporary with the crusades. Christians are occasionally mentioned as giving help to the army of the First Crusade making its way along the Lebanese coast. Again, we find local Christians helping Raymond of St. Gilles (about 1102) in the siege of Tripoli.123 We do not hear specifically about Maronites from crusader sources until their contact with Arzak around 1182.124 Still we know that the Maronite community existed, and it is possible to establish a list of their patriarchs as well as the villages which they settled. The names of villages are almost always linked with monasteries which, with the titles of Maronite prelates, show that the monks were the solid core of their church, probably performing parish duties.

There were patriarchates at St. Mary in Yanib, St. Mary in Mafraq, St. Elijah in Lihdeh, St. Mary in Habbal, St. George in Kafar, all in

---

123. Raymond of Aguilers, in RAC, Occ. 1, 118. 309. The native Christians gave the Franks advice about the road to Jerusalem during the siege of Arzak. Their estimations of its value to given us 60,000.

124. The well-known reports of the defection and submission of Pamm of Tripoli in 1176 caused many difficulties for Maronites. William of Tyre (K.V, 23, in RAC, Occ. 1, 640) says that the Saracens were captured and given to the Franks. In fact, several of the local rulers had defected to any Christian the invitation to any Christian as a demoralisation. William of Tyre does not say that they were Christians, although "Saracens" would normally apply to those on the borders of the Crusader states. The passage mentioned the Franks' treatment of William of Tyre, who wrote: "To Sum, you acknowledge of own Lebanon to technicians; see how many guests consider as guests, all were invited to read the text." It is more likely, as already mentioned by Christians, that those Lebanese were not Maronites but Nusairi.
the diocese of Jubail, and Kafarrai and St. Maro in Kafarraj in the
diocese of Botron. There were also the monastery of Sts. Basil and
Luke, called Mâr Nuhra, in the diocese of Jubail, and the monastery
of St. Sergius near Huraba in the diocese of Tripoli; the monastery
at Kafar (northeast of Botron) and the monastery of Hâlî (southeast
of Jubail). There were other villages such as al-Minârîyah, Damiṣîn
(north of Jubail), and Enbarân and Hâdârîn (in the Basharî
mountains, southeast of Tripoli).

There is no proof that before the union with Rome around 1182
there had been direct contacts between the Maronites and the Latin
church. The act of union occurred in Amiâc. It did not satisfy
everyone; there was a popular movement against it, even accompanied
by acts of violence. We do not know the reaction of the local Latin
clergy, but in 1203 the papal legate, cardinal Peter, met in Tripoli with
the Maronites, who promised submission to Rome. Ten years later
Innocent III invited the Maronite patriarch, Jeremiah of 'Amshli
(1199–1230), to participate in the Fourth Lateran Council. Before
he left Rome in 1216, a papal bull gave instructions to the Maronites
defining dogmas, rites, and customs. It remains a moot question
how far the bull of Innocent III refers to real heterodoxy, but there
is no doubt that he imposed Latin usage on the Maronites. He also
tried to establish unity in the community between Uniates and anti-
Uniates. This situation seems to have persisted throughout the thir-
teenth century and beyond. Frankish ecclesiastical and lay authorities
tried to strengthen the Uniate party. As with other denominations,

129 Amestasani, Bibliotheca armenorum-orientavm (Florence, 1921), pp. 26–16. Cf. Damousal
126 Ibid., pp. 26–27
127 Maronites in the anthropological state of the Maronite patriarch, Antoine; see below note 133
128 C. Salibi, "Maronite Church," in Ortosa Christiana, XLII 97
129 Although a Maronite tradition has it that Alberic of Revoux, cardinal-dean of Reims,
who presided over a synod in Acre in 1140 with the participation of the Armenian catholics,
contacted the Maronites in Tripoli and they declared their submission to Rome.
130 This is indicated by a bull of Innocent III Annun. et. Sullarum Maronitarum, tertio
plebanos buffos, breviis, episcopos, conventos et fratum Maronitarum quosdam
ordinavit pontificis et patriarcharum Antiochiae Synod. Maronitarum annu. (Rome, 1911), pp. 1–6 (text).
131 Ibid.
132 Due to a misprint in an untranslatable in Annun. et. Sullarum Maronitarum, tertio
 capitulum iv pontificis et patriarcharum synod. et. Maronitarum quosdam
ordinavit pontificis et patriarcharum Antiochiae Synod. Maronitarum annu. (Rome, 1911), pp. 1–6 (text).
133 See Annun. et. Sullarum Maronitarum.
the Frankish princes intervened in the elections of the Maronite prelates; the patriarch Jeremiah of Damascus states clearly that the Em- 

brunco lord of Jubail took part in his election.

The opposition to the union brought about the election of rival 
patriarchs supported by the magnates or local Maronite ra
ds. The Uniates were stronger near the coast, that is, nearer the Frankish 
strongholds and cities, whereas the opposition was stronger to the 
east, in the mountain regions. The papacy tried to strengthen the con- 
tacts with the Maronites. Their prelate Jeremiah of Damascus, abbot 
of Kafra, elected after the death of Daniel of Kafra in 1282, was 
invited to Rome, leaving the pastoral duties to a prelate named 
Theodore.

It was at the end of the Frankish rule and the fall of Tripoli that 
a major change took place in Lebanon, the punitive expeditions 
of the Mamluks in 1292 and 1305 against the Nusayris. Their destruc- 
tion allowed a Maronite migration into the south and Kasrawan and 
the redrawing of the ethnic map of Lebanon.

The Jews could not expect any better treatment than the rest of 
the native population; if anything, they could expect worse. The news

85 As late as 1282 Jeremiah witnessed a Norman document in Nafplion, together with some 
other Maronite prelates, the archbishop of "Villafranca" (Argostoli) and the archbishop of "Rimini" 

86 The expeditions are described by Solomon Ibn-Tobi, Histoire de Beyrouth et de ses hôtes 
(Reims, 1877); republished by Francis Hesiers and Sabibi (Beirut, 1969); Arslan 
Jebel, Arabic Sources and Maps of the Crusaders and Crusader States of Lebanon 
(Belgium, 1927); readings corrected by Ben-Sasson, "Les croisades au Levant: le cas de 
Castron et des Croisades de Saladin," Revue d'histoire des religions de l'Orient francophone des 
deux mondes, VII-VIII (1937-1938), 43-63. They are also mentioned by 1283-1292 (6 d. 1358) and 
ibn by 1292 (6 d. 1443). The raids were thoroughly analyzed by Lammens, "Les incursions 
des Mamelouks dans l'Arabie," and compared with late Maronite historiography, which are in 
turn an exposition against the Maronites still lurched the episode into a national historic epic.

87 The main collections of sources regarding the history of the Jews under crusader and 
Mamluk rule will appear in Saif al-Din, ed. Maimonides & Bens. J. Praver, and Clément 
H. Ben-Sasson. The number of sources grows each year with the publication of the 
Crusader material. The local publications are included in the Bibliography of Jewish Sources 
(Liturgical sources, published by the National Library in Jerusalem). Four monumental collections of 
documents and studies are basic for any period: Jacob Mann, The Jews in Egypt and in Palestine 
before the First Crusade (2 vols., London, 1928-1929); repr., New York, 1936); Anna. 
Texts and Studies in Jewish History and Literature (2 vols., Cincinnati, 1929-1935); Solomon D. Gud- 
stein, A Mediterranean Sourcebook (2 vols., Berkeley, 1968-1978), and E. Abatine-Sarame, History 
material was recently published in an ambitious volume entitled by Galil, Persecution 
Among Jews in Early Islam and Crusader Times in the Light of the Crusader Documents, ed. 
J. Hacker (Hebrew University, Jerusalem, 1980). An important collection of excerpts from sources in 
& Dagan (Philadelphia, 1964). For a general study of the period, with extensive bibliography,
of the horrible massacres of Jews in the Rhineland in 1096 reached the east almost a year before the crusading armies appeared. The Jewish communities from Antioch in the north to Raffiyah in the south prepared themselves for the worst in the event of a crusader victory. Some tried to find refuge in the larger cities and fortifications.

The conquest was as much a calamity for the Jewish communities as it was for the Moslems. The Jews defended and died for Jerusalem (1099) and Homs (1100). In other places like Antioch, Jaffa, and Beirut, they were exterminated together with the local population. Those who escaped tried to reach the Moslem lands of the 'Abdallah caliphate or Fatimid Imamate.

Yet, after this period of calamity, which lasted some ten years, things began to change. Except in Jerusalem, where neither Moslem nor Jews were allowed to live, there was no specific discrimination against the Jews in the sense of distinguishing between them and other natives. This remained so until the end of the crusader states on the coast of Syria and Palestine, a remarkable fact if we remember that it was precisely at this time that Europe initiated anti-Semitic legislation which for eight or nine centuries controlled the fate of the dispersed nation. Moreover, when every crusade from the first to that of Louis IX was accompanied by new pogroms, whether in France, England, or Germany, we hear of no excesses of this kind in the lands of Christian domination in the Levant. This does not mean that the crusaders were in any sense tolerant, but simply that they looked on all natives as a single legal class. This prevented specific discrimination against the Jews, although in daily affairs relations were certainly more nuanced. Thus William of Tyre complained that the crusader princes preferred Jewish and Moslem doctors to...
Christians, and James of Vitry accused the crusaders of being too tolerant of Jews.\footnote{118}

The conquest created conditions which reshaped the map of the Jewish communities. They were exterminated in the cities, mainly on the coast, but as there was no real fighting for control of the countryside we find in the twelfth century some two dozen villages (there were possibly more) in Galilee with a Jewish population.\footnote{119} Moreover, the Jews, like the Moslems, soon settled again in the maritime cities. In two, Tyre and Ascalon, which capitulated rather than be taken by force, there is good reason to assume that the Jewish communities survived and continued to exist under crusader rule.

At the end of the first kingdom there were important changes in the Jewish community, bringing about a kind of renaissance in the thirteenth century. Jewish pilgrimages to the Holy Land continued without any difficulties during the whole of the twelfth century. If anything, they were more frequent than before. Moreover, if the pilgrimages before the crusades were mainly restricted to Jews from the Moslem Near East, the development of commercial routes linking the Levant and Europe now brought Jews from western Europe. Some, like the Spanish Jew Benjamin of Tudela or the German Pseudo-Regensburg (fl. 1190), left "Itineraries" not unlike their Christian contemporaries, but actually with a different perspective.

This pilgrimage movement began to change in size and in character at the time of Saladin’s conquest (1187). The occurrences which had focused attention on the Holy Land created repercussions among Jews everywhere. Soon messianic stirrings made their appearance from Spain to Baghdad and far off Khurasan.\footnote{120} Some were directly linked with the crusades, others were due to local circumstances, still others grew out of forces within the Jewish community, but all had in common the background of the wars of cross and crescent.

When the ideology of holy war was transferred Europeans to the east and rekindled the Moslem jihād in reaction, the Jewish community reacted with their own interpretation of events. As early as the First Crusade there is recorded, in a letter which originated in the Balkans, a messianic movement centered on Thessalonica (1096) and spreading

\footnote{118} William of Tyrre, XVII, 34 (RHC, Ch. 4, 879-881); James of Vitry in Borges, Gesta Del popolo Frances, vol. 12. The characteristics of the Jews in Palestine was the one current in contemporary Europe but had hardly any application to the Jews of the Levant.

\footnote{119} See the list of Jewish settlements in cities and villages in Frankish, Latin Kingdom, Hebrew ed., chap. 12.

into Anatolia and Syria. Since the real causes of the crusade were unknown, the description is a mixture of fantasy and wishful thinking. The crusaders were conceived of as the ten lost tribes shut up by Alexander the Great behind the mountain of darkness. Now, moved by God's order, they were proceeding to the east. The prophet Ezekiel had appeared; and in some communities the Jews sold their property and waited for the Messiah who would bring them to Jerusalem. The whole aim of the crusade, according to the anonymous author of this letter, was "to gather them as on a threshing floor and then God will say to Israel: 'Stand up and thresh, O daughter of Zion'" (Micah 4:13).

The calamities associated with the crusades interrupted speculations for a time, although the messianic expectations did not cease. The new security offered by the crusader states on the coast brought about the reestablishment of Jewish communities there, and in the 1170's a flourishing Jewish community existed in Tyre. Although the Palestinian Gaonate ceased to exist in the Holy Land, the sages of Tyre were in contact with the great leader of the period, Maimonides (d. 1204), who settled in Fustat in Egypt. He praised them for their learning, which was renowned even outside the boundaries of the country. Another community of importance was that of Acre.

The fall of Jerusalem to Saladin and far-reaching consequences for the Jewish community. Crusader legislation prejudicial to Moslems and Jews was naturally abolished, and the few Jews who had lived under royal tolerance near the citadel of Jerusalem became a fair-sized community. As a matter of fact, three Jewish groups settled in the place: the Ascalonites, whose city was dismantled on the order of Saladin (September 1191), Jews from the Maghreb who fled the persecutions (1198-1199) of Abu-Yusuf Ya'qub al-Mansur and his son Muhammad an-Nasir, and finally Jews from France and the Plantagenet dominions on French soil. This last was a migration of some 300 families with their rabbus, moving to Jerusalem in two groups in 1209 and 1210.

This sudden revival of Jewish community life in Jerusalem after

141 See above, note 139
142. The rich apocalyptic literature הביא את כוחו של הים בין בשמועה ו נשיאת אימאם עב-ויב
143 Koenigs of Mosavrides (in Hebrew), ed. Alfred Frankman (Jerusalem, 1949), p. 103
144 Benjamin of Tudela, Itinerary, ed. Adler, p. 35.
three generations of being barred from the city seemed providential. When al-Hariri, the Jewish poet from Spain, visited Jerusalem in 1216, he was told by a Jewish inhabitant of the city: “And God moved the spirit of the king of [the] Ismaelites [Moslems] in the year 4950 of creation [1190] and the spirit of good counsel and right moved him and he and all his host went out from Egypt and laid siege to Jerusalem. And God gave it into his hands. And he ordered to be proclaimed in every city, to old and young, as follows: ‘Speak ye to the heart of Jerusalem, let everybody from the seed of Ephraim, from the Diaspora of Ashur and Egypt, from all those dispersed in the four corners of the world, come to her’ And so they gathered from all horizons and settled inside her boundaries.”

One cannot exclude the possibility of such an official proclamation by Saladin. There was the earlier example of Zengi, who after the capture of Edessa settled 300 Jewish families there, who would later be extremely loyal to the Moslems.

But on the whole this seems rather an explanation ex post facto, made some twenty-five years after the renewal of Jewish life in Jerusalem.

From then on the movement bore more the character of an immigration than a pilgrimage to the holy places. Some of the greatest Jewish luminaries of the period settled in the Holy Land. Suffice it to mention the leader of French Jewry in the middle of the thirteenth century, rabbi Yehiel of Paris (d. 1286), that of Spanish Jewry Nahmanides in 1267, and rabbi Menahem of Roonenbergh, caught in 1283 by emperor Rudolph I of Hapsburg in northern Italy, while on his way to the Holy Land with his family.

Though certainly influenced by the general deterioration of the position of the Jews in Europe, the new attitude was mainly the outcome of Jewish reaction to the great events in the Holy Land. When the messianic expectations of the First Crusade were followed by massacres, the creation of the crusader kingdom was perceived by Jews as an act of injustice. How did it happen, asked the great Hebrew poet in far-off Spain, Yehudah ha-Levi (fl. 1140), that “the Edomite crusader] became resident in my palace, that the hands of the Arabs reign and that the red one [Edomi, “Essu, Christian] rules my sheep with his dogs?” And a twelfth-century German poet, who also wrote the “Chronicle of the Massacres” of the crusaders in Europe, Ephraim

148. Fur Mosen are the names in the Jewish Community Book of Worms, in Shaw As-garibim, ed. ben-Yaakov (Wien, 1866), p. 64b.
of Bona (fl. 1180), prays: "Let him turn Edom into Sodom and the cursed Ismael into Gomorrah. Let him return the power, which was once given to us, and let him give back to us the whole land of Israel."  

The European Jew saw little difference in the land of his forefathers being in Christian or Muslim hands. Both were unjust, both were unlawful, and providence would presumably soon take vengeance and restore the promised land to its legitimate owners. It is in this framework that we should envisage the Jewish immigration to Palestine in the thirteenth century. The war between Islam and Christendom, in which defeat or victory on one side or the other never seemed decisive, and major battles in the Holy Land memorably brought about its destruction, gave rise to a particular Jewish view of events. This is clearly expressed in the biblical commentary of Nahmanides, born in Spain but completed in Jerusalem, where he created a school of wide repute. The basic ideas of Nahmanides are summarized in his exposition of Leviticus (22:36): "And I will bring the land into desolation and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it." Nahmanides comments: "This is the message of glad tidings throughout the countries of the Exile, that our land does not accept our foes, it is also a decisive proof and a promise to us, for in all the inhabited world there is no land so fair and large, settled from time immemorial and which is as desolate as it is now. For ever since we departed from it, it had not accepted a single nation. They all try to settle it, but it is beyond their power."

The thrust of this interpretation was that the time of salvation was near. Moreover it would not do just to wait for the decree of providence and the coming of the Messiah. The legitimate right of the Holy Land was not prescriptive, and every generation, including Nahmanides' own, was ordered to take hold and inherit the land. "It is a divine precept to inherit the land which God gave to our forefathers...and we shall not leave it either to the foreign nations not to desolation." This right to the heritage is considered to be tangibly proved by the existing situation, which Nahmanides sums up in a succinct phrase: "Great is the desolation in this rich and wide land, because they do not deserve you and you are not fit for them."

Nahmanides not only expounded a theory, but what he preached he put into practice. He left his Catalan birthplace, migrated to the Holy Land in 1267, and established himself among the ruins of Jerusalem, where soon a synagogue and a school made their appear-
ance. Yet it was not Moslem Jerusalem but crusader Tyre and Acre which became the centers of the Jewish community. Jerusalem suffered many vicissitudes in the thirteenth century, and life there was extremely insecure. When in 1229 al-Malik al-Kamil handed it over to Frederick II, anti-Jewish legislation was re-established. Following some negotiations, however, a Jewish family was allowed to live in Jerusalem and so to assure a holy place for Jewish pilgrims, who were allowed to visit the city. The Khwarizmian invasion of 1244 and the Mongol raids of 1260 in the vicinity of Jerusalem made life almost impossible, and many who and tried to strike roots in the holy city left for the coast. Consequently Acre, the richest of the crusader cities, became the great Jewish center from the second quarter of the thirteenth century on. Security was greater in the cosmopolitan city and so were the economic means of subsistence.

The Jewish community in Acre became a cross-section of the different communities of the Diaspora. The leading elements were Jews from Spain and from northern and southern France, in addition to eastern Jews, whether Palestinian-born or from neighboring Moslem countries. Each element brought its own traditions in ritual and liturgy, but also its own attitudes to the great intellectual problem common to Judaism, Christianity, and Islam—the relation between philosophy and religion. Jewish Spain and southern France represented in this sense a more liberal attitude than the Diaspora of Ashkenaz in northern France and Germany, although a new trend, that of Spanish mysticism (the Kabbala), was quickly finding adherents. The focus of tension was the philosophical works of Maimonides ("The Guide of the Perplexed"). Veheiment discussions between their adherents and those who condemned them stirred unprecedented troubles and even led to mutual excommunication of the contending factions. Acre became a battleground of the opposing views, where European and eastern Jewish centers, like Damascus and Mosul, intervened. The latter, who fanatically adhered to Maimonides, took a strong view against those who calendroned his memory, an attitude also to be found in Egypt and in crusader Acre. Here a Talmudic academy continued the tradition of the French Talmudists, whereas rabbi Salomon Petit (fl. 1230) expounded the Kabbala and Spanish Jews continued their own tradition. The flourishing community of Acre lived its great days in the last quarter of the century, but was wiped out.

150. Geism, "New Sources on Palestine during the Crusader Period," Eretz Israel, IV (1967), 155
during the massacre which followed its capture by al Ashraf Khalil in 1291. 111

There were two major factors which directly influenced the existence and the way of life of the minorities: the European traditional social structure imposed by the crusaders and the organization of political and social life of the minorities in the previous Moslem period. 113 The European feudal system offered a model of human interdependence. Moslem society at the turn of the eleventh century was evolving in the same direction, though one would hesitate to call it feudal. At no time before or after did the two societies so much resemble each other as at the beginning of the twelfth century. On the other hand, although minorities were not entirely unknown in Europe, it was the Moslem east which, during the previous four hundred years, had developed methods of rule over and coexistence with minorities. With the conquest of the Levant, and the problem of ruling a local population made up of heterogeneous groups, the crusaders took over the existing system and adapted it to their own needs and assumptions. They also accepted with some modification the system of social and economic dependence, which met their material needs and conformed to their image of society. The Franks had no wish to disrupt local groups and institutions; as a matter of fact they were happy to preserve them as the basis of their own feudal superstructure. The model seems to have been common to the northern principalities and the Latin kingdom, but different demographic patterns led to some variety.

The most striking change affected the Moslems. From rulers they became subjects, losing in the process their urban and rural aristocracy, their intellectual caste, and their political institutions. Relegated to the class of the conquered, their organization did not differ from that of the other non-Frankish minorities.

The feature common to all the minority groups was their autonomous organization as religious communities. In some cases they were identified with territorial units—villages or quarters in cities. Some preserved a larger organizational framework, like the ecclesiastical

111 On the Jewish community in Acre see Prawer, Royzeste judaica, 11, 397-403
112 See I. Syrie du nord, passim; the question has been treated in more detail by the same author, "Le Réseau rural syrien au temps de la domination franque," Bulletin de la Faculté des lettres de Strasbourg, XXIX (1894-1911), 168-180; idem, "Le Fédéralisme et les institutions politiques de l'Orient ixam," Orbis Orientis, 1957 (Академия наук имени дина Линке, Фондация Александра Вена, Анди ди аммероль, XII, Rome, 1957), pp. 167-190. See also Prawer, Royzeste judaica, 1, 461-437; idem, Latin Kingdom, pp. 46-89, 126-159, 234-235
organizations of Christians and Jews, but in everyday life it was the smaller units of tightly organized local communities which played a major role in the life of their members.

The independence of the communities was reflected in the jurisdictional rights of their religious leaders, including questions of marriage and inheritance. In many cases there was a mixed leadership of local clergy and lay notables, a feature common to Christians and Jews, but possibly also to Muslims. This was a legacy of the former Muslim period with its notion of dhimmis, clients of the Muslim state. Basically applied to the Adl al-Kabir (the people of the Holy Scriptures of Revelation), it guaranteed life and property as well as the right to live according to one's own laws and customs. This notion of second-class subjects, distinguished from the ruling group by religion, was taken over by the crusaders.

John of Ibelin, count of Jaffa (1259–1266), recounts somewhat naively how autonomy was granted to the minorities, and attributes it to Godfrey of Bouillon. The "Syrians," he says, came to Godfrey and asked for the privilege of being judged by their own courts and their own laws. Then request was granted. The story is an episode in a larger narrative about how the laws of the kingdom were created, the details of which are partly legendary, although there was nothing extraordinary in the Syrian request.

The crusaders granted autonomy not only to "Syrians" but also to Muslims and Jews. The institutional expression of this autonomy, according to John of Ibelin, was the court of the seigneur, the headman of the community. Crusades documents furnish us with a number of cases in which such seigneurs (though not their courts) appear. In addition to the rural or village courts there were "seigneurial courts," whose position was to some extent different from that of their rural ammenities.


The term *ra'is*, transcribed as *raecus* (and the office as *reisagium*), must have meant different things depending on place and community. In the city of Antioch it seems to have corresponded to the *index*, a title taken over from the former Byzantine administration or derived from the Norman Sicilian administration;\(^{156}\) in the modern and eastern Christian villages it must have corresponded to the headman of the village, the *mukhtar* of modern eastern villages. In the majority of cases, however, we may assume that it really corresponded to the head of the *hamilah*, the extended family. The *ra'is* was probably the head of the dominant *hamilah* of the village. This explains why in several villages we find more than one *ra'is*, who must have represented several village *hamilahs*;\(^{153}\) these were extraordinary cases, as the villages as a rule were relatively small and not many *hamilahs* lived in a single village.

The *ra'is* of the village, head of a *hamilah*, was by definition a notable, and exercised a traditional kind of patriarchal jurisdiction over the inhabitants. He was certainly not chosen by the Frankish lord, although he was acknowledged and confirmed by him. Some were quite important, being *ra'is* of a district or a group of villages (possibly inhabited by the same clan), and therefore exercising considerable influence. In such a case, the Frankish lord took care to safeguard his rights, and although the post was certainly hereditary, at least in the notable's family, the confirmation was formal. A good example is that of the Hospitallers who "conceded to Adel, Abul [Abel] a number of villages to hold, till and guard as long as he will please the masters and brothers of the order."\(^{146}\) This kind of native overlordship must have been more common in the thinly populated and less accessible mountain areas, hence the *reisagium* mentioned to be found in a crusader document.\(^{159}\) In similar cases, particularly in the mountains of Lebanon in the county of Tripoli, the Franks looked on the *ra'is* as a regular,\(^{185}\) kneglet or chieftain, possibly corresponding to the local chieftains of the mountains of Tripoli, the *maqashdars*.

Head of the village community, notable of the district with traditional rights of jurisdiction, the *ra'is* was also the Frankish lord's representative in his dealings with the community.\(^{161}\) As such he might

---

\(^{156}\) Caham, *Ispica du nord*, pp. 465-466.


\(^{159}\) *Ibid.*, an 332.


\(^{161}\) Other officials, not necessarily vassals or connected with the native community, were the *sargamas* and *apotele*, see Riley-Smith, "Some Later Officials," pp. 35-36.
be called a bailie, although this could also mean a Frankish supervisor, a kind of steward, like the Venetians' gastaldo in their rural domain in Tyre. As the lord's representative he was important, because the Frankish drew their revenue as a rule not from individual peasant lots, but from the entire village community or some part of it.

In both his responsibilities, the traditional and the official, the res took counsel with the elders of the village, whom we see on occasion participating in the symbolic act of transferring the lordship of the village from one Frank to another or taking a form of oath in a mixed Frankish-oriental ceremony.

The problem of autonomy for minorities was far more complex in the cities. There had existed native courts headed by the res, but these disappeared in time, to be replaced by the Cour de la Fonde, or court of the market. Though our sources speak only of "Syrians", possibly meaning Melkites and Jacobites, other minorities, Moslems and Jews, were undoubtedly affected. Prima facie, one has the impression that the replacement of the court of the res by the Cour de la Fonde was tantamount to the abolition of the autonomy of the non-Frankish communities. But Jewish sources prove beyond a doubt that Jewish autonomous jurisdiction not only continued to exist but, if anything, became stronger in the course of the thirteenth century. The rabbinical courts and the "good man of the city" (rubai l-harir) or the "presidency of the community" (rashel ha-qahal) functioned even in smaller communities divided one from another because of their different liturgies, with their own religious and lay leadership.

Besides religious questions they took care of education, ritual baths, ritual slaughterhouses, synagogues, schools, the ransom of prisoners, and a multitude of welfare problems.

What is certain for the Jewish community was probably no differ-

162 Some of these officials were distinctly eastern names, like Benvene (Peter), Serret (Shem).


164 Debrulle Le Roux, Carthage, II, 784-785, 786-787.


166 E.g., discussion of the rabbinical court in Acre in the second half of the twelfth century, Raccolta di Monumenti, ed. Strassfeld, the documents of the "Qahal of Acre" in 1234, Rapport de M. A. Abraham, Sue de Meunistes, ed. Fruinman and Grotte (Baltimore, 1937), 264 (p. 25). For more details see Frumar. "The Jews in the Latin Kingdom."

167 See the letters from Jerusalem by rabbi Yehiel ha-Zurfal in Mann, The Jews in Egypt and in Fustat under the Fatimid Caliphate, vol. I. The most up-to-date study is that of Gottier, A Mediterranean Society, vol. II, which deals with such problems in the Fatimid and Ayyubid empires. Cf. Ashken-Szirma, History of the Jews in Egypt and Syria, passim.
ent for other minorities. The silence of the sources respecting the court of the rabs in the cities (only larger cities with their own Cour de la Fonde are in question) should not be regarded as implying their abolition. It is reasonable to suppose that the native courts continued to function, catering to the needs of the members of the community. Their activity depended on the cohesion of the community, and its willingness to bring the cases of its own members before its own court. This had long been the case, certainly for the past four centuries, since the Arab conquest, and possibly much earlier, given the fact that Jewish autonomy had existed at least since the second century. The members of minority communities could bring cases involving their own members before the public court of the lordship, but this was always looked upon askance by every community, since it opened the door to outside interference. The invocation of the state was often formally prohibited by secular or ecclesiastical authorities threatening the offender with anathema. This was as common as the official prohibition against invoking outside intervention in the election of officials among the different communities. There were always jurisdictional problems regarding members of the same community, but the courts of the local or of the ecclesiastical courts continued to act according to their own customs and laws.

However, Syrian and Palestinian cities were extremely heterogeneous in their ethnic and religious composition, to which there was now added a new ruling class, the Franks, whose economic life was interwoven with that of the local population. This created a new problem, that of jurisdiction in mixed cases involving members of different communities. Moreover, there was a wide range of criminal cases involving members of minority groups which were never in the hands of the rabs. This belonged to the local Court of Bourgeois. The same is true for civil cases involving property held in bourgeois tenure (bourgeois). However, the supplanting of the court of the rabs by the Cour de la Fonde was linked with the commercial traffic of the

---

167 The same rules applied in the contemporary Muslim state. A relevant case is that of Salahud who sought for legal advice regarding the jurisdiction of the different. He received an answer from the al-Din bin al-Din al-Ashlangi of the Mamluk rule, subscribed to by the Din bin al-Din al-Basalti of the Mamluk state. According to the Mamluk, Jews should be judged by their own customs (sefot) and not by Muslim law. Only if both parties agree could the suit come before a Muslim judge, who could still refuse to hear the case. The decision is recorded by Tah al-Din al-Basalti, Tahqiqat al-Sudurwa al-Arabi, in Martin Schramm, "Notes sur les Juifs dans l'Islam," Revue des études juives, XCVI (1894), 200-213.


169 Non-Francs were excluded de jure from holding bourgeois, but in practice they were often proprietors of city land and city houses; cf. Abrege du livre des Avocats de la Cour des Bourgeois, cap. 24 (RPC, Livr. II, 254).
rugs and bazaars and the coexistence of different communities in restricted areas. This created intercommunity agreements and litigation mentioned in crusader sources, respecting debts, mortgages, rents, loans, sales, purchases, and the like.

In the rugs and bazaars, buyers and sellers often belonged to different communities. In Acre or Tyre the seller might have been a Moslem, eastern Christian, or Jew, often a peasant bringing his products or wares from the countryside; the buyer was usually a Frank. In litigation involving a Frank, the non of the community would hardly be acceptable to the crusaders on judge. The same would also be true in commercial cases involving members of different minorities. Such cases came before the Cour de la Fonde. Its president, the bailie, was a Frank, noble or burgher; two of its jurors were Franks, the other four were "Syrians." Melkites or Jacobites. If the suit involved a sum greater than one mark of silver, the competent authority was not the Cour de la Fonde but the Court of Burgesses.

Thus the emergence of the Cour de la Fonde left the court of the non intact, as far as its own community was concerned, its effect depending on the willingness of its members to use it. A state court, royal or baronial, came into being for those who, for various reasons, preferred a public court, while the Cour de la Fonde was the institution competent to judge cases which involved Franks and natives.

Religion was at the basis of the crusaders' attitude to the minorities, but the legal and social standing of a member of any minority was additionally circumscribed by where he lived and his occupation. The major distinction was that between city and country dwellers. Religious affiliation had little to do with economic occupation, and consequently a Melkite or Jacobite, to mention the largest group of non-Latin Christians, as a Moslem or Jew, enjoyed several privileges when he lived in a city which he lost if he lived in a village or on

170 Livre des Assises de la Cour des Bourgeois, cap. 246 (RHC, Lois II, 171).
171 At the beginning of the fourteenth century, one mark of silver equaled 25 bezants of Cyprus.
172 The manual procedure for that conventional rate was produced by the defendant. Livre des Assises des Bourgeois, caps. 39-43 (RHC, Lois, II, 53-56) "Car il est confirmable que le boni lui eut abi libre, fait et justice done l'an de l'an, de ce dit dehors ou ces paroles" (cap. 43, p. 364, with exceptions noted in ibid., cap. 140, pp. 93) Thus often created legal difficulties for example, the impossibility of church officials administering their property. The papacy intervened several times on such matters; e.g., Acta Synodorum, ed. Thiene, no. 80, pp. 168-169: "et non, in nomine Gregoria, vel Saruma vel Armeniae et gentilium fidelium venio et insistit et condemna aliqua vel rubens et omnia veleta et tantoscemume undaque veleta."
a farm. Basically, there were no serfs in the crisis. The expression

seres in the sense of serf is almost never to be found in crusader
documents, though it does appear (with another meaning) in the writ-
ings of the jurists. In crusader acts, all non-Francish peasants are

villeins or rustici. 173 The feudal vocabulary of the crusaders is mani-

festly that of northern France (with some exceptions in Antioch and

Tripoli) and one wonders if the use of villeins rather than seres re-

dicts the European legal distinction, foggy as it often was, between

the two. Yet the villeins in the crusader kingdom was for all practical

purposes a serf. If we had only the legal treatises to go by, the picture

would seem clear enough, though not very detailed. Only John of

Ibelin paid any attention to the problem. From him we learn about

the existence of legislation and legal institutions dealing with villeins.

A special assise, called L'assise et l'établissement des villeins et des

villeins, was promulgated to deal with some aspects of the problem.

Unfortunately the precise date of promulgation, apparently in the

first half of the twelfth century, is not stated. The aim of the assise

was to establish the rights of feudal landlords over their villeins. At

the same time, it ordered the establishment of special courts to deal

with fugitive villeins. 174 The members of this special court were vari-

ously called juges, enquereurs, or citius qui tenent l'assise. Their ap-

pointment was the responsibility of the overlord (it is not clear whether

this meant the king or the holder of the lordship). There had to be

"three liegesmen to hold the assise," to be established par les contres

et par les seignories. If one of them failed to act or changed his place

of residence, he had to be replaced by the overlord. 175

The procedure of the court is reminiscent of the Carolingian inqui-

stio or the Anglo-Norman inquest. Its main function was to decide

questions of lordship over villeins as well as to call for the pursuit

of fugitives and their restoration to their legal owners. In disputed

cases the ownership of a villein could be decided by an enquête using

the testimony of other villeins.

Thus the peasants were ad gladium adscripti. They were not allowed

to leave their farms without permission of their lords. For marriage

was also prohibited, but if it took place with the connivance of an-

other lord, the latter had to replace the loss of the female serf by

another woman of the same age and condition. In some cases peasant

173. The noun rustici is for some reason more frequent in the unedited Venetian doc-


Institutions (Oxford, 1980), pp. 203 ff


175 Felmar, caps. 252 (ibid., p. 409).
families, or rather their heads, were called *horrulges*. Despite the
noble origin of the designation they do not seem to differ from other
villains, and the noun does not seem to mean more than "subjects,"
people dependent on an overlord. 176

All this sounds very much like feudal European legislation. Although
links of dependence, even strict dependence, had existed before, Is-
lamic law, which sanctioned slavery, did not recognize the status of
serf. Modern legislation made a distinction between the vassals and the
non-vassal clients of the Moslem state, but this reflected their position
as subjects of the state, not personal servitude.

Still, the crusader conquest did not sensibly change the position
of the Syrian and Palestinian peasantry. By the eleventh century, free
and independent peasants were rare in the Moslem Near East. There
was a proliferation of large domains belonging to pious institutions
(slang., *wa'af*), a process probably accentuated by the Seljukids. In
addition, the spread of the *qurban*, a benefice or *hilff*, made the peas-
ant dependent on an overlord. Finally, the private usurpation of pay-
ments to the state also contributed to the same development, the dis-
appearance of small independent properties. The Frankish lords merely
generalized the existing system of servitude.

The legal position of villains can also be deduced from the legal
acts of the period. Land is alienated "cum omnibus terris, villanis
et pertinentia suis"; 177 or with the land there also go "praeclari villani
cum eorum posteris ministerii"; 178 or land is transferred "cum omnibus
villanis Suriarum sive Sarracensia, ab quem sine," 179 or "cum vinita
et oliveti et iardicis, cum omnibus terris suis cultis et inculis, cum
omnibus villanis terrae et cum omnibus pertinentiis et divisionibus
suis." 180

Servile, being a personal condition, went with the villain wher-
ever he might be. Thus land is alienated "cum rustici quoque, qui
de eadem casaliu non tuli, suae commune muni," 181 or "simul cum rusti-
cis omnibus qui in predicto castru habiabant praesentialiter, et quicum-
que convixi potuerunt inveniri bene de predicto casali. Possibly this applies to fugitive villeins. In some cases Frankish lords entered into special agreements with their neighbors to prevent villeins’ running away and settling in other villages. Thus in 1154 Bohemond I of Antioch, when selling al-Marqab to the Hospitallers, specifies that if “my villeins, or those of my men, who are Saracens, by any chance come into the territory of Valencia in Margat . . . the brothers of the Hospital will return them to us according to the custom and the customs of the land. But if they are Christians, the Hospitallers will recompense us (parificabam) within fifteen days or will release them from their land. But if their villeins by chance come into my land or the land of my men, we shall likewise give them back to the brothers of the Hospital.” A curious agreement, from the neighborhood of Beirut, stipulates that the Buhrur emirs of al-Ghurba will hand all fugitive villeins from Beirut over to the Frankish lord of the city within eight days.

The flight of villeins was not uncommon in the early years of the existence of the kingdom, though this was more the result of political circumstances. In one case, however, in the middle of the twelfth century, Moslem peasant, because of maltreatment in the vicuity of Nablus, set up an organization to enable fugitives from Frankish lands to escape and join their Moslem coreligionists.

One peculiarity of this rural regime deserves looking at. Many documents mention the sale or gift of individual villeins or villein families. Thus in a generous grant of villages to the Hospitallers, Pons of Tripoli (1112–1137) adds: “And I give the right to all my men, who hold land from me, that if they are willing, they may give one villein to the Hospital . . . anyone whatsoever in his stead. I likewise approve their giving more, if done after consulting me.” A confirmation of the Hospital’s privileges in 1154 reads like a strange inventory of donations of single villeins: “one rich villein who lives in Nablus . . . three villeins given by the bishop of Nazareth (Achard), one given by William de Fenchi, another by Pagman Vacca, another given by Drogo,” and so on. There are many similar donations which prove such procedure to be customary in the Latin east. The frequency of

112. Delaville Le Roulx, Cartulaire, III, 135 (no. 1372).
113 1 loc., 1, 495 (no. 783).
116 Delaville Le Roulx, Cartulaire, II, 77 (no. 82).
117 1 loc., 1, 272 (no. 225).
this type of donation, though not unknown in the West, seems to be a product of the Frankish agricultural regime. In theory, the sale or gift (which was more common) of a villena meant the transfer of the man, his family, and his descendants into somebody else's power. It also meant the transfer of his tenure and of its dues and services to the new lord. However, our documentation points to the transfer of economic rights only, while jurisdiction over the person remained with the former lord, unless a whole village or a larger territory was transferred. This is understandable if we remember that the crusaders did not create a manorial system, or at least had little or no demesne land. Consequently, payments in kind or cash, and dues in kind on special occasions, were the main villena obligations. Other than the servitiae, the bulk of these dues was paid by the village as a whole. 108 Corvées were almost entirely nonexistent or very limited and in such cases concentrated on special crops (olive groves, vineyards) or occupations (fishing). 104 Since the Frankish overlord was rather a rentier than a squire with land in the village, it was simpler in making an economic donation, therefore, to mention the villena and his family rather than describe his property.

Economically and socially a number of villena families enjoyed considerable local prestige. Such were the families of the rutti, as well as the richer villena, forming a class similar to the European vilici. Such, for example, was the villena given in 1154 by Paganus II, lord of Haifa, to the Hospitaliers, together “with lands and houses in Haifa and Capharnaum” (Shiqmona to the south of Haifa), 106 obviously a man of some standing, as was the alicia villena in Nablus. 107 Sometimes villena came into some property or income by performing special duties. In such case they held service tenures, such as an eastern Christian ‘Abd-al-Maslih (Abuchamie), the rutti of Margat, who possessed three fourths of a village, 108 or Guido Raucius, who seems to have held a large tract of land near Nablus. 109 In Acre the care of the mill of the Holy Sepulcher belonged to three Syrians, Nicephor, Michael, and Nicholas; their office was hereditary and is described as

108 auct. Hist. "Quotquot colubram, omnium causis; ut potens dividisset lux, quod tenuerat nascentem haeremur." The same argument applied to farms. See the Venetian inventory of their possessions in Tyre, in Taub and Thomas, op. cit., 18, 373.
109 Delaville Le Rond, Cartulaire, II, 172 (n. 225).
110 Iad.
111 Ibid., II, 314 (n. 457): 1174.
feodum villanam and villanum.194 Others received real fiefs, like the Arab knight or warrior (Arabicus miles) who possessed two villages,195 or the Turcopole who held land near Nablus.196 The Barda Hanno, who in 1154 gave a whole village near Acre to the order of St. John,197 may also have been a military warrior. Still, such cases were exceptional, and one cannot draw the conclusion that Moslem served the Franks in a military capacity.

In addition to the vassals, the legal treaties also mention "servi." Then appearance is so rare that we feel we are dealing not really with serfs but with slaves. It was a crusader rule that no Latin Christian could become a slave. The only slaves were Moslems, eastern Christians, or Jews, usually captured in conquered cities or bought in the market.198 If a slave ran away, the law was called throughout the city. The hiding of a fugitive slave was a criminal offense punishable by hanging.199 The ransom of captured Jews from the Franks is as well attested as the ransom of eastern Christians and Franks from the Moslems.200

When dealing with vassals and slaves, one must also deal with enfranchisement. The jurists have almost nothing to say about it; only the mid-thirteenth-century compilation known as Livre des Assain des Bourgeois furnishes some details. Unfortunately it is not the most reliable source, since the chapters dealing with enfranchisement can be traced back to the Provençal Lo Co, and indirectly to Roman law.201 Still, some of the customs are certainly part of crusader law. Freedom a slave could be done in one of three ways: before three witnesses, by charter, or by testament.202 By leaving property at death to a slave the latter is automatically enfranchised and becomes libertin.203 But there was still another way of being liberated, namely con-

194 Amaury Cartholac, p. 679 (no. 679: 1148).
195 1146, pp. 113 (no. 560), 124 (no. 409), 128 (no. 629); 133-135
196 Dalbertorde Charies de Notre Anxte de Jumelcob, pp. 89-93 (no. 35-39); 115-1161
197 Devisile Le Roux, Cartholac, I, 175 (no. 2034).
198 In Acre the selling of a slave was named verbo servari. Tafel and Thomas, II, 198.
199 Livre des Assain des Bourgeois, cap. 2nd (RHC, Libr. I, 143).
200 The ransom of Jews from the Franks by Jewish communities in Alexandria and the different communes of Syria, Palatine, and Egypt is well known from the Genuss documents of Kedar "Notes on the History of the Jews in Palatine in the Middle Ages," Turbe, XLIII (1973) 405 ff. For the ransom of eastern Christians, for example after the capture of Antioch by the Moslems, see Matthew of Edessa, in RHC, Arm., 1, 129 ff. Ransoming of noble Franks by their vassals was a feudal obligation. The case of a special congregation, that of the Holy Trinity, was the exception of Christian prisoners from Moslem captivity.
202 Livre des Assain des Bourgeois, cap. 207 (RHC, Libr. Ill, 149).
203 Ibid., cap. 205 (pp. 339-340); of cap. 16 (p. 284).
version: "Because the Christian law and the people are called 'the land of France' they [the baptized] should be entirely free." Thus a fugitive Moslem slave who returns and accepts conversion is freed from the power of his former lord. Strangely enough, if the fugitive slave was a Christian he was not free on his return because he acted through malefet. His former lord can even sell him, but only to a Christian.

The relations of the libérés to his benefactor are strictly proscribed and follow the rules of Roman law. He cannot plead against his former lord or he will be fined or even run the danger of mutilation. If the enfranchised slave dies without testament, his property goes to his benefactor or to the benefactor's children. If he offends his former lord, he can be returned to slavery, although he cannot be sold, and his children are to be free. While the Assises des Bourgeois use the terms servit, servire, and servage, they undeniably meant slave and slavery, modified in translating from Lo Codi, since the Roman servus meant slave.

Conversion and enfranchisement of a villein are incidentally dealt with in one of the typical hair-splitting chapters of Philip of Novara (c. 1243). Among those excluded from sitting in a seigneurial court because of religion or former offenses he includes the villein whom the lord has married off to a free woman, and passo facto enfranchised. The defendant could claim that the enfranchised serf should not sit in court, by addressing the lord: "He is your man, you keep faith to him, but you cannot make him our peer."

The problem of conversion was a difficult one. Whatever the ideology of the First Crusade, the crusaders in the end never became a missionary establishment, if "missionary" is taken in the sense of seeking the conversion of individuals. They were for the most part indifferent to the problem, or in some cases actually opposed to conversion. Nothing is more revealing than the complaint of the bishop of Acre, James of Vitry. Leaving aside his claims about his effectiveness as a preacher before eastern Christians and Moslems, we have his explicit statement that Franks, and even the order of St. John, were opposed to preaching and conversion. Frankish opposition to conversion must have been strong if even the papacy had to intervene—
though rather mildly, which suggests that the curia was aware of the attitudes of the crusader. Thus Gregory IX, in a letter to patriarch Gerald of Jerusalem (1237) mentions the fact that Moslem slaves (servi) were refused baptism because it would lead to their enfranchisement. The pope orders that they should be baptized if they promise "to remain in the state of their former servitude." 211 Some efforts were made in this direction, and the Latin clergy was ordered by Urban IV in 1264 to seek converts among the poorest Jews and Moslems by offering them food, shelter, and baptism. 212

Thus for the great majority of the population, their status as second-class citizens, the former dhimmis, was compounded by their status as villeins.

Moving from the countryside to the city, the picture changes. Once the period of conquest was over, the native population, not only certain Christians, but also Moslems and Jews who had left the citadel before the siege or escaped the massacres which accompanied the conquest, returned and settled in them again. The only exception, as already mentioned, was Jerusalem. The non-Frankish inhabitants of the cities were not regarded as villeins. They were not bound to city soil; not only were their movables their own, but it seems that they were also proprietors of land and houses. They paid rent and probably a recognition tax, cenace, and were bound to some specific payments obligatory on non-Latinus only. Such was the capitatio, doubtless a descendant of the Moslem jizya, paid by every male over fifteen. It was paid to the seigneur justiciers, not to the landowner. So, for example, the Venetians in Tyre collected a poll-tax from Jews and Synnnes, 212a privilege every seigneur justiciers enjoyed over the villeins on his estate.

It was in connection with taxation that the non-Latinus were discriminated against. In Acre, after the Third Crusade, the non-Latinus, at least those under royal jurisdiction, were barred from living in the older part of the city and relegated to the new, not yet fortified, suburb of Montlumasset. Moreover it is very likely that they were compelled to use a special market, which belonged to the king, not to

---

211 A baptism Moslem is immediately found, according to the Liber de Annum of the Bourges, in 1264-1265 (AHC, Leis, iii, 138-140). The quotation is from Aucta Hierosolimiti ad Tuder no 223 pp 307-308

the communities. Though we do not know of any special taxation in Jerusalem, the fact that the non-Latinos lived in a special quarter and had their own counters in the bazaars of Jerusalem would have facilitated such taxation.

Members of minority groups who lived in a city were personally free and could move from place to place, acquire possessions (bargains or tenures), and retain property. Yet a number of documents point to the existence of another class among them, at least in the northern principalities, though we do not find them in the Latin kingdom proper. There were individuals who, while they lived in cities, might be granted away by the lord of the place. So a Syrian Ben Moso was given by Bohemond III to the Hospitallers (1175) in Juba, together with "his children and all their rights and possessions" (cum omnibus armis-age et robis) in Latakia a Jew, called by the Franks Carinus, was also given away. Again in Latakia in 1183, Bohemond III gave the order of St. John a number of Greeks (6), Armenians (5), and Jews (7). The document concludes: "And these men mentioned above, Latins as well as Greeks, Armenians, and Jews, the house of the Hospitallers may have, hold and possess in perpetuity, in peace and without appeal, free and quit of all taille. And these are all that belong to the Hospital in Latakia; they shall not have others unless I myself have donated them." There were only a few donations of this type, all in the northern principalities.

It is not easy to interpret these texts. Obviously those so donated were henceforth bound to make payments to their new lord. Possibly they were former serfs who had lived in the countryside and retained their former status after moving into the city. In a donation of Bohemond III to the Hospital in 1194 one such man, George the notary, son of Vassilius, son of Ursus, is described as homo peculiaris. His

214 Prawer, "L'administration des marchés de Antioche et de Bani-Mousa d'Acre." "RHEVE." vol 4, XXIX (1935), 320-351, unconvincingly opposed by Cohen. "A propos des marchés de Antioche d'Acre." ibid., t.XI (1965), 287-290, who argues on the greater limitations but argues against the term "astres." The difference in taxation in different markets was proposed by Richard "Coloniae marchamantur principibus at astreis signo". Le Moyne-Anu, LXXI (1953), 325-340 and Prawer, "Les marchés de Bani-Mousa," p. 482 ff. A division of the magister censuum of Venetia of 1271, ordering all its Jewish subjects in Acre to live under the Venetian quarter, was historically significant to the subsequent legal development of the Genoese; see Deliberaciones de magistro censuum de Venetia, ed. Roberto Corda (Milan, 1930), appendices, II, 13-18. It is thus possible that after the recapture of Acre by the crusaders in 1191 the commanders kept their citizens in that quarter and that the legislation ordering their arrival in Bani-Musa referred to the royal citizens only.

216 Delivile, Le Rond, Catalogue, I, 324 (no. 472).
217 Ibid., 416-437 (no. 447).
218 A similar case for Tyre (1103) may possibly he regarded as not dealing with a city; Stroblke, "Palmas," pp. 10.
property (_hereditas_) at the time of alienation was to remain with Bohemond III, but new acquisitions after that date would belong to the Hospital. 219 The adjective _pecuniarum_ points to the _peculium_, the property of a serf. Thus George the notary, despite his social standing, inherited the legal position of his ancestors even though living in the city. 220 Whatever the case, we have very few examples of this kind suggesting servility in the cities; we are bedouins to regard them or the outcome of particular circumstances.

A few words should be said about the legal status of the beduins. Several documents which enumerate beduins inside the borders of the kingdom point to the fact that the crusaders found a legal formula for dealing with them. 221 By definition neither city inhabitants nor serfs, they had a special legal status, being considered the king's property. This meant that they paid for their pasture rights, probably in horses, camels, or sheep, and were under royal jurisdiction rather than that of a particular lordship. This rule was well adapted to their mode of existence as nomads, the crown, theoretically at least, was the only force which could assure them protection in all parts of the kingdom. It needed a special royal grant to allocate a tribe or its branch to a lordship. 222 Still, we find beduin tribes in the possession of the Templars, 223 and as a special grant king Baldwin IV permitted the order of St. John to allocate areas in Galilee to a hundred beduin tents on condition that they came from beyond the frontiers of the kingdom and had never been under the king's or any other lord's domination. 224

219 Delisle Le Religion Christienne. 1. 372 (no. 359).
220 The presence of Latins in the dominions of Bohemond III is puzzling, and we may regard it as a slip of the scribes. As a matter of fact, in the detailed enumeration of names no Latin is mentioned.
221 A detailed description of a beduin tribe and its branches or families is furnished by a deed of Baldwin IV to the Hospitallers in 1170. The tribe was once given by queen Melisende and her sons Baldwin to Ambric, vicomte of Maleus. They were sold to Baldwin of Jofelin, lord of Ramla for the sumable mone of 3,209 denario. All in all there were 303 cents (Ramnus). It means that the tribe was called Isaac Karitas or Isaac Kanzas; Delisle Le Religion Christienne, 1. 372-373 (no. 359).
222 When Baldwin III invested Philip of Milly, lord of Nablus, in 1163 with Transjordan, he added: "salus etiam hominum non omnium, qui de terris Beduinis Regalis mai non sunt"; Strehlke, Teutonic p. 4 (no. 2).
223 In 1179 in a peace agreement between Templars and Hospitallers, the document mentions a "squarum de quibus pretiorum Biolosorum Templ. santon a tertio partem Gibelii", Delisle Le Religion Christienne, 372-373 (no. 359).
224 * avena omnium temporum Biolosorum quos sibi sumere consueverat paterni, et qui ha ramno meus sub meo et hominum meorum paternum accessset interfuit*; ibid., 1. 395 (no. 382).
Jerusalem From a fourteenth-century French illuminated manuscript in the collections of the Bibliothèque nationale
IV

SOCIAL CLASSES
IN THE LATIN KINGDOM:
THE FRANKS

A. Social Stratification

During the eleventh century, when social distinctions tended to become sharper in the west, two areas recently added to Christendom revealed a different pattern of social stratification. These were Spain and Sicily, the former slowly pushing back the frontiers of Muslim domination, the latter falling into the hands of the Norman conquerers.

There are three categories of men pertinent to the subject of social classes in the Latin kingdom: noble, feudal, and clerical. The chroniclers written within the fold of the western Church who had participated in the crusades or who visited the crusading states include in their histories with descriptions of the Holy Land and its neighboring countries.

The legal tracts have been published by Auguste Lazard, AHE, 1870 (1, 2, and 4). These include: (1) Livre de Jean d'Amiens, Livre de Guillaume de Paris; Livre du Jean de Poitiers, Livre de Philippe de Navarre, Le Chétif, Amis de la Chasteté, and the Livre de l'Ordre de la Chasteté et du Château; and the Livre de l'Ordre de la Chasteté. (2) Livre des Anges de la Cour des Bourgeois, Abélard's Livre des Anges de la Cour des Bourgeois, Jeanne et ordonnances des rois de Champagne, Formes et documents relatifs à la souveraineté du royaume et à la religion, Documents relatifs au service militaire, Les Lievres d'Ordre et la Chasteté. These are all private collections and with the exception of the Livre de l'Ordre de la Chasteté, belong to the thirteenth century. The Livre de l'Ordre is apparently the earliest, written between 1197 and 1205. During the lengthy introduction by the editor, Bouquet, the fundamental study of these remarks is that by Maurice Camoesd'Amboise, Études critiques sur le Livre de l'Ordre de l'Armenie (Paris, 1925). His attempt to unmask the author in the Livre de l'Ordre is not entirely surprising; see his "Pensées du Livre de l'Ordre," ADDE, vol. IV, V (1925), 100-114. Philip of Novara's treatise was badly edited and needs restoring. No intrigue on the basis of Tripoli is preserved, but the existence of Armenians survive partially in an Armenian translation; see Aymon d'Amboise, rédacteur en français, et Louis M. Alphonse (Vienne, 1876), cf. the remarks on the Arab by Ismael Camoes in Armenia, 112 (1941), 112. For Greek and Latin translations of the various sources see Aymon d'Amboise, Études critiques, and Dimahar Hayek, Le Don de l'Empereur contre les armeniens (Paris, 1925). There has been no recent general study of Frankish but on the armenian states.

For a reconstruction of the early royal legislation see Camoesd'Amboise, "Liste d'Armenian ressortissant au premier royaume de l'Armenie (1059-1257)," Mélanges Paul Fourier (Paris, 1929),
ors. These two areas were rather similar to the Latin states in the east. The distinctive features of social stratification in all of them lay in the fact that they began their history with the same kind of decisive event: a Christian conquest of a non-Christian country. And yet the Latin states in the east would tend to create a special type of society, different from the others. In the course of time Spain would be entirely colonized by its Christian conquerors (expelling or converting the process the Moslem and Jewish population); the Norman conquerors of Sicily would merge with the heterogeneous local population. But during their two-hundred-years’ rule on the eastern shores of the Mediterranean, followed by another two hundred years in Cyprus, the Franks never really succeeded in colonizing their conquests.
They neither became a majority in the territories they seized, nor merged with the native population. Consequently the social stratification of the crusader states reflected a division between conqueror and conquered which lasted as long as the Franks remained in the east.

From the legal as well as from the sociological point of view, the population of the crusader states falls into two major categories:

---

It would be unfortunate to miss again the principal chronicles, which are noted in the first two volumes of the present work. An excellent guide to the bibliography is Kleiner Bibliotheque, Bibliotheca geographorum Palmarium (Paris, 1906; 3 vols. with supplement, Jerusalem, 1963). The major collections of narratives are Histoire des croisades, ou Description des historiens, edited with introduction and critical apparatus by Charles Caenen, 2 vols. (1850, 1853); and Histoire de la deuxièm de l'empire de Constantinople, edited by Charles Caenen and Joseph de Ruyter (2 vols., Brussels, 1799-1803). Description de la Monarchie des croisés, edited by Charles Caenen and Joseph de Ruyter (2 vols., Brussels, 1799). Description de la Monarchie des croisés, edited by Charles Caenen and Joseph de Ruyter (2 vols., Brussels, 1799).

For Latin descriptions see Bibliotheca geographorum Araborum, ed. Martin I de Girola (2 vols., London, 1799-1804); German translations by Johann Christoph Jürgensen in ZAPV IV (1801), VI (1803), VII (1804), VIII (1805), and X (1806); translation of excerpts in Guy Le Strange, Palestine abounds the moderns: A Description of Syria and the Holy Land from the 12th to the 16th Century, translated from the Works of the Noted Arab Geographers (London, Boston, and New York, 1898; repr. Paris, 1925), and A. Schumacher, Orient et Occident I. Arabic geographical studies made in Palestine (Paris, 1955).

For Hebrew collections see Michaelis, Yehuda, (in Hebrew) Misnayot (Leiden, 1765); and Michaelis, Yehuda (in Hebrew) (Voyages to Palestine) (Leiden, 1765).

There are few secondary works dealing with the subject as a whole. Basic work, although often criticized and not to be dated, is the work of Alain de Bury, La Syrie franque (Paris, 1543), and its supplement, La Syrie franque (Paris, 1543). The best study is the work of Charles Caenen, Histoire de la deuxièm de l'empire de Constantinople (Paris, 1850), which is the most comprehensive and detailed account of the crusader states in the Middle Ages.

Almost all general histories of the crusades have chapters on society in the crusader states. To be specially noted are Charles Caenen, La Syrie des croisés d'apres les historiens de l'ancienne et de la primitive époque (Paris, 1850); and Michaelis, Yehuda, (in Hebrew) (Voyages to Palestine) (Leiden, 1765).
"Franks" and "non-Franks." Franks is the all-inclusive name for all western Europeans who came with the crusaders to the east. The name was ultimately applied not only to the crusaders but also to their descendants, comprising the entire conquering and ruling population. It was only natural that the Frankish descendants of the first settlers found it too inclusive, and consequently used pullum or pouline1 for their offspring to distinguish them from members of the various Italian communities. On the other hand, the Arabic-speaking Christians, Muslims, and Jews used the name al-Frany for all who were not indigenous members of the population. In this sense the word was equivalent to "invaders." As far as we can ascertain, the native population did not use the expression "Christians" (an-Nasrān) for the conquerors, to avoid confusing native Christians with Europeans. But the Franks were often called "crusaders" (Salibiyah), whereas western sources used crusadigm1 to denote not all those who went to the east but only those who had taken the cross and enjoyed the lay and ecclesiastical privileges of crusaders. These semantic distinctions underline the fact that, as far as the indigenous population was concerned, the most relevant feature of their relations with the Franks was a strict legal and social segregation.

The entire population of the Latin kingdom consequently falls into two categories—conquerors and conquered. The European conquest not only changed the conditions existing in the conquered territories, but also cut deep into the web of social relations and legal status of

---

1 The origin of the name is obscure. Conomopoulos derived it from Apulia, suggesting that the native-born Franks were distinguished from descendants between crusaders and Westerners brought over from southern Italy because of the lack of women among the latter. Another explanation has been put forward by H. Wace, "The Origin of the Name Apulia," in the Bulletin of the New York Historical Society, 12, 1 (1896). H. Wace, "The Origin of the Name Apulia," in the Bulletin of the New York Historical Society, 12, 1 (1896).
the conquerors themselves, changing European notions as they existed at the time of the founding of the kingdom. Two cases will suffice to illustrate the difference between European and crusader notions of social and legal status. In eleventh-century Europe, being a peasant meant, with few exceptions, to have the legal and social status of a servil or vilain. In the Latin states in the east a peasant was a vilain only if he belonged to the native population. A Frankish peasant working his own land, or his holding, or settled in one of the newly established Frankish villages, was under no circumstances a vilain. He was always called a “burgess” (burgenses). Despite being a peasant he preserved his legal status and social standing as a member of the ruling class, well above the status of vilain or servil. From the point of view of the general stratification of society his occupation was of no consequence. The decisive factor was his European origin. Conversely, a Syrian Christian, Moslem, or Jewish peddler, artisan, or small shopkeeper, often living in a street neighboring that of a Frank pursuing the same occupation, was neither socially nor legally his equal. Any Frank, even the poorest and the lowest, ranked well above the wealthiest of the native population.

Another factor which helped to delineate the two main divisions of society was the social tradition brought over from Europe with the first settlers and strengthened by later waves of immigration. The armies of the First Crusade did not reflect in their composition an accurate cross-section of European society. Not only were some strata of society hardly represented, but all marks of servility ceased to exist for any man who went to the east. From the outset, the crusading army was composed of “nobles” of different degrees and freemen, or to use the terms found in our sources, milites and pedites. What in the first instance denoted a way of fighting, on horseback or on foot, in reality marked the basic distinction between “noble” knights and simple free men, including those who became free by joining the crusading army. To those two main classes of milites and pedites we have to add the clergy. The crusading clergy reflected in its composition the clerical establishment of Europe, from great lords like Adhemar of Monteil, bishop of Le Puy, through the more modest chaplains serving princely households, down to the simple priests who hardly differed at all in social status from the pedites. These three elements—milites, pedites, and clerici—formed the nucleus of the European society transplanted to the east. It is here that we have to look for the future classes of nobles and non-nobles, or to use the Frankish terms, nobles and burgesses, the two main groups of Frankish lay society.
Still another element was provided by the natives of Italian, Provençal, and Spanish communes. Their original class distinctions were of no consequence in determining their legal status in the crusader states. With the exception of a few families, like the Embrunchu of Genoa who became lords of Juhail, and as such entered the ranks of Frankish nobility, their social and legal position resulted from agreements between the representatives of the respective European communes and the authorities in the crusader army and later the kings and princes of the crusader states. The natives of the western communes can be regarded as an occupational group, as indeed they were. It was not the fact that they were merchants, however, which assured their place in society, but rather the particular privileges they acquired. Although each commune obtained for its members somewhat different sets of privileges, they were on the whole still regarded by their contemporaries as a distinct class.
B. The Nobles

"Among all the vocations [moeurs] which should be taught as early as possible in childhood there are two, the highest and the most hon-

1. For the early period there are few documents, and we must rely for the most part on the chronicles of the Firm Crusade. Besides the legal instruments we may cite C. du Prinos Du Cange's Les Familles d'Organum, ed. Rey (Paris, 1849), supplemented by Jean. Samoyers' Le supplément aux Familles d'Organum (Charterm, 1857), and Abraham, Zuniga und Verwandtschaften zu Du Cange (Berlin, 1866). A new edition of Les Familles d'Organum is needed. Copious materials were collected by Louis de Saint-Louis and are preserved in the Bibliothèque nationale (MS., nouv. acq., 9793–8001). An important outline may be found in John L. LaBarre, "Chronology of the Chief Laws," Bulletin of the International Commission of History and Science, XII (Paris, 1943), 241–261.


tible to God and the world, that is, clergy and chivalry, because he cannot be a good clerk who did not start from childhood, and


he will never ride well who did not learn it when young. Thus wrote Philip of Novara, knight, writer, jurist, and, at the end of his life (about 1260), moralist at the court of the Ibelins. Looking back over his own career, this Frankish nobleman of obscure origin from tiny Novara in northern Italy summed up the possibilities open to a young man of good birth: “A good knight by the fame of his valor very often came to acquire riches and great property. And many became crowned kings and others had great riches and great negligence.”

Giving good advice to that younger generation which would witness the fall of the kingdom, Philip goes on to emphasize the traditional ideals of knighthood and nobility: “Besoignus est que il soit courtus, et larges et hardiz et sages.” Significantly enough a woman need only preserve her chastity (“prode fame de son corz”). That would cover all other requirements and allow her to walk everywhere with her head held high. He then goes on, “The young man of high origin and the knight and other people bearing arms should work to gain honor so as to become famous for their valor, and to have earthly property and riches and land, from which they might live honorably and so might their children, if they have any, and so they might help their friends and those who serve them and be able to retire in their old age.”

There is a rather pedestrian sound to the ideals of knighthood as expressed by Philip, and the phrase just quoted is not an isolated one. Again and again the attainment of wealth, as an end in itself or as a means of living according to a given standard, jars our ears, perhaps because often we still see the crusaders through the eyes of novelists and romantic historians. But Philip of Novara, whose work is original and free of the usual moralizing banalities, was simply summing up his own personal experience.

Philip mentions three different orders of nobles in the crusader states: “Haut home et li chevaliers et les autres gens d’armes”—magnates, knights, and other people bearing arms. This trinitarian division, which we find in other sources in such expressions as riches hommes ou terriers, barons, chevaliers, and so on, makes it clear that the ruling class of the kingdom was not monolithic, but was made up in Philip’s time, as indeed a century earlier, of different categories—high nobili-

---

143-171 expanded and in an “Palestinian Agrarianism and the Crusader Rural System,” in Crusader Institutions, pp. 143-200.


4 Ibid. p. 21

5 Ibid. p. 20.

6 Ibid., p. 39.

ity, a baronage, and simple knights. All of them were noble and as such belonged to the highest estate of the kingdom, within which, however, there were marked distinctions. It was the economic standing of the individual coupled with his origins which classified him within the noble hierarchy of the crusader states. Philip of Novara himself hardly belonged among the magnates. He was one of the baronage who did well for himself, rising in the service of the Ibelins and of the court to the rank of an influential baron in the kingdom. The ideals which he expressed fit that middle group among the nobility who rose from the ranks of the knights to become barons. The crusader states, though hardly a land of unlimited possibilities, sometimes offered opportunities which contemporary Europe, less fluid and more established, seldom presented to the young and the enterprising. Philip, mentioning knights who became kings, probably had in mind Guy of Lusignan. He might also have thought of Reginald of Châtillon, whose remarkable career inflamed the imagination. But did he also think of his own benefactors, the Ibelins? Their origin was obscure, possibly minor officials in Chartres or even Pisan merchants established in the east. Yet they became the uncrowned rulers of the kingdom, hagiai intermarrying with the royal houses of Jerusalem and Cyprus and even with the imperial dynasty of Constantinople. At the time of Philip of Novara the family had already succeeded in forgetting, and making others forget, its origins.

What, then, is the nobility of the crusader states? Its first layer is to be sought among those warriors who took part in the First Crusade and stayed on in Syria and Palestine afterwards. A scrutiny of the names to be found in chronicles and documents up to the end of the rule of Baldwin I (1118) throws some light on this early group. A salient feature is the particular ethnic groupings in the three principalities of Antioch, Tripoli, and Jerusalem. This was foreshadowed by the composition of the armies of the First Crusade, when the various ethnic groups were led by their traditional local leaders. Vassals of Godfrey of Bouillon in Lower Lorraine made up the main part of his army, and the same can be said for the Flemings, the Provençals, and the Normans, including those from Sicily and southern Italy. It can also be shown that individual knights or groups of knights, not
belonging originally to the feudal family of the leader but living in his neighborhood, joined his army for reasons of convenience, familiarity, or identity of speech and customs. This loose ethnic grouping became stronger during the march to the east, when necessities of command and provisioning made for greater cohesion. New links of vassalage were forged. True, some of the leaders changed their allegiance, as did Tancred, who started with Bohemond, went on with Raymond of St. Gilles, and finally took service for better pay under Godfrey of Bouillon. But in this case it was not just Tancred, but his whole army, that accepted a new overlord and commander.

Since the various crusader states were captured by different commanders, it was natural that the knights of Antioch, under Bohemond I and later Tancred, would be predominantly Norman, while Tripoli would have a population of knights originally from southern France. The kingdom of Jerusalem proper, north of Tripoli, though it may have had a pronounced north French knightly class (roughly speaking from north of the Loire, except Normandy), had a more heterogeneous composition. One of the reasons was probably the fact that different ethnic groups participated in the siege of Jerusalem; later pilgrimages and waves of immigration brought more elements of diverse origin to Jerusalem than anywhere else. Such additions were of course not limited to Jerusalem. Southern families, possibly originally connected with Raymond of St. Gilles, can be found in Antioch. The presence of Raymond of Poitiers in Antioch (1136-1149) also brought some non-Norman elements to the principality. Still, the predominance of the respective ethnic groups was strong enough to leave their mark on the customs and organization of the different states. A German pilgrim in the second half of the twelfth century complained bitterly that the merits of his own people, not to mention his language, were obliterated in the east.

Whereas the names of knights allow us a glimpse into their ethnic origin, our sources fail us almost completely when we inquire into their social position before leaving Europe. The reason does not lie in any lack of documentation, but rather in the fact that most of the crusaders we know anything about went home again. Of the men from the great noble families who went with the First Crusade only a few—Raymond of St. Gilles, Bohemond, Tancred, and Godfrey of Bouillon and his brother Baldwin—stayed on in the east. The others left, some before the conquest of Jerusalem, others immediately after.

9 Raymond of Aguilers, cap. 16 (REML, Crac., III, 276).
10 They were certainly Normans, but it is not clear whether from Normandy or Sicily.
The great mass of troubadours who went on the crusade, and the small remnant who settled in the East after the conquest, belonged neither to the upper nobility nor to the middle nobility whose records are preserved in the deeds and annals of their countries of origin. Those who stayed on in the East after their leaders returned home had been household knights and petty vassals. These provided the major element from which grew the new class of Latin nobility.

The modest origin of the early nobles in the Latin states of the East remains, however, a hypothesis, though a plausible one, since it fits in with several phenomena which would otherwise remain unexplained. One, for example, is the important role played by an anonymous group of knights called domus Godfridus in connection with the coronation of Baldwin I. The term is a typical expression for household knights (probably connected with Godfrey when still in Lorraine) who remained in the service of the advocatus Sancti Sepulchri. They were still a coherent group as late as 1105, five years after the accession of Baldwin I. It is likely that had there been any among them of prominence, our sources would have pointed out the fact and mentioned their names.

Another clue is the fact that several of Jerusalem, not in Antioch, nor in Tripoli as we find, among the first holders of septs, are names pointing to connections with European castles or signories. Moreover, later local dynasties bear the names of their Syrian and Palaestinian vassals, whereas European family names (like Grenier in Jerusalem and Mansour in Antioch) are exceptions, and even then hardly indicate noble origins. In a feudal age, people proud of their origins would hardly have foregone the occasion to mention their ancestral names, if such had been of any consequence.

Under the princes who became rulers of the crusader states, therefore, the knightly class was of modest background. Their loyalties were to the man or house which they had served in Europe or took service with in the course of conquest and settlement. Then well-being

11 The numbers given in our sources for the early period of the kingdom are small: 9 p. October 1100 300–400 knights: September 1101 360–380 knights: November 1105 500 knights; CY. Finians of Constantia, Historia Hierosolimitana, ed. Frankfurter (Heidelberg 1919), I, 1, 2, 3, 3, 1, 2, 3; P. 1958, 3


and future depended in large part on the success of the conquest and the good will of their lord. The economic situation of the crusader states was critical for many years. Sometimes it was so bad that the finances depended on a successful raid on a Muslim caravan. The simple knights from whom emerged the later nobility often complained because of arrears in payment of their salaries, and even threatened open revolt. When Baldwin I forced the patriarch Daimbert of Pisa to take thirty knights on his payroll, it was considered a great achievement. During this early period the mass of warriors was no more than a salaried army, composed of knights receiving salaries or assigned fixed revenues.

The first signs of development appear under Baldwin I. Godfrey of Bouillon had not distributed any land feckets but had contented himself with assigning his men revenues from land or cities. Under Baldwin the growing mass of conquests was organized and the expanding frontiers were defended according to feudal practices. Seigneurial fees were created and granted to some of the king's companions, although the salaried knight was still very much in evidence. But a higher baronage was emerging. A closer look at this early class of upper nobility proves that local conditions and historical circumstances created in the Latin east a type of mobility and a pattern of organization differing from that known in Europe. The most salient feature of the nobles and knights were predominantly city-dwellers, whereas nowhere in Europe can we find a knightly class wholly located in cities. The reasons are not difficult to identify. The normal habitat of the earlier Moslem ruling class was the fortified city or the citadel. The crusaders did not besiege castles, but cities. With their conquest the adjacent territory also fell into their hands. The isolated castle, as a place of defense and administration, was introduced by the crusaders only later under the pressure of circumstances. Being a small

14 In 1108 Baldwin I captured a mina, making his way from Egypt to Syria—thirty-two ounces bearing sugar, pepper and spices, oil and honey. “quantum abundanter iuxta episcopi regionum relevatur et confessorum seruit.” Albert of Aachen, X, 36 (RHC, Occ., IV, 649).

15 In 1101, “a militibus suis in urbe implant (habita) pro panis et frumento servatur (Baldwin I), quam illius debita pro communitate sollicitatur, qui eodem fructu dat Godofrodo, partem devenisse multos ubique supplicium et multos alios manum in hanc urbem multos aliquos suo servitutum.” Albert of Aachen, VII, 58 (RHC, Occ., IV, 545). Baldwin abandoned the siege of Sidon when referred money “numerus et ectiones de communitate sollicitur quo debita multitudine, utinam praeviae intenderint.” Abp., X, 5 (RHC, Occ., IV, 632-633).

16 Ibid., VII, 48, 53, 61 (RHC, Occ., IV, 540, 543, 547).

17 Cfr. the deathbed Baldwin I left his property “militibus quaque domicilio et sociali, ut animi et novee miliarum servitutum in communitate sollicitur”; Abp., XII, 33 (RHC, Occ., IV, 703-704).

18. See all, “Crusaders' Carolus.” Obviously in view of the crusaders the crusaders settled in musine,
minority surrounded by a hostile majority, the crusaders concentrated their numbers in the conquered cities, often strengthening their fortifications, or erecting strong-points around the cities where such did not already exist (as in Bethsan and Tiberias). This strengthened their military position; it also facilitated the commutation of the earlier pattern of administration which, under the Byzantines and Moslems, centered on the cities. At the same time, the city offered not only security but also accommodations for the new settlers, who took over houses according to the famous “law of conquest,” which accorded ownership of a given property to the first person who put his mark on it. 16

Amid the general insecurity, nobody risked leaving the shadow of the city walls without an armed escort, for alone taking up residence in the rural area. These early conditions changed in the course of time. Life became more settled, security was more assured, but even as late as 1179, when the crusader states were well established, Frankish rule in some parts of Galilee was still more nominal than real. 21

Despite the growth of security there was no exodus of the knightly city dwellers to manor houses in the country. The crusaders established a manorial system entirely different from that prevalent in Europe. It was a predominantly tender system, based on rents and dues collected directly from the villages and assessed on the peasants' holdings. 22 As a rule the Frankish landlord did not own demesne lands of any importance, and his income came almost wholly from the seigneur held from him by his peasants. There was little interest in the direct management of rural estates and no incentive to live in a manor house in the village or in the fief. The administration was handled by local representatives of the lord, chosen from among the native population or specially appointed, like the gasstolones in Venetian properties. 23 The holders of fiefs, more renters than anything else, remained in cities, there receiving and consuming the incomes from their fiefs. The city-dwelling fief-holder remained the predominant type of knight in the crusader states.

16 See above, note 10.
20 C. I. the descriptions of Palestine by Bernard and the Italian abbot Daniel in JPTS, IV, 2, 3 (London, 1896, 1899).
21 William of Tyre, XXXI, 26 II (RHC, Occ., I, 1889 ff.).
23. Gasstolone, a word of Lombard origin, seems to have been used only by the Venetians as a name for their bailiff. See the report of Marinus Zacri (Cerogio) in Tafel and Thomas, p. 351 ff.
The erection of castles changed the general pattern somewhat, with some knights fulfilling garrison duties in castles though seldom making them their normal abode. Still, the crusaders' castles, with very few exceptions (smaller fortifications or observation points), were usually surrounded by real cités, as for example the mighty fortresses in Transjordan: Krak de Montréal (msk-Sahuak) and Kerak of Moab (al-Karak). Other castles, which might have been for a short time centers of lordships, became real city settlements (Ibrih, Gaza, Darra, Mirbat). On the other hand, after the middle of the twelfth century the newly built castles were almost systematically handed over to the military orders, which garrisoned them with their own knights. Even allowing for these exceptions, there is no doubt that the bulk of the knightly class lived in cities, differing bascally from the nobility of contemporary Europe.

In this early period of formation of a knightly class, social mobility seems to have been characteristic. The breaking down of class barriers may have owed something to the four years' march to the east. Battles, sieges, and calamities, when horses were killed by enemy action or eaten by the starving army, often turned milites into pediati. Not is it difficult to believe that under circumstances of chronic warfare and varying fortunes some of the pediati became knights. The fact that at any given moment almost everyone in the army was paid by a laeder also had a leveling effect. The "law of conquest" probably had the same result. In some cases we may suspect that some of the witnesses of early royal documents were of non-noble origin,24 who some years later signed their names among the milites on royal charters. In the fluctuating state of society, of war and death, immigration and emigration, social mobility existed de facto if not de jure.

To round out this description of the early Frankish nobility a few remarks should be made about their economic status. As suggested above, Godfrey of Bouillon and Baldwin I were tight-fisted about creating fiefs, especially seigneurial fiefs. They preferred to assign city revenues rather than territory to their vassals. This was probably also true, though to a lesser degree, with respect to the creation of fiefs out of the royal domain. It is more than likely that the simple knight living in Jerusalem, Acre, or Tyre preferred to receive his salary directly from the royal exchequer or from one of the royal revenues (market tolls, city gate taxes, or the like), than to bother supervising and collecting them from an outlying farm or village. Hence

---

24 See below, p. 159.
the characteristic money-siege, *fief en bensanz,* was the usual type of feudal tenure. What had once been a salary on a contractual basis became in time the normal type of fief. Such an arrangement suited lord and vassal alike. The former, especially in the maritime cities, could easily pay his knights out of revenues from the port, market, or other monopoly. The latter, living in cities in surroundings of an evident money economy, must have found such an arrangement most welcome. The crusaders' feudal jurisprudence accorded the same social standing to the holders of a *fief en bensanz* as to those of land fiefs, and consequently no sense of degradation, because of being salaried rather than enfeoffed, disturbed the knight.

Another kind of property also came into the hands of the knightly class. City property, courtyards and houses, are often found in their possession. Some were held as alodial property, some as *borgeste,* some as parts of fiefs. The same is true of land in the immediate vicinity of the cities. This strange occurrence of alodial holdings in a land supposed to be a "paradise of feudalism" was one of the results of the original "law of conquest." It reflects an early stage of organization when property could be had for the asking, especially in the depopulated cities. As for the *borgeste* tenures in the hands of knights, well attested by our sources, they may have been the result of intermarriage between knights and non-nobles, the consequence of a shortage of women in the early settlement as well as the coexistence of the two classes in the cities. The *borgeste* probably constituted parts of the dowries of burgesses' daughters which passed with the hand of the helpless to her husband. This suggests less a rigid class distinction than a fertility with social mobility in the population of the crusader states.

Under Baldwin II (1118-1131), however, and even more so under Fulk (1131-1143) and Baldwin III (1143-1163), a group of knights began to be distinguished from their erstwhile fellows. The necessity to rule the country in a feudal framework led to the creation of lordships granted by the king and princes to some of their vassals. Some lordships probably represent independent conquests, which the crown

---

26 Prasch, "The Almeh de murgne and the Almeh de menne," pp. 77-78. Burgage tenures may have been viewed by the same groups; see Prasch, "Burgage-Renten," in Crusader Institutions, pp. 250-362.
28 The knights naturally tried to acquire burgages, since they were not burdened with military service; see above, note 26, and.
then incorporated into the framework of the feudal state as fiefs held from the crown. The result was the emergence of a baronage distinct from the general body of knights. It was some time in the making. For more than a generation we cannot trace any regular succession in the great fiefs, either in Jerusalem, in Tripoli, or in Antioch. Deaths from warfare and disease were common, and the newly conquered and thinly occupied lands could not yet boast large families. Fiefs were allotted to men of merit but often escheated to the crown when there were no heirs to claim them. In these circumstances, although a baronage was evolving, it had not yet crystallized into a class. The real power remained with the royal house, still the only real dynasty in a fluid society. It was the king who enfeoffed lordships acquired by conquest. or escheat, creating a baronage dependent upon his authority.

By 1130, however, there were signs of a process of stratification within the nobility as this baronage became more coherent. It comprised the great tenants-in-chief, who soon succeeded in becoming hereditary holders with the status of seigneurial justiciers in their respective lordships. It is not clear whether there were any principles which determined the status of a fief as being an independent barony with its own seigneurial jurisdiction or as a fief within the domain of the crown. It was probably a matter of common understanding that any large fief with a city as capital was in fact a barony. In the middle of the twelfth century more than two dozen such baronial fiefs existed in the kingdom, and their tenants can be regarded as a baronage, an upper nobility.

A whole set of usuries promulgated at this time definitely served the interests of the new class. Early legislation of the first half of the twelfth century had aimed at creating a large and solid knightly class to assure thereby the existence of a strong military class owing service to the king and the princes. Women had been allowed to succeed to fiefs almost immediately after the conquest. Fiefs became hereditary very early even in the collateral branches of a family, but could not pass to an already enfeoffed knight if his younger brother

29 That Bethshem and Tibnun were private conquests of Saladin (as was Bethlehems). He tried to create an independent principality of Galilee with Tibnun as its capital and Haifa as its main port. This conquest was unopposed into the kingdom under Baldwin I. In essentials annulled, however, as held the title of “prince.”
30 The difference between the king’s authority in Jerusalem and the prince’s in Antioch has often been pointed out, but is certainly exaggerated as far as the early period is concerned.
32. Leif, op. cit. (ibid., I, 597); Taken of Raymond, op. cit. (ibid., I, 233, 219).
or any other member of his family in line of succession was not yet provided for. The emergence of a new baronial class was accompanied by far-reaching changes in this early legislation. It is possible that a twelfth-century assise which cannot be dated with more precision, requiring that a lord should retain a greater portion of his whole fief than the total of its subinfeudated parts, is already a sign of the growing power of the baronial class. The purpose of the assise was to prevent the fragmentation of family holdings. It may have been the first step toward creating entailed estates. Even more important was the assise that changed the rules of succession, permitting the concentration of an unlimited number of fiefs in the hands of one person. This laid the basis for accumulating landed property and concentrating power in the hands of an upper nobility. The results were immediately felt in the kingdom of Jerusalem, although we do not know the effect in Antioch or Tripol. As a matter of fact we do not even know whether this assise was ever adopted by the principality or county.

Even more remarkable was the curtailting of the royal prerogative in noble wardships. A noble widow was usually married off to a knight proposed to her by the king, who could thereby assure himself of the feudal services. Probably around the middle of the twelfth century—we cannot be more precise—under the pressure of the nobility, the king agreed to propose to a widow three candidates for her hands and fiefs. The upper nobility, or magnates, would not accept even this conciliatory step. The lady might refuse all three candidates if there was the danger of a dispute. In other words, the magnates now regarded a marriage to a knight less wealthy than the heiress as a menace. There was therefore not only the growing self-consciousness of a nobility, exemplified in such assises as that which prohibited the arrest of a knight for debts (whereas a burgess could be not only arrested but compelled to work in prison to pay off his debts), and the assise of Bulsas (probably 1168), which allowed a noble to remain on horseback when besieging a city, but there was also the growth of a particular self-consciousness on the part of the magnates. The new laws of succession and wardship aimed

33 Philip of Novara, msn. 68, 71 (ibid., 1, 538, 542); John of Bohun, cap. 148, 187 (ibid., 1, 223-224, 297-299).
34. Eric au roi, msn. 36, 46 (ibid., 1, 633-634, 640); Philip of Novara cap. 61 (ibid., 1, 322-323); John of Bohun, msn. 142, 169, 150, 182 (ibid., 1, 212-213, 223-227, 224-225).
35 Philip of Novara, msn. 67-70 (ibid., 1, 530-541).
36 John of Bohun, cap. 66 (ibid., 1, 550-561).
37 John of Bohun, cap. 191 (ibid., 1, 290-291).
38 ibid., 1, 455, note c.
at creating an exclusive class, in a position to bar from its ranks both
the simple knight and the immigrant from abroad.

The emergence of this baronial class is emphatically signaled as
early as 1132 by the first baronial revolt against the crown. The at-
ttempts of Hugh II of Le Puiset, lord of Jaffa, and Roman of Le
Puy, lord of Transjordan, to rebel against the king, although unsuccess-
ful, indicate a major change in the standing and attitude of a class
of nobles previously homogeneous. In the middle of the twelfth cen-
tury this upper nobility actively intervened in the quarrel of succes-
sion between Baldwin III and his brother Melisende, and became a
strong political faction during the reign of Baldwin IV (1174–1185).

The status of the simple knights was not unaffected by all this.
They certainly did not gain in power or position—quite the contrary.
Their dependence on seigneurial power became increasingly marked.
This may have been partly because the penetration of conquerors who
could boast of participating in the First Crusade and the conquest
was gone; it was also because a stronger organization of fiefs inside
the baronies brought a stricter organization of vassalage. The eco-

tomic position of the knight was never a comfortable one. The in-
ventory of the fiefs of the kingdom, which dates from about 1170,
gives a total number of 675 knights serving the king.39 About forty
percent came from the royal domain, the remaining sixty percent
from the different lordships. It is only for the royal domain that the
details of service are indicated. Excepting the fiefs of the great offi-
cers (chamberlain, constable), and the fiefs of important persons which
remained in the domain (the viscounts of Nabiya and the fief of Italian
III of Ibelin in Nabiya), we find 39 knights serving “with their body,”
possessing fiefs unus multis: 16 knights serving with one vassal each;
6 knights with two vassals; 6 knights with three vassals; 2 knights
with four vassals, 2 knights with six vassals; and one knight with seven
vassals. The predominance of simple knights, those serving de leur
corps or with a single companion, is a typical feature of the class.

No less distinctive is the truncated feudal pyramid. In most cases there
is a direct enfeoffment from king to simple knight, or in some cases
a subenfeoffment of two degrees. In both cases there is an almost direct
 contact between king and knight. Although we have no such statistics
for the independent lordships, there is no reason to suppose that the
situation was much different. One example which we know in detail,
the lordship of Arsuf in the middle of the thirteenth century, reveals

39 John of Fosdin, cap. 278 (ibid., II, 432–426). The mistake is that of Small, Crusading
A similarity of pattern between the organization of the royal domain and that of the lordships.\textsuperscript{48}

Another feature was important in defining the status of the knightly class. It is impossible to say how many knights held land sifis and how many were in fact salaried warriors.\textsuperscript{42} It is hardly imaginable, however, that the possession of a money-sief did not have an effect on the knights as a class. In the first place, it was small. The value of a money-sief was between 400 and 500 bezants a year,\textsuperscript{42} rather modest if we consider that the duty pay of a mercenary knight was 1 bezant (365 = year).\textsuperscript{42} On the other hand, the possession of a territorial sief tended to create a type of "squire," a landowner ruling his peasants and possessing what Marc Bloch has called the droit de commandement. The continuous exercise of this right created a particular type of aristocracy in the west, contributing to a sense of independent judgment and behavior, and giving reality to the notion that the lord and his vassals were peers with reciprocal duties, allowing for the special respect due the lord from his vassal. In the east, however, the prevalence of money-siefs, their smallness, and their concentration in cities must have minimized the economic differences between the simple knights and the burgesses, and diminished the political importance of the simple knights as a class.

Given Philip of Novara's three classes of nobles, one might well ask if there was a distinguishable group of nobles midway between the magnates and the simple knights. The great majority of enfeoffments were made directly by the lord possessing a barony to simple knights.\textsuperscript{46} An intermediate class of barons certainly existed, but it


\textsuperscript{41} In the above-mentioned case of Arsal, only one case of one of the knights and twenty-one vassals held a territorial sief. Moreover, a large number of money siefs were paid not in money but in agricultural produce.

\textsuperscript{42} Philip of Novara, op. cit. (RHC, Leu., 1, 730); cf. L'Abbe de Musin,urmérius XXVI, 12 (RHC, Leu., 30, 1922). See am ent, op. cit. 34 (RHC, Leu., 1, 620-630).

\textsuperscript{43} C f. Prasen, "La Noblesse et le régime féodal," pp. 69 ff.

\textsuperscript{44} The word "baron" is often ambiguous. Barons, like princes, the three disciples of the same day by the same clerk dealing with the elevation by Hugh of Cluny of a village which he had from Amalric, son of Amaelion (the Norman king of Jerusalem), in the name of the Holy Sepulcher. The deed of elevation, Amalric's confirmation, and King Baldwin I's confirmation are witnessed by almost the same people. Even whereas in Hugh's deed all nobles are identified as de boronibus, and in Amalric's confirmation de boronibus regis, we find in the royal confirmation a distinction between de boronibus regis and de homines regis, both groups including individuals who were in the other documents described as boron. Roscher, Carabins, no. 62, 59, 56 (January 1338 to 1356, to Amaelion). In number royal confirmation the witnesses are grouped under the common heading de boronibus vero de homines regis; ibid. no. 57, 51 (1360). On the other hand, there seems to be a clear distinction between lega-
was very small and its position did not assure it any influence in the
feudal hierarchy. Generally speaking, there were only two major
elements in the nobility: the seigneurial class, or magnates, compris-
ing in the middle of the twelfth century some two dozen families,
and the great mass of simple and dependent knights.

A major change in the social position of the nobility as a whole
and of its two major components took place in the second half of
the twelfth century. The famous *Ammaec sur le loge* of king Amalric
(1163–1174) represented an attempt on the part of the crown to
strengthen its position by bringing it into closer contact with the knights
of the kingdom. But the attempt to weaken or circumvent the power
of the baronage came too late, and the dependence of the knights
was already too great to permit a major change. The statute
theoretically should have enabled the subvassals, usually simple knights,
to participate in meetings of the high court, previously a monopoly
of the great tenants-in-chief, and should also have prevented arbitrary
confiscations of their fiefs by their immediate lords. It did not have
the expected result. In fact, it was the crown which lost its own
prerogative to confiscate fief without judgment of the high court. From
then on the king was forced to bring such cases before the peers of
the accused, and it would have to be a flagrant case of treason or
breach of feudal contract before they would pronounce confiscation.
On the other hand, the great lords were strong enough to prevent
a knight's plea against themselves from being brought into the
high court. The ultimate result of the statute was the opportunity it gave
the nobles to present a common front against the crown. By "conjuring"
all vassals and subvassals of the crown they could request a de-
bate of their real or imaginary grievances before the high court. Under

men (holding land or money-rents) and manumission (who may not all have been knights) a
document of Amalric mentions, among others, two men of witnesses: de decomes metes and
de zippens metes; *ibid.,* an. 69 (1190).

46. The status of men in this intermediate class was rather modest. e.g., a knight, one Jean
Berti, who in 1135 sold a village, Arthelles, in the seigneur of Comines, received 500 deniers.
Walter Grenier lord of Comines, has a problem, received 236. But his immediate lord, Arnulf
of Hayon, reserved only 69; Debaille Le Roman, *Carmen,* 8, 97 (no. 119).

47. Philip of Novara *cmt.* 51 (*RPC,* Lexi, I, 528–529); *John of Poitiers,* cmt. 140, 149 (*ibid.,
pp. 41–74.

47. Extraordinaires chose ven Amalric enreg., in *Lexi,,* cmt. 16 (*RPC,* Lexi, I, 656–677);
cmt. 234–235. On the levymology see Fournier, "Lettres sur le droit des Aumônes de Mortain,"
pp. 520–531, in *Carmens Inscriptionum,* pp. 368–373. These disbursements, usually attributed
to Baldwin III, may in fact belong to Baldwin III, see Fournier, *RHEF,* 4, XL (1963), 30–42.
the circumstances the simple knights, despite their numbers, were a
negligible entity with no power whatsoever. If Amalric's asseiz aimed
to create a separate "estate" of knights, it failed completely. The knights
were too dependent on their immediate lords to be able to unite in
an estate. It can rather be said that the Assez sur la ligèce, with its
procedure of judgment by peers and its "swearing-in" of all vassals
and subvassals, contributed to the formal establishment of an "estate
of nobles." Its mouthpiece was the high court, where the simple knights
could not raise their voice except against the king at the instigation
of their immediate lords.

The failure of Amalric's asseiz brings us to the last quarter of the
twelfth century and to the end of the first kingdom. The remarkable
feature of this rather short period is the strengthening of the position
of the baronage of the kingdom and at the same time a marked change
in its composition. The high court was at this time entirely ruled by
the baronage. In times of crisis it was the decisive body intervening
in matters of royal succession. If necessary, it represented the opinion
of the nobility against the will of the crown. At the same time, the
baronage itself was changing. Through succession to fiefs and through
marriage the baronage was more and more closing its ranks. The so-
cial mobility of fifty years earlier had disappeared and the chances
of a knight entering the enchanted circle of riches homines ou terriens
had become almost nil. Moreover, the upper nobility of the kingdom
defended more or less successfully its positions against newcomers,
who by the grace of the king tried to enter its ranks.

In the final years of the first kingdom the upper baronage was com-
posed of not more than half a dozen families, all intermarried or other-
wise connected with each other, to whom belonged the greater part
of the kingdom. The crown tried to counter by introducing into the
baronage nobles recently arrived from Europe. As the local baronage
never succeeded in making the court officials hereditary, the crown
still had the option of conferring these on whom it chose. But the
great officers were not of paramount importance in the later history
of the kingdom, when the lordships became more and more independent
of the crown. The possibility left open to the king of marrying
off royal daughters and heiresses of great fiefs to his favorites was
curtailed by the baronage, which claimed that the king had no right
to force an heiress into marriage. The barons even went so far
as to sabotage military and political efforts just to prevent the intru-
sion of newcomers into their ranks. In some cases they did not stop
at murder to eliminate an undesirable intruder. The entrance of an
alien did not always disrupt their ranks. Some of these were of mod
cest origine, often owing their career to the crown, but identifying
themselves in the course of time with the magnates. A conspicuous
example is Reginald of Châtillon, a noble of undistinguished back-
ground who reached the top of the feudal hierarchy through consecu-
tive marriages with the heiresses Constance of Antioch and Stephanie
of Transjordan. At the end of this period he was already an impor-
tant member of the local baronage, and was accepted as such by the
barons. And it would be precisely Reginald of Châtillon who would
make the haughty answer to the king, "Que amis estou-il sire de sa
terre come il [Guy of Lusignan] de la rey" 48 This is, in a nutshell,
the new position of the upper nobility of the kingdom on the eve
of the disaster of Hattin.

The fall of the kingdom and its revival following the Third Crusade
created a new geopolitical framework for the Latin states in the east.
Except for short periods, the kingdom and the northern principalities
consisted of only a long, narrow strip of the coast, which would be
attacked and cut up piecemeal by Baybars and his successors, Kala-
vuu and al-Ashraf Khalil, until its complete disappearance in 1291.

Some of the tendencies, already strong in the first kingdom, now
became paramount. The city, the main residence of the conqueror
even in the twelfth century, came to be their only residence (with the
exception of a few castles). The European farmer disappeared en-
tirely, although some efforts at colonization were still being made.
The kingdom and its lordships comprised the cities and their immedi-
ate areas, more reminiscent of a European city Bammeln than of a
lordship. The thirteenth-century kingdom was the only one in Christ-
tendom where the entire ruling population was urbanized. The modelled
polities of the thirteenth century can be partially explained by the
fact that state politics and become city politics, not unlike the fac-
tious strife in the cities of contemporary Italy.

The growing importance of the burghers and the communes is to
some measure explained by the fact of urbanization of the entire soci-
ety, and even more so by the impoverishment of the seigneurial class.
The nobles lost their rural fiefs and domans, the knights their hold-
ings. With some slight exaggeration it might be said that in the feudal
system of the Latin kingdom of the thirteenth century there were neither
landed nobility nor landed gentry. There were naturally differences
between the lordships. While the prince of Galilee conserved his title
but lost his principality (except for a short period between 1240 and

48 Enslin, XXIII, 23 (RHC, Oct. III, 34).
1244), lesser lords like those of Arsan, Beirut, Tyre, and Caesarea kept their castles and a few villages, or just the adjacent farms. But even their position was weakened and became precarious, especially after the middle of the thirteenth century. Financial difficulties forced many of them to sell out to the military orders, a practice already present in the twelfth century but more prevalent in the thirteenth. Others found refuge and support in the new kingdom of the Lusignans in Cyprus. Some even used their revenues from Cyprus to maintain their mainland possessions.49

At a lower level the small group midway between the highest nobility and the simple knights found itself deprived of resources. Their standing depended entirely on their connections with the higher nobility. A man like Philip of Novara is a typical representative of this group. Through connections and services to the party in power, he had his debts paid by royal bounty and received revenues—city revenues—for his living. Finally, the simple knights, already very much dependent on their lords in the twelfth century, would now become little more than salaried knights, not to say simple mercenaries. The original feudalism based on land possession became what Max Weber would have called Pyramidesfeudalismus, based on direct payments. Not did the payments come regularly. The knights had to use the extreme weapon of “conspiring their peers,” invoking the Assises sur la lige to assure their payment.50 They were recruited and paid for the expeditions against Damietta and in the crusade of Louis IX. They were courted and recruited by the different parties during the war against the “Lombards” and during the financial wars of the communities. Their maintenance was better assured during times of war than times of peace.

The general penury, especially felt in the lower echelons of the knightly class, as times must have blurred the distinctions between classes. The insistence of the thirteenth-century lawyers upon the exclusion of knights from holding borgoresses52 suggests that renting a

51. John of St. Benedict, cap. 239 (ATHC, Lois i, 239-304); cap. 236-237 (ibid., 1, 376-421).
52. Borgoresses in the hands of knights were already known in the twelfth-century Livre du rois, cap. 20 (ibid., 1, 679), in which there was a tendency to regard all small property as borgoresses: "cense ou vignes ou maisons"; and again (caps. 37, 43): "vignes ou maisons et jardins ou vignes." The Cyproissee Ablégé du Livre des Assises de la Cour des Bourgeoresses, cap. 31 (ATHC, Lois, II, 251), written between 1325 and 1330, gives a clear definition, probably no different
bargain, almost free from payments to say nothing of services, was an even safer and easier way of making a living than holding a money-

sieur. But buying burgesses legally had to be done through the "court

of burgesses," which with the growing spirit of legality and the in-
terests of city lords made it difficult. Still, we do find burgesses in
the hands of the nobility, and one of the ways of getting them was
through marriage.

As has been said, the general situation of knights must have blurred
class distinctions. Immediately after the restoration of the second king-
dom a great jurist, Ralph of Tiberias, axiom of the princes of Galilee,
when asked to preface over a committee of codification, disparaged
the legal knowledge of Raymond Anciannus and other "clever bour-
gees and low-born men of letters." 53 This would change in the thir-
teenth century; a burgess, Raymond of Conches, would often be heard
in the high court. 54 Marriage could also stimulate social mobility. We
do not find burgesses marrying into the highest nobility, but we may
assume that they intermarried with the lesser nobles. There may have
been some lesson derived from this in Cyprus which led Henry II

of Jerusalem, king of Cyprus (1285-1324) and lately king of Jeru-
salem, in 1297 to prohibit the holding of burgesses by anyone other than
burgesses. 55 In 1290 he issued a similar ordinance directed against the
communes and the clergy 56. Even more significant is an ordinance
of May 1296 which proclaimed: "No bourgeois and no bourgeois
and no merchant, whoever he may be, or of whatever nationality,
should marry off his sister, daughter, or relative, which he has, to
a knight or a son of a knight. And whoever does so, his body
will be at the will of the king. And he will pay a fine to the amount
of the dowry." 57 Such legislation was unknown in the kingdom of Jeru-
salem, where there was greater social mobility. In a country where
knights and burgesses lived together and differences in wealth were
sight, class distinctions tended to become blurred.

From that used in the Latin Kingdom: "burgenses quum non ducem ville, sit comm. sancti

Aniannum, etc. sancti et cathedræ." A knight might borrow a certain sum of money from a

burgess if he happened to be a neighbor of the property; if unsuccessful, however, he had to

continue it again within a year and a day after his acquaintances (ibid., cap. 11), of Prunier, Cru-
nader Institutions, pp. 220-223. 527-528.

53 "Et monstra Rizì rossellum non esserf sit perire, sit servitum Raymond

Aniannum ne servat corrupt burgess omnes homines hiera."-Philippe of Novara, cap. 47 (RHC, Lois,

I, 522-523). Philippe ne montra sa servitum burgess omnes homines hiera. Nicholas Ambliean, apparently a knight (cap. 49

ibid., I, 523). On the Aniannus see Prunier, Cruuder Institutions, pp. 220-223.

54 Ibid., cap. 38 (ibid., I, 524-526); John of Bristol, cap. 249 (ibid., 6, 383-384).

55 Aperçu de l'histoire des anses de la Cour des Bourgeois, cap. 16 (RHC, Lois II, 315).

56 Ibid. ; ordonnance des voiles de Cyprect, cap. 9 (RHC, Lois II, 316).

57 Ibid., cap. 5 (RHC, Lois III, 379).
Not only did the political situation and its financial implications tend to bring simple knights and burghers closer together; it also polarized the two extremes of the noble estate. Whereas the simple knight became increasingly dependent on his lord, the highest stratum of the nobility assumed effective leadership in the country. The absentee kingship of the Hohenstaufens left the kingdom under the thumb of the high court, dominated by the great families, for more than a generation. These great families, which intermarried among themselves and even with the royal house of Jerusalem and the imperial house of Byzantium, became a closely knit clique with common political and social interests. Legally there was no difference between these few families and the rest of the class of knights, but inevitably the higher nobility sought to adorn what by now was a fictitious equality and legitimize their superiority. John of Ibelin, one of the great jurists in an age of legal luminaries of law all over Christendom, invented a body of "Four Barons," which never really existed, as a kind of superior estate, with the extraordinary privilege that its members could be judged only by one another, as they were the only real peers of each other. In so doing, he perpetrated a historical crime, not the only one to be found in his treatise. At the same time, he reflects the ambition of these few select families to preserve for themselves a place unattainable by others in the kingdom.

The new situation of the kingdom influenced the general outlook of the nobility. During the two hundred years of its existence, this class could boast of a good number of real warrior heroes, but no great men of state. The realms of culture, letters, and philosophy had no representatives among them despite their contact with the Moslem world. The truly great historian of the twelfth century, probably the greatest of his time, William of Tyre, was of bourgeois origin. No schools of any importance were ever founded in the east and the contact with the eastern churches inspired neither polemics nor theology.

It was the more material side of civilization which was cultivated. The excellent military and religious architecture, erected to the glory of God and knighthood, reveals the influence of eastern models and is in many ways far in advance of European architecture. The Dehn palace of Beirut, which took away the breath of a German ambas-
savor to the east, shows Moslem and Byzantine influences. The
descriptions of luxurious houses, the soft and rather loose ways of
living, the lovely romanticque sculptures of twelfth-century Nazareth,
the paintings of Bethany, the sculptured flowers of Caesarea, the
mosaics of Bethlehem, all suggest an appreciation of the arts, but
at the same time indicate that the great lords, lay and ecclesiastical,
had either to import architects, painters, and sculptors from Europe
or recruit them from among the Syrians and Greeks. The nobles, if
not fighting or hunting, enjoyed the good things of life and a times
of peace indulged in the leisurely rhythm of life in the Levant.
The ideal nobleman described by Philip of Novara rose early, said his
prayers, attended mass (and did not leave in the middle), provided
charity, and then attended to his business until noon, when all work
stopped. Lunch was followed by an hour’s siesta. Then came some
light entertainment, after which he received others, or was received
by others, until bedtime.

There was one branch of culture, however, which not only was
represented and cultivated in the Latin east, but reached an extremely
high level there – feudal law. It may be said without exaggeration that
all the resources of the best minds among the nobility were devoted
to the study of law. True, no schools were founded. Legal lore was
only transmitted from one noble to another, and was illustrated by
the functioning of the courts. Although some noblemen took to the
law even in Europe (to mention only Beaumanoir, a contemporary
of John of Ibelin), the Levant provides a unique example in the me-
dieval world of an entire class addicted to the study of law. The
medieval state has been called by an eminent German scholar Rechts-
staat, and it is certainly true enough that the specific aim of the no-
bility in the Latin east was the preservation of a state based on law.

This praiseworthy aim, however, consciously or unconsciously, served
deeply rooted selfish interests. Constitutional law, as expounded by
John of Ibelin, was distorted and deformed to tell a tale of an elected
monarchy – we might even say a social contract – of a republic of
nobles, of a high court ruling the country. As private law it dealt
with procedure, where the knowledge of formulas and the use of de-
batable points of law, subterfuge, and artifice made the adjective sub-

---

40. Discovered during the excavations of 1999-1992. On the other hand, the most beautiful
Christian capitals, marble columns, and stones bearing Roman inscriptions (one containing
the name of Pontius Pilate) were used as foundations for houses and windmills.
41. Les Quatre Armes de Francia, ed. de Fevre, pp. 96 ff.
ill the highest praise for the lawyer. As personal and property law it specified in the most systematic way, far beyond anything known in contemporary Europe, the law of fiefs, but at the same time it safeguarded their possession and their possessors. This mental background, this ideology, one may say, of the feudal law as expounded by John of Ibelin, is the best expression of feudal thinking. It is the ideology of the "feudal paradise," never quite realized even in the crusaders' kingdom.

On a different level we have the work of the Gallicized Italian Philip of Novara. Lower in the social hierarchy than John of Ibelin, he describes feudal law and its procedure as it really existed in his time. Constitutional history and political theory are clearly beyond his interests. He describes his work in the third person: "And he wrote another book on the procedure of pleadings [forme de plain] and the usages and customs of the Assises d'Otranto and of Jerusalem and of Cyprus." Significantly he has to justify himself, as the counsels he gives may serve personal interests rather than the cause of justice. It is evident that a good many of his assays simply facilitate evading the law. Lower in status, those of Geoffrey le Tort and James of Ibelin, are only convenient abridgments for everyday use, the first written by a knight of modest origin. True, the great noble houses never deviated from the common code of chivalry. Their ideas were those of their time and class. Concern for family honor appears frequently in their utterances, inspiring and regulating their actions and behavior. But the repute of their houses was often confounded with the welfare of the state. The anarchy which prevented the rule of any monarch, whether a Hohenstaufen, or the aging Alice of Champagne, or her husband, Ralph of Nesle (or "of Soissons"), was instigated by the great "usages" dominating the high court. But everything had to be done in the most legal way, according to the customs, usages, and assises of the kingdom. Even a revolutionary movement like the "commune of Acre," which we may look upon as the crusaders' equivalent of an assembly of estates, took shelter under a royal privilege. The state went to pieces in a blaze of legal oratory in the high court of Acre. They were sans peur et sans reproche, but prud'hommes only in the narrowest circle of their peers.

---

62 Ibid., p. 123
64 Cf. a different assessment by LaMotte, "John d'Ibelin, the Old Lord of Beirut, 1177-1236." Byzantion, XII (1937), 487-498.
C. The Burgesses

Social realities and crusaders' jurisprudence excluded from the noble "estate" all Franks who were not already noble, as well as members of the Italian, Provençal, and Spanish communues. This mass of people, who formed a broad base for the colony of European conquerors, was called "burgesses" in Latin, "bourgeois" in French. It is important to note that no chronicle of the First Crusade uses the noun or adjective "burgesses." The perspective of their authors was defined by military matters. The social composition of the armies was indicated by references to "militiam" and "pedites." It is among the thousands of "pedites" in the First Crusade that we have to look for the elements which would later form the class of "burgesses." Historians of the nineteenth century accepted as self-evident that the burgesses had originally been European city inhabitants, who came with the First Crusade, settled in the east, and were reinforced in the course of time through successive waves of immigration, generally recruited


from among the same social elements. The name "bourgeois," coined in Europe, was thought to have been imported into the Latin east along with European towns. The theory is difficult to accept. The sources of the First Crusade hardly ever mention the pedilus in any way that might suggest their origin. They are referred to in general terms, the purpose being to impress the reader by the immense number of crusaders, and perhaps also to stress the fact that all classes of society and many nations participated in the movement. Furthermore, the general condition of the countries from which the crusaders came hardly suggests an urban origin for the non-noble participants. Two factors contradict such an assumption. First, the number of urban agglomerations of any size in the eleventh century in Europe was extremely small. Aside from northern and central Italy, which contributed only a few small contingents from Lombardy besides those who participated in the expeditions of the communes and consequently were not included among the bourgeois, only Flanders and Provence had urban centers of any importance. This alone makes it unlikely that any appreciable proportion of the thousands of pedilus could have originated in a few dozen urban centers. Moreover, only a very few western towns could boast of a population exceeding several thousand inhabitants. At the end of the eleventh century the populations of most western towns could be counted in hundreds. It is therefore clear of the question that these towns could have furnished thousands of emigrants to the east.

We must also take into account that the end of the eleventh century and the beginning of the twelfth witnessed a spectacular social and economic evolution, the era of cities. Underlying this was a demographic growth in the countryside and the integration of the surplus population either in the movement of internal agricultural colonization or in the new movement of urbanization. The growth of cities was an uninterrupted process lasting something like two centuries. In these circumstances it is rather doubtful that they were centers of emigration. For two hundred years cities would draw people from rural areas; it is difficult to assume that they lost population in any great numbers through emigration at the same time. It hardly seems likely, therefore, that any sizable European city population went to the east during the two hundred years of the Latin kingdom’s existence, and certainly not during the First Crusade. Of course, there

66 Cf. Eckhardt, IX (RME, Ges., IV, 85). "tot ingentes magni, tot minus pedilus, totque extremum coloniastum."
67 See W. F. Fuller, Dictionary of Christanitv, 11, 13 (ed. Hagenmeyer, pp. 4-5).
68 The great expedition from the Lombard states in 1096 did not reach the East.
was some sporadic participation of townsmen in the crusades, but it was not from these that the great crusading armies were recruited, nor they who contributed significantly to the movement of migration to the east. Finally, the popular element, the armies of Peter the Hermit, Gottschalk, and their companions, did not contribute much to the actual settlement in the east. These armies were destroyed in 1096 before reaching Syria. The majority of those who in fact reached the future lands of the crusaders came with the great barons. While there were urban groups which joined the Peasants' Crusade during its march along the Rhine and the Danube (in several cities the townsmen participated in the Jewish massacres), the proportion of townsmen in the baronial host was too small to mark the early crusading settlements with a European urban imprint.

We have then to imagine the earliest non-nobles in the crusading army and in the newly conquered lands as having an essentially rural, peasant background. Here and there household servants of the nobility or servants of knights went with their lords to the east. Others came from villages and manors in the neighborhood of the centers of crusading propaganda. The predominance of the rural element in the host goes far to explain the lack of craftsmen, carpenters, and smiths during siege of cities. For example, the army besieging Jerusalem was unable to build siege towers and machinery until the arrival at Jaffa of Genoese ships bearing materials and craftsmen experienced in the more complicated skills of construction.

During the crusade itself the pedes were not organized or dealt with in any special way. Repression of excesses must have been made summarily by the leaders of the different armies, which would have been sufficient to meet the needs of an army on the march. Only with the first conquests and settlement did the problem of the non-noble Frankish population as a class become pressing. The sheer weight of numbers, combined with traditional European class attitudes, necessitated some kind of organization. But it would be wrong to suppose that there existed any consciousness of the Frankish non-

---

49 Those known to us as burgomaster almost never have city patronymics. They often have a bizarre or ridiculous surname—sometimes the name of the province of origin. Normally the Christian name is followed by the father's name, usually in the speech which sometimes becomes a surname.

70 Caffarelli: De constitutione civilitatis, 60 (RHC, Oct., V 57); Raymond of Aguilers, cap. 38 (RHC, Oct., III, 208); William of Tyre, VIII, 9 (RHC, Oct. I 338): “Erand enim viri prabominabili, ut, nullam omnem, aut praeceptoriae habentem armas perrivit... Sed et aliis omnibus secum multarum organisum, ut ut quidque aequum ad vetustum va et cura difficilerum spatiosam effectionem prime manuacred, per aequum spectum facile comprimere.”
nobles as a class or "estate." The kingdom was in statu nascendi as late as the time of Baldwin II. Private conquests, like those of Tancred, had only just been integrated with some difficulty into the general framework of the kingdom. Although the basic distinction between nobles and non-nobles was clear, there was little feeling of dealing with a corporate "estate" within the framework of a state. Whereas feudal-vassal organization was the basis of the state structure, there remained the problem of assigning to the Frankish non-nobles an appropriate status in the different places conquered and held by the Franks. What probably happened was that solutions first tried and empirically established in Jerusalem were later transferred to royal cities like Acre, and finally copied in other cities that became centers of lordships.71

Whereas the milites found their earliest organization and consolidation in the traditional baronial court, to which they owed obedience through their oath of homage and fealty, no such organization or tradition existed for the others. The only tradition which the crusaders brought with them for dealing with such people was that of the manorial court. This kind of court was hardly satisfactory in the new circumstances, although some of its principles might have influenced the organization of the special bourgeois' jurisdictions. The new needs were perhaps neither very urgent nor very clear at the outset. For more than ten years (1099-1110) the colonies of the crusaders were in a state of continual warfare, when any battle might easily have ended with the destruction of the entire kingdom. A special jurisdiction regarding pedites in the army probably remained more urgent than the kind of organization more appropriate to a settled society at peace.

The earliest legislation, as far as is known to us, deals with feudal matters, although some royal ordinances, like that about property laws in the city of Jerusalem, deal with vassals and bourgeois alike.72 Such an ordinance seems to be symptomatic for the early period. It is essentially a city bylaw, to use a modern notion, relating to Jerusalem alone, which did not prevent it, because of its royal origin, from being called an assize. But in the course of time, there arose the need

71 The tendency to use a corporation or "estate" derived from the Livre des Amoires of the 13th century, in Acre. By that time there may actually have been an "estate," but such is not the case for the early period of the kingdom. It may have been different in Antioch, where the great vassals belonged to the prince and a general concept of dealing with an "estate" may have originated in the court of the principality, but I doubt it.

to define the standing of the burgesses as a social and juridical entity. Three factors seem to be at the base of defining the place of Frankish non-nobles in society: their number; the fact that they lived alongside nobles within the city; and their particular occupations—in crafts, commerce, and services which lay outside the interests of seigneurial courts. We do not know when the earliest burgesses' jurisdiction was established. But although the tradition reported by John of Ibelin of two courts, feudal and burgess, established by the legendary law-giver Godfrey of Bouillon, has to be rejected, it seems likely that the first special non-noble courts were established very early in the twelfth century.

These courts probably grew up around the first castellans or vis-\-comtes (the term for the lord's representative ruling the city) of Jerusalem and the principality of Antioch. Their composition, though not their functions, could not have been a matter of doubt. They had to follow the rule, common to the Roman-Saxon world, of judgment by peers as a matter of principle. This principle, common to baronial and manorial courts alike, may well have been followed from the very beginning. It is a matter of conjecture when courts for non-nobles came into existence. We may suppose that around 1110, at the end of the great period of expansion, it became a matter of necessity to organize city life within the framework of a specific organization.

The specific notion of a non-noble class, the class of burgesses, appears for the first time in a privilege of Baldwin I granted to the canons of the Holy Sepulcher. The king granted his optimates, militie, and burgesses the right to concede freely their revenues to the Holy Sepulcher. This first appearance of the name burgesses seems to coincide in time with the first coincidence of a distinct class.

More often than not the appearance of a name as a clue to the origin of a class or institution, but this cannot be said about the name burgesses. The designation, not attested to by our sources before 1110, was not coined for urban emigrants from Europe, although the word itself was imported from Europe. Why was it used? The first reason seems to be the new social and legal status acquired by non-nobles. To join the armies of the First Crusade or a later crusade, or merely to emigrate to the east, brought about a marked change in the legal

73. On this whole problem see Prawer, "The Origin of the Court of Burgesses," in Crusader Institutions pp 263-295.
74. William of Tyre, XI. 37. "Cumque quid quaeremus quem operam optimam, est alia quae nullum est, cum burgessens, deinde nullam esse cum operam operis, etiam est qui possit velut omnes operis."
75. "JAN, Orc., I, 470-476."
status of the participant. Whereas in the knightly class new links of vassalage were created, which sometimes replaced traditional connections, the basic relationship of lord and vassal did not itself change. Among the lower scholons of society, however, a real revolution took place. The peasant, villein or serf, who joined the host became ipso facto a free man. All marks of servitude disappeared, the heterogeneous mass of villeins became entirely free. The great host of pedites were consequently called liberi homines or franci. This last term was already used to designate everyone in the army, witnessing to its ethnic origin. On the other hand liberi homines, although juridically correct, quite often at the end of the eleventh century meant not only free men, but sometimes knights, people free from any kind of servitude.

It might have been to avoid confusion that the name burgenses was used. This was the usual designation of the inhabitants of burghi or borghes, new urban agglomerations just coming into being and inhabited by a new free but non-noble population. As a matter of fact the burghi were almost the only places in western Europe where such a population could be found. Drawing upon European traditions and experience, in all probability from France (Normandy and Flanders, but also Norman Italy), such a designation seemed to be appropriate and acceptable. Then, too, the entire Frankish population in the east settled in cities, which, if they were not civitates, bishops' sees, would be called in European usage burghi, as opposed to urbes or oppida. Consequently, as a designation for a free, non-noble class the name burgenses was quite appropriate. But from the outset it had a different meaning from the one it had in Europe. It not only excluded nobles, as it was meant to from the beginning, but it also excluded all non-Franks, even if they were city-dwellers. The "burgesses of Jerusalem" never included the local Syrian Christian population, but was a term applied only to the Franks. The court des bourgeois was a strictly Frankish court, judging Syrians only in exceptional and well-defined cases.

Later sources, although probably reflecting earlier legislation, pro-

---

claimed as a fundamental principle that the burgesses were excluded from holding tithes. This meant that they were restricted to owning non-feudal land, land owing no military service. This legislation, following European usage and answering local needs to reserve enough land to provide for military service, reflected a chronic shortage of fighting manpower. The military obligations of the burgesses were met in a different way, without infringing on the limited land resources. The typical landed property of the burgess, therefore, was city land and some very small holdings in the immediate vicinity of the city. These holdings were called borgesie (burgelia). The characteristic feature of this kind of tenure was its complete freedom from any kind of feudal service, the land being burdened only with a quit-rent (cezur) payable to the lord from whom it was held. Its abolition by sale, gift, or exchange required the approval of the lord, represented by his viscount or chantry, who had a right to a customary small payment on such occasions. Free from feudal service and from servile actions alike, the borgesie was, with the exception of the eldod, the nearest thing to free property that existed in the central period of the Middle Ages. Its standing in the hierarchy of land tenure corresponded to the social and juridical status of the burgess, neither knight nor serf. One is even tempted to ask if the borgesie, well known in the early twelfth century in Normandy, Flanders, and Sicily, proceeded the name burgesses in the east—if the tenure itself suggested the name—but this is a hypothesis that would be difficult to prove or disprove.

The emergence of the borgesie is important in providing the earliest economic basis for a burgess class. The massacre or expulsion of the natives during the conquest had left the cities almost empty, and the conquerors had the greatest difficulty in providing for their settlement and defense. We know that in Jerusalem the new Frankish population settled in one quarter of the city only, the quarter around

75. John of Haliac, comp. 240 (RPC, Lond. I, 397–399)
78. Cfr. John of Haliac, comp. 24 (RPC, Lond. I, 47): "De quod [bourgess] eum ac è dit plusieur que en la Court de Bourgese." He defines the rights of a burgess as: "servit, omne, justice," as compared to the "court de borgesie et justice" comp. 270 (ibid., I, 409–420). In both cases, it seems, it is the type of tenure rather than the status of man that is important. Cfr also Alfred de Livre de Jusans de la Cour des Bourgesie, comp. 21 (RPC, Lond. II, 230). "Tout prestans de le佾ton a se neer en se don a toutes personnes de borgese, et je crois que ce esm plus des choses parques cette court a ceste aoste in Cour de la Bourgesie, vote in Court de Bourges"
the Holy Sepulcher, not being able to populate the city at a whole. As late as 1115–1116 king Baldwin I of Jerusalem brought in settlers from Transjordan, assigning to them the old, now empty Jewish quarter, which under the crusaders became the Syrian quarter. The situation was no different in places like Ramla, where only part of the ancient city was inhabited," although it was better in some coastal towns where it was easier to make a living.

It is against this background of half-empty cities immediately following the conquest that the first tenures were created. The first property was created through the "law of conquest," which was still in use as late as the middle of the thirteenth century. The first person to put up a sign on a house or property in a captured city automatically became its proprietor. This is probably the origin of the Provencal quarter, near the gate of Zion, which had been captured by the army of Raymond of St. Gilles. In the vicissitudes of war many a former servoren suddenly found himself the proprietor of homes and land. Some of them did even better; like some knights of modest origin, they acquired not only houses and city property, but even villages. A number of villages and farms in the vicinity of Jerusalem are known by the name of their Frankish occupants, who were petty knights and burgesses well known in the city itself. We should not, however, exaggerate the value and importance of those holdings. We have to remember that at a time when land and houses were to be

80. The mention of enfranchised property is common in Raymond of Aguilers, and RHC (Dec. III, 290): "Hic enim errauisse inter se, ut si absque alii omnium vel villarum prior
venissent et posuerint signa, non noverint, a multis alios potius recogissent"; cf. ibid. cap. 4 (p. 203): Petru de Chartres, I, 29, describes the taking possession of city property. "Ius senes
sunt domini, etiam in posterum magnorum in vicum possessum. Haec, ut quacumque propter
subsidum iussent vinum direo, sine posse eorum mundum, ut aliquo alio Placentia,quit
decurio supplex sit pulchrum, et quodcumque in ea reperint, ab eis natione propriis, non
sumvitur, incolae et possident. Hoc ipsum, juxta mentionem proconsulium stabiliorem Unde multi
chie e topografie, d'archeologie et d'histoire. II, Alcune comitive (by Abel Paris, 1926).
82. This may have inspired the comment by Petru de Chartres, III, 37 (about 1124–1126): "Hic sin possevident eamque proprietatem et retro per servorum et hominum. Qui sunt
aliquanum, sicue sunt quasi indigenae, et quicquam habent, sicue aliquo pacto.
83. West of Jerusalem we find dozens of the villages that later belonged to the Hospitallers, "castes Hospitalis [Hospital] et de Puebl et de Claris [Aguila] et de Association et de Bacieler et de Gerardis [Becker]" (1141). Dalman: Le Roux, Cartulaire, I, 219. Force, Aguila (Acus), and Baldismin were without doubt burgesses. In a confirmation of Baldwin II (1126) to the Hospitallers we find other benefactors, "Almodred mandator Secundus dominorum perturca fidei et fidelicet Abalnorum, seinti Lamberti cantoricius" - Dalmauri Le Roux, Cartulaire, I, 24.
had for the asking, and the population was extremely small, the worth
of the new property lay more in the provision of comfortable quar-
ters and shops than in its monetary value. It was only with the grow-
ing immigration of the first half of the twelfth century that city real
estate rose in value.

With political stability and the establishment of an administration,
the burgesses holdings in the city were integrated into the larger scheme
of seigneurial and urban administration. This came about through
listing city property as paying a rent to the lord of the city, and mak-
ing the proprietor and his property dependent on the city authori-
ties, the viscount or chatelain (often both offices in the same hands),
and the court of burgesses. This process of integration was not complete.
Many burgesses paid no rents to the lord and were in fact allotodial
possessions. This kind of property is known in our sources as franc
borgesie and is defined as not owing services or rents to anybody. 64
These allotodial possessions probably represent the first property ac-
quitted through the "law of conquest." As greedy as they were, the
conquerors had no use for empty spaces. They took possession of
houses in a small part of the city, which they settled and defended.
Some of this allotodial property escaped being listed, while whatever
remained unoccupied was considered the lord's property, to be do-
nated or rented to new settlers. Such grants would be subject to a
payment for borgesie. The lord might also keep the property, letting
the houses to new settlers without alienating either his seigneurial
rights or his ground rent. 65 By this time the franc borgesie had become
an anachronism kept alive only by Frankish legists and in the courts.

That burgesses held city property should not lead us to look for
an affluent society in the early period of the kingdom. The general
poverty, marked by the precarious position of the knights who waited,
often in vain, for their salaries, affected the burgesses as well. A city
like Jerusalem was almost emptied by mass emigration to the coastal
ports because the inhabitants could not make a living in the capital.
Undoubtedly the burgesses depended largely on seigneurial bounty
The hundreds of pedlars who took part in military expeditions were
paid by the king or his vassals. A member entered the domestic service
of the king, nobles, and churchmen. Military spoils provided an addi-
tional source of livelihood.

64. Livre des Ambassadeurs des Bourgeois, cap. 31 (RHC, Lib. III, 361).
65. Le texte: "se servir sans en rendre compte.

66. From Philip of Novara, cap. 78 (RHC, Lib. I, 559).
67. The lord will then be both seigneur jure borgesie and seigneur jure anchorar.
It was only later, roughly after 1130, when almost all coastal cities but Tyre and Ascalon had been taken, that the young state entered upon a period of stability. The spectacular victory of the crusading armies and the slow but steady extension of the frontiers set off a growing immigration from Europe. Religious aspirations, economic calculation, social expectations, and, last but not least, public opinion directed settlers to the Holy Land. The non-noble immigrants seem to have been largely recruited from the southern parts of France, probably because newly opened maritime lines of communication facilitated emigration from areas adjacent to the Mediterranean. The growing stability and the increase in population were reflected in the economic activities of the burgesses, including the arts and crafts, and a local commerce in food, baking, cooking, and so forth. The burgesses became real city dwellers, fulfilling economic functions typical of city life. For the great majority this was a revolutionary change in occupation and habits. Coming predominantly from rural areas, they possessed some knowledge of such primary crafts as carpentry and forging, but what was good enough for small villages in Europe looked primitive indeed when compared with the skills of outsiders. Some crafts common in the east, like mosaic paving, were almost entirely unknown to the newcomers. Masonry, in demand in the west only for palaces and churches, was now needed for the simplest buildings, because of the scarcity of wood and the abundance of stone. But the Franks were quick to learn and to adapt. We shall probably have to look to the Christian Syrians (since the Moslem and Jewish populations in the cities were generally exterminated) for the teachers of the new crafts developed by the Franks. In some arts they would do better than their teachers; their ironwork would be admired by the Moslems. Other occupations developed with the growing immigration and pilgrimage. In Jerusalem there was a whole street taken up by cooks catering to the bachelors and pilgrims in the city.

Yet the class of burgesses achieved no real position of influence before the middle of the thirteenth century. Though their starting point was more propitious than that of their European contemporaries, owing to the flourishing coastal cities and ports and the fact that the kingdom implanted itself in the midst of an advanced money economy, the burgesses as a class never reached economic or political prominence. This was because of the dominating presence of the commer-

10 A Roll of Burgesses in one new settlement, Mahmasa (al-Dirah, La Grande Mahmasa), near Rishlah, to the north of Jerusalem (about 1150), included a substantial number of settlers from Aquitaine, Provence, Burgundy, Campania, Languedoc, Poitou, Bourges, Catalonia, Valencia, Lombardy, Venice, Milanese, etc. Ravine, Castelauray, no. 131
cial communes. It was almost inevitable that the merchants of Italy, and later of Provence and Spain, would monopolize almost at once the most lucrative occupation, international maritime commerce. Experienced merchants and almost the only shipowners among the Franks, they extended their commercial activities, which already connected the Byzantine empire and Egypt with Italy, to the Syrian and Palestinian coasts. This may have been more important to Syria and Palestine than to the Italian communes themselves. Their main activities, growing in unprecedented measure during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, remained essentially centered in the great emporia of Constantinople and Alexandria. Relative newcomers to the eastern port of the Mediterranean, like the Genoese and Pisans, may for a time have favored the crusaders’ ports, but economic realities made them come to realize that fortunes could more easily be made in Byzantine and Moslem than in Latin ports. But although Mediterranean commerce remained based on the old centers, the communes in the Latin ports monopolized the commerce reaching the crusaders’ states. The local burgesses had to resign themselves to the local market only, and even here they were generally handicapped by Italian competition.

The Italians boasted a long list of political and economic agreements with the kings of Jerusalem, the princes of Antioch, and the counts of Tripoli, and later on with the different city lords, which assured them exceptional privileges in customs and market tolls. As far as we can determine, the local authorities never made the distinction, current in Europe, between wholesale and retail trade. Both were consequently left in the hands of the Italian merchants, enjoying low customs duties and city tolls. This undermined the burgesses even in the retail commerce of imported goods. Their business thrived on local traffic in products of daily use, on buying and selling foodstuffs and supplying the everyday needs of a growing city population and a knightly consumer class which drew little but primary foodstuffs from its landed possessions. This modest economic position was not improved by the rise in value of city real estate. The burgesses often had their own houses, for which they paid a modest rent, but they

37 In particular Pisa, Genoa, and Venice. Amari, the sultan, had very few privileges in the kingdom. Later Marcellus, Montpellier, and Barcelona succeeded in getting a foothold in the Latin state.

38 Several inventories are preserved in our sources. Cf. an inventory of the finances of the Holy Sepulcher in Jerusalem. Reuiller, Comptes, no. 185 (pp. 379–379) of Hospitallers in Jerusalem vs. Pisa, Codice diplomaticum, i. 235–236 (pp. 1908). According to this inventory, written about 1170, the very modest sum of 224 deniers was paid annually by 42 inhabitants. Other inventories are preserved for the city property of the communes in Acre and Tyre.
would hardly have seized houses and lands, when such was still possible, not needed for immediate use. Formerly empty spaces and unoccupied houses belonged to the lord of the city. If anyone became rich because of the rise in land values, therefore, it was not the bourgeois, but the various city lords. Still, it may be assumed that some initial capital in the hands of the bourgeois was created by their possession of borgesses; 89 the rise of land values, the direct outcome of a growing city population, would give them the means of either acquiring additional property or establishing shops and businesses.

Acquisition of city property was facilitated by the fact that the holding of borgesses was restricted to bourgeois. Communes, military orders, and knights were barred from such holdings. There was even legislation to prevent alienation of borgesses 90 in Cyprus, but still during the lifetime of the Latin kingdom, Henry II forced on non-burgess the immediate sale of their borgesses. 91 Although the aim of this legislation was to ensure that knights would owe feudal duties for their possessions, which was not applicable to bourgeois tenure, and that church establishments would not convert borgesses into franc-abimoine, the result was to favor the bourgeois. We know that Henry II of Cyprus angrily left the Latin kingdom when the Templars acquired a village near Acro, which had the status of borgese, without his permission. 92

By the end of the first quarter of the twelfth century a number of bourgeois had risen above the normal status of their class. As far as we can see, this upward movement was effected through court ser-

89 Which they could accomplish by obtaining some slight vassalage restrictions, the lord had the right of preemption and the right to a small payment, a kind of sequester or land of tenure, in case of alienation. The bourgeois lord or vassal was a literal representative of the noble rule that alienation required the lord’s agreement. As far as we know the lord never had a right to refuse in the case, which suggests that the institution was brought from Europe in its developed form: *Livres des Amours des Bourgeois*, cap. 31, 356 (RHC, Lib. II, 54, 224), cf. De l'armorie de Charlem. et al., Liv. N. Rom. et Carth. Cap. 104. I 110, 383. Delaval Le Roux, Carth. II, 200-201, 782, 783, 784. (1943), 427.


92 *Fratres. XXXIII*, 26 (RHC, Lib. II, 474-475): "par un certain qu'il est au Temple; par le conseil de la Fraternité [and added], que le moine eut a faire a ce que ceux qui meurent en Temple avec vêtements sont ceux qui ont été présent dans le Roy d'une charité d'Auro qui tenoit le dit conseil de bonjorcle, dont il se devait honnester en service." Cf. *Marino Sanudo, I, III, par XIV, 4*, in *Burgare, Genes Des per Francesco*, I. 226.
vice of the various city lords. In Jerusalem, where we find the first traces of a burgess elite, we see them in the entourage of the king or his city representative, the viscount, or in the retinue of the patriarch, the lord of an autonomous quarter in the holy city with a court of his own. Several names of burgesses appear again and again among the signatories of royal and patriarchal deeds and official proclamations.

The legal distinction between nobles and non-nobles, and the traditional European principle of judgment by peers, made a special jurisdiction for burgesses imperative. It was usual for quarrels between burgesses to come before a court composed of burgesses and presided over by the château-lain or viscount. This court also had jurisdiction in cases of alienation of burgesses. Even supposing that a special court of burgesses did not exist in the earliest period of the kingdom, and consequently that in the beginning a seigneurial court (perhaps with the participation of some burgesses) was the competent authority, it still would be normal for alienations to be made before burgesses, who would witness the act and attest to its legality. There were no official registers of a court of burgesses until the crusade of Louis IX, but any document which includes a list of witnesses provides a record of the names of those competent to testify before the court.

Preceding, therefore, the first appearance of a court of burgesses as such, from 1120 on we meet with people styling themselves idonei viri (1120), conventionis testes (1134–1135), regni testes legitiimi (1136), partii testes (1136), legitimi viri (1144), probi homines (1150), and de viris Jerusalem (1174). These appellations in written deeds prove that alienations of burgesses were recorded before a body of burgesses by 1120 and probably earlier. On the other hand, such titles as regni testes legitiimi or regni movensis inurati indicate a consciousness of a privileged standing in the social hierarchy of the country. This feeling is also indicated by such a title as homini legitiimi et justissimo exercitato (about 1146–1150), which, as a matter of fact,
is an exact description of the competence and standing of the jurés of the court of burgesses.

The term “court of burgesses” appears for the first time in a document dated 1149 in Jerusalem, followed in 1166 in Antioch, and 1167 in Caesarea, and only very late, not before 1194, in Arce. It is certainly due to chance that relatively few and rather late documents mention the court by name. But we have to remember that a register of the proceedings of the court did not come into being before 1251, and even this register is lost. Our documentation derives from deeds regarding property, which later came, with the property itself, into the hands of church establishments or of communes. The court of burgesses, or the court of the viscount, was in some measure an expression of the specific needs of the burgesses, although it never became an instrument to voice their demands. Still, the judgment by peers, the special procedures, and a number of assizes or customs satisfied the most urgent needs and provided some sense of a distinctive class. The court enjoyed considerable prestige and heavy penalties were imposed for contempt of the court, its viscount, and its jurors. The city ruler would not appoint a viscount without the formal assent of the burgesses, and was also supposed to take their advice in proclaiming city ordinances.

The court did not lead to city autonomy, but in a sense it acted as a force for consolidation. Its general supervision and policing of the city gave it the appearance of a ruling body. Its competence ratione personae, over burgesses, gave it the appearance of an autonomous body politic, and its competence ratione materiae brought before it even knights and nobles who held city property defined as burgesses.

The early boni homines, or people bearing equivalent titles, mark the first signs of a class distinction among the burgesses. 11 It is of some interest to note that, as far as we can learn about their occupations, they are very often money-changers and goldsmiths, that is, people of means and liquid capital. At least in the thirteenth century, the

99 Kamhov, Commentarius, no. 122.
100 Delattre Le Roux, Cartulaire, i, 231-232 (no. 367).
101 Idem, Les Archives, no. 37.
102 Idem, Commentarius, i, 235-236 (no. 661).
103 Philip de Novara, comp. 87 (RHC; Lib. 1, 80).
104 Livre des Assises des Bourgeois, comp. 6 (ibid.; Lib. 1, 28).
105 A specific feature of the court of burgesses is its relationship both with the lord who appointed the court and with the city itself. All these claims belong to the same lord, both will have its own court of burgesses, cap. 234 (ibid.; Lib. 1, 311).
106 Commentarius, Commentarius, Commentarius, e.g. a deed regarding Jerusalem signed by seven people, after whose name we read: "omnes sic firmantes" (Kamhov, Commentarius, no. 32; cf. ibid., nos. 85, 104, 99, 121, Delattre Le Roux, Les Archives, nos. 25, 38).
jurers sat three days a week in court and were not salaried; thus it
itself presupposes that they were people of some economic standing.
On the other hand, it was quite customary for the lord of a city to
appoint to the court men enjoying prestige among city inhabitants.
Some, of course, could have acquired such prestige from the very
fact of their being nominated. Thus some viscounts were of burgher
origin, indicating how well burghers could do for themselves through
seigneurial service. Similar advances were made by burghers in the
patrician’s court, where some were designated by the title judex,
not known in later sources or treatises on law.

It is from among these notables that the first jurors (jurati) of the
court of burghers were recruited. In Jerusalem, where there were two
distinct courts, the king’s and the patriarch’s, each competant, it would
seem, in a different part of the city, we can trace the emergence of
an official burgher elite through a series of documents. The burghers
possessing villages around Jerusalem probably rose in status from that
very fact. The more usual way of social advancement, however, was
to move from the privileged position of jurors in the court of burghers
to the noble class of knights. A few examples may illustrate this social
mobility. One man appearing frequently in the early documents of the
kingdom is Godfrey Acu. Beginning in 1120, when he witnessed
a royal decree of Baldwin II partially abolishing taxes on food brought
to Jerusalem, and up to the eve of the Second Crusade, we find him
in the entourage of the king of Jerusalem, of the patriarch and the
canon of the Holy Sepulcher. About 1125 Ralph of Vanturen, a
knight, left him a vineyard on the road leading from Jerusalem to
Bethlehem “because he served me well and with devotion for a long
time.” But whose is his signature as late as 1134 is mixing the
witnesses described as de burgusibus, in 1144 and 1147 he is listed
among the barones regni of Baldwin III. It is pertinent to note that
a village near Emumus (Amwas), which belonged to the order of St.
John (1141), was called castrale de Gnastridio Agulis. That such cases

106 Cfr. Godefrois, filius Raemelen (Rahemelin) unus in Antoinch in 1123-1124 (Roussin, Cartulaire no. 63; Röhrich, Regesta, no. 145 as de Barumena, in 1123 (Roussin, Cartulaire, no. 96 Regesta, no. 157) as de burgusibus, in 1140 (Roussin, Cartulaire, no. 81 194 Regesta, no. 193, 194 as viscountes.
108 Cfr. Roussin, Regesta, no. 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 164.
109 Roussin, Cartulaire no. 124.
110 Röhrich, Regesta, no. 164.
111 Ibid., no. 226, 244.
112 Ibid., no. 205. Röhrich has incorrectly identified it with constans Cassufrodi de Agulis,
which was in the county of Tripoli, ibid., no. 75.
were not restricted to Jerusalem is clear from the career of one Gerald, son of Arnald, in the city of Ramla, who in 1167 signed as a burgess, but in 1169 as a knight.113

Social mobility through royal service did not stop with the first kingdom. A famous burgess family like the Antiochenes, prominent throughout the thirteenth century, would see one of its members called miles Accenonis (1288).114 Another example of the same type, although not leading as far to knighthood, is that of Godfrey of Tours, closely connected with the patriarch's household. He signed documents (1153-1186) pertaining to the canons of the Holy Sepulcher, and appeared from 1161 as the patriarch's secrach (capitul),115 head of the patriarch's household, and perhaps even fulfilling some military functions. He witnessed a charter of Baldwin I at among the burgenses regis and also served as a juror of the court of burgesses of Jerusalem.116 In this last capacity we find him again and again between 1161 and 1186.117 These random examples prove the existence of an upper group among the burgesses, which came to prominence in the administrative service of the kings, patriarchs, and lords of the kingdom. Naturally, some would also become prominent through successfully run businesses. For example, Theobald of Tyre gave a loan to a knight, James of Sidon, of 500 bezants, taking as security a village called Gypse and receiving, to pay off the loan, 150 bezants' worth of agricultural produce annually during the next twelve years.118

The frequent appearance of burgesses in royal and seignorial documents does not mean that there was a blurring of the clear-cut distinction between nobles and burgesses. The latter often signed documents where nobles were concerned, but this was because they dealt with city taxes. Their signatures had legal importance should a dispute come before the court of burgesses extra muros. Still, we sometimes find their signatures on royal and seignorial documents where it is impossible to assign to them any legal significance. We should remember, however, that the court of burgesses of Jerusalem was a royal court, and there is nothing extraordinary in the fact that the jurors or eminent burgesses of the city might witness a royal document.119 In other cases it was the solemnity of the act that led the ruler to

113 Ibid., nos. 432, 472.
115 Rohrbach, Regesta, nos. 391.
116 Ibid., nos. 543, 643, 631.
117 Ibid., nos. 290, 300, 301, 332, 333, 571, 534.
119 Kondis, Conclusions, nos. 62, 79, 56, 63, 60, 57.
invite their signatures. Such, for example, is the case of a donation by Robert of St. Giles to the Hospitallers. It was made in the presence of the patriarch and with the consent of king Fulk. The patriarch (William of Metzhames) sealed it "in the presence of the lawful witnesses of the three orders", 124 such instances are not very frequent, but they do occur in the kingdom as well as in the principalities. 121 The burgesses were lawful men, the good citizens of the king or lord, and their signatures were an additional advertisement. As to their importance, however, we may concur with the writer of the documents by which Raymond III of Tripoli transferred Rafantsah and Montferrat to the Hospitallers, who, after noting the signatures of the clergy, nobility and some burgesses, their added: "and all the rest of the number of which it would be more boring than profitable to tell." 122

While some burgesses moved upward, another kind of distinction emerged within the class. By the middle of the twelfth century the kingdom had reached its zenith. Military successes had pushed its frontiers to their maximum extent. The cities were densely settled, in the north by the local Christian population and new European immigrants, in the south predominantly by Europeans. It is at this time that new social groups were discernible in the cities. One of these, of a rather formal character, was connected with church establishments, especially the Holy Sepulcher. A large number of men and women declared themselves canons of the Holy Sepulcher. These were very poor people. One couple promised to resign their "right" to the Holy Sepulcher at death, but their son was to receive from the canons victum et vestimentum. 123 A woman sold a garden to the canons and promised to leave them her house when she died, while in turn the canons promised to supply her with "every day one loaf, like that eaten by the canons, and half a liter of wine, a dish of cooked

120. Delville Le Rousu, Carthusian, no. 130: "sub ingentibus atque juribus cognitum factum est.

121 Fulk restored property to the Holy Sepulcher in Jerusalem. "et de caulis et de omnibus eis episcoporum et baronum atque burgundorum." Rousin, Carthusian, no. 69 (1132). His privileges to the Hospitallers were made "in honorem eorum et quorum possit homines" and were signed by the Patriarch, Delville Le Rousu, Carthusian, no. 116 (1154). A significant to the Hospitallers of Tripoli bore the signatures of nobles "et aliorum communitatis qui haec dono suffranguerunt, testesque etiam de alius et burgundorum." ibid., no. 260 (1153).


123. Rousin, Carthusian, no. 77 (1220); see Riley-Smith, "A Note on Confraternities in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research, XLIV (1971), 300-308; and Prawer, note 99, above.
ment (?), and on Sundays and feast days a piece of meat or other food as eaten by the canons. 

116 People promised to leave their property to the canons at their death, or to give them all their property immediately on condition that they be fed and clothed. 

125 Although technically the confraternities allowed for participation in the spiritual and ecclesiastical privileges of the canons, it seems obvious that economic motives were a strong incentive to such association. Thus, elderly couples and lonely old people with limited means came under the jurisdiction of the canons. People of higher status also declared themselves confratres sacer of the Holy Sepulcher or, as was often the case, of the military orders, which heights joined for a limited period. In the case of the Hospitaliers, even burgesages associated themselves as confratres. But in most cases we are dealing here with the lower stratum of burgesages, looking to church establishments for help and protection.

The case is different, however, with those burgesages connected with the canons of the Holy Sepulcher who are described in the sources as clientes. Whole families, possibly even villages, are to be found in this category. The village of Saint Lazarus, near Jerusalem, which belonged to the canons, seems to have been settled by clientes. 

117 The clientes held property from the canons called secula, "fiefs"; we can be sure that these were not knights' fiefs. An act of 1129 mentions a holder of such a "fief," a confratres of Saint Lazarus whose daughter was to marry a knight in the service of the canons; in all probability it was property granted in this way to burgesages who produced the service of 500 sergeants which the canons were obliged to provide the kings of Jerusalem. 

118 That such was the use of the term clien is clear from a passage of Fulcher of Chartres, where the army of Baldwin I is described as being composed of 300 milites lectissim et clientes advehit 400 probissimi. 

119 The monastery of Mount Tabor followed the same example to ensure its own auxiliary services.

124. Ibid., Cartulaire, nos. 106-1132.
125. Ibid., nos. 108, 109.
126. Ibid., nos. 131, "Particulaires en leurs humains, semences..."
127. A widow of new owners, unmarried so speaking, and her daughter who was also married to a client, had to live with their husbands on the property of the canons either in Jerusalem or in Saint Lazarus. Ibid., no. 109.
128. Ibid., no. 131.
129. Ibid., no. 132.
130. John of Nolaid, op. 272 (KHC, Libr., t., 426-427). The canons had a special officer called magnus clericus Sancti Simeoni, Cartulaire, op. 107.
131. Fulcher of Chartres, (KHC, Conc., 447). In the confirmation of the rule of Mory to the Hospitaliers by Béthacourt (1112) in 1126 there is a clear distinction between burgesages and de facto vassals (clientes et cliens): Chilam; Le Renauld, Cartulaire, 2, 494 (no. 725).
A long list of witnesses to a deed of Mount Tabor is headed: “from among the lay brothers,” but the same people appear in another document as turchoph, light cavalry. As the military service due from church institutions was rather heavy, we can assume that hundreds of burgesses were hired for military service. Naturally, not all of them received “iefs” as did the burgesses of Saint Lazarus. Some were content to receive food or quantities of crops from church properties, or simply money. And it was money which was paid to the sergeants in times of emergency, when additional soldiers were needed. They were simply stipendiarii, mercenary soldiers.

Lords of cities also hired burgesses for military, administrative, and domestic services. Ties of dependence were strong, especially in places where the burgesses served as mercenaries of the lord. Often they identified themselves with the head of the local dynasty and, according to accepted feudal ideas, became a class (traditionally serving a great house, belonging to its “family” (amicia).

By the middle of the twelfth century new developments were making distinctions among the class of burgesses. Political stability and relative security favored colonization. There was a migration from the cities to the small semi-urban agglomerations and to newly founded villages. A Frankish class of peasants and inhabitants of small towns, in the main agricultural, was in the making. The population of these communities, in the shadow of a fortress or citadel, was recruited from among the burgesses. They settled in what would be called in Europe, and in at least one eastern source, bœufs. Some of these settlements became real towns mushrooming beneath the fortifications and almost always surrounded with low walls, not strong enough to withstand a regular siege but good enough to repel marauding beduins or Moslem peasants. Other places never developed into towns, but remained villages settled by a Frankish peasantry. We know of at least half a dozen cases of colonization undertaken by kings, church institutions, military orders, and lay lords. The new villages differed entirely from the native ones, which they often replaced. They were fortified and far more populous. While the native village

132 Ḩibbārṭ, Yemam, n. 309 394.
population might be estimated at ten or twenty families, the new Frankish settlements included fifty families or more. There is no doubt that the settlers came from among the poorest of the burgesses, those who could not make a living in the cities.\footnote{Em. XX, 20 (RHC, Occ., 1, 976), speaking about the settlement in Qana. “popos gentium ministrantes ad inveniendam viam abscindere auxilia, et ob curam burgonorum asservarum et casuum.” William of Tyre, XX, 19 (RHC, Occ., 1, 973-975), on the settlement in Damietta “fuit ordine locorum consensu, et non humanae humanitatis sed humanae prudentiae quaestio.”}

Settlement outside the cities, although it created a class of Frankish peasantry, did not create a class of Frankish serfs. The Frankish inhabitants of the newly colonized village of al-Birah, although peasants, did not lose their status as burgesses. They attended public courts, and their property, for which they paid only a small rent, was free land. The rent was established along the lines of the chapitre or similar tenures without personal servitude, at a fixed amount of the produce, but the property was otherwise hereditary, unburdened by servile dues. The holder had the right to alienate it without restriction (except for the lord’s preemptive right).

That these peasants were looked down upon by their peers in the cities is probable. Nor was the danger of their subjection an imaginary one.\footnote{G. Rumeur, Compendie, no. 122 (p. 151f). The canons of the Holy Sepulcher agreed that Robert of Kainas should use the Frankish colonists established by the monks in al-Birah. If they were willing, but “super burgenses vero proferunt nullum dehiscerent potissimum vel aequitatem amovens, nec ridiculum habeant et societatem vel concionacionem exspect.”} But legally and socially the Frankish farmer was a burgess, well above the richest Syrian or Moslem peasant of the countryside. Wherever burgesses settled, they had a right to their own court and to the judgment of their peers. An inventory of such courts, indicating the diffusion of the Frankish population, is preserved by John of Thiene. He lists thirty-seven places for the kingdom, but the list is incomplete. If we may assume that a viscount is to be found in all places which had a civil Frankish population, we can add another forty.\footnote{John of Thiene, cap. 230 (RHC, Lxxv, 1, 622-626). We may add Qalchas-rugh, Qibqas, Majdal, (Merejil), and al-Eqban (Lycaen, It. posa).} If we add localities which we know were colonized by Frankish, it gives us a total of about fifty places where the burgesses settled and had their own form of organization in a court of burgesses.

In the principality of Antioch courts of burgesses existed certainly in three localities—Antioch, Jabala, and Latakia—and there were probably more. In the county of Tripoli courts of burgesses existed in Tripoli and Rafaniyeh, and probably also in Tortosa, ‘Arraq, and Jnabail. The fact that a relatively small number of such courts are known to us in these principalities may be due partly to our lack of sources.
(there being no inventory like that for the kingdom of Jerusalem),
but even more in the relatively meager colonization of the northern
principalities and the concentration of their Frankish populations in
the great cities.

The burgesses of Jerusalem enjoyed a privileged position among
those of the kingdom. Not only were they the burgesses of the holy
city, the capital of the kingdom, but they were the “burgesses of the
king.” During the coronation they participated in the ceremony and
served the king the coronation meal at the templum domini.140 The
burgesses of Acre, the royal city on the coast which became the capital
of the kingdom in the thirteenth century, enjoyed a similar position.
But it was a position of precedent, without legal sanction. Naturally
the fact that some of the burgesses of Jerusalem, especially during
the time of Baldwin III and Amauric, were in constant attendance
on the king might have given them some special prestige, but it is
impossible to discern any practical result.141

The existence of courts of burgesses and a common law of bur-
gesses (differing from one principality to another, but the same within
each), did not lead, generally speaking, to the creation of an “estate”
or a corporate body of the burgesses of the crusader states. What
is even more striking is the fact that they never took over any city
government,142 and their participation in such government was far
more limited than in any contemporary European city. Only once in
Jerusalem do we find them opposing the king, one of the Baldwins,
for having proclaimed an ordinance about cleaning the city streets
without their advice and consent.143 Nowhere do we see them act as
an “estate” with its grievances and demands. At a time when Euro-
pean cities were becoming “collective vassals” and taking over city
administrations, such a feature of city life was entirely nonexistent
in the Latin east.

The main reason lay in the fact that the city population included
not only burgesses but almost the entire knightly population. This
gave a particular coloring to city life and organization. Although econ-
omically well defined, the city was neither a community nor a corpo-
ration. It never became a center of burgesses independence or self-
government, since it was never a burgess city. Nor did knights and

140 Erard, XXIII, 3 (RHC, Or., II, 3-4); John of Nolhain, esp. 1 (RHC, Low, ii, 51-52).
141 Documents emanating from Baldwin, Baldwin III, and Amauric were frequently wit-
nessed by burgesses, even in cases such as the confirmations of franco-nomine and feuds, where
their signatures were not legally necessary. See Pompon, note 122, above.
142 For the so-called communal movement see below, pp. 167-169, 181-182.
143 Livre des Amis des Bourgeois, esp. 300 (RHC, Lib., ii, 325).
burgesses merge into a formal community. There can be no comparison with Italian cities where nobles, having once entered the city commune, identified themselves with the city, fighting its wars against empire and neighbors alike. City autonomy, in the sense of self-government or civic privileges, even on the economic level alone, was entirely unknown.

It is even more remarkable that no guilds or similar corporations were created. This is more difficult to explain. It might be partly because the first burghers, originally peasants, did not bring with them any corporative traditions. But that did not preclude a later development of guilds. It might be suggested, however, that the normal course of European development, the creation of a merchant guild which ruled the city and set off a counter-movement of craft organizations to defend their own interests against the ruling city oligarchy, could find no place in the east. No Frankish merchant guild was ever created, because the lucrative commerce was a monopoly of the Italian communes.

Furthermore, the most characteristic feature of the kingdom, at least in the twelfth century, was that it was a country of immigrants. In more than one sense the existence of the state depended on the continued flow of immigrants and their economic absorption into the kingdom. On the other hand, guilds were exclusive bodies. The regulated system of apprenticeship, examinations, and advancement, let alone the later policy of limiting the number of masters, was suited to a stable economy and society. It could hardly flourish where the population fluctuated and had to be continually renewed. Moreover, such a policy would have caused difficulties in the economic integration of the immigrants.

There is another factor that might have played some part in hindering guild organization. The native population, mainly local Christians living in the cities, pursued the same occupations as Frankish burghers. As there was a deep abyss between the two, it was hardly thinkable that they could cooperate on the basis of common occupations. The only possibility was to have parallel guild organizations, and somehow that never happened.

What served as a rudimentary substitute for guild organization was created by the living together of people of the same occupation. Thus there were streets of cooks, of spice merchants, of mill or ale makers, skinners, tanners, money-changers, and so forth. Membership

144 Although physicians were sufficiently organized to require the examination of a newcomer wishing to enter their profession in the kingdom, Livre des Acceptances des Bourgeois, cap. 298 (ed., II, 229).
in an ethnic or linguistic group provided another basis of social cohesion. Scanning the names of streets in the major cities of the kingdom, we find not only the members of Italian communes but also Provençals, Spaniards, Germans, Englishmen, and Bretons hving in special streets or quarters. Quite often there will be a church under a patron saint popular in a European province to indicate the origin of the inhabitants of a quarter. It is again the fact of immigration which led newcomers to seek out companions speaking their own language or dialect and sharing familiar customs and rules of behavior. Thus huddling together replaced family and community ties severed by emigration.

The anarchy of the second quarter of the thirteenth century and the rise of independent jurisdictions, especially those of the communes, which has led one historian to call the kingdom "le royaume des marchands," created a situation of insecurity and instability. One of its results was the emergence and the growing importance of new types of social cohesion and political dependence. These appear in the second quarter of the thirteenth century in the form of fraternités or fratries. The fraternity, or brotherhood, was an association that recruited its members on a voluntary basis for the common pursuit of religious and social goals. Just as in Europe, the authorities were suspicious of associations where an oath had to be taken by each member on entrance, which possibly explains why the rules of the brotherhood had to be confirmed by the lord of the city. A brotherhood had its patron saint, its own rules, and its aim to legalize acts in a sense they took the place of guilds in fulfilling social and religious functions.

In the middle of the thirteenth century, when political factions ruled, Acta, it was almost inevitable that any corporation which grouped

145 Michael, Rerum novar historia, pp. 274-278.

146. There were certainly more than the two whose names we know, the Brotherhood of St. Andrew and the Pisan Secundus Hermannus, cf. County E. Muller, ed., Documente delle riforme delle città italiane nel secolo XIII (Pisa, 1879-80) i, p. 139, and p. 133, and They were, indeed, the most famous, and Muller's explanation is not satisfactory. It seems to have been a cooperative wheels, after taking part in the defense of Tyre under Conrad of Montferrat, took over the responsibility of administering Pisa's property in Acre. The property was used for it was a charitable and might even have been divided among its members in an all-Pisan move. Henry of Champagne abolished the status and restored the privileges granted to the communes by Conrad and Guy of Languedoc. At which time we know all traces of the societies; see Pisa, Latin Kingdom, p. 499. The existence of many other brotherhoods is proven; e.g., by Philip of Montfort's promise in the Genoese in 1264 in Tyre, that property at their disposal shall not be given to either communes or brotherhoods: "We good dominus Tyrreni non possum dare hoc quod a nobis demisi erat in fraternitas, nec fraternitate hospitandum, neque pro alia re lacere". Acta, ii, 2 (1186), 226.
a large number of people together should become the object of competition between the contesting parties. It was hardly politics which drew the brotherhoods into the conflict, but rather their coherence in a time of general anarchy. Their support of this faction or that often depended on chance, the proximity of a powerful neighbor, or the dependence of its members on a given power such as a church, monastery, or military order. It was one of these brotherhoods, that of St. Andrew,¹⁴⁷ that became the focus of Ibelin opposition to the rule of the "Lombards." The fact that a baronial revolutionary movement connected itself with a brotherhood is not symptomatic of any privileged standing of the burghers or their semipublic corporations. The brotherhood of St. Andrew was chosen because its rules were such that virtually anyone could join. Whoever was willing to swear the oath of membership was readily accepted.¹⁴⁸

Later the brotherhood of St. Andrew became the nucleus of the "commune" of Acre, a revolutionary movement directed against Hohenstaufen rule.¹⁴⁹ Neither the "commune" of Acre, however, nor the "communes" of Antioch and Tripoli had anything in common with a communal movement in the usual sense of the term. They were not urban movements aimed at city independence from an ecclesiastical or secular lord, nor did they seek economic or legal guarantees. They aimed, rather, at legalizing opposition to an established rule which they declared to be illegitimate. All of them were led by members of the upper nobility who sought power through the selection of the ruler. These movements were more akin to contemporary European assemblies of estates.¹⁵⁰ If the nobility chose the form of a commune, the reason was the example of the existing Italian communes in their cities and the impossibility of converting the high court into any kind of parliament or estates general for the purpose. The legal

¹⁴⁷ Probably connected with the port of Acre. Saint Andrew the fisherman is connected with the sea. During the war in Acre there were portas de mar in members and supporters of the brotherhood.

¹⁴⁸ The essential facts about the brotherhood of St. Andrew are given by Feneis, XXXII, 28 (PFH. Dec. I, 281). "et de terre avec son frere et son neveu en Prés de Saint André. in quam custod subtraxit dux regis Francorum ut confinientur pro bono praeligo. Et ampla in eam formam de versum Hieron et am victor praeligo." Et un unde fuerit nuntiamentum, devener et motis regem praeliga, et modo caput comminuens; et modo caput etuxit maris; in quod loco et terrae in praeligo facto sunt extensus et muti. (Cod. Dipl. Franc. ii, 284 (ed. wrongly unless at frontispiece S. Jerusal)"

¹⁴⁹ See chapter VI, below.

¹⁵⁰ The idea is correctly expounded by Jean Cheynet, "Au nom des assemblées d'états : L'exemple de l'Occident latin," Revue des deux mondes historique, XII (1954), 114-127, but his assessment needs qualification, as it does not take into account the mainstay of the crusaders' regime.
mentality of the nobility preferred to graft a revolutionary movement onto a legitimate body already in existence, in Acre the brotherhood of St. Andrew, which by its rules allowed the coming together of nobles and burgesses, possibly even members of the Italian communes. There were no elections, no appointed representatives. The general meeting of the brotherhood, like the parliament of an Italian town, was a meeting of the entire body politic. But although the frontiers of the commune were the city walls, it did not aim at ruling Acre alone; it aimed at ruling the kingdom.

In Antioch it was a different legal problem which led to the adoption of the revolutionary commune of 1193. It was an attempt to find a formula that would unite the Latin and Greek inhabitants of the city. As we have seen, the common danger was the establishment in Antioch of an Armenian principality and an Armenian church hated by Greeks and feared by Latins. The Greeks, probably a majority of the population, by definition were not burgesses. A commune gave them the opportunity of participating in the government of the principality.111

These communes were short-lived. The brotherhoods themselves, however, did not dissolve, but rather grew in influence. In 1243 princess Alice was accepted as the ruler of the kingdom with the support of the barons, the patriarch, the Genoese, the Venetians, "and also the brotherhoods of the city."112 Hugh III de Lusignan left Acre in 1276 "because of many quarrels which he had with the military orders and the communes and the brotherhoods which he could not dominate or govern at his will." And again, he was asked to come back to Acre by "prolates, military orders, other Knights Hospitallers, Marons, Pisan, burgesses of the country, Genoese, brotherhoods, and all other kult of people."113

While the burgesses never developed as an estate, some individuals became quite influential in the kingdom. In a society obsessed by legal forms, knowledge of the law became an important asset for advancement. The burgesses known to us as influential in political life are those to be found in the courts of burgesses. John Vahin, William of Conches, and Philip Baudouyn114 were at one time or another among

111. See below, p. 230; for the commune, see Cahus, Syrie du sud, pp. 455-460. On the
commune of Tripoli, see below, note 125.
112. Les Croisiers des Champs, cap. 226 (OHFC, Arm., III, 173); "la commune de la ville est...
113. Eudes, XXXIV, 26 (OHFC, Occ. III, 533-575).
114. Les Croisiers des Champs, cap. 228, 229 (OHFC, Arm., III, 728, 730; all U c. 1240.
On the Ambassadores see above, note 53.
the juries. Some of them were accepted in the circles of nobility, even appearing in the high court. A fraternity of legists could have been founded despite the social differences between nobles and burgesses.

On the whole, however, the role of the burgesses in the kingdom bore no relation to their numbers as a whole or to the achievements of a few individuals. Rather, it reflected the position of a middle class in a country reformed by immigrants. Sharing a privileged position as conquerors, they were barred from further advance by the traditional nobility. They attained power as a class neither in the city nor in the country. The collapse of the central power prevented their becoming an estate, while city-dwelling nobles prevented them from taking over city governments. They never acquired great wealth because the greatest source of wealth, international maritime commerce, remained in the hands of the real European burgesses, the commercial communes of the west.
D. The Communes

A special place among the social classes of the crusader states was reserved to the natives of the great European mercantile cities, primarily the maritime cities of Italy but also, to a lesser degree, some cities of southern France and Spain. Among the Italian cities the most important were Genoa, Pisa, and Venice. Although cities like Amalfi


Commercial contracts are preserved in neutral registers, the richest being those of Genoa. The registers which furnish materials most by locating un our subject are Il Codice di Florenci, ed. G. Canadini and L. Boccardo, 3 vols. (Turin, 1935, repr. Turin 1971); translating the older edition of Codices diplomatici societatis, chartarum (Turin 1853); Langdurfort, 1288-1298, ed. William C. Krueger and Robert L. Reynolds (3 vols., London, 1911-1915); Libro diplomatico di Manovia, accru gastos naturali, 1222-1246, ed. Arntzeni Frerichs (Genova, 1904); C. Cesare Donati, “Acta pomana ad 1271, et 1270 ad 1 Almu ad et Beyrouth per dominum sancti mortis,” AGH, 11 (1841), 434-534; Emanuele Murovini della Rocca and Antonino Landburgi, ed., Documenti del commercio veneziano nel secolo XII-XIII (2 vols., Rome and Turin 1940); Emanuele Murovini della Rocca, ed., Manet documenti del commercio veneziano nel secolo XII-XIII (Venice, 1933); I mon notarini ed., Documenti medici sopra i commercio di Marsiglia nel secolo XII-XIII (Marseille, 1885-1885); and Mayne, Marseilles Levantehandel und ein ohnumundsches Facharchiv (The Hague, 1972)

The neutral registers have not yet been fully explained, unusually brief of the thirteenth century. For an analysis of the contents of Genoese registers see Monacini and Gian Piero Bonatti, Per l’edicazione dei manoscritti del secolo XII (Turin, 1930), and Archivio di Stato di Genova, Cattaliere notarile genovese (Publ. degli Archivi di stato, XXXII, XLI, Rome, 1938, 1941).

(which had played an important role in east-west commerce before the crusades) and Acre on the coast of Italy, Marseilles, St. Gilles, and Montpellier in France, and Barcelona in Spain should be mentioned, it is among the nationalities of the three great maritime powers of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa that we find the typical commune in the crusader states.

Socially the settlers and merchants of the Italian communes belonged to the same class as the town-dwelling Frankish burghers. Their living quarters and their places of business were in the cities, their main occupation was commerce. They were certainly not classed among the knights and nobles. One may postulate that they formed a higher, because far richer, stratum in the class of burghers, but this would be misleading. The fundamental factor which defined their standing was not their economic function but primarily their legal standing as defined by a long list of treaties, privileges, and agreements. The treaties did not grant the same status to all communes, or even to different colonies of the same commune. Not only did the communes vary in status between the kingdom of Jerusalem, the principality of Antioch, and the county of Tripoli, but even within...
the same state. Despite these variations, however, we are justified in viewing the communes in the east as a whole; in fact, they were so viewed at the time.

In a society based fundamentally on feudo-vassal relations, the commune seemed an anomaly to the jurists. Small wonder, then, that Philip of Novara, John of Ibelin, and, what is even more significant, the Assises de la Cour des Bourgeois have so little to tell us about them. Had we been left with these legal sources alone we could hardly have known that we were dealing with major economic powers in the east, powers which, from the middle of the thirteenth century on, directly influenced the destinies of the crusader states.

or pirates, or merchants, and because the others are chevaliers, they despise them. Such a comment is natural for the young squire Ernoul, who elsewhere describes the inhabitants of Damascus as “soft people and bad people (mourez passeul), as are always those who are merchants and artisans.”

Legal status and public opinion combined, therefore, to define the members of the communes as a class apart, reinforced by their economic standing, rivalled neither by noble nor by burghers. Although we dispose of a rather rich documentation regarding the privileges accorded by the crusader states to the different communes, and have hundreds of entries in notarial registers and copies of agreements to facilitate the description of the commercial activities of the communes, we are left with very few sources regarding the actual settlements of the communes in the east. So far, only one register kept in the east, with a few entries dealing with Beirut, has come to light. The registers of the local courts of the communes, which existed and could have served as the main source for the life of the communes in the east, seem to have been definitely lost, probably during the sack of Acre in 1291.

The first privileges accorded the different communes are not always explicit enough to allow us to determine what kind of settlements or colonies were envisaged. Moreover, experience in colonization, even for Venice, was very limited. As a matter of fact, the communes in the crusader states represent the first colonial enterprise by the maritime cities, as distinct from land colonization by peasants, outside the frontiers of European society. The Italians, it seems, did not think in terms of emigration and colonization, but rather in terms of dominating the lines of communication and commerce between the eastern shores of the Mediterranean and Europe. Lodgings in the ports, warehouses for merchandise to be transported to the west, a number of people on the spot to guard property, to protect privileges against outside encroachments, and to arbitrate quarrels between merchants and sea captains—these were the immediate aims of the merchant adventurers at the dawn of the twelfth century. Often the privileges brought more than was foreseen and certainly more than was needed. There are constant references to large spaces in the newly

156 Ernoul, Chronique, ed. Max Labarte, p. 104, developed in Ernoul, XXIII, 54 (RAC, Occ., II, 5157).
157 Ernoul, XXIII, 99 (RAC, Occ., II, 432).
159 E. g., Sauter de Maseville de 1253 à 1255, 1, 37, in Jean H. Pardeman, Collection de lettres maritimes, IV, 256 ff; repr. in Guillaume Fouet, Documents relatifs à l’histoire de l’industrie et du commerce en France, I (Paris, 1889), 198.
conquered cities. Often the merchants claimed and were given a third of a city, sometimes they were allotted quarters in all cities to be conquered or all cities of the kingdom. These privileges, if carried out to the letter, would have left hardly any city in the kingdom to the king or his vassals. The lavishness of grants and privileges not only reflects the urgent needs of the crusaders, but also, on both sides, ignorance of the real needs and possibilities. The princes may have hoped to locate Italian merchants in all their cities. The Italians, who were in a good bargaining position, demanded as much as possible. But experience soon proved that quarters in inland cities, like the capital, Jerusalem, were of no practical use to merchants whose main interest was in the ports, in the customs-office of the port, where ships anchored and cargoes were exported to Europe. As a matter of fact, the communes were concentrated in only a few ports. Cities like Caesarea, Acre, and even Jaffa, although some communes had privileges in them, never housed any commmuna colony. Antioch, Tripoli, Tyre, and Acre dominated commerce and their economies in turn were dominated by the communes.

Consequently it was the purely commercial clauses in the privileges, added to the physical arrangements for lodgings, warehouses, and bazaars, which were of importance at the outset. The status of extraterritoriality was of this stage of secondary importance.

The early communal population underwent continual change. There were not settlers and colonizers, but merchants on the move, seeking a foothold in the port and custom franchise to assure preferential status to their commerce. Their families and properties remained in Genoa, Pisa, or Venice. The ports of the crusader states were only so many stopping places on their voyages. True, the exigencies of commerce made their stops rather prolonged. Genoese or Venetians embarking for a crusaders' port in the last days of September, so as to arrive before Christmas, usually remained for several months, until Easter, although the bulk of their business seems to have been transacted during the first fifteen to thirty days after their arrival. Four business itself, almost to the end of the thirteenth century, primarily took the form of exchange of precious metals from the west in return for eastern products. Not until the middle of the century was Europe able to export its own half-finished or finished products for eastern goods. During the months of stay in the east the Italian merchant found his compatriots, neighbors, and business associates from the Rialto in

160. Byrne, “Commercial Communes of the Genoese,” p. 113
161. This was the normal delay for paying off loans contracted in the metropolis; cf. Matteo della Roma and Lombardo, Documenti, i, nos. 45, 33, 31, and passim.
Venice, or the neighborhood of San Lorenzo in Genoa or San Pietro in Pisa, living in common lodgings, very often the chambers (camere) of the huge warehouse, above the shops and stores in his national quarter. The commune in the east supplied a social framework of life, replacing family and neighbors in far-off Italy. Compatriots spoke their local Italian dialects among themselves, and wrote their commercial agreements in barbarous Latin stuffed with Italian commercial terms. They had their own bakery and their own bath. The church of their quarter, subordinated to the cathedral in the metropolis but with a familiar sector, took care of their spiritual needs and, at death, of their testaments and burials. Only those who know the sorrow of exile can appreciate the importance of transplanting familiar institutions to a foreign country.

These "trans-hibernating" early colonies in the east, if we may so describe the merchants who remained in the east from December to April, were predominantly societies of sea captains, sailors, and merchants. Combining seafaring and commerce, money-changing, importing, exporting, and piracy when conditions were propitious, they moved back and forth from Venice or Genoa to Alexandria, Acre, or Constantinople, sometimes to Cyprus and Crete. Once a year or once every two years, they would make a longer stay in the east, for four or five months. They had no real home other than in Italy. Their numbers were not large. The cartulary of John Scriba proves that as late as the middle of the twelfth century, not more than one merchant ship went annually from Genoa to the east. The number of merchants in these eastern emporia should consequently not be counted in hundreds but in scores.

The merchants of the different communes, though belonging to the same class, in everyday life competed with one another. The neighborhood of their quarters or warehouses was marked by rivalry rather than cooperation. Transactions between one group and another seem to have been exceedingly limited. This might have been because it was carter and safer to do business with one's own compatriots, who could be summoned to one's own city court when back in Italy. But it is likely that from the beginning the rivalry between Genoa and

162. See the description of the Venetian quarter in Tyre in the 1343 report of Muramio Zorzi, in Aedel andThomas, II, 351 ff.

163 A typical document and manuscript was the Venetian Rovamsa Murano (mid-twelfth century). The study by Rombard Heyn, Zur Entstehung des Kapitalismus in Freundschaft (Stuttgart, 1925, repr. New York, 1971), criticized by Max Weber, has been vindicated by Luizatto, "Kapitalismus katholisch und Griechisch," pp. 137-333. The Venetian family wrote a biographer.

Pisa and later between Venice and the other two mercantile cities, and their fickle alliances which turned into war on land and sea, created barriers between the nationals of the different colonies. They might have been regarded by everyone else in the kingdom as a class apart, but the class was composed of better rivals.

This early communal phase in the east roughly coincided with the first decade of the history of the crusader states, the period of conquest. The respective communes engaged in varying degrees and at different places and times in the capture of the coastal cities of Syria and Palestine. Transportation of crusaders and food, warlike, and spoils were at this time more important than commerce. We find Italians, as late as 1110, massacring the native population of Sidon (although the Barons wanted, for understandable reasons, to keep the city and its population intact), despite the fact that they were accorded privileges in the place. 163

It is probable only in the second decade of the kingdom, when all the coastal cities, from Antioch southwards, had been captured (with the exception of Tyre and Ascalon, which fell in 1124 and 1153 respectively), that commerce acquired a more regular rhythm. The Morien danger on the sea was diminishing, immigration from Europe was growing and turning the exceedingly small crusader settlements into sizable colonies, more stable conditions favored the extension of commerce and the growth of the merchant colonies. The result was a transition from a sporadic or seasonal fair of wandering merchants to a fixed market, favoring the emergence of a permanent merchant class. It was a slow process whose main feature was the transition from prolonged stays in the east to permanent settlement. This took place in the second quarter of the twelfth century, a generation after the conquest. The well-known Pactum Warmundii, signed in 1123 by Gernond of Picquigny, the patriarch of Jerusalem (in the absence of Baldwin II, taken prisoner by the Muslims), to assure Venetian help in capturing Tyre, indicates a new phase in the life of the communes beyond the sea. The Pactum Warmundii 164 not only assured the Venetians commercial privileges and a third of Tyre, but a kind of autonomy, which one might be prompted to call a state within the state. 165 It was only the belated intervention of Baldwin II which assured some

163 On the massacre at Beirut see Albert of Aachen, XI, II (RNC, Occ. IV, 610-611).
164 Tafel and Thomas, I, no. 48.
165 See the report of Marquino Zorzi, ibid. II, 351 ff. The position of the Venetians is succinctly stated in a privilege accorded by John of Montfort (1277) in Tyre: "Quod huc invenisse certam partem urbanae reginam et regiam, scilicet communitas et aire domini optima terrae partem." (Ibid., XI, 150)
semblance of reciprocal obligations between the commune and the state, in the form of the service of three knights owed by the Venetians to the king.\textsuperscript{188}

The Venetians now claimed not only full jurisdiction (the limitation to civil cases only must have been a later royal interpretation, because there is nothing about it in the \textit{Pactum}) over their own nationals and in mixed cases, but also complete authority over all inhabitants of their third of the city, the Venetian quarter in Tyre. The formula used to describe the new prerogative is explicit and very significant: "Besides, the Venetians will have the same rights of jurisdiction and taxation over burgesses of whatever origin, living in that quarter and the houses of the Venetians, as the king has over his own."\textsuperscript{189} This seems to be a new departure, which we find again when the Venetians sum up the treaty in regard to Tyre (later put into practice), and Ascalon and Jerusalem (not implemented, because of no special interest to the Venetians). The Venetians would hold their third of Tyre and Ascalon \textit{libere et regaliter, scilicet ex aliis duas partes}.

At this time no other commune enjoyed such privileges. It is even more striking that no baron of the kingdom, either in Jerusalem or even in Antioch, could claim such an independent status. The "collective seigneur," if one is allowed to apply a late legal fiction to the Venetian quarter in Tyre about 1124, was more independent than any contemporary vassal of the king. The only exception was perhaps Juballah, where a third of the city was granted in 1104 to the Genoese, and later the whole city, which the commune finally bestowed to the Embriachi (after a period of administration of its third by one Ansaldo Corso).\textsuperscript{170}

The \textit{Pactum Warmundii} is not only important in establishing an extraterritorial colony. No less significant is the privilege which it accorded the Venetians of a third of "all lands belonging to it [Tyre]."\textsuperscript{171} Earlier treaties sometimes gave the communes land "one mile" around the city.\textsuperscript{172} This might have been a deliberately vague phrase or a precaution to assure food and provision to be sold to the commune or

\textsuperscript{188} Confirmation by Baldwin II in 1123: \textit{Soc.}, II, no. 41 (pp. 90-94).
\textsuperscript{189} \textit{Ibid.}, I, 68.
\textsuperscript{190} Imperials di San Angelo Costitutio diplomaticorum, no. 14, quoting Caiazzo. The original agreement is lost and the terms of Caiazzo, although explicit enough, do not allow a more detailed analysis.
\textsuperscript{171} \textit{Tafel and Thomas}, II, 68.
\textsuperscript{172} O.p., by Baldwin III grant to the commune of a third of Arpad " quem tunc parte illius terre unque super quae desternit duas mile et minus est endum." The name is granted in Castel, Acre, and elsewhere: "One third of all lands captured with their help and a third of the revenue from land in the radius of one mile": \textit{Mulcher, Documentum}, no. 35.
even grown for it. In Tyre we meet with a different approach. A whole
third of a rich seigneurie which, despite its narrow frontiers, counted
some 120 villages,\textsuperscript{173} from then on belonged to the Venetian com-
mune. It was a logical demand on the part of the Venetians. Having
created an independent lordship, they demanded, and were granted,
the seigneurie of the normal Palaeopian type, comprising a city serving
as capital and a surrounding rural area, with its villages and peasants,
as its domain. But we may suppose another factor which influenced
the Venetian demand. It is hard to believe that the Venetians claimed
jurisdiction over all the inhabitants of their quarter, and sought a
rural area nearby, which would need constant care and the establish-
ment of an administration, solely for the benefit of a changing popu-
lation of sailors and merchants. Nor could the Venetians have thought
as early as 1123 to exploit their possessions on the later colonial pat-
tern. Certainly, any income accruing from these possessions would
profit the metropolis, but it seems more likely that the Venetians be-
gan to think in terms of colonization and settlement following the
experience gained in the Latin kingdom itself. While the main occu-
pation of Venetian settlers was commerce, the confiscation of a part
of their property, the establishment of a local administration to super-
vise and exploit the rural area and to collect dues and customs from
the inhabitants of the quarter—in brief the establishment of an or-
ganization to create and run a lordship—reflects a major change in
the social and demographic composition of the commune in the east.
Although it might be debatable whether this change has already taken
place before the signing of the \textit{Pactum Wormundii}, or whether it was
the \textit{Pactum} which created the necessary conditions for such a change,
the second quarter of the twelfth century witnessed the formation
of a real Italian settlement, a real colony in the ports of the kingdom.\textsuperscript{174}

The basis of this somewhat sedentary population was an abundance
of communal land and city possessions. Somebody had to administer
these and keep an eye on rulers who tended to forget the original
terms of the privileges.\textsuperscript{175} Meanwhile, commerce was getting more

\textsuperscript{173} Prazer, "\textit{Etude de quelques problèmes}," pp. 3-41, in \textbf{"Palestinian Agriculture and
the Crusader Rural System"}, in \textit{Crusader Institutions}, pp. 143-200.

\textsuperscript{174} The success of the colonizing efforts is reflected in a well-known chapter of \textit{Pactum
of Chartres} written (fourth redaction) about 1134 (ed. Hagendorfer, \textit{II}, 27) and in a passage
of Ekkehard of Aura's \textit{Historia rerum} (ed. Hagendorfer [Tübingen, 1877], pp. 36), written
between 1114 and 1117, as an application to redress a complaint. See the case of the
\textit{Pactum Heliasmorum}, pp. 496 ff.

\textsuperscript{175} The \textit{Decretum} went so far as to crown a monument to the church of the Holy Sepulcher
with an inscription recording their participation in the crusades and the continuance of their
voluminous and more people settled in the East. The advantages of establishing business headquarters in a communal quarter in Antioch, Acre, or Tyre were evident. Until the middle of the thirteenth century no riots or pogroms against the communities, like those in Constantinople, no seizures of property, were ever witnessed in the crusader states. Merchants arranging to go to the East knew beforehand that they would stay there for three to five years. Some would even bring their wives and children. The contracts show names with eastern patronyms, like Bertrand from Syria, John Andrew of Tripoli, John of Acre, Bonaventura of Antioch. Some introduced clauses into their contracts like “if I stay overseas,” “if I do not come back from Syria.”

These are Genoese examples, but Venetian contracts of the same period, or even somewhat earlier, mention merchants as “inhabitants of Acre” or “inhabitants of Tyre,” and we even find a Venetian, William Scriba, from Genoa in Jaffa. These examples illustrate the fact that in the middle of the twelfth century the communities had entered a new phase. Merchants were no longer occasional residents for the duration of a business voyage, a winter, or even a year, but genuine colonists, subjects of their mother-cities but settled in the crusader states. No wonder then that at the end of the first kingdom we find Italian families which had lived in the East for three generations. An example, preserved in a Venetian contract, shows Peter Morosini as an inhabitant of Acre in the second half of the twelfth century, his son James, who established himself in Tripoli, and his grandson Niccolo, who lived in Acre in 1203, when he signed an agreement with one of the merchant-captains. Peter Morosini still possessed property in Venice when he was described as Petrus Mauroceus de Acre, but his descendants probably sold their property in Venice before finally settling in the East.

A different view is taken by Mayor and Patruno, “The Diplomats of the 12th and 13th Centuries in the Levant,” Quellen und Forschungen aus dem historischen Archiv des Staates Venetien in Italien, 1970, 22-9. This is mentioned by Bamber Z. Kedar.

Although, as suggested by Cubas, “Oriental trade in the 13th century,” pp. 32ff the trade with Alexundria and Constantinople surpassed by far that with the crusader states, there is no doubt that the absolute volume of the trade was significantly growing. Byrne has estimated the volume of trade for the years 1150-1204 at 20,675 Genoese pounds for Syria, but 9,091 for Alexandria. In 1291 those Syrian estimates reached the sum of 4,000, and in 1205, 8,000; see Byrne, “Genoese Trade with Syria,” pp. 288-328, 329-354.

177 Quoted from Genoese registers by Byrne, ibid., p. 303 (punct 23-44).

179 Ibid. ii, no. 461 “Manifestum anno quindecim Mense Augusti quindecim Tabulae qvarum Jacobo Maroceanum inhabitator Tripolis, quod Basileum Illius fuit quartam Ponti Mauroceni habitat in Acream “

180 Leonardotto and Morosini della Rovere, Nuovi documenti, no. 17 (Punct 1162)
The sources, so rich in what regards commerce, fail to tell us much about the Italian colonists themselves. They did not as a rule include the patriciate of their native cities, with one notable exception, that of the Genoese “Visconti” family of the Embriachi, administrators of one-third and then lords of the entire city of Jaffa. The wealthy nobility, at least in Genoa, controlled the eastern trade, but as far as we can see, did not settle in the east. In Venice, however, there was no patrician monopoly of the eastern trade. From the beginning the average Venetian investment surpassed by far the Genoese individual investment, possibly because Venice had more experience in eastern trade, possibly also because there was more liquid capital to be had in Venice than in Genoa.\textsuperscript{132} The Della Volta of Genoa had just enough liquid capital from city incomes to be able to invest in eastern trade. In Venice the diffusion of capital was greater, and already in the early twelfth century more people than the aristocracy alone could engage in trade.

The aristocracy, as usual before, did not settle in the east. Even when participating in military expeditions they would hastily collect their share of the spoils, sometimes substantial,\textsuperscript{133} and return to Italy.\textsuperscript{134} Those who stayed behind to supervise the communal property were modest people of whom we know nothing but their names, an Arnaldo Corso in Genoese Jaffa (1104), or Sieghard in Genoese Acre (1104).\textsuperscript{135} Besides these officials the earliest settlers were probably recruited from among the sailors manning the ships going to the east. We know that sailors often invested in commerce that part of their salary paid to them before embarkation. This required knowledge of the east, its population, needs, markets, and commercial privileges. On a different level we find merchants, who often started with a small capital or no capital at all other than their skill and knowledge, and who made their living and sometimes fortunes by joining people of means in the Levant trade. These people, the so-called “factors,” specializing in the eastern trade, gradually

\textsuperscript{131} The Genoese investments were rather small. In Venier the earliest contract (1104) for shipping food from Venice to Crete and Amasea shows an investment of 130 pounds. Some at 50, 100, and 200 pounds are frequent at the beginning of the twelfth century. An agreement (conlora) between Henry Conseller and Genoese Giampaolo’s widow in 1138 has him later investing 1,000 pounds in a venture to Acre and elsewhere: Monaco della Rana and Lombardo, Documenti, I, no. 71.

\textsuperscript{132} Individual Genoese who took part in the capture of Crete in 1105 came away with sizable fortunes: Caffaro, De Illustratione Galliarum Christianarum, cap III [RNC, Ori., V, 67]. For additional data see Power, Latin Kingdom, pp. 391–401.

\textsuperscript{133} After the capture and diversions of Tyre, the Venetian “tesserae alienae ad had” Filius of Chairmon (ab. Hagermeyer), III, 36.

\textsuperscript{134} Sieghard, the first Genoese visconte, was a member of the church of San Lorenzo
abandoned the sea to settle in one of the crusader ports, either as agents of Italian merchant houses or doing business on their own. Some sea captains, often proprietors of ships, might also establish their home port in Syria, without discontinuing their voyages to Moslem and Byzantine ports.

Settlement in a foreign country was probably less of a change for navigators and merchants than for the great mass of European peasants who overnight became burghers in the crusader states. To settle among fellow countrymen made adaptation easier; lodgings were rented or bought from the communal authorities, and maritime commerce, despite its risks and dangers, remained lucrative. Genoese documents show profits of thirty percent per voyage or per year. Venetian documents tell us that the customary profit was twenty percent, although we find profits of thirty percent and even more. These still seem modest when compared with the "sea loan," in which the interest to be paid for a single voyage might reach one hundred percent, to offset the greater risk.

It seems that the Venetian colonies had a social structure somewhat different from those of the Genoese and Pisans. We discern among the Venetians a higher class of society established in the east, a feature unknown in the colonies of other communones. We know for example that a Vitalle Pancaleno, called Malvoisins, son of John Pancaleno, had property in Tyre. Roland Contarino was richly endowed in the same place, and we can trace the same family for three generations in Tyre. Willem Jordan might have been a Venetian or a Provengal knight who married a Pancaleno and held rich property in the place. The existence of this element in the Venetian colony can be explained by the fact that the Venetians, as masters of a third of the lordship of Tyre, organized their administration by interceding part of their fund and income to Venetians of patrician origin for rent and military service. But whereas a similar practice by the Genoese in Jaffa ended with the full independence of the Emiracht, the

182 Moravus della Rocca and Lambardo, Discoueries, II, ed. 465–6

183 Bocaccio, De quibus institutis, secundum suam partem Venetiae [1308] 7

184 Ibid. I, ed. 73 [1479]: an investment of 50 denaires was supposed to return 60, the investor gave final quittance, however, for only half that amount.

185 Whenever only the debt to be paid back (not that been received) is indicated, we may safely assume that this was deliberately done to evade the anti-money legislation.

186 All mentioned in the report of Maestrale Zora describing the commune's property in Tyre and Acca

187 In 1147 the Byzantines were already twenty years behind in their payment. However, the antitheses re-established them as nominal vassals of the commune; Ricordi, Liber ferram,
Venetians, far better organized, kept an eye on their nationals, although some losses were inevitable.

Another reason the Venetians had settlers of a higher social class probably stems from the fact that some of the Venetian representatives in the cast who were of knightly origin stayed on. Some had commercial connections before being appointed and then remained in the place. As an example we may cite Domenico Acquavola, who in 1184 administered the possessions of St. Mark in Tyre. He later served as bailie of Venice, although not a very successful one. One member of the same family, Guy, witnessed an act of Philip Cornet, bailie of Venice in 1222 in Acre, and another, John, served in the same year as ambassador of the Venetian bailie in Acre to the court of the Lus. We find, for example, James Dandolo doing business in Acre at the time of his death in 1199. His son John was acting as viscount of Venice in Tyre and Acre in 1200. Since he had guaranteed the loans of his brother Mark, he found himself in an embarrassing position when, as viscount, he had to announce his own insolvency in the court over which he was presiding. Another family was the Dulce (Ducia, Doua). Manassah Dulce was viscount of Tyre, and a Thomas Dulce had property in the city and was administrator of the property of St. Mark, a Peter Dulce was known in Acre from...
1209. A Domenico Dalbi in Tyre in 1211. Another case is that of the knightly family of the Falers. They appear as early as 1120 and 1130 transacting business in Acre, although we do not know if Otto Faller, mentioned in these early documents, had any fields in Tyre. Members of the family, some still in Venice, others in Syria, appear again in 1206, when at the death of Leo Faller his brother Vitale, still living in Venice, was enfeoffed by the doge of Venice, Peter Ziani, with his late brother's property.

As has been said, the settlement of patrician families in the east seems to have been characteristic only of the Venetian colony. Despite a far richer Genoese documentation we can seldom discern any such trait in their eastern colonies, although it was not entirely unknown. The Genoese viscount in Acre in 1212, Simon Rufero, left his son a fief in the kingdom after his departure from Syria. Beltrando Carano, consul in Syria in 1203, secured a fief which was still in his family in 1253. On the other hand Simon Malocello, consul in Acre in 1249–1250, who engaged actively and profitably in the eastern commerce just before and after his tenure of office, invested the profits from his large enterprises not by founding a family fortune in the east but by buying up landed property in Genoa, to which he ultimately returned.

We have few sources regarding the Pisan colony in the east. There was a wealthy Pisan in Tripoli with the non-noble name of Plebanus, who rose to the lordship of Beirut by marrying the heiress, Marguerite (or Cecilia) Dorat, and paying her guardian, Raymond III of Tripoli, her weight in gold. Of Pisan origin also were the members of the "Fraternity of the Vermillons" participating in the Third Crusade and richly endowed by Conrad of Montferrat (d. 1192). They were probably an essentially knightly brotherhood. Unfortunately neither the origin nor the later activities of this brotherhood are known.

Below this element composed of members of noble families, consular families, or families holding lesser offices at home, and below the ship captains and factors or agents of European houses who set-

196 Thomas and N MATRIX are mentioned in the report of Morligha Zoral, Peter Dalbi und er was consul at Acre; Morligha della Rosa and Lombardia, Documenti, II, 293.
197 arcade, II, 529.
198 arcade, I, 51, 56, 57.
199 Thomas and Thomas, II, 51–53. In 1209 Angelo Faller was procurator of St. Mark Hospital della Rosa and Lombardia, Documenti, II, 293.
201 Bruden, XXXIII, 34 (RAC, Gen., II, 90–93).
202 Modern Documents, mm. 27–28.
tled in the ports of the kingdom, the bulk of the colonists came from the popolani of the respective metropolis. Unfortunately no cartulary of any court in the east, nor any register of a notary, makes this anonymous mass more articulate.

The size of the different colonies cannot be statistically estimated, although some impressions can be gathered from the inventories of the different colonies. These inventories give some idea of the size of the Italian settlements, and also reveal an interesting feature. The Venetian quarter in Tyre contained some fifty houses (domus, habitations), besides a great number of shops (stationes) and warehouses. The Genoese inventory for Acre lists no less than forty-eight houses, which makes it a very substantial quarter. The interesting feature is that some of these buildings, especially the larger ones, the palazzi, remained empty during the greater part of the year. While the permanently occupied houses of the Genoese in Acre brought in no more than 350 bezants, the seasonally rented buildings produced more than 1,000 bezants a year. This seasonal renting was done on the arrival of the European ships with the pummizum or caravans once or twice yearly. Then all the palazzi, loggiae, stalls, and storerooms with their small rooms above were immediately rented to the highest bidder.

There is a typical entry in the Venetian inventory: "Two small shops (stationes) with a small room above them, which are empty. If rented they pay 24 bezants each per month. But for the greater part of the year they stay empty." 296

This particular feature is indicative of the nature of the Italian colonies. The colony expanded immensely once or twice yearly with the arrival of the ships from the homeland. The colony was composed, as a rule, of a permanent nucleus, by now substantial in size, and a transient merchant population which stopped in the place to transact its business under the protection of its quarters and then embarked for other ports of the Levant or to Italy.

The interests of these two categories of Italians were often always identical. The transient element was primarily interested in commercial privileges, while the settled colonists were concerned with their

---

293. Tafel and Thomas, ii, 334 n.
294. Published by Destot in A.O.I., ii-3 (1884), 285 n.
296. Tafel und Thomas, ii, 364. The rent is extremely high. On the number of houettes and their income, see Kitzinger, Gedenken Justus von Trier, pp. 234 n.
possessions, their business, and their general standing in the kingdom. Holding vineyards and courtyards, and with homes and shops on their own land, they were citizens of the city, not of the kingdom, enjoying extensive commercial privileges, giving little in return. Then Frankish co-citizens, paying taxes and owing military service, to say nothing of market tolls and port customs, were in comparison at a distinct disadvantage. Fifty years after the conquest it was easy to forget the services that the Italians rendered in the first decade of the existence of the crusader states. It is not surprising, therefore, that attempts were made to abrogate their privileges. But this was not easy to do; even the Holy See intervened on their behalf. Still their position must have been annoying to the local population. If transient Italians bringing in ships and merchandise might claim to serve the kingdom in some way, this was not true of the permanent Italian settlers. If they paid any taxes on their land in the cities and their neighborhood, it was to their own curia only.

This anomalous situation, of settlers exempt from all obligations yet enjoying all the privileges of burgesses, prompted Amalric, one of the most vigorous kings of Jerusalem, to decide on a new course. In a privilege to the Pisans in 1168, he was careful to indicate that their autonomous jurisdiction excluded "all those who are my men and have houses, income, or real estate in my kingdom." These were to fall under the jurisdiction of the royal court. Raymond of Tripoli followed suit in his privilege to the Pisans in 1197. Bohemond III of Antioch would specify in his privilege to the Genoese in 1189 that burgesses should not be "members of the commune of Antioch," but even this solution was only a partial one, for the local Genoese could easily arrange with their companions resident elsewhere in the crusader states to do their business for them, thus enjoying, as no local residents could, the commercial privileges of the commune. It was to prevent this abuse that Bohemond IV of Antioch extended the earlier prohibitions to

207. In 1154 Pisa was allowed land in Laconia to build their houses; Miller, Documents, no. 4. The privilege of Amalric to several of Jaffa, ascribed to the Pisans in 1157, is typical: "libertatem uxorius ut in co habitantibus diei domum in locum regi uxorius demisi sunt ad illam locum uxorius ut in co habitantibus diei domum in locum regi uxorius demisi sunt [etc.]."

208. Ibid., no. 21: "peucorum uti, quemquam, uti, qui sit, in munere, non redditorum, commercium, ita regnum, non redditorum." 

209. Ibid., no. 22.


211. Risorta, Liber asturum, 1, 433: "quaerent in quorum communitatis accipi non redditorum:"
make them more effective. In his privilege to the Genoese in 1205, he excluded “the burgesses of the kingdom of Jerusalem, the county of Tripoli, Cyprus, and the principality of Antioch.” At the same time Pisans, the Pisan who became the lord of Botron, limited his own compatriots in the same way. In an exemption from almost all customs in his lordship of Botron, he stipulated: “From this privilege are excepted all those who took the oath of citizenship of Pisa and live in the land of Tripoli and all our men who live in the land of Botron.” The aim of this new legislation is best expressed by Henry of Champagne (1192-1197) who, when renewing (and limiting) the privileges of the Pisans in Tyre, added: “If any Pisan holds from me a burgisus, then either he leaves it to me and will be free as other Pisans, or if he wants to hold my burgisus, he will be obliged to me as are other burgesses.”

The purpose of these limitations was to confine the commercial privileges to those whose commerce brought in revenue and business, and to ensure that services in taxes or otherwise should be paid by those who earned their living in the country, and who until then had been exempted from obligations by virtue of privileges accorded to their communes two or three generations earlier. Furthermore, it also meant the abrogation of extraterritoriality of Italian settlers in the east. They would have to become burgesses of the different lordships, juridically on a par, although living in their own quarters, with other burgesses in the cities. The hold for such a reform is self-evident; we can assign the innovation to Amalric’s privilege to the Pisans of 1161. Together with the Amici sui in legere, which was intended to bring the vassals into immediate contact with the king, the leveling of the status of the nationals of the communes would go far to integrate Frankish society in the kingdom. It is quite possible that Amalric received his inspiration from the Byzantine empire, where some years earlier Manuel I Comnenus had curtailed the Venetian (and possibly other Italian) privileges, introducing the distinction between traveling Italian merchants and those permanently established in the empire. The latter were to become, as our Greek source indicates, bourgeois of the basileus.

The constant recurrence at the limitation clauses in the privileges

212. Ibid. I, 322
213. Müller, Byzantinum, no. 53 (1898), Byzantinae omnes, quae in hospitio scoporum Pisanorum civilibus et habitibus sunt in terra Tripolitana, sive omnes scoporum basileus, quæ habitant
214. Ibid. no 37
suggests, however, that it was the colonists which triumphed and not
the Frankish rulers, whose legislation came too late. It was not until
seven years after the fall of the Latin kingdom that we find general
legislation in the kingdom of Cyprus regarding burgesses in the hands
of Italian settlers. By an ordinance of 1224 Henry II ordered the na-
tionals of the communes to get rid of their burgesses within six months
under threat of confiscation. Only with the king's assent were they
to be allowed to hold burgesses.\footnote{\textit{As a matter of fact, Henry II's privilege (1200) to the Pisans of Melfa says: "sobri
all facia al guarin in al burgese" Miliun. Documenta, no. 13.}}

The economic power of the communes and their political standing
were strengthened during the thirteenth century because of the disin-
tegration of Frankish society. The support needed by rulers or those
who claimed to rule strengthened the bargaining power of the com-
munes and their settlers in the 1200s. In times of crisis the communes
were courted and received privileges, such as those accorded to the
Pisans by Conrad of Montferrat in October 1257, granting them full
jurisdiction over Pisans of whatever status, excluding only holdett
of tiele and money-tieft.\footnote{\textit{Another example is the privilege of Guy
of Luxignar of November 1289, which was probably worded in a
fraudulent way, so as to make any royal taxation of Pisans impos-
sible.}} Henry of Champagne tried to reverse this development in
his privilege of May 1198, but such efforts were the exception and
of no avail. The communes regarded themselves as part-lords of cities
with full jurisdiction over the land and inhabitants of their quarters.
An arbitration of 1212 shows the vacance of the Genoese in conflict
with the consol of Pisa respecting the jurisdiction over a woman who
had a burgese in the Genoese quarter.\footnote{\textit{An arbitration of 1212 shows the vacance of the Genoese in conflict
with the consol of Pisa respecting the jurisdiction over a woman who
had a burgese in the Genoese quarter.}}

The relative importance of the communes grew continually after
the Third Crusade. The diminishing immigration from Europe, the
internal political strife, and the financial situation brought into promi-
nence those groups of society which, because of foreign affiliation,
could take advantage of these difficulties. This was true both of the
military orders and of the communes, who became controlling pow-
ers in the kingdom. The physical bases of their strength were the
inhabitants of their quarters in the ports of the country and their
navies controlling the seas.

With the end of the crusade of Frederick II we enter the gravest

\footnote{\textit{As a matter of fact, Henry II's privilege (1200) to the Pisans of Melfa says: "sobri
all facia al guarin in al burgese" Miliun. Documenta, no. 13.}}
\footnote{\textit{Another example is the privilege of Guy
of Luxignar of November 1289, which was probably worded in a
fraudulent way, so as to make any royal taxation of Pisans impos-
sible.}}
\footnote{\textit{An arbitration of 1212 shows the vacance of the Genoese in conflict
with the consol of Pisa respecting the jurisdiction over a woman who
had a burgese in the Genoese quarter.}}
period in the history of the kingdom. The state virtually disappeared as a political unit, and society was in chronic turmoil. The rival factions of nobility, the rivalries of the military orders, and the wars of the communes made the kingdom in the middle of the thirteenth century the most unifying spectacle as Christendom. In these conditions any organized group became a power to be courted by the different factions. One has only to read the report of the Venetian viscount in Acre, Maraglio Zorzi, in 1243–1244, when offering his communique help to enthroned princess Alice against the claims of the Hohenstaufen, to realize that state and society were entirely atomized, and that there was no state interest to preserve unity or prevent decadence and collapse. We should like to know more about the Italian colonies in the period following the murderous war of St. Sabas in the middle of the thirteenth century, when Acre became the battle-ground of Italian rivalries and jealousies, when whole city quarters were destroyed and stones and columns were taken as trophies of war to Italy. We know far more about political events and the everyday fratricidal battles fought from the walls and ramparts of the city than about the lot of the population inhabiting the commercial quarters.

One feature seems to be clear, that the numbers of Italians permanently settled in the kingdom had grown. More and more people bore such eastern patronymics as Bonvassallo of Antioch, Ribaldone of Antioch, and Conrad of Acre, and Roger de Ulitampare are mentioned in the national notarial registers. Not only professional merchants but also artisans engaged in the Levantine trade. One may assume that these fabri, schiavari, or taitari (teintiari) who were sometimes engaged in the Levantine trade, and not only professionals, but also artisans, were engaged in this trade, and carrying with them their own products, would stay on in the east, although a good many artisans invested their money mainly only, themselves remaining in the west. Wealthy colonists bestowing large dowries, even of 1,000 bezants, on their

220 The notion is correct, two of which will appear, namely consecutively, the Piastra del March in Venice, and which were traditionally linked in the event, even if it is now claimed, from Constantinople; see A. Martin, "Le Mont de Poya," in Società Italiana di Storia, 1911, 1, 306.
221 Ibid., 35, 40, 409, 1289, 1292.
222 Ibid., 40, 409, 1289.
223 Ibid., 35, 40, 409, 1289.
224 Ibid., 35, 40, 409, 1289.
225 Ibid., 35, 40, 409, 1289.
226 The average amount of a gift to the kingdom was 500 bezants a year.
daughters to secure a good marriage in the mother-city, and sons following their fathers to the east and later settling in the place despite the remonstrances of their families. Another indication of the increased number of colonists in the Latin east is the emergence of institutions enabling the colonists to impose control in some measure over officials sent from the European metropolis. The consulati and vicarii were appointed in the mother cities in Europe, usually from among men who had experience in the east. But they were appointed for a short term, usually not more than a year. Consequently an institution grew up which guaranteed that the management of local affairs would be based on knowledge of local conditions and would ensure the continuity of local policies.

This institution was the constabili, mentioned several times after the middle of the thirteenth century, but without doubt existing earlier, perhaps from the beginning of the century. The nature of this body is not very clear. It might have been a general assembly of the settlers, a kind of magnum consilium, but in all probability it was a select body of the leading members of the colony, more or less formally elected by the settlers. The scarcity of published documents does not permit us to say more.

An indication of the cohesion of these colonists is the use of oaths, which in medieval usage gave the colony a corporate entity. We read that the inhabitants of the Venetian quarter of Tyre were obliged (1243) to take an oath of allegiance to Venice, which was also required of non-Venetians buying houses in the Venetian quarter. An oath was imposed on the Genoese of Tyre in 1264. Whenever a change of officials occurred the new consuls and their counselors had to swear to keep the agreement with the lord of Tyre. But in addition, an oath of allegiance (vowed in feudal terms) to the lord of Tyre was required of all Genoese staying in Tyre.

In comparison with Venice and Genoa, the commune of Pisa had fewer possessions in the kingdom, and one has the impression that

---

228 In carryen mentioned in Tyre (1264), "in vici in quibus unus sanctus tenet собственны вашим consilium." Tafel and Thomas, II, 300. The agreement of 1264 between Philip of Montfort and the Genoese is signed at behalf of the latter by the consili Consilium A.O.I., II, 2 (1264), 225
229 Among the Genoese witnessing an inventory of the commune's possessions (1249) was Peter Stralbey, whose family, a branch of the Vassallet, later related to the Maltese was for some three generations connected with the east. The tombstone of John Stralbey (d. 1263) is preserved in the monastery of St. Anne of Jerusalem, aff. Belvedere, "La Sperita di Giovanni Stralbey, e la famiglia di que' coniugali," Arte della Scolargs di sforzare passioni, XVII (1845), 199-221, and de Sanjuel, Corpus, pp. 146-149
230 Tafel and Thomas, II, 320-322
231 A.O.I., II, 2 (1264), 225.
the size of its colonies was smaller. The commune of Pisa, as we learn from a lengthy document, embraced Tuscan—people from Florence, Lucca, San Gimignano, Siena, and other such localities—who declared themselves Pisans in order to benefit from the privileges enjoyed by the Pisans (for which they probably paid), at the same time recognizing the authority of the consul of Pisa. The same attitude of suspicion, noticeable in Genoa and Venice in regard to their representatives in the East, can also be found in Pisa. As late as 1236 the elected consul was barred for life from holding the same office again; the same was true for the official notary. Even the consuls themselves, one a lawyer and the other a well-known merchant, were appointed in the mother city. But in practice things worked out differently. A document from San Gimignano (1245) tells us that “the Pisans who are in Acre agree among themselves as to the consul and then send to the commune of Pisa, so that they should send the man proposed by them, and the commune of Pisa sends them the man they require.” If this was the practice regarding the consul, it is more than likely that it was also the practice in electing the counselors. Still, the mother city took care firm and foremost of its traveling nationals, curtailing the right of the eastern Pisans to tax them in any but exceptional cases.

Smaller communes like Marseilles do not seem to have created any large permanent settlements. Even the late statutes of the city (1253-1255) give the impression that the fundacens, the warehouse, and its guardian, the fundacarius, were the pivot of the commune’s interest. The rector of Marseilles appointed the consul from among merchants going to Syria, he also appointed the counselors. The commune took a realistic view of its foreign representatives, requiring consuls to swear


234. Davidsohn, Geschichte von Marseil, II. 298.

235. Breve Pisanis communi, 177, in Ibidem, Stunmiliis manuale: "Idem ei suis communi collectam esse aliquid atque quacumque communitate communem, aliquam manum, omnium et territorii Pisanorum in Acrie veniam exigere..." idem aliquo ex Pisanis, sed semper pro genua commune alium manum esse, sed domicilium et huius loci minus procul imminuit. "The practice of taxation was current, as we learn from Genoese material registry. It was stipulated, for example, that bonds contracted by Genoa to be paid back in Acre at a given rate, should be done "introndu et ueniam de municipi dispensans at aviser" and "moniunt a contrahente." Lai. Franc., nos 1150, 1175.
not to establish prostitutes in the fundaculum. The fundacarius received his orders directly from the rector and the commiss had no right to countermand them. In emergencies, ten or fifteen merchants had the right to elect a commiss until the rector appointed one. In the last quarter of the thirteenth century Marseilles’s settlements in the east are reminiscent of those of the Italian communes 150 years earlier, in the first phase of their expansion in the Mediterranean.

The first outburst of colonizing fervor came to an end in the last quarter of the thirteenth century. By that time French written privileges were showing unmistakable influences of Italian; a Mediterranean “lingua franca,” a mixture of French, Italian, and Greek, was spoken in the ports, making its way into written deeds. By that time, too, the Italian settlements had undergone profound changes. Despite their autonomy, despite their independent jurisdiction, they had adopted local customs even in their personal affairs. Nothing is more revealing than a Genoese marriage contract written in Acre in 1279, in which the marriage settlement was drawn up secundum mores et consuetudines civitatis Acri. The facts of intermarriage, and daily contacts with other Italians and the Seldjuk, created conditions where social distinctions and differences in customs were slowly disappearing. But this process, which might have created a Levantine society in the modern sense of the word, was not allowed to continue. The Latin kingdom disappeared, and colonization of Syria and Palestine stopped, to be continued elsewhere in the Mediterranean and later on across the Atlantic in the New World.


137. Müller, Document, no. 80.
THE POLITICAL AND ECCLESIASTICAL ORGANIZATION OF THE CRUSADER STATES

Historians of the First Crusade have been unable to decide with certainty if, at the time the expedition set out, its promoters foresaw the establishment in the Holy Land of a colony of “Franks” charged with the duty of occupying the conquered territories and defending the holy places. We do know, however, that some crusaders at the time of their departure contemplated the possibility of settling in the east. This might have referred, however, to becoming vassals of...


For the many political events which are frequently alluded to below, the reader is referred to the relevant chapters in the first two points of the present work.

1 Such a plan has been attributed to Geoffrey of Bouillon and Raymond of St. Gilles, see John H. and Laura L. Hill, Raymond IV de St-Gilles, comte de Toulouse (Douleur, 1938), p. 26. Archard, lord of Edessa, who was killed in 1099 (William of Tyre, VIII, 6;
the Byzantine emperor Alexius I Comnenus (1080-1118); Bohemond of Taranto was happy to receive a Byzantine title and an important fief in anticipation of lands which the crusaders might take from the Moslems.2

The reality must have quickly dispelled whatever plans the crusaders might have had. During the crossing of Anatolia, the emperor’s representative Tatianus mistrusted the defense of conquered strongholds to certain Franks, probably as garrison commanders rather than as vassals. Such was the case with Peter of Aulps at Comana.1 Bohemond himself got Tatianus to give him the care of the fortresses of Cilicia when the Byzantine general left the crusading army. And Raymond of St. Gilles appears to have persuaded the Byzantine officials to hand over to him Latakia and some places on the nearby coast.3

But when Tatianus left, his Alexius Comnenus did not join the crusaders, the question was put in a new light. When Bohemond established himself at Antioch, having maneuvered the other barons who could claim to occupy the city with him, he did not seek to reconcile this occupation with the rights of the Byzantine emperor. When Baldwin of Boulogne established himself at Edessa, which the Moslems had never occupied during the Turkish conquest, he did not bother asking Alexius Comnenus to invest him with it. Still less would the Latin concern themselves with Byzantine claims on Jerusalem, which the Byzantines had not held for more than four centuries.

We know that Byzantium did not accept the fait accompli. Alexius tried to reoccupy by force the plain of Cilicia from even Antioch. In 1108, he imposed on Bohemond the treaty of Devol (Deboli), which corresponded almost to what Bohemond himself had requested in 1096-1097: the Norman prince, accorded the title of sebastos, was to receive Antioch and Aleppo as a fief, while giving up Cilicia and the Syrian coast.4 But the treaty remained a dead letter. The crusaders refused to recognize the sovereignty of the emperor John


12 Ralph E. Young, documents 1. Prince of Antioch (Princeton, 1943); François L. Godart, “Examen sur le cas juridique que soumettent les obéthis de la prétendue croisade à l’empereur byzantin,” in Mélanges offerts à M. Paul-E. Martin (Genoa, 1963), pp. 33-34.


5. Hill and Hill, Raymond (p. 127-130); Richard, Counts of Tripoli, pp. 16-17, 27-28.

6. Calvin, Syrie (p. 349), p. 258-259; Young, Bohemond (pp. 122-128).
II. Comnenus (1118–1143) intended to take Antioch back, granting the prince a fief to be conquered from the Moslems. It was only Manuel I Comnenus (1143–1180) who accepted a compromise: the prince would acknowledge himself to be a vassal of the empire, but keep his whole principality except Cilicia. The state of affairs lasted from 1158 to 1182, but the decline of Byzantine power which resulted from the usurpation of Andronicus Comnenus (1183–1185) rendered the rights of the emperor over the principality meaningless. However, Bohemond IV, at the beginning of the thirteenth century, must have had these rights in mind when he claimed that he was the vassal of the Latin emperor of Constantinople, but that was an argument fashioned for the occasion.

As for the county of Edessa, it accepted Byzantine suzerainty in 1137 at the time of the expedition of John Comnenus, and in 1158, when the countsess Beatrice had to resign herself to abandoning what remained of the county, it was in fact to the emperor Manuel that she offered her castles, as prescribed by feudal law, which stipulated that when a vassal was forced to sell his fortresses he must offer them to his lord. The attempts aimed at recovering the territories conquered by the crusaders in the Byzantine empire were slow and hardly extended beyond the lands that the Turks had taken away from Byzantium at the end of the eleventh century. The excellent relations that Raymond of St. Gilles had maintained with the basilisks were not enough to make the empire's rights over the county of Tripoli more effective.

It was above all the right of conquest, not imperial investiture, which gave life to the new states. Moreover, this right of conquest was sometimes countered by a decision of the council of barons who directed the Christian militia. Bohemond asked for the agreement of his peers to legitimize his taking possession of Antioch. These were the barons who entrusted Bishop Robert of Lydda with the government of Ramla and Godfrey de Bouillon with the government of Jerusalem.

---

8 Ibid., p. 639. Bohemond IV de la Tour (1133) was trying to avoid being judged by patriarch Albert of Jerusalem, who had been appointed by pope Alexander III to settle the question of the succession in Antioch.
10 I have concluded that there was a Byzantine community in the region of Tarsus and Marash, occupied by Raymond of St. Gilles with Byzantine assistance (Richard, Comte de Tripoli, pp. 26–30). LaMouche, ““To Whom Lausus Was the Byzantine Empire the Assumps? The Latin Crusading States,” in Byzantium, VII (1932) 253.
However, neither Baldwin in Edessa nor Raymond in Alarabia and later in Tripoli seems to have asked the other crusaders to acknowledge his rights.

From the very first, those who had taken possession of the towns regarded themselves as also possessing the territory that depended on them. Godfrey, in 1099, refused to allow Raymond to settle either at Ascalon or at Ascaluf, and in 1102 Tancred got Raymond to withdraw from fortresses that he had occupied on the coast and in the Syrian interior, including Alarabia, which the Provenceaux had occupied in 1098. The division of the conquered territories among four lordships - Antioch, Edessa, Tripoli, and Jerusalem - was thus soon looked upon as final, and each of these powers considered itself qualified to occupy certain of the large towns still in Moslem hands. Further, the attempt of the Second Crusade to establish count Thierry of Flanders at Damascus (1148) and the plan to form, for his benefit, an independent principality around Shaizar (1157) ran up against the hostility of those princes who were already established.

In this division, some of the rulers were led to take into account the boundaries which had existed before the crusade. The princes of Antioch, especially, appear to have wished to claim everything that had constituted the old Byzantine duchy of Antioch. They claimed the homage of the counts of Edessa, even resorting to open war, and in 1109 Tancred won recognition of his suzerainty over the northern part of the county of Tripoli, along with the homage of its count, Bertrand of St. Gilles.

This respect for preexistent boundaries took a peculiar turn in the case of the districts disputed between Franks and Moulems. It reached the point where the two sides would agree to adopt a rule of condominium. Whoever occupied the fortress would guarantee the policing of the territory; the revenues were to be divided in half, and travelers would be guaranteed against all aggression while they

14. Williams of Tyre, XVII, 7 (LHAC, Occ., 1, 768-770; Colin, Syria du nord, 391-394.
16. The circumstances were unusual. Tancred had imprisoned William Burna against Bertrand of Toul, who claimed the county. Archbishop gave the worth of the county to William, who then paid homage to Tancred because of his support (Richardson, Conquest of Tripoli, pp. 36-37).
crossed the territory, which was thus neutralised within its traditional boundaries. 17

It was, nevertheless, the right of conquest which determined both the birth and the configuration of the Frankish states. In 1097 Tancred, Baldwin, and other leaders began the occupation of Cilicia. In 1097-1098 Baldwin established himself in various places of upper Mesopotamia and eliminated Tortosa, the Armenian curia apostolica of Edessa; hence the birth of the county of Edessa. Bohemond assured himself the exclusive possession of Antioch in 1098, took over the places occupied by other barons in the neighborhood during the summer of 1099, and undertook the occupation of the Byzantine places on the coast and in Cilicia. Thus was born the principality of Antioch. Raymond constituted his county of Tripoli by occupying Tortosa (2102) and by immediately blockading Tripoli, which fell only in 1099, four years after his death. 18

With Jerusalem the situation was more complex. After a rather confused debate the crusantia militia seems to have duly decided to form an ecclesiastical seigniory for the benefit of the Holy Sepulcher (as had just been done at Ramla for the bishop of St. George), placing him under the protection (advocatus) of a great baron already established at Jerusalem and endowed with territories around the holy city. Godfrey of Bouillon, advocatus Sancti Sepulchri, did not exercise temporal power in the city, but he was ready to establish a state within the boundaries of Palestine, and he showed great resolve in refusing to Raymond the right to occupy Ascalon and in maintaining his own right to oversee the conquests that Tancred would undertake in Samaria and Galilee. He left to Baldwin I the task of making sure of Jerusalem and of Jaffa; Baldwin put an end to the plan of forming them into an ecclesiastical seigniory, and had himself crowned "king of the Latins of Jerusalem." 19 The kingdom of Jerusalem was thus established.


18. The term "king of Tripoli" seems to have hung about even before the city was taken, cf. Richard, "Le Chastelain de Saint-Michel et Mantulin de Raymon de Salin (ll) et Mgr. Fabius," in Mélanges d'histoire du moyen âge (Paris 1957), pp. 685-687.

19. On all this see Joseph Henny, Das Problem eines Königreiches in Jerusalem (Luxembourg, 1928), pp. 10-22 44 64. It was Dunbarton who first claimed the throne of David and Jaffa in the anointing of 1099, those not having been included in the seigniory of the Holy Sepulcher which had been established in 1099. As he the title rex Jerusalemense, it might have meant that the king of Jerusalem belonged to a Latin dynasty rather than one descended from David; but we sometimes met with the same rex Latinorum Jerusalemiae in the twelfth century which might have meant that he was the king of the Latins in Jerusalem rather than king of the holy city.
A. The Sovereigns

The adoption of the royal title did not confer on Baldwin supremacy over the other crusader states, nor did the title king of Jerusalem limit the new kingdom to the Holy Land. Baldwin I (1098-1118) did not forbid conquests which would have made him master of Egypt or of the Syrian interior and Damascus.20 First he availed himself of Tancred's departure to bind the principality of Galilee more closely to the crown. Then in 1109 he secured the homage of Bertrand of Toulouse for Tripoli and the southern part of the country. The count of Edessa, Baldwin of Le Bourg (or Bourg; king 1118-1131), had already received his county from Baldwin's hands, thus acknowledging himself the king's vassal.21 However, the text attests to the large homage only of the count of Tripoli to the king;22 Fulk (1131-1143) and Baldwin III (1143-1163) tolerated the recognition of Byzantine suzerainty by the prince of Antioch and the count of Edessa.11

In fact, royal authority over the three Frankish states of the north was limited. We find the prince and the two counts calling the king to their aid. When they were taken prisoner, or when they died leaving young children, the king was to take over the government of their states. Fulk was rex et dux Antiochiae Antiocheni principatus in 1133; Amalric was Tripoliis comitatus procurans in 1170,23 but the king seems primarily to have played the role of head of a league of Frankish states, especially when the prince of Antioch lost much of his power after the death of Tancred (1112) and the disaster of the sanguinis

20. This seems to be the sense of the singular locum (doublet) Annois used in the manuscript of Balianus I in an act of 1102-1104 (Études de Croisade: Centenaire de l'Église du Saint Sépulcre de Jérusalem [Paris, 1940], repr. in Pl., 111, cols. 1100-11263), n. 36. Cf. Richard, Rayonnement latin, p. 32.


22. William of Tyre, XI, 18 (RHC, Dec., 1, 467-468). Moreover, Balianus II was Paris refused service in the king, and Baldwin II had no force of autonomous (Richard, Comte de Tripoli, pp. 31-38). In August 1118 King Baldwin sighted the deposition of the count of Tripoli on the crown by giving him the duchery of Acre on a flat-rate worth 4,000 livres (Richard, Regesta, no. 741).

23. Moreover, feudal law of the period insures allowed a vassal to pay homage to different lords, provided that only one of these was his homage, and that the same facts were not involved.

The prince and the two counts pursued their own policies, making treaties with their Moslem or Greek neighbors without troubling themselves about the policies of the king. And our sources are ambivalent: John of Ibelin classes the count of Tripoli among the barons of the realm of Jerusalem, but Ermouil writes "La tiere de Tripole ne d’Autroch n’est nul se ne rassure." 23 Jerusalem’s master alone bore the royal title, from 1100 on. Did he owe this title to election? The question has been much discussed. Gaston Dodu wrote that “the kingdom of Jerusalem was originally a feudal republic presided over by an elected king,” and John Le Monte believed that inheritance replaced election only after Baldwin V’s designation as the heir of his uncle Baldwin IV (1174–1185). 24 To be precise, however, Godfrey was designated not by his future vassals but by the council of barons who directed the crusade. These persons did not settle down in the kingdom, and the barons of the kingdom owed all their rights and their titles to the king: they had no legal right to proceed to the election of a sovereign. And, after 1100, the kings succeeded one another by virtue of the strictest rules of inheritance. However, at the death of Baldwin I, in 1118, it was necessary to decide whether they would accept the king’s brother, Eustace III, count of Boulogne, or his cousin Baldwin of Le Bourg, count of Edessa. At the urging of Joscelin I ol Courtemay the barons summoned Baldwin, and it was claimed that Baldwin I had designated him as his successor. Eustace agreed to step aside. This precedent appeared sufficient to establish that the crown should pass to the nearest heir of the deceased king provided that he was present to take up his inheritance. This allowed the barons in 1243 to keep out King Conrad, the son of Frederick II and queen Isabel of Burgundy (Eudoxia). But a clever lawyer, Philip of Novara, succeeded in establishing that Conrad had to be allowed the chance to assert his rights by coming to claim the throne. The queen of Cyprus, Alice of Champagne, who based her claim on the traditional rule, thus could not get herself crowned. 25

The royal office could pass to women. In 1131, Baldwin II’s daughter Melisende inherited the crown and transmitted it to her husband

23 Livre de Jean d’Ibelin, cap. 369 URNC, Louis, 1, 413-419, Chronique d’Ermouil et de Bernard le Tchoum, ed. Louis de Mus Laure (Paris, 1870), p. 23
24. Dodu, Histoire des tumultes, p. 130; Le Monte, Famel Monarchy p 8 (*The ascension of Baldwin de Burg came about partly through election*) and p 39
25 The question has been thoroughly studied by Mayer, “Studies in the History of Queen Melisenda of Jerusalem,” Dumbarton Oaks Papers, XXVI (1972), 93 112
26 Le Monte, Famel Monarchy, pp. 70-74; Richard, Bayadere et al., pp. 257-259; Riley Smith, Fauvete Noblesse, pp. 269-282, has emphasized that this is the application of the rule giving the succession to the "plus drito heir apparent."
Fulk of Anjou. But she intended to remain queen and to exercise the prerogatives of the office, on the grounds that her father had left the kingdom to her just as much as to her husband and her young son. Not only did she endorse her husband's acts during his lifetime (not unusual in the twelfth century), but after his death in 1143 she refused to turn over the crown to her son Baldwin III when he came of age. She accepted his coronation only with the agreement that she could keep the royal title and the government of half the kingdom. Later, in 1151, Baldwin III had recourse to war and forced his mother to settle for a dowry. 29

When the kingdom was transmitted by a woman to her husband, he held it only during her lifetime or during the minority of the children she left him. This allowed the barons of the kingdom to refuse to recognize Guy of Lusignan when Queen Sibyl and her children died in 1190, and allowed Frederick II to eliminate John of Brienne in 1225 by marrying the daughter John had had by Mary of Montferrat. The uncertainty of the position explained, perhaps, why Henry of Champagne, in 1192, refused to accept the royal title when he married Isabella of Jerusalem. By her previous marriage Isabella had had a daughter, Mary, who would take the royal title when the became of age. But Aimery of Lusignan, who married Isabella on Henry's death in 1197, took the title king of Jerusalem.

Baldwin IV tried to change the rules of succession in order to keep his brother-in-law Guy of Lusignan off the throne. Guy had married Sibyl of Jerusalem. Baldwin chose as heir the son that Sibyl had had by a first marriage, and had his barons swear that, if the boy died, they would look to the pope, the kings of France and England, and the emperors, to decide the respective rights of his two sisters, Sibyl and Isabella. 30 When Baldwin V died in 1196, however, Sibyl had recourse to force and had herself crowned, and the consent of Isabella's husband Humphrey IV of Toron to this coronation rendered inoperative the arrangements made by Baldwin IV. Inheritance thus triumphed over a notion recognized elsewhere, according to which the king of

29 LaMonte, *Freud's Monarchy*, pp. 11 ff.

30 Sibyl, like Baldwin IV, was born of Baldwin's first marriage, to Agnese of Courtenay, which had been annulled, Isabella, of his second marriage, to Maria Courtena. Baldwin IV had been designated Baldwin III's heir on his father's death and promised him the kingdom in *Hieron*; see William of Tyre, *VIII*, 29 (*RHC*, Dec., 1, 673-674). Although the legitimancy of Sibyl's birth was not disputed, Baldwin assured the barons against the claims of his mother and his half-sister to the throne as equal. See Marshall W. Baldwin, *Raymond III of Tripoli and the Fall of Jerusalem* (*Princeton*, 1936, p. 58), Nicholas, *Anonymus III and the Fall of the Crusader States*, 1154-1190 (*Leyden*, 1973), p. 98.
Jerusalem would have been only "the lieutenant of the kings of Outremer".\textsuperscript{11}

In fact, the king of Jerusalem enjoyed complete sovereignty, he had no secular suzerainty, and it is not certain that he recognized the suzerainty of the Holy See.\textsuperscript{12} Baldwin I had ignored the claims of the patriarch to receive the king's homage. The king held his crown only from God, and this assuaged to the barons of the kingdom, who looked upon themselves as the high court of the kingdom, the ability to play a role in the succession to the throne. In 1118 it was they who summoned Baldwin II to take the crown, in preference to Eustace of Boulogne.\textsuperscript{13} In 1243 they decided to give their homage to Alice of Champagne rather than to king Conrad. In 1264 Hugh III of Antioch-Lusignan and Hugh of Dreux submitted their claims to the throne to the judgment of the high court; the barons decided in favor of the former and gave him their homage. And the barons also intervened in the marriages of royal heiresses.\textsuperscript{14} Though we cannot properly speak of election by the barons, they had nevertheless considerable influence on the choice of the sovereign.

As in the kingdom, the succession to the other thrones of the Latin east was regulated by the principle that the inheritance passed to the nearest relative, of whatever sex, of that person who had last exercised the suzerainty of the principality or county.\textsuperscript{11}

We are poorly informed of the succession crises of the county of Tripoli. In 1148 Alfonso Jordan, count of Toulouse and son of Raymond of St. Gilles, seems to have wanted to contest the county with his grand-nephew Raymond II. In 1187 Raymond III prevented the

\textsuperscript{11} The description applied to Conrad of Montferrat in 1009 by Abbe Salabur in the Livre des deux jartiers (AHC, IV 400), when Conrad refused to open the gates of the city to Guy of Lusignan, Conrad called himself "representant le roi Guillaume" and seems to have attributed to the king of the west the right of reorganizing royal authority in the Holy Land.

\textsuperscript{12} Libero, Feudal Monarchy, p. 4, speaks of "the Pope's claim to Jerusalem as a state of the Church" which is quite debatable. That there was recognition of papal suzerainty over the kingdom of Jerusalem has not been established; see Sanderson, "The Papacy and the Levant during the Twelfth Century," Bulletin of the Polish Institute to America, III (1945), 227-287.

\textsuperscript{13} Our party summoned Eustace, presumably the same group of barons who, according to Olibert of Bruges, had availed the cause of Plantagenet, Charles the Good, to crown and receive the crown of Jerusalem (Drolet, Historie des comtes de Terre, pp. 148-149; Richard, Raymonde feme, p. 69).

\textsuperscript{14} Often turning to western sovereigns to choose a husband for the heiress (as in the case of John of Brienne). In 1192 they forced Isabella of Jerusalem to separate from Humphrey IV of Taron and marry Conrad of Montferrat.

\textsuperscript{11} This was the basis for the claim of Mary of Antioch against Hugh of Antioch-Lusignan. She claimed to be more closely related to Isabella of Jerusalem, the "dame sans doute titulaire" whose granddaughter was the wife (Richard, Raymonde feme, pp. 221-222).
succession of his relatives of Toulouse in the interests of his godson Raymond of Antioch. 34 But in 1201, at Antioch, Bohemond IV claimed the principality against his nephew Raymond Rousen, Raymond of Antioch’s son, arguing that Raymond of Antioch had died (1197) before their father Bohemond III (1163–1201), and so had not been en suzette of the principality. 35

Possession of the kingdom was complete from the moment the king was consecrated and crowned. Baldwin I received his crown from the patriarch Dambert in the basilica of Bethlehem. 36 From 1118 to 1197, the coronation took place at the Holy Sepulcher. After the fall of Jerusalem (with the exception of Frederick II who crowned himself at the Holy Sepulcher in 1229) it took place in the cathedral of Tyre. This ceremony did not imply that the king became the vassal of the patriarch, but the patriarch was supposed to ask those present if the new sovereign was indeed the direct heir of the kingdom, and crowned him after their acclamation. 37 It was at this moment in the ceremony in 1269 that Mary of Antioch proclaimed before a notary her refusal to recognize the rights of Hugh of Antioch-Lusignan. Enough importance was attached to the ceremony that Baldwin III refused to allow his mother, Maelseza, to be crowned at the same time he was, and that in 1106 Silvia made her coronation the essential element of her coup d’état, while Conrad of Montferrat, murdered in 1192 before he could be crowned, was called simply rex electus. 38

The princes of Antioch also appeared to their patriarch to be consecrated. Claude Cahen has suggested that this ceremony was instituted in 1112 by the regent Roger of Salerno, a rather distant relative of

34 Baldwin, Comtet de Tripoli, pp. 42–46; Baldwin, Raymond III, p. 111. In the event Raynart’s brother, Bohemond (IV) of Antioch, became count (1197–1221). The crown of Toulouse seems to have been established for his son-in-law Raymond of Toulouse de Bourg on 13 June 1269, Claude de Vignai and Roger J. Bautista, Histoire générale de Languedoc sous les comtes d’Uzès, etc. (Rueil, Montargis, 1972–1993), VII, 1441–1446.

35 Cahen, Syrie du sud, pp. 291–295. I have interpreted the statement of William of Tyre’s successor, that Bohemond III died “maladroitement de la même,” in a different sense than has Cahen.

36 It has been assumed that the refusal of Bohemond was made in order not to prejudice the grant of Jerusalem to his ecclesiastical overlordship (Hamon, Des Pharamond, pp. 63–65). It has also been suggested that he preserved the condition established by Godfrey of Bouillon who refused to wear a crown of gold where Christ had worn a crown of thorns. But it might also be that Bohemond had himself assessed in Bethlehem simply because Christ was, being the first great son of David following his ascension to the throne, was celebrated in Bethlehem.


38 The role in remuneration of a bishop who had not yet been consecrated, but it does not imply that the choice of the king had been the result of an election.
Bohemond II, the legitimate heir to the principality, in order that his accession to the principality be thenceforth undisputed. His successors continued to have themselves consecrated by the patriarch.  

The history of the crusader states is noteworthy for the problems caused by regencies. In the twelfth century this was especially so at Antioch, whose princes often died violent deaths. In the thirteenth the same was true at Jerusalem, because of difficulties over the succession. At the beginning of the twelfth century, the heretics, deprived of their head, appealed to a neighboring prince, as in Edessa where Tancred was called on to replace Baldwin of Le Bourg, who had been taken prisoner. But soon the idea of calling on the nearest relative of an incapacitated prince prevailed. Tancred was summoned to Antioch to replace the captured Bohemond I; Roger was chosen to replace the minor Bohemond II. Or else they turned to their suzerain.  

Kings Baldwin II, Fulk, and Amalric were called upon to govern the counties or the principality when their leaders died, until their heirs came of age. We frequently see a conflict between the king and the princes of Antioch, the latter claiming to exercise the regency and refusing it to the king of Jerusalem, who nevertheless took it over each time.  

In the kingdom of Jerusalem queen Melloend, on the other hand, effectively carried on the government during the minority of Baldwin III. The arrangement was different, however, when Amalric died, the dying king entrusted the regency to one of the great officers, Miles of Planay. But Miles was murdered in 1174, and Baldwin IV's nearest relative, count Raymond III of Tripoli, took over the government (1174–1176). Baldwin IV was debilitated by leprosy, and sought to entrust the government to someone he could trust (count Philip of Flanders, who refused, and then Reginald of Clisson), but when his sister Sibyl remarried in 1183 he gave the regency (bailli) for Sibyl's infant son Baldwin to his brother-in-law Guy of Lusignan. Then he deprived Guy of the regency and entrusted the protection of the child to his...
uncle, count Joscelin III of Courtenay, while Raymond III was again charged with the government with the title of regent.46 Thenceforth it was conceded that the regent should be the nearest relative of a king who either was a minor or was prevented from ruling effectively.47

The regent governed the kingdom, received the homages due the king, and took over the royal domain.48 His position was hardly different from that of the king himself. Aunuary of Lusignan, queen Isabel's husband and regent for princess Mary of Montferrat, actually took the title of king, while Henry of Champagne, in the same position, called himself "lord of the realm." Frederick II, after the death of his wife Isabel in 1228, was also regent for the young Conrad. But at Conrad's coming of age the barons refused to continue accepting Frederick as regent. They were unable to give homage to Conrad, who had not come to the kingdom. It was then that they decided to recognize the regency of Conrad's nearest available relative, Alice of Champagne. Arguing, however, from a precedent in the Morea, they refused to hand possession of the fortresses of the royal domain over to the regent, although giving her the homage due the crown.

From 1243 to 1268 the kingdom was thus governed by a regent or "lord of the kingdom" with limited powers: first queen Alice (1243–1246), next her son Henry I of Lusignan (1246–1253),49 then Hugh II, Henry's son. But since he was a minor, the "lordship of the kingdom" was filled in succession by his mother Blanche of Antioch (1253–1261), represented by her brother Bohemond V of Antioch, next by his aunt Isabel of Lusignan (1263–1264), and then by her son, Hugh III de Lusignan (1264–1269). The death of Hugh II in 1267 made Hugh III king of Cyprus, and that of Conradus, legitimate heir to the throne, in 1268, allowed Hugh III in 1269 to exchange his title of regent for that of king of Jerusalem.50

The regent himself might be absent from the kingdom (as were the rulers of Cyprus from 1243 to 1268). In this case, as also when the king of Jerusalem was absent, a bailiff was established "sum le fall de la regnicia." At the time of the captivity of Baldwin II, it seems

48. It is debatable whether he could administer the domain as he wished without an accounting when the heir reached the age of majority. Raymond III was reported to render such an accounting. Aunuary of Lusignan took care to separate the administrations of the kingdom which he governed in the name of his wife Isabel. From that of his own kingdom of Cyprus.
49. Pope Innocent IV recognized his title on April 13, 1247. See also Pierre and Carl Rudolph, eds., Mon. Etudes sur l'âge de royaume pontificale romain, 31 (Bruxelles, 1927), 244 (no. 328); see also p. 299 (no. 113) and p. 488 (no. 368).
50. It was only then that he was in a position to receive the royal homage of Acre and Tyre, thenceforth held by the successor of Acre and Philip of Montferrat.
that the barons designated Eustace Garinor, lord of Sidon (1123).  But it was Frederick II who named Thomas of Acerra bishop of the kingdom in 1226, then, in 1228, Ballian I Cremer of Sidon and Warner the German, whom Richard Filangieri later replaced.

John of Ibelin, whose account is open to criticism (he omitted to mention the designation of Filangieri), 55 affirms that the hege men had the right to choose the baileys themselves. In fact, it was Frederick II to whom the pope would suggest in 1236 (when the emperor would make Bohemond V regent of the kingdom) to designate two baileys, one at Acre, the other at Tyre.  And in 1241 the Queen barons themselves asked the emperor to replace Filangieri with Simon of Montfort. 56 It was only after 1243, when King Conrad reached his majority, that the barons refused his representative Thomas of Acerra, and designated a bailey whose nomination was confirmed by the "lord of the kingdom". 57 This procedure became from then on the normal way of designating the bailie. But his powers were limited; he could not hear cases relating to fiefs and he had to take an oath to the hege men. He appeared thus as much their representative as that of the king or of the "lord of the kingdom."

51 One might well ask, however, whether Eustace Garinor was not closely related to the family of Baldwin I and Baldwin II (Charles Monnet, "Les Flamands de terreau et ses successions hacha du Hérault," Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres, 71944, p. 189.

52. John of Ibelin says (map 2449) that Thomas of Acerra's powers expired on the death of queen Isabella of Brienne, and that the hege men then elected the old lord of Bellet and Ibelin of Sidon "l'homme en lui des terres que le seigneur prit à le comme le comte de Pamphylie" (RHC, Lib. I., 1592). For the designation of Baldwin and Warner see J. Bost, "Le comte de Bellet," Rev. d'histor. et de littér., 1934, p. 204. For the Hege of Richard Filangieri as bailey of the kingdom, see G. Sabatier, R. de Constantinople (Bibliothèque archéologique et historique, XXXVII, Paris, 1903), p. 108.

53. He says (map 2449) that when Frederick II wanted to substitute Philip of Mangualde for Baldwin of Ibelin and Otho of Montbriand (who had taken Warner's place), the Hege men refused to accept him (RHC, Lib. I., 1598).

54. ABO, Epistolae pontificum, XIII, (Bruxelles, 1833, 371-372 (no. 674) of L. L. M. and M. H. L. E. B. The Wars of Frederick II against the Nodes of Sicily and Cyprus (CURC, 23; New York, 1936), pp. 49-50, 164. This rebellion had been suppressed in 1235 by Frederick II "et il trovato che non buon che un re andar da besti, il loro estremo quando uno uomo di terra fist ha modo a Auro (Philip of Mangualde), et Richard Filangieri sent a Bera" (Les Croisés des chevaux, map 208, in RHC, Arm., 1592; Halsey-Smith, Frankish Society, map 208, 209.

55. RHC, Lib. I., 393-394.

56. They chose Otho of Monsalviard, commandant of the kingdom, according to John of Ibelin (caps. 249, 250, in RHC, Lib. I, 399-400). However, in 1238 it was done regent Bohemond V who named the bailey, John of Aragon (Arms: "Conquérant de Guillaume de Ty de 1229 à 1261, sieur de Mamertin de Pamphylie," RHC, Lib. I., 1063-1065).

57. "Les baillis sont ceux qui sauvèrent l'hérault et le seigneur doute d'Armé, et autres en faveur, celui qui les remplit et qui les plus proches, et là où le plus des hommes s'accordent à chez sur le fait de la majorité, parfois ou sans droit à la guerre ou assemblée cour et faire impédre une opposition à ceux qui les majorons," according to John of Ibelin (caps. 249, in RHC, Lib. I., 398).
B. The Feudal Regime

The crusader states were formed at a time when the feudal system was at its height in Western Europe. Furthermore, possibly with some exceptions, all the conquered lands were embraced within the feudal structure of the new states. The prospect of a Muslim reconquest, moreover, would give to this structure a very particular force. The rulers sought to retain in their service on a permanent basis the knights whom they employed by giving them fiefs, later, when a network of fortresses would ensure the security of the frontiers as well as the interior, these fortresses too were used as fiefs.

The granting of fiefs seems to have gone on from the very beginning of the conquest. The princes often kept within their own domain the main towns, which were the first to be conquered. But already Godfrey had invested Tancred with what would become the principality of Galilee, and promised a knight of Forez, Guademar Charpinel, the investiture of Haifa in anticipation of its capture. Baldwin I, when his brother died, reinvested the knights and barons with the fief which had been established for them out of the town revenues. Many fiefs were thenceforth money-fiefs.

The feudal organization of the kingdom of Jerusalem was famous for the strictness of its principles. But this strictness exists primarily in the writings of thirteenth-century jurists. The documents preserved in church archives allow us to modify its rigidity. The kinds of fief varied. There were important lands, some of which carried the title of county (Jaffa) or principality (Galilee), and lands of less importance, or simply money-fiefs, the fief en bannaz in contrast to the fief

58 See above, p. 125, with respect to the affranchis, to fiefs from an early growth of the right of occupancy given to the first occupants? On the situation of the state or fiefs de reprise in the county of Tripoli, see Richardson, ‘Le Comité de Tripoli dans les événements de Pérouse’ pp. 260–263.
60 Albert of Aachen, VII, 33: ‘in medio tamen, prout comunque sita erat de redditibus divinissimis, prudenter’ (1000: RHC, Dec., II, 538).
61 On the controversy over the matter between Carl Stephanus and Labadur, cf. Labaduris, ‘Three Questions Concerning the Ammon of Jerusalem,’ Byzantina medicinae, II (1946), 201–204
en cas" au ou en terre. Most of the holders of fiefs lived in towns or in castles, not on their lands, limiting themselves to collecting the revenues of their villages. A village usually belonged to a single lord, but occasionally it might be divided. Such divisions stopped, however, at the point where a holding assured the maintenance of one knight, the caballaria or chevalerie.

The most important fiefs were endowed with rights of justice or command. The Livre de Jean d'Ibelin gives a bit of them, though incomplete, it reveals that the lords of simple villages were able to exercise certain rights of justice over the inhabitants who were their tenants. The bœufs et terriers had the right of punishing their men, inflicting mutilation on them if caught red-handed, as is indicated by a canon of the council of Nablus (1120): this was justice. They held a court, made up of their vassals, in order to decide feudal matters. Finally, they had coats, that is, molds for impressing their seal and countersign on a seal bulla, and this right allowed them to faire prelète donatif, to grant a piece of land without the confirmation of their suzerain. These prerogatives seem to have been acknowledged as belonging to the holders of those lordships which included an important castle, the center of an extensive territory and the residence of a group of knights bound to the lord of the castle by ties of vassalage.

Some of them lords claimed special privileges. One discours in the thirteenth century an attempt on the part of the principal lord high Juvetian to form a group of four "barons," which John of Ibelin sought to define on the basis of the exceptional importance of their

63 John of Ibelin, cap. 160 (RHC, Lib. 1, 309).
64 Their division was forbidden (above, caps. 146, 150, Lib. 1, 206-222). Richard, Comte de Champagne, p. 799. Some fiefs were made up of a certain number of cottagers (such as that of John Bonner at Caymont, Histoire de France, vol. 641) in which there might also form the basis of a fief of Juvetian, cap. 162, and John of Ibelin, cap. 271 (RHC, Lib. 1, 428). "Baronie de Ibelin per Il Sigillo de Beaufres, annull the matter of four barons "en consequence de fyns."
65 There is a list of quarters having "terres en main et justice" in Ibelin of Ibelin, cap. 270 (RHC, Lib. 1, 419-421); cf. Richard, "Les Livres de maunrancy dans le Livre de Jean d'Ibelin," RHEFR, vol. 1, XIII (1950), 565-577. The possession of maunrancy endowed with rights of how justice has been afforded to by Calou, "Notices sur l'histoire des comitadens de la Franche
66 Livre au roi, cap. 39 (RHC, Lib. 1, 634).
67 Moral-Cosciro, XXI, col. 362, annul 35.
68 Raymond de Beaufres, "Le Denis de 'omne' dans le royaume de Jerusalem," Syrie XXIII (1942-1943), 244-257. John of Ibelin, cap. 189 (RHC, Lib. 1, 302). The lords who did not have this right used a wax seal (which the great lords began to use at the end of the thirteenth century), and had to have their documents confirmed by the lord from whom they held their fiefs, who affixed his seal (e.g., Richard, Regnum, p. 394).
seigneurs. The baron was to furnish a contingent of one hundred horsemen for the royal army and to be accompanied by a lord high constable and a marshal. The four barons were to enjoy the privilege of being justiciable only in the court of barons, when it was a question of their bodies, their honor, or their fiefs. But this theory seems to have been introduced rather late, perhaps in imitation of the courts des pairs in the west.68 Only the kingdom of Jerusalem appears to have experienced an attempt of this kind, echoed neither in Antioch nor in Tripoli, where the lord high justiciars enjoyed prerogatives similar to those of the kingdom.

The fief was normally burdened with a service that its holder was supposed to render to the one who had given it to him. There were, however,iefs which owed no service,69 somewhat similar probably to the allods which we find in the towns.70 The service varied greatly; they called fiefs the tenures of sergeants who fought on foot as well as those of seigneurial officials (scribes, native interpreters).71 The fiefs of knights, however, required them to perform military service under carefully defined conditions.

The lord called them up by sending a sergeant, the banner, who brought them the summons. The vassal had to go unless wounded or sick (in which case a doctor's or surgeon's certificate might be required), or if the lord had not yet paid him what he owed.72 The king's men were at his disposition for a whole year throughout the length and breadth of the kingdom; they had to serve him with horse and arms, stated precisely in 1166 by the anses of Biilba, which exempted knights from serving in the sieges of towns.73 A vassal under forty had to serve in person, if older, he need merely tenir hermois, put his arms at the disposal of his lord.74 In fact, a vassal had to own a war horse and a complete suit of armor, and the king stopped his pay when the armor was incomplete, although he had to re-

68. Richard, "Paix d'Orient brise. Les quatre baronnie des royaumes de Jerusalem et de Chypre," RHDE, no. 4, XCVIII (1954), 87-88. The other nobles, the four baronies were not by juridiction among various (John of Urbin, cap. 873, in RHC, Lond. I, 307).
69. Calver. Syria du nord, p. 530-531. John of Urbin (cap. 249) mentions the "fief larum qui au dort point de servir ne d'oumeage ni de redevance" (RHC, Lond. I, 399), he points out (cap. 141) that the king would grant a fief "a servir et a servir" (ibid., 1 317).
72. Thad under age was not accepted even if it was necessary to name a thoroumand stronghold, of John of Urbin, cap. 221, 223, 284, 223 (RHC, Lond. I, 336-345, 354).
73. Gesta arciprestae, cap. 207 (RHC, Arm., II, 721).
74. John of Urbin mentioned that after the age of thirty a vassal holding a fief could refuse the king's right to have the current again, on the ground that if at this age a knight no longer owed the service of the body (cap. 226, 228, in RHC, Lond. I, 358, 362).
place a horse worn out or lost on his service. The requirement to serve in person brought with it a prohibition against leaving the kingdom without handing over the fief to the lord. Failure to serve was punished by confiscation of the fief for a year and a day.

However, it was anticipated that the obligations of certain fiefs might be fulfilled by someone other than the vassal. In his list of the "services que les cités don recoumy de Jérusalem doivent" (c. 271) John of Ibelin noted that John of Akenas owed the king "un chevaler pelerin," and that other holders of fiefs owed the service of two to five knights. In such a case, the vassal could subinfeudate portions of his fief to rear-vassals, but it was assumed that he would keep for himself a more important part than that allotted to a rear-vassal.

The requirement of military service limited the possibility of alienating the fief. It was forbidden to sell it to a minor or to an unmarried young woman. But the inheritability of fiefs was soon widely recognized; the legitimate son of a knight and his lady could not be prevented from holding a fief, even if incapable of proper service ("vil, incontinent, court, bons, mainignié de aucun de ses membres, yvroying, eus trobés de aucun mauvais ou vilain vice").

Even inheritance through a collateral line was allowed in Jerusalem, up to the middle of the twelfth century. However, the partition of a fief was not allowed. Only the first born succeeded to the fief of a father who had only one fief, and he could subinfeudate only a part to his brothers. Daughters, on the other hand, divided the fief among themselves if there were no male heir, provided that the fief comprised several chevaleries, only in 1171 was it decided that the oldest would receive the homage of her sisters. If the heir was a minor the fief was placed under the care of the lord, who could grant it (sometimes in return for money) to anyone he chose, so long as the care of the child himself was entrusted to his nearest relative.

At fifteen the young man asked for his fief, and he was allowed

---

71 Livre au roi, cap. 10 (ibid., 1, 84.3).
72 John of Ibelin, cap. 180, 194 (ibid., 1, 282-283, 287).
75 Livre au roi, cap. 34 (ibid., 1, 62-63); John of Ibelin, cap. 148 (ibid., 1, 223-224).
76 John of Ibelin, cap. 169-170 (ibid., 1, 239-240). Philip of Novara, cap. 20 (ibid., 2, 494) implies that the nature was intended to prevent the holder of the regency from getting rid of the baron, gunning the jonge.

For the sale of a regency in 1179 see Reinesch, Agenésie, no. 268.
In swear homage to the lord, an indispensable formality without which the fief could be confiscated by the lord for the lifetime of the defaulting vassal. Homage forbade him to strike his lord, to bear arms against him, to give counsel that might harm him, to injure his hono,
or that of his wife, his daughter, or his master; it obliged him to give up his horse to his lord in the course of battle if the lord had been unhorsed, and to give himself up as a hostage to free his lord from captivity. On the other hand, the lord was forbidden to strike his vassal or to take his fief, and had to arrange his deliverance when the vassal had given himself up as a hostage in his place.

The heiress of a fief could be required by the lord to marry on reaching the age of twelve. Theoretically she had a choice among three candidates of a rank compatible with her own. Her parents, who might wish to arrange her marriage, were often forced to offer the lord a sum of money to get his approval of the match which they themselves proposed. Raymond II of Tripoli, for example, let himself be tempted by the attraction of a large sum to marry off the heiress of Botron to someone other than Gerard of Ridefort, to whom he had promised her.

When a fief changed hands there was no transfer tax except at Antioch, where it amounted to a month, possibly the equivalent of the "relief" in the west. But alienation was controlled; the fief could be sold, even at auction, provided that it be to a person capable of holding it. This excluded not only minors but churches, religious orders, communes (such as the Italian republics), and barges. Where a sale to a buyer of this sort had to be made (for example, when the vassal had to pay a ransom), the lord had to authorize it or else the fief might be forfeited.

The fief could be taken from a vassal not only for failure to swear homage or perform service (which entailed only a temporary forfeiture) but when the vassal denied God or betrayed his lord, according to John of Ibelin. A twelfth-century text, the *Establishment du roya*
Bauduin segment, numbers twelve cases in which forfeiture occurs, including apostasy, treason, armed revolt, the coining of false money, the usurpation of regal rights (coinage, port and highway tolls), and refusal to obey the lord. In fact under Amaury a new text was adopted, the *Axe de la langue*, which limited considerably the right of forfeiture.

This assise established a principle favorable to royal authority, the swearing of liege homage to the king by all vassals and subvassals as well as an oath of fealty by the inhabitants of cities, towns, and castles held in fief of the king. Previously, liege homage and the oath of fealty were only mentioned in texts of 1144 in Tripoli, 1149 in Antioch, and 1155 in the kingdom, were required of the vassals of the king and princes, and of burgesses of the cities in their domain. The new arrangement would require rear-vassals and burgesses to abandon their immediate lord if he rebelled against the king.

On the other hand, this assise created a bond between all the king’s liege men; if an injustice was committed against one of them by their immediate lord, it was their duty to support one another, demanding of the lord that he have the man on question judged by the court before laying hands on his fief. If the lord refused the “guarant de connaissance de sa cour,” the vassals could refuse the service due from their fiefs, and the king was to intervene on their behalf.

The king himself was required to provide justice in his court to any vassal he might wish to dismiss or imprison. In this way the...
Assise de la légèce made the strict application of the Establishment dou roi Saudun segont impossible. Amory of Laudin succeeded in tempering it, but after him the seigneurs of the kingdom used the Assise de la légèce against arbitrary acts of the royal will.** John of Ibelin could write of this text that “le seigneurs et les homes se doyvent plus pencer de savoir la” than any other assise, and LaMonte has shown that it ensured the supremacy of the high court of the kingdom.

There was a “high court” in the kingdom and in the principalities, just as there was a court in seigneuries of lesser importance. The lord usually surrounded himself with his vassals to give judgment, since they owed him their counsel. He could even ask a vassal to furnish advice through a third party, just as he could ask him to go to conduct an inquest on the spot, or transmit a summons in a message. But service of court consisted above all in “faire organ et conoissant et recors de coer.”

By their presence, on the other hand, the vassals brought a guarantee to the acts of the lord. Further, the vassals of the prince of Antioch refused to recognize the validity of the transfer of the principality to the emperor John Comnenus (1142) which had been made without the consent of the prince’s court. This guarantee ceased to appear in the acts of western princes by the end of the twelfth century, but it would persist in the Latin east.

The judicial competence of the high court of Jerusalem began to be defined at the time of the assembly of Nabiun (1120), which attributed to it the cognizance of cases in which two barons opposed each other, or one baron and the man of another. Usamah ibn-Muqidd saw how it worked in receiving the complaint of a Moslem prince against a Frankish baron. On this occasion the king selected some knights to discuss and draw up the verdict, which he then put into effect. But the composition of the court remained fluid; new crusaders occasionally sat with royal vassals.

---

89 John of Ibelin, cap. 217 (RHC, Jor, 1, 347).
90 Williams of Tyre, XV, 30 (RHC, Oct, 1, 650-660); Caleri, Syria du nord, pp. 366-367.
92 On the definition of judicial competence between the court of the prince of Antioch and that of the patriarch, see below, p. 248.
The composition and procedure of the high court became increasingly defined when the Assise de la Jace came into force, bringing new cases before the court. But the members of the court were not so specialized as to form a body like the parlement of the kings of France. As early as 1250 the high court considered keeping a register of decisions, but the idea was abandoned. However, the high court was normally made up of men having some legal competence. The law that was being applied became so complicated that it was necessary to make collections of customs such as the Livre au roi, the Livre en forme de plait of Philip of Novara, the Livre des assises et des bons usages of John of Ibelin, and still others. But it is especially the political role of the high court which has attracted attention. The Assise de la Jace led it to intervene in the difficulties between the king and his liege men. The success of a crusade which allowed the vassals to judge the right of a citizen to receive their homage and service, required the high court to judge who was to receive the crown or the legitimacy of the nomination as regent. A doctrine was elaborated by which this right allegedly went back to Godfrey of Bouillon's election by those who were to be his vassals. And the high court had the means of making its decisions respected by the king, the conjunction of the liege men, who could withdraw their service from their lord.

Did the adoption of the Assise de la Jace at least make feudal revolts impossible? The kingdom of Jerusalem had known such revolts before. Baldwin of Le Puy, lord of Transjordan, rebelled against Baldwin II, who had confiscated his barony before 1128. Hugh II of Le Puiset, count of Jaffa, after having been accused of scheming against the life of King Fulks, took up arms and appealed to the Egyptians for help, but his brothers abandoned him and the king had to submit (1132). The affair of Gerard of Salon seems to have been more complicated: in 1160 he fought against Baldwin III, who besieged his castles.

94. Aubrey, Livre des Assises de la Cour des Bourgeois, cap. 23-29 (RHC. Leis. 61, 246-250).
95. I have attempted to comment the adoption of the Assise de la Jace on the death of Simon de Montfort with this revolt, as being the manifestation of a two independent vested customary rights (Le Royaume indivis de Jerusalem, p. 90), but if the Assise de la Jace (or at least the part relative to the regality) is to be attributed to Baldwin III. W Pommier has suggested (see above, note 83), this hypothesis must be abandoned.
96. LaMonte, "The Lord of Le Puiset and the Crusades," Speculum, XVII (1942), 100-118 Mayer, "Simon in the History of Queens Catharina," pp. 112-133; see also the revolt of Hugh II of Le Puiset in revealing the refusal of a party of the nobility to accept the claims of king Fulks to govern without the queen's being questioned in his decisions, since she was the daughter of Baldwin II and the true holder of the kingdom.
Young king Baldwin III refuses the tutelage of his mother, queen Melisende. From the collections of the Bibliothèque nationale.
tle of Belhacem, and he appealed to Nur-ad-Din; but, though it is possible that this war broke out because of the plundering of the lord of Sidon, it is certain that he did not die at the stake as Michael the Syrian wrote. We know, however, that tradition linked the adoption of the Assise de la ligèce to a conflict between Amalric and Gerard, without being able to say whether or not it had to do with the affair.

These rebellions of vassals did not have the same character as the conflicts which pitted Baldwin III against his mother, Melisende, or Raymond III of Tripoli against Guy of Lusignan. These were problems of succession which ended in civil wars in which the barons participated. It was the same when Guy of Lusignan faced the barons who supported Conrad of Montferrat. On the other hand, Guy's revolt against Baldwin IV, who had stripped him of his regency in 1183, and Reginald of Châtillon's refusal of obedience when Guy asked him in 1187 to surrender the spoils that he had taken from the Moslems (though it did not come to armed conflict), were true acts of subordination of vassals toward their lord.

After 1192 there were conflicts between the king and his vassals from time to time, but without degenerating into open revolt. Even when Frederick II tried to take Beirut away from John I of Ibelin and confiscate his fiefs, the old lord of Beirut knew enough to avoid battle, preferring to rely upon the High Court. Thus the use of force by Hugues allowed John of Ibelin to collect the help of most of the barons of Acre. The civil war which broke out in 1232 and which led to a take-over of Acre by John's partisans had a firm juridical base, and took a form much different from that of the feudal rebellions of the twelfth century. Now the sovereign appears as refusing to observe the Assise de la ligèce under which the barons took shelter. Thenceforth the royal authority became incapable of asserting itself.

The other crusader states also experienced difficulties between the princes and their vassals. In Edessa, Baldwin of Le Bourg had to strug-
gle against the independent aspirations of Joscelin I of Courtenay, lord of Tell Bashir, whom he stripped of his land. In Antioch, the barons appealed to the king of Jerusalem to stop princess Alice from reaching agreement with the Moslems or the Byzantines (1130–1136); they took part in the conflict between two claimants to the princely throne, Bohemond IV and his nephew Raymond Roupen, from 1201 on, and most of the great vassals, having sided with the latter, had to flee to Cilicia. In 1181 Bohemond III had been in conflict with the patriarch, Aimery of Limoges, and those of the barons who had supported the patriarch also had to go into exile in Cilicia.

The county of Tripoli was especially troubled by feudal revolts in the thirteenth century. A war broke out in 1203–1206 between Bohemond IV and Renart, lord of Néphi, who was supported by king Aimery, over the marriage of an heiress of a sieur. Renart had married Isabel, the daughter of Asanfort, lord of Cibelece (Akkar), without the count’s permission. The court of the barons of Tripoli decided in the count’s favor, but Renart refused to accept this judgment. In 1258 Bohemond VI was embroiled with his vassal, Bertrand d’Huitrac of Jubbail, in the course of the war of Saint Sabas, in which Bertrand had taken the side of the Genoese against the counts; the favor that the latter showed to the relatives of his wife Lucienne de Segni stirred up a revolt, led by Bertrand, of most of the lords of the county, notably Guy II of Jubbail, John of Borton, and Melier of Marjelkon; Bohemond overcame it only with difficulty. In 1276–1283 there was another conflict, provoked again by the marriage of an heiress (the daughter of Hugh F’Alezan, who married John d’Huitrac, the brother of the lord of Jubbail); Guy, supported by the Templars and the Genoese, held Bohemond VII in check, but was

103 Cahen, Syrie du nord, pp. 300–307 429, 114, 395, 434. In 1208, again with the consent of the princess, Peter of Aiguesmolins, the knights devoted to the prince tried to lure the counts of Antioch against him (Guerres des Chiroy, cap. 63, in RNC, Arm. II, 664). 104 In the twelfth century, we do not know if the count’s vassals took part in the intrigues which led to the deposition of Raymond II in 1232, or in the conflict between Raymond and his vassal Bertrand, son of Alphonse Jerphan, in 1241. 105 Cahen, Syrie du nord, pp. 465–467: Bauduin, Comptes de l’Empire du Saint-Esprit, p. 497; see also, W. M. Leahy de (ed.) Callenbach, “Les Raynouard regents de Néphi et de Marjelkon, en leur penchant en LangUEDOC,” Cahiers de civilisation médiévale, XVII (1964), 289–311. We do not know in what circumstances Cibelece passed to Asanfort from the Byzantine state, a descendant of whom returned to the port (Richard, Comte de Tripoli, p. 70). 106 Guerres des Chiroy, cap. 93, 328–329 (RNC, Arm. II, 742, 743, 744). The knights in rebellion refused to submit to the order of the count’s court, and a commission of thirteen had to be set up to settle their dispute with Bohemond VI (Richard, “Le Comte de Tripoli dans les chretes de l’Est,” pp. 351–356). Several of them left the county and entered the service of the lord of Jerusalem.
Ch V  THE FEUDAL REGIME  217

finally captured and died of starvation.107 In 1287, another member of the Embrunais family, Bartholomew, led an insurrection against bishop Bartholomew of Tortosa, the representative of countess Sibyl, which ended in the establishment of the countship of Tripoli.108

The seriousness of these feudal insurrections which disturbed the county of Tripoli, together with the fact that the king of Jerusalem had been stripped of his authority following the revolt of 1232, marks the period of decline of the Frankish states. The weakened royal authority was held in check by a coalition of the vassals of the kingdom, while in Tripoli the count had to take up arms to subdue his own vassals. This state of affairs marked a distinct break with conditions in the crusader states of the twelfth century.

107 Rôbergh, Études historiques, pp 972, 974, 982, 988. Baldwin IV of Flanders gave his consent to the marriage then revoked it at the instigation of the bishop of Tortosa, Bartholomew of Anjou, whose the prince-nommer Muel had made governor of Tripoli, and who wished to marry the heiress to his own nephew, whom the lord of Tripoli took as hostage of (Gazal de Chipre, cap 302-304, in R.P.C. Arm., II, 748, 750).

108 Bartholomew of Anjou had his own plans which he presented along with those of the countship to marry his daughter to the young lord of Jaffa, Guy II, and his son to Guy's sister (ibid, cap 470, 471, 481). C. Sicard, "Le Comte de Tripoli dans les chroniques des Pèlerins," pp 324-328.
C. Monarchical Institutions

In fact, monarchical institutions had revealed considerable strength in the twelfth century, and it took a long development before a feudality which was originally badly organized and lacking cohesion could impose limitations. The primary feature of royal power in Jerusalem was the importance of the royal domain, especially in Judea and Samaria. In Galilee, Godfrey had agreed to a large grant to Tancred, who was charged with conquering the area; but when the principality of Tibellas reverted to Baldwin I, he reduced its importance before ceding it anew. He also avoided fulfilling the promises of his brother, who would have given Jerusalem and Jaffa to the Holy Sepulcher. He reserved for himself Nablus, Acre, and Beirut, Baldwin II added Tyre. Of course, in each city seigniory had been granted to knights; where Italian sailors had helped in the conquest, some quarters had been conceded to them; and the churches also got their share. But when remained to the king was very appreciable, as we can see from the goods and rights that he received from Tyre and the seigniory which surrounded it, listed in an inventory drawn up in 1243 by Marzio Zorzi, the bailli of the Venetians, who possessed a third of the seigniery, leaving two thirds to the king.

To these great seigniories others were added when the king joined to his own domain that of one of his vassals. Thus the county of Jaffa, which had belonged to the king until its seigniory about 1120 to Hugh I of Le Puisset, reverted to the crown in 1132 at the time of the exile of Hugh II of Le Puisset. In 1131 it formed the appanage of the future king Amalric, who joined it to the royal domain in 1163. In 1177 it was assigned to the future queen Sobyl. Later it would go to Aimery of Lusignan. In 1161 Philip of M Antioch ceded to the king the seigniory of Acre in exchange for the seigniory of Trani, which had just reverted to the king. Amalric managed to obtain the land of Bei-

109 C. M. Meuhoff, Anamur: A Study of His Career and Work in Their Relation to the First Crusade [Chicago, 1940]
110. Vacher. Revue d'histoire, no. 1134; Pons, "L'étude de quelques problèmes agraires et économiques d'une seigneurie croisade en Syrie-Orient," Bulletin de l'Institut asiatique, clxii (1952), 5-61, clxi (1953), 113-170 (concerning the rural part of the seigniory). The extent of the seigniory of Tyre also resulted from agreements with the Egyptians at the time of the thirteenth century, as Richard "Les Fictions de seigneur," pp. 72-82.

218
rut in exchange for the small seigniory of Blanchegarde. Humphrey IV of Taron surrendered the great seigniory of Taron and Chastel-Neuf to Baldwin IV. Maron and Chastel-Neuf were almost immediately assigned to the king's uncle, count Joscelin III of Edessa, but it is worth noting that this important concession was made only out of recent acquisitions, without affecting the main part of the royal domain. Even after 1192 the importance of the royal domain, compared to those of the principal vassals of the crown, was notable.

This domain included villages, the casals, and gantines. The king collected from them the same revenues as did other lords: a terce (Arabic, khara'j) proportional to the harvest; gifts in kind three times a year, the exence; a capitance tax on serfs attached to the casals; forced labor service for the cultivation of the seignorial reserve, and the burlataries of mill, oven, wine-press, and bath. But these incomes were reduced in those places where the king established Frankish or Syrian settlers to repopulate devastated territories.

The towns also certainly availed themselves of charters of franchise, although we know only of those enjoyed by the inhabitants of Jerusalem whom Baldwin II had systematically attracted to the holy city. They were not identical for the Latin, the Syrian living in the city, and the peasants of neighboring villages who frequented the market. Furthermore, the scales of the Latin merchants were carefully distinguished from those of Syrian merchants.

In Acre the separation was completed by prohibiting native Christians from living in the quarters between the market (fandak) and the port; because of the complete exemption which the Italians enjoyed it was important to prevent the natives from being able to trade directly with the Italians, thus depriving the king of the taxes which he levied on the market.


113. In the Kingdom of Jerusalem the property in serfs was regulated by a custom only recently inscribed in the charter of a man's land had no date back to the year of the arrival of the crusaders before Amich (1937); cf. Mathey, "Saint-Samuel en dem Fraisendeberg et son manuscrit du manuscrit de l'Ordre de Koenz Baldwin IV." Quellen und Forschungen aus italienischen Archiven und Bibliotheken, XLIV (1964), 61-62.


The taxes in question (the "droitures de la fondue," the rates of which have been preserved for Acre) correspond to the western teloneum. There were also taxes on the use of weights and measures, on the location of the stalls (pescatorium), and tolls levied at gates (portagium) and on roads (pegeium). The caravans crossing the kingdom from Egypt to Syria were made subject in the twelfth century to taxes of this sort. In the ports there was also a tax on entry (contena), on anchorage (one silver mark per ship), and a third of the fare paid by pilgrims. One can see how, around 1240, a maritime city like Acre could bring in to the king, its lord, nearly 50,000 pounds. Furthermore, the king possessed houses which paid him an exchequer, as well as industrial establishments (flour and sugar-cane mills, sugar refineries, etc.). He likewise exploited the natural resources of the kingdom—fishing rights, salt mines, sources of bitumen, and the hunting of migratory birds. Finally, minting was a monopoly of the king, of the counts of Edessa and Tripoli, and of the prince of Antioch, although it seems that some barons began to coin demers in their own names from the end of the twelfth century on.

The domains and revenues of the prince of Antioch were likewise considerable. The count of Edessa, master of the city of Edessa and Tell Mashtir, was no less richly endowed. As for the count of Tripoli, his domain included the rich city of Tripoli, other towns (Ainah, Rafaqiyah), and castles with their appendages (Montfort, Krak des Chevaliers), as well as a part of Latakia. The importance of the domain that the sovereigns and reserved to themselves, even after the territorial losses at the end of the twelfth century, was a constant factor in the organization of the crusader states.

The dominical administration was usually arranged by farming out the royal revenues (ed pactum, spartium), which the arapabres collected,
an appropriate proportion of which they then paid to a central office in Antioch, as in Jerusalem, this office was called the secrète, after the Byzantine practice. The master of the secrète of Antioch, set up in the mesnil apparent, ensured the holding of a genuine land survey, the registration of annuities, grants of fiefs, and the like. The secrète of Jerusalem had local branches, notably in Tyre and Acre, and kept written reports of proceedings dealing with land boundaries (devises), the list of horses brought to the army by the vassals, and acts relative to fiefs and rents.

Thanks to this organization, the king of Jerusalem and the other princes of the Latin East were able to use the system of money-fiefs and cash salaries (soudais) on a broad scale. The fiefs en heuris or assises, assigned from some royal revenue or other, allowed the king to reward the services of some of his vassals, starting with the great officers, while using soudais to reward temporary services.

The domain could likewise be used to reward administrative agents by providing them with hereditary tenures, such as the scribes who received a scribanagium, and the interpreters or dragomanus, similarly enfeoffed. Scribes and interpreters were usually native Christians.

Other scribes were employed in market and ports, while an escribain de la cour kept the records of the viscount’s court. The secrète received the accounts of all those officials in those cases where the revenues were not farmed out. Included among the officials to whom the king of Jerusalem and the princes entrusted the keeping of their domains were the castellans. They had charge of keeping the fortresses, but with no responsibility other than a military one. In Jerusalem, the king alone could appoint a castellain, or replace him; not even

123 Canon, Syrie du nord, pp. 464, 466
124 La Monse Feudal Monarchy, p. 167 ff. The title "bouill de secrète" is proved only for the kingdom of Cyprus, despite what Duke has written in his Histoire des Institutions, p. 201, but also Charles Cohen, "Charter de l’abbaye de Jumieges" ROL., VII (1899), 199. I have expressed the opinion that the secrète of Tyre might have kept the list of provision for the king by his vassals before 1207 (Richard, "Les Lettres de la couronne," pp. 563-577).
125 Donation of 10 annates by Odo of Saint-Amand, in the manuscript palmaeae 48/1 (ROL., II-3 [1884], 143, cited also p. 146, where Humphrey IV of Torigni makes a donation from cousin-merde et fininum Acco). Cf. John of Pdou, amp. 144, "De et summa 2 sed et 3 annis tertis die et vel leman cumam et de castella annкуп et fess" (RHJC, Leis, I, 238).
126 The custom is so common as to occasion surprise at the minority, which followed, although income to the king, that he did not have enough money to pay his minstrels (Chronique d’Ernoul, ed. L. de Mas Latrie, pp. 27-29).
128 Ablégé du Livre des Années de la Caeve des Bourgeois, nn. 7 (RHJC, Leis, II, 261); La Monse Feudal Monarchy, p. 169. The forms and names used both Frankish sources and attestation annuellement.
the seneschal of the kingdom could do so. But the castellan had no administrative or judicial functions. In the kingdom of Jerusalem and the county of Tripoli, these belonged to a viscount distinct from the castellan.

In the principality of Antioch there was a viscount in the city itself, who appears to have been the prince’s lieutenants responsible for administration and justice within the city, while barons had this responsibility in the prince’s domains, and “dukes” in Latakia and Jabala. The viscounts appear always to have been knights, but with some exceptions they were not provided with hereditary fiefs. Finally, the rais is or reguit (village chiefs) exercised administrative functions of which we know little.

Abouj the judicial functions in these states, however, we know much more, thanks to the preservation of the collection of cases and of numerous verdicts preserved in ecclesiastical cartularies. The judicial organization of the crusader states was based on the existence of parallel institutions in the domains of the king, the prince, and the counts, on the one hand, and in the domains of the lords endowed with rights of justice, on the other. John of Ibelin includes in his Livre a list of lords who had “court at enna et justice,” and the “court de bourgeois et justice” in the towns of their seigneuries. The list, however, is incomplete and inaccurate; it seems to have been drawn up as a mnemonic record. It does show, however, that in each seigneur, just as in the royal domain, there was a court which brought the vassals into the presence of their lord to judge matters having to do with fiefs and liege men on the model of the high court of the kingdom. This seigneurial court was distinct from those which met under the direction of seigneurial officials to judge cases pertaining to other types of tenure or persons of lower social rank. Doubtless some cases involving serious offenses might be judged summarily by

126. Labbeau, P.-F. Librairie p. 136; Mauduit, Histoire des institutions, p. 277; Cahen, Syrie du nord, p. 464. Some courts were attached to parishes of lesser rank, sometimes even Syrian; see William of Tyre, XXII, 83 (RHC, Occ., 1, 1090-1092).
127. Labbeau (P.-F. Librairie, p. 136), thought that these fountains were combined. But at Jerusalem, in 1233, Baldwin of Pescosol was castellan, Gerard of Sargis, vicomte (Koehrig, Regesta, no. 1081). Peter of Pescosol, castellan of the Tower of David in 1242, received an income of 400 limes from the revenues of Jerusalem (ibid., no. 1097).
129. The viscountship of Nobles was hereditary. LeMarche, “The Viscounts of Nablus in the Twelfth Century,” Syrie, XIX (1930), 272-273, as also was that of Tripoli.
the king, lord, or segmental officials, but a judicial assembly was the usual form.

As for the natives, we know of the court of the saris, at least by name. It judged minor matters according to the custom of each community. It had competence when the offense committed carried neither a death sentence nor a sentence of mutilation, or when the case did not involve more than one silver mark. The court of the saris does not seem to have existed in the principality of Antioch, but there were persons who had the Byzantine title of judge (kryptos), over whom a prêtreur presided.

The more important cases as well as those involving Latinus came under the jurisdiction of the cour de borgême, called, when found in the royal domain, cour réau or cour de roy. It probably evolved from the high court in the first half of the twelfth century. It was usually made up of twelve Latin jurors who determined the sentence, which was then promulgated by the viscount, who carried it out with the assistance of a marzehet (Arabic, muqaddib) and other sergeants. The kingdom alone had some forty courts of this kind in the period of their greatest extent. There were also similar assemblies where there were no viscounts, e.g., at Saharonis (al-Bishah), where the prior of the Holy Sepulcher held a "full court" bringing together all the Frankish burgesses of the place, and where an inhabitant appeared to announce his tenure and take it up again under new conditions, as he would have done in the time of the grands jours of a western seigneur.

In the county of Tripoli there were courts of the viscount in the city of Tripoli, at Aqiq, probably at Rasafin, and also in the part of Latakia belonging to the county. In Antioch the prince's court had its own peculiarities, including the participation of natives of the Greek rite alongside Latin judges in the running of the court.

The competence of the "court of the burgesses" was very extensive; except where the cases were to be heard in the high court, it included crimes involving death, cases of treason, and matters relative to land ownership (even when having to do with a burgeste held by a knight). We know about its jurisdiction thanks to the Livre des Armes de

137 Lacharme, Feudal Monarchies, pp. 106-107; RHC, Lois, III, 236-244.
138 John of Hainil, cap. 240 (RHC, Lois, I, 449-452). Next are seventeen, each with others at Qadita, Qammarwa, Majdael (Makran), and Lajjat (Rahmal, Raymond 1169, p. 119).
la Cour des Bourgeois, written in the thirteenth century. As Joshua Prawer has shown, however, this work has more the form of a learned treatise on law than of a collection of judicial decisions.\textsuperscript{140}

There were also some exceptional jurisdictions. The Italian colonies possessed their own courts. From 1105 on, the Genoese had a viscount at Acre, and their consul at Tyre was called the Genoese viscount of Tyre in 1187. The Venetians in 1123 obtained the right for cases concerning Venetians alone to be dealt with by a separate Venetian court. The Franks were exempted from the jurisdiction of the royal viscount in 1156 and then again in 1163. Similar privileges were granted by the princes of Antioch and the counts of Tripoli.\textsuperscript{141} These courts did not in principle have the right to judge major cases or crimes of violence, nor matters having to do with land ownership, but in the thirteenth century they went beyond these limitations and the streets of the merchants would lay claim to a veritable right of asylum.\textsuperscript{142}

There were also commercial courts. The bailli or the commissaire presided over a court composed of jurors chosen from among merchants and mariners to settle minor cases relative to the armament of ships, shipwreck, problems between sailors and captains, and so on, it also prepared more important cases to be heard in the viscount’s court. It applied the assises issued by King Amalric, which suggests that he was the one who created this court.\textsuperscript{143}

The market court of the fundo was also in origine a commercial court, but it was transformed into a court with mixed jurisdiction to deal with cases involving Franks and Syrians, eliminating the court of the rats wherever it was introduced. The bailli of the fundo presided; of the six jurors, four were Syrians, two Latins. It heard civil cases of minor importance as well as acting as a court of registration for commercial transactions.\textsuperscript{144}

In each of the four states the central government was in the hands of the sovereign assisted by major officers, who are also to be found in the service of less important lords.\textsuperscript{145} The most complete list of


\textsuperscript{142} Cf. the difficulties, about 1260, caused by the merit of the Pisan quarter of John Rena (or Oruna), the murderer of bishop Hugh of Fessanudrin, \textit{Histoire des commandeurs de l’ordre de St. Jean de Jérusalem} (3 vol., Paris, 1934-1936), iii, 357

\textsuperscript{143} Labrousse, \textit{Feudalité Merovingienne}, p. 106

\textsuperscript{144} \textit{Ibid.}, p. 108

\textsuperscript{145} John of Ibelin defined the domanet by the fact that the herms employed both a constable and a marshal.
these officers it that for the kingdom of Jerusalem; it differs at several points from those of the other states. Though these great officers were usually chosen by the sovereign at his accession (theoretically ending the powers of the officers of his predecessor, although, in fact, they were frequently renewed), or on the vacancy of an office. Some men consequently made a virtual career in the service of the royal household, occupying successively, as did Aimé of Lunégen, various great offices. Some offices, however, were hereditary in the principality of Antioch and the county of Tripoli. And in Jerusalem the marshal, though named by the king, swore homage to the constable whose lieutenant he was.

The seneschal emerged as the head of the royal household. He played a leading role in the ceremony of the royal coronation and on feast days. He could take the king's place in the high court, although custom did not allow him to hear cases concerning life, honor, or theft of a knight except when the case had been brought up before the king himself. He took the king's place in the army, commanding the king's "battle" when the king was absent, in which case he received part of the booty due to the king. It was he who represented the king when the latter was prevented from exercising his prerogatives. He also controlled the administration of the royal domain, as well as the castles which he maintained and garrisoned. He had charge of the royal treasure, and could preside over the secrets, which was answerable to him.

The chamberlain played only a secondary role, guarding the royal treasure, administering the royal residence, and receiving homage on behalf of the king. The position of butler seems to have been of little importance.

The constable rivaled the seneschal as an officer of the first rank. He presided over the high court in the king's absence. He dealt with the boundaries of the royal domain and the vassals. He commanded the army in the king's absence. He divided the troops into "battles" and personally commanded the vanguard. He reviewed the soldiers and could strike them if they were at fault (he could not strike a knight, but could kill his horse).

144. A. Montet, "Fianchetto Monachery," pp. 114-137. The Livre des actes defines their competence (ppgi. 9-12 in RHC, i. 312-314). At Antioch there were two marshals instead of one; the position of seneschal was hereditary (Calvin, Syrie des croisiers, pp. 362-383, 363-364). At Tripoli there seem to have been two summonses in the matter; lastly, the position of seneschal became hereditary (Richard, Comtes de Tripoli, pp. 49-50; Reinaud, Voyage royal, Histoire de l'univers, Additions, 1904, repr. New York, 1968, no. 1234). When the county and the principality were joined, the same sort of officers continued, but one of the two offices of marshal disappeared at Antioch.
The marshal assisted the constable, helping him to organize the men into "battles." He was particularly responsible for the restor (the replacement of horses killed in the king's service). He could confiscate the feef or the pay of a soldier insufficiently armed. And he commanded the rear guard of the army.

Both constable and marshal had legal jurisdictions. The constable was the judge of the army, even when there was no campaign, as far as the knights were concerned. However, a seigneur who presented a claim for pay went before the marshal if he was only a squire.

The army did not include only knights who held fiests. There were those who were not knights, among whom the turcopoles were a group apart. In imitation of the Byzantine tournoucopoli they were lightly armed cavalry, mostly converted Muslims, who had been given small fiests. They formed the vanguard of the army. There were also contingents of sergeants recruited from among the townsmen. Each town, each bourgeoisie, as well as presidies and abbeys, had to supply a fixed number of men (totaling altogether 3,025 sergeants and 577 knights). In addition, towns and bourgeois having a Frankish population had to provide soldiers for the defense of the walls. In addition, there were Christian Syrians as well as contingents furnished voluntarily by the confraternities which had taken upon themselves the duty of helping in the defense of the Holy Land.

Knights and sergeants who held fiests had to be ready on the order of the king to go where they were assigned and stay there under the king's orders for a whole year. But there were also recruited men who did not hold fiests or specialized tenures, especially pilgrims who came to the Holy Land every year, and who often had made a vow to stay there for some period of time in its defense. Some of the knights took them into their service, but the king had wide recourse to this kind of recruitment, offering pay (soude) to knights and sergeants (seigneurs). The marshal was in charge of them, getting four bezants for each seigneur. He maintained strict discipline among them. A seigneur leaving the service before the end of an engagement was punished by confiscation of his horse and armor, if he was

147 L,noue et 210, cap. 84: "Le soudeoyer est homme d'voyt et d'assistance et châine de Qn qui cherche faire la pensée ... et par devant le commançoir demeurer entre fiestes et séisses les seigneurs de chevaunisse" (KHC, Lism., I, 449).

148 Richard, Reçus de Avr., pp. 123-130. The title of seigneur given their leader was known only in the kingdom of Cyprus.

149 John of Nola, cap. 277 (KHC, Lism., I, 343-344).

150 Thus John of Nola had to furnish the king one pilgrim knight for his fiest (ibidem, cap. 273 [ibid., I, 425]).
a knight or sergeant, if he was in the infantry, his hands were pierced
with a red hot iron. 131

We know little about the war fleets in the Latin east. The crusader
states often had recourse to the Italians. However, in 1161 count Ray-
mond III of Tripoli equipped galleys to devastate Cyprus, as Regi-
nald of Antioch had done in 1156. Baldwin III raised a fleet of fifteen
galleys, which he in 1153 placed under the command of Gerard of Sidon,
who was called mentor als galleis. And we know also that the
count of Tripoli gave to a sultan on condition that he keep an armed
galley in readiness.132

The last great office was the chancellery. In each state a chancellor,
usually an ecclesiastic, was the head of the palace clerks. He drew
up the privileges issued by the king, prince, or count. These acts, drawn
up on the model of the chartes, tell us something of the chancellor’s
assistants, recruited among the chaplains. The chancellery had no
great development; there were other offices responsible for adminis-
trative or judicial correspondence in Latin (or French, from the thir-
teenth century on) as well as in native languages, which were not under
the direction of the chancellor.

In the kingdom of Jerusalem we occasionally find representative
assemblies, distinct from the high court, which come together for the
purpose of deliberating over the affairs of the kingdom. In 1120 a
council met at Nablus, including prelates and barons, to work out
solutions for the difficult situation in which the kingdom found itself,
and to establish peace; this meeting recalls the peace assemblies
then held in the west. 133 In 1152 possibly only the knights met in
Nablus to deliberate when a clan of Turcomans sought to take Jerusalem
by surprise. 134 But in 1166 it was in the presence of a curia generalis
in Nablus, at which there were present the patriarch, Amalric of Nesle,
the prelates, and the barons and people, that King Amalric discussed
the needs of the kingdom. 135 In 1177 an assembly of barons and prelates
studied the means necessary to repair the walls of Jerusalem, etc.

131 Sulpici, epp. 134-137 (ibid., 2, 299-337).
132 Richard, Cartulaire de Tripoli, p. 53: Rôhmann, Tuscania, no. 734.
133 William of Tyre, XL 12 (RHC, Occ., I, 534-533): Masui, Catalogue, XXI, vol 262
On the conditions under which it was held cf. Richard, "Quelques examens sur les premiers temps
de l’Empire latin de Jerusalem," Revue de l’histoire des religions, 1 (Paris 1935),
426-430.
134 Grousset, "Sur un Passage oublié de Guillaume de Tyre," Mélanges cyrillus offerts á
M. René Dumont (Bibliothèque archéologique et historique, XXIII, Paris 1929), 31.
97-98.
135 William of Tyre, XIX, 13 (RHC, Occ., 1, 932-940). In 1171 another assembly met to
provide against the danger posed by the unification of Syria and Egypt, but its composition
appears to have been more limited ("Conseil sar succinctus regionis syriaca," according to William
of Tyre, XX, 22, ibid., 1, 948-953).
and it would be surprising if the residents of the town were not also consulted.\(^{116}\) Finally, in 1183 a full assembly discussed the means for resisting Saladin.\(^{117}\) The assemblies of 1166 and 1183, in particular, recall those which in France gave birth to the assemblies of estates, and in England to parliament.

In fact, they too had financial consequences. Thus of 1166 decided to levy a tax of a tenth on the movable goods of all subjects of the kingdom.\(^{118}\) In 1183 the assembly reached a decision, the text of which William of Tyre has preserved, to establish a tax of one bezant on all property worth 100 bezants, of two per cent on all incomes other than the soudies (taxed at one per cent only), and a tenth tax of one bezant on all household of serfs or of freemen having less than 100 bezants income. The responsibility for collection of these taxes was given to four leading citizens of each diocese; each of three other men held a key to one of the two coffers (of Jerusalem and of Acre) where the money was to be kept, so that the king could not use it for purposes other than the defense of the kingdom.

These assemblies are comparable to those which met to draw up charters, but while the high court rendered judgments which set a precedent, these ad hoc meetings effectively made decisions of a legislative nature.\(^{119}\) John of Ibelin says that the first elements of the law of Jerusalem were brought together by Godfrey of Bouillon during a meeting with the patriarch, princes, and barons present on the crusade, and that later, with each "passage" (that is, at the time of the arrival of pilgrims from the west), the king assembled at Acre the patriarch, barons, knights, and the most qualified clerics or laymen, together with persons of rank from the west who were versed in legal matters, in order to draw up the assises. These texts were later transcribed on parchment, sealed by the king, the patriarch, and the viscount of Jerusalem, and locked up in a coffer in the Holy Sepulcher.\(^{120}\)

This account has certainly been embellished, but it preserves evidence of the participation of certain pilgrims from the west in juridi-

---

\(^{116}\) Salern, XXI, 23 tabula, 1, 10847-10849.


\(^{118}\) The Latin text says "omines unipolos"; the French translator says that those who participated in the Egyptian campaign would be exempt from the tax, of LAMORALL, Proehis Monegny, pp. 179-182.

\(^{119}\) Labrousse, "Three Questions Concerning the Armenians of Jerusalem," Byzantinum, 1 (1946), 360-366; Maurice Grundmann, "Lettres d'arméens exclaimed au premier rayasme de Jerusalem," in Atti del II Congresso Italiano di Studi Orientali, Firenze, 1929, pp. 329-546

\(^{120}\) John of Ibelin, prologue (RHC, Lett, 1, 3-4).
cal decisions. The assemblies which drew up the assizes had an improvisational character, such as the one which prepared the assise of Albais limiting the participation of knights in assises. Some included only knights, such as the one king Amalric held in Tyre to deal with the participation of vassals in the payment of a ransom for their lord, or the one which dealt with street-sweeping and was later considered void because it had been promulgated by the king without the assent of the people. There was a good deal of uncertainty, therefore, about these seemingly legislative assemblies. Some assizes might be drawn up in meetings of the high court, more or less enlarged, others emanated directly from the king. Aimery of Laurignac considered having an edition of a collection of assizes made by a commission of the best jurists of the kingdom. The high court, as LaMonte has shown, was in origin only an unspecialized curia regis, the composition of which the king might extend or limit according to need, and was competent to make legislative decisions.

From the end of the twelfth century, the weakness of the authority of the king and the other princes led to the appearance of a very unusual communal movement, marked by the birth of the communities of Antioch (1193), Acre (1231), and Tripoli (1288). This was not a bourgeois movement seeking improvement in the status of townsman or a new administrative or judicial autonomy but, as Frawer has shown, a means of overcoming the impossibility of making the normal institutions work in a period of crisis. In Antioch the commune was proclaimed in 1193 or 1194, following the treaty of Bagdad, which ceded Antioch to the Roupenid prince Leon II, in order to prevent the Armenians from occupying the city. Prince Bohemond

161 That Stephan de Hancor, played a decisive role, in 1171, in removing the problem of the partisan of a turf among three princes who communal Henry in Hainaut, the brevet of Philip of Flanders.

162 Cnut nos Chromes, esp. 301 fo. (RHC, Ami, III, 731); John de Rushin, esp. 149 (RHC, Lets ch. 391) See above, notes 124 and 131.

163 Philip of Hainaut, esp. 47 (RHC, Lets ch. 322-329).

II and his eldest son Raymond were captives. The new patriarch, Ralph II, took over the leadership of the popular rising which had broken out, and the knights joined in. They all bound themselves together in a communal oath. Greeks and Latins stood shoulder to shoulder. The commune was directed by a mayor and consuls. It had its bell tower to summon everyone. It could impose taxes on all the inhabitants. After driving off the Armenians it continued in existence. Bohemond IV sought its support in 1194 in his claim to succeed to the principality, turning to account his anti-Armenian stance, which was much stronger than that of the court of the barons, which supported Raymond Raupen. In 1206 the patriarch changed sides, and with the help of the knights tried to evict Bohemond's partisans from the commune. His failure allowed Bohemond in turn to use the commune as an instrument of his power. With his aid he evicted the barons, knights, and burgesses who were opposed to him. The Greek element was predominant, which upset Innocent III. But after the end of the war of succession in Antioch the commune vanished, and the normal institutions reappeared.

The communes of Acre and Tripoli were established by using the framework of an earlier institution, that of the confraternities or brotherhoods (fratres). The brotherhood was a pious association accepting the patronage of a saint or indulging in some particular devotion to the cult which it sought to promote. The members bound themselves together by obligations of mutual assistance. The statutes of the Italian brotherhood of the Holy Spirit in Acre (1216) looked after the distribution of alms to the sick, the organization of an almshouse, the ransom of captives, and the relief of the poor. The brotherhood arbitrated disputes among its members, and took the place of absent relatives in the pursuit of justice when one of its members was murdered. It also had a military organization, arming and leading its members grouped under its banner to the defense of the kingdom. Most of these brotherhoods had a national or ethnic character; the Italians, other than those in the maritime towns, belonged to the Holy Spirit, the Spaniards to St. James, the Melkites to St. George and Bethlehem. Even the merchants from Mosul had their brotherhood. But in the thirteenth century another one, that of St. Andrew, accepted members without distinction as to origin. 164


164 It seems quite likely that the end of the eleventh century confraternities Acronomica (in Schilda-
When the barons of John of Ibelin’s party sought some means of organizing resistance against Frederick II’s representative Richard Filangiuni in 1234, they decided to use the brotherhood of St. Andrew, barons, knights, and townsfolk joined it with the discreet encouragement of the patriarch. The brethren were therefore able to respond to John of Ibelin’s appeal by sending him a contingent of forty-three knights. Then John effected the transformation of the brotherhood into a commune. Each brother took the communal oath; they elected a mayor (John himself), as well as consuls and captains, they had a bell tower to summon the members of the commune. These were normally residents of Acre, but they included the chief barons of the kingdom. Frederick II and Gregory IX sought in vain to procure the dissolution of this commune.\textsuperscript{167} It represented, in fact, a compromise between a commune which took over the administration of a town, and a lordship governing a state on the Italian model. It allowed barons, knights, and townsfolk to govern themselves in the absence of a regent of the kingdom, capable of summoning the high court and receiving the homage and oaths of fealty. The recognition of queen Alice and her husband Ralph of Nole (or “of Soissons”) as “lords of the kingdom” would render it unnecessary, and seems to have led to its disappearance.\textsuperscript{168}

The institutions of the kingdom were just as deeply affected. Acre, with its turbulent townsmen, foreign colonies, fortified houses of religious orders, and households of great barons, was the first city of the kingdom. The representative of the “lord of the kingdom” had difficulty in establishing his authority.\textsuperscript{169} From the 1264 address to the councils of the brotherhoods among other high persons of authority in the kingdom.\textsuperscript{169} The brotherhoods put themselves under the military orders, influenced by their common telamone devotion. That of St. James of the Spaniards was bound by oath to the Hospitallers, and fought by the side of the Genoese against other brotherhoods during the war of Saïnt Babas. In 1264

\textsuperscript{167} Prunner, “Les Templiers, Commanzon, and the Constitutions of the Latin Kingdom”; see also AOC, I (1888), 401-425, MGH, Eptitulorum sacrorum III, II, 354, 571. Prunner has shown that this commune served James of Montfort as a model for the Provisions of Oxford.

\textsuperscript{168} Demonstrated by Prummer in his excellent dissertation. However, no 1257 there was still use of the “syndics and precept of the monastery of Jerusalem,” Stephen of Soissons (Research, Rome, no 1259), whose influence amounted to the “syndics” of the commune cited in a letter of Gregory IX in 1233 (Rodsburg, op. cit., p. 55-4).

the brotherhoods participated in the choosmg of the baile of the kingdom. These groups became powers comparable to the religious orders and to the "communes" of the privileged foreigners, within an urban framework which was thenceforth the characteristic feature of the life of the kingdom.170

The commune of Tripoli emerged as a provisional expedient also, bringing together barons and townsmen who refused to recognize the authority of princess Sibyl's representative. Here also they adopted a religious patron, Our Lady. They elected various officers and a capitan (chevetaine). But the commune disappeared very quickly when the Maminka besieged Tripoli.

The appearance of these institutions born of insurrection accompanied the weakening of the king and the prince of Antioch. The inhabitants of the towns, and above all the barons, succeeded in organizing a government which did without the participation of the sovereign, whose authority was thus limited more and more by the need to gain the consent of vassals and townsmen who were theoretically his subjects.

170 For the evidence see Prum, "Barons, Communards and the Constitution of the Latin Kingdom," and Richard, "La Commende des "boucliers" d'Acre."
D. The Establishment of the Latin Church

Alongside the political organization of states, the Latin church was established in territories conquered by the crusades. Before this, Christians of the Latin rite had only places devoted to the service of pilgrims in the Holy Land, the Benedictine monastery of St. Mary Latinas at Lataki, and the Hospital of St. John founded by the Amalians in Jerusalem. Latin Christians recognized as their own the church which professed dogmas defined by the Council of Chalcedon and which had at its head the Greek patriarchs of Jerusalem and Antioch. In Palestine, however, the Greek church was weak, other than the patriarch there were only three or four bishops. In Syria it was stronger, thanks to a century of reoccupation by the Byzantines. The hierarchy had suffered during the Turkish invasion, but it had survived. The more recent Greek schism had been accepted without much enthusiasm by the eastern patriarchs, had so the illusion of the church’s unity could still be maintained.

It is not surprising that the Latins accepted the Greek patriarch of Antioch, John V the Oute, whom they found on their arrival. They returned his cathedral to him, had showered in with gifts. At Alarita, however, where they found no bishop when they took the town, they selected their own, Peter of Narbonne, had placed him on the episcopal see which had been reestablished there. In fact it was logical that the Latins, now the dominant social group, would choose from their own ranks the clerics who had bishops for the churches they restored, while still recognizing the legitimacy of Greek priests who in principle belonged to the same church as they did.

171 The fundamental study remains that of William Hanseat, "Kirchliche Organisation und religiöses Leben im Palatinat während der Kreuzzüge," Das Heilige Land (Rahden, 1940), 1-106. This was written in more complete form including a monograph on much of the patriarchate of Jerusalem under the rule of the patriarchs of Palestine in the eleventh century 1099-1291 (Cologne, 1948). See also Mayer, Annunziata, Kloster und Stift in Königsreich Jerusalem (Köln, Bruchsal, 1967). The reconstitution of the Latin church in the crusader states, and its relation to early crusadist geography, have been studied by Giuseppe Foscolo, La Chiesa latina in Oriente, I (Venice, 1973), 49-124; and Bernard Hamilton, The Latin Church in the Crusader States: The Sepulchral Church (London, 1900), with important bibliography.

But it was a delicate situation. The Greek patriarch followed a pro-
Byzantine policy, and did not expressly recognize the primacy of the
pope. The differences which arose between Bohemond and Alexius
Commnenus made John V's position untenable. From 1099 on, Latin
archbishops were enthroned at Tarsus, Mamistra, and Edessa; none
of them seem to have been consecrated by John V in 1100. John left
for Constantinople, where he abdicated. 173 The bishop of Artab (Arta),
Bernard of Valence, was chosen by the Latin clergy to suc-
cede him. He took over the cathedral and the possessions of the patri-
archate, surrounding himself with Latin canons. The basileus did not
accept this replacement. From 1108 on, by the treaty of Devol, Alex-
ius I claimed the right to appoint to the see of Antioch a Greek patri-
arch to be chosen from among the clergy of the great church of Con-
stantinople. John Commnenus made the same claim in 1137, and titular
patriarchs of the see of Antioch succeeded one another in Constanti-
nople. In 1158 Manuel Commnenus forced Prince Reginald to accept
a Greek, Soterius, but he was never installed. Athanasius II was in-
stalled in 1165, but died in the earthquake of 1170 and was not suc-
cceeded by another Greek. In 1206 or 1207 Bohemond IV installed a
Greek, Symeon II, after driving out the Latin patriarch. Under pres-
sure from the Mongols, Bohemond VI did the same in 1260. But these
were exceptional cases, arising from external pressure or internal
crisis. 174

The same sort of thing happened in 1198 when the Byzantines drove
the Latinos out of Cilicia. The Latin archbishops of Tarsus and Mamis-
tra had to withdraw from their sees, which they reoccupied only when
the princes of Antioch and then the Armenian barons of the Amaun
retook the Cilician plain. 175

In Jerusalem the Latinos found the see vacant. Mistrusted tradition
had it that the patriarch, Symeon II, driven from the city by the Egyp-

173 His deposition was definitely in 1108 (Perrouse, Manuel 6, p. 492). His abdication
in Saint-Cyril 1100 (Maurice Crouzel, "Les Patrimoines grêcs d'Acháïe dans le Moyen Âge :
Échos d'Oronte, XXXII [1943], 285-296. The three archbishops were, respectively, Rigor, Bar-
tholomew I, and Benedict.

174 Crouzel, "Les Patrimoines grêcs d'Acháïe dans le Moyen Âge :
Échos d'Oronte, XXXII [1943], 59-55. On the problem: named the abdication of the patriarch
David in the See of Chios under papal pressure by Innocent IV in 1245, because of the
simultaneous election of two bishops by both the emperor and Rome: see Mâle and Naum
d'histoire des peuples de Grèce et d'Orient, new ser., VIII [1971], 33-44. Hammam, Latin Church, pp.
217-222 Symeon II had been elected as Antioch's bishop of being disannointed, as was customary,
by the emperor and the patriarch of Constantinople (see Manuel 6, 1206-1261).

175 It was at this time the bishops were appointed that Louis II in 1192 replaced a deceased
Latin archbishop-elect of Tarsus with a Greek (Calvez, Spiria du sud, p. 649).
tians, had taken refuge in Cyprus where he died. In fact, he had gone to Constantinople. The Latins chose a new patriarch from their own ranks. So another succession of Greek titular patriarchs was established in Constantinople, although after the middle of the twelfth century they returned to Jerusalem and resided in a Greek monastery.

Latinus, therefore, replaced Greeks in the cathedral, and took possession of the goods of patriarchates, bishoprics, and some monasteries, above all those of the Holy Sepulcher. But in Jerusalem itself an act of 1173 shows the presence of a group of Greek clerics attached to the Holy Sepulcher, with their protopopes, and a certain Melikon had the title of archbishop of the Greeks and Symeon (Melkites) of Gaza and Eleutheropoli (Beth Gibella). This is an example, undoubtedly, of a Greek prelate installed within the framework of a diocese of the Latin church to govern the clergy and faithful of the Greek rite living in the diocese, one whose election had to be submitted to and approved by the Latin bishop. In order to satisfy the prescriptions of canon law, this arrangement required that the Greek prelate take the name of an episcopal city other than one of which a Latin bishop was the titular; that arrangement seems to have become common.

The difficulties which arose between Latins and Greeks, who thought of themselves as belonging to the same church, and so in principle coming under the same bishop, did not arise between Latins and other kinds of Christians, whom the Latin church looked upon not only as schismatics, but even as heretics. Armenians, Nestorians, and Monophysites regarded their churches and, after some difficulty, their property; they intended to keep their traditional hierarchy without being forced to recognize the supremacy of the local Latin clergy, even when they declared their obedience to the church of Rome.

176. Henneberg, "Kirchliche Organisationen," pp. 69, 96. It was only after Gregory's death (1192) that the Muslims allowed the Greek patriarch to return to the Holy Land and Damascus (1187-1189) and Mark Constantinopoliten (1189-1195) never left Constantinople, but Euthymius (1195-1222) died at Simai (Shemais). Latin Church, pp. 160, 306-307.

177. J. Delaville Le Roulx, "Chartes relatives aux Hospitales," A. O. L. (1881), 107. When, in 1230, the episcopal hierarchy of Cyprus was set up on the same lines, with a Greek bishop in each diocese, but with the title of another city, it was done by creating the archbishop of the kingdom of Jerusalem, see J. Delaville Le Roulx, ed., Acta Humana XI (1226-1227) et Gregorii IX (1227-1234) (6th Fournier, vol. 3, vol. III, Vienna City, 1954, pp. 369.

178. For example, the Armenian, Likewise, at 1287, the absolute patriarch of Jerusalem, took an act of obedience to the pope, asking that the prelates and churchmen under him not come under the jurisdiction of Latin clergy (Hennecart, "Kirchliche Organisationen," pp. 72-73). On the problem of concurrence for the Latins, respecting their mandate toward the "barbarians" and "schismatics" whom they found on their way to Antioch, of the inner sent from Antioch by the crusade leaders in 1198, see: Thienei in pugissete tropaeogenaris. Germania nova, 32, pregnant not divisions. They wrote to Urban II, declaring themselves ready on the pope's orders to help him to "eradicating and destroy all heresies" (Facultas of Charcot, in RHC, Dec., 13, 352).
Some of the Orthodox, however, made no difficulty about being placed under the jurisdiction of the Latin patriarchs, but in principle the Latin patriarch's jurisdiction extended only to Latins or to native Christians of the Latin rite. It was because of this that wherever the Moslem reconquest annihilated the Latin population, the Latin church disappeared.

The selection of two patriarchs was a novelty in the Latin church. It illustrates the desire of newcomers to accommodate themselves to the traditional organization of the eastern church. But the act in itself was exceptional; to choose a bishop was usually the affair of the cathedral chapter, and there were as yet no chapters. In Jerusalem the clergy in the ranks of the crusading army designated as patriarch Arnulf "Malecomen" of Chorques, chaplain of duke Robert II of Normandy; Arnulf had been invested with the powers of a legate by Urban II and had to some extent taken the place of Adrian of Montferrat after the latter's death. Did Arnulf actually receive the title of patriarch? Both Raymond of Aguilers and Guibert of Nogent say that he did. Fulcher of Chartres says that he was designated only provisionally subject to papal confirmation, but it is possible that this interpretation was made after the event. Late in 1099 a new papal legate, Daimbert of Pisa, declared the election irregular on the grounds of simony, and he later took Arnulf's place on the patriarchal throne after having been designated in an assembly held in Jerusalem, under pressure from Bohemond and Baldwin of Edessa (December 21, 1100).

Daimbert clashed with king Baldwin I, was accused before a council presided over by the cardinal-legate Maurice of Porto in March 1101, and went into exile at the end of that year, but the prince of Antioch reestablished him in his see in 1102. A new council judged him and deposed him on grounds of simony, embezzlement, treason against the king, and the shedding of blood (the Pasans whom he had led had

179 A Georgian monastery, for example, was put under the authority of the patriarch Osmene (Richard: "Quoiqu' il ne soit," pp. 423-426).
180 The fact is reported by Chorius, who got it from Alexander, one-time chaplain of Stephen of Blois who had also been invested with the powers of a legate; Richard, "Quoiqu' il ne soit." On Arnulf, cf. Raymond of Poitiers, "Un chef de la première croisade: Arnulf Malecomenque," Bulletin historique du Comité des travaux historiques et scientifiques (1923-1954), pp. 377-390.
181 Cf. Emil Haenapf, Untersuchungen über das kirchliche Patrichard von Jerusalem (1099 bis 1118) (Bonn, 1889), pp. 8-14. Albert of Azevot, VII, 39 (RHC, 4th ed., 1890), says that he was given the titles of "consulatrum minister Ecumenum Oriente, procurator auctoritatum religiosarum et caeterarum benemeritarum Francorum," but he probably never took these titles only after he gave up the patriarchate (see these functions, of the see of Clarus cited above, note 100; see also Haenapf, Das Problem eines Kirchenarchivs in Jerusalem, pp. 23, 26, 29).
slain Greek Christians during their crusade). Evremar of Chocques replaced him, but Dambert appealed to Rome and was about to recover his see when he died in 1105. Arnulf now claimed that the finding in Rome amounted to Evremar's deposition. The pope had to intervene, but Evremar preferred to resign (December 1107) and was replaced by the papal legate Gabelin of Sabran (1108). On Gabelin's death Arnulf was elected patriarch by the canons of the Holy Sepulcher (1112), and, although condemned for simony by a council held at Jerusalem in 1115, he was able to clear himself at Rome and remained patriarch until his death in 1118.

From then on the patriarchs were regularly elected by the canons of the Holy Sepulcher. They proceeded by selecting two candidates whom they presented to the king. He chose one of them and invested him. The patriarchs, however, had to tolerate the activity of papal legates invested with extensive powers and enjoying broad prerogatives. However, in the thirteenth century, the pope ordinarily conferred legateine powers on the patriarch himself within the jurisdiction of his patriarchate.

After 1187 the patriarch did not live in Jerusalem, but in Acre. The reoccupation of the holy city in 1229 did not lead to his renewed residence there except on rare occasions. After 1244 his residence at Acre became the norm. This raised some difficulties for the local bishop. Alexander IV had to exempt the patriarch and his entourage from the jurisdiction of the bishop, and the patriarch James Pantaleon (1251–1261), after he became pope as Urban IV, decided to unite the see of Acre to the patriarchate.

182 Hampel, Untersuchungen über die intermonoche Patriarchen, pp. 49, 98-118. See also the corresponding notices in Reisert, Kirchenamts- und Patriziate Patrizien.
183 William of Tyre states that he tried to avoid, assuring him of imposing the rule of canon regular on the chapter of the Holy Sepulcher in order to monopolize the goods of the chapter (1114). But not only was this level of change very frequent in the next two centuries, in this particular occasion it was not necessary to establish some level of division of goods between the patriarch's see and that of the chapter. The division is specified in a bull of Calixtus III (1142), edited by Rambert (Carolina, no. II, pp. 171-173), of Hufnagel, "Das Geschlecht des heiligen Grabes," Band siebzig Land, I (1906), 107-120.
185 Cf. William of Tyre, XVIII, 29 (on the reception of the cardinal, John, sent by Alexander III in 1167) to obtain his recognition to legitimate pope), in RSC, Gent., I, 270-271.
186 This custom began with the patriarchs of Moravna (1223), and was continued by Gerald of Laon (1225-1229); cf. William of Tyre, "Patriarch Gerald von Jerusalem" (Antwerp, 1900).
187 Les Registres d'Alexandre IV, ed. Joseph de Largue and Pierre de Conty, II (Paris,
The patriarchate of Antioch posed a problem. It was the oldest see of St. Peter, and the crusaders wondered if the pope ought not to take it over himself. It was in this sense that they wrote to Urban II. After the Oxite's departure, however, the Latin prelates dependent on Antioch unanimously chose Bernardo of Valence (1100–1135), who had no difficulties either with the prince or with the canons of his cathedral chapter. It may have been Bernard, however, who began to take advantage of the fact that his see was older than that of Rome, in order to establish a certain independence of the papacy. His successor, Ralph of Domfront (1135–1139), elected somewhat irregularly, claimed that he could confer the pallium on himself without having to ask the pope for it, on the grounds of the claim of temporal priority. Threatened with deposition, however, he submitted. He went to Rome in order to get restored the sentence which had been imposed on him at the synod of Antioch in November 1139.

He was succeeded by a great churchman, Aimery of Limoges (1139–1193), who had to withdraw from Antioch temporarily in 1165 to give place to the Greek patriarch Athanasius II. He installed himself in the castle of Curtis (Qalas), which became the preferred residence of the patriarchs thenceforth. Aimery is known above all for his relations with the eastern churches. He obtained from the Jacobite patriarch, Michael the Syrian, the treaty Against the Manichaeans, to be used at the Third Lateran Council (1179); and it was at his instigation that the Maronite patriarch Jacob undertook an act of obedience to Rome. Peter of Angoulême, however, who was elected

1371 547–548 (no. 1773); Regesta d'Urban IV ed. Cluny, 11, 60 (no 161). James Penickson designated two vicars at replace him in the administration of the bishopric of Acre and the patriarchate. One of these, Thomas Agas of Limone, bishop of Bullaunis, took over the legation for almost the entire pontificate (Ibid. nn. 191 and 401 ibid.).

142 They wrote on September 11, 1190, as follows: “Quia quidem in orbe occisus esse videmus, quia ut in urbem principaliam et sanctulum Christi novum descendat, in mundum novis illis institutis, quae hinc usque viventur, in sancta cura stans” (Palmer of Chartres, In RGH, XCV, 3, 391, cf. Henrico Magonnangry, Epistolae et chartae ad historiam postrum domini spectantes [Antwerp 1904], no. 401).

149 The chapter first had twelve canons; the number went up to twenty in the thirteenth century. There is a list of the bishops of the patriarchate in Cairo, Syrie du nord, pp. 374–373; see also Jean Larus, “Les Patriarches de l’Antioche,” RSL, I (1894), 193–209.

150 Such is the hypothesis, with respect to the quarrel over the obedience of the province of Tyre (below, p. 249), of John C. Rome, “The Papacy and the Exarchal Churches of Tyre,” Bulletin of the John Rylands Library, XLIII (1939), 160–199. It is not sustained.

141 Ibid., pp. 183–184.

152 The Maronites had made a solemn act of obedience (1101) but he officially acquired Monastiritanus in the room of the Lateran council. See Muhammad Salih, “The Maronite Church in the Mideast Ages,” Greek Christians, XLI (193), 37–384. The act of obedience was renewed under Innocent III, but some Maronite elements resisted the union with Rome, which a large part of the church had accepted, which accompanied more discussion.
in 1196, supported León II of Cilician Armenia against Bohemond IV, and was deposed by the cardinal legate Soffredo on disciplinary grounds. In 1203 the prince threw him into prison, where he died of thirst. Bohemond had already replaced him with a Greek patriarch, Symeon II. The next patriarch was again a Latin, Peter of Lucecco (1209–1217). OEvstio Fieschi (1247–1268, d. 1292) was also forced by the Mongols to give place to the Greek Euthymius, and withdrew from Antioch to Italy about 1260, leaving behind a vicar, Bartholomew; he soon became bishop of Tortosa, being replaced as vicar in 1263 by the Dominican Christian, who was killed by the Egyptians in 1268.

The establishment of an episcopal hierarchy in each of the patriarchates would raise difficulties. There was a decision attributed to Urban II according to which the conquered territories were to come under sees in the states to which such territories had previously belonged, and a decree attributed to Adhemar of Monteil fixing the river an-Nahr al-Kabir, in the county of Tripoli, as the boundary between the patriarchates of Antioch and Jerusalem. Both these texts are suspect. The first elevations of episcopal sees seem to have come about at random, where some conquered town seemed important enough to have a bishop, or where it appeared that a surviving church ought to be a cathedral (such as at Lydda). It is worth noting that the patriarch Dumbert of Jerusalem in December 1099 consecrated the bishop of Antioch and the archbishops of Edessa, Tarsus, and Mamistra, while Peter of Albano and Robert of Lydda received the episcopal blessing of the bishop who participated in the crusade, thus allowing Robert to install Dumbert in the patriarchal see.

Very quickly, however, the Latins decided to adopt an episcopal sees system, which had been such before the Moslem occupation, and to reorganize the ecclesiastical provinces by using the Nolitiae which had described the divisions of the bishoprics and archbishoprics of each patriarchate. The question gave no difficulty in the principality of Antioch, and archbishop Benedict of Edessa made no trouble about his submission to the patriarch of Antioch.

The ecclesiastical province of Phoenicia presented a more delicate problem. The metropolitan center, Tyre, remained in Moslem hands until 1124. The bishoprics of Berytus, Sidon, Acre, and Banyas would

191 Rohrbach, Agentiae, no 72. If Urban II really made the donation attributed to him, it was only in the sense where there might have been some doubt respecting the assumption of an episcopal see to an already existing ecclesiastical province.

194 Ralph of Caunus, in RHC, i, 431, 700th Greek patriarch John the Cane was thus established at Antioch.)
be conquered by the kings of Jerusalem, while those of Tripoli, Bot- 
tonna, Arqa, Orthosia, Myklos (Jubrail), Maraclea, and Tort-
tosa were conquered by the counts of Tripoli. Frankish occupation 
was first undertaken from the county of Tripoli. It has been suggested 
that Raymond of St. Gilles had unsuccessfully tried to make Tripoli 
the metropolitan center by appointing an archbishop there. Another hypothesis, however, is that the reason no bishop was 
nominated at Tortosa and Jubrail, but only at Tripoli, was that the patriarch of Antioch was waiting for Tyre to be taken in order to reorganize the 
province entirely and determine which sees were to be established.

In any case, the fall of Beirut to Baldwin I was followed by the 
king's nomination of a bishop, also named Baldwin, who acknowl-
ledged the authority of the patriarch of Jerusalem (1111-1112). Ber-
nard, the patriarch of Antioch, protested, arguing that Beirut and 
all of Phoenicia belonged to his see. Rome could not make up its 
mind, because no one knew the new details of the Nodittes 
of Antioch, and because King Baldwin I and patriarch Arnaud of Jeru-
salem based their claims on the decision attributed to Urban II about 
the connections of bishops to ecclesiastical circumscriptions mod-
eled on the states founded by the crusaders. In 1113 Paschal II decided 
in favor of the Antiochenes view. The episcopate of the county of Tripoli 
continued to look to Antioch, but Jerusalem retained Beirut. 
Although the see of Tyre was erected in 1124, it remained vacant for 
some time, the conflict would break out again when the patriarch of 
Jerusalem, basing his claims on an earlier decision by Paschal in 
his favor, got from Honorius II confirmation of this decision and 
asked to the bishops of the county of Tripoli to recognize the au-
thority of the archbishop of Tyre.

In 1135, however, the new archbishop of Tyre, Fulcher of Aumou-
lême, undertook to restore the unity of his province, and entered into 
relations with the patriarch of Antioch, to whom he proposed to sub-

195 A text from Languedoc, in the sense, constitutes an archbishop's of Tripoli between 1108 
and 1107 (Richard, Comptes de Tyrois, p. 9b).
196 Rowe, "The Papacy and the Ecclesiastical Province of Tyre," pp. 163-164. The only 
support for this claim is the fact that the name the most austere bishops of Tortosa and Jubrail 
at the beginning of the twelfth century, but most concerning this province are scarce.
197 Thus in 1123 the church of Tripoli made an agreement with the Hospitallers over the 
houses of the diocese of Artois, with a reservation at the variant that the patriarch of Antioch 
might terminate the union of the sees of Artois and Tripoli (Delavallée Le Roi, Carmina 
germanica I, no. 72).
198 Rowe, "The Papacy and the Ecclesiastical Province of Tyre," has connected the raising 
of the see of Tortosa, which he post in 1127, and that of Jubrail, which he post after 1128, 
with these violation, and that, that Honorius II restored the enunciation of Urban II's first 
decree because bis second decree could not be put into effect, all this is uncertain.
ject himself in return for the restoration of the bishopric of Tripoli. Rome gave its consent, after some hesitation, to the reconstruction of the province of Tyre in 1139, but the patriarch of Jerusalem, William of Messina, would not agree. The archbishop of Tyre had to settle for the obedience of the bishops of old Phoenicia located within the kingdom of Jerusalem, while the three bishoprics in Tripoli continued in their dependence on Antioch.

A similar conflict arose with respect to the old province of Arumb, with Bosra as metropolitan center, when King Amalric of Jerusalem reestablished an archiepiscopal see at Kerak in 1167. Since Arumb had earlier depended on Antioch, the patriarch Amery demanded the submission of the new archbishop, Guerius, when raising the question of Tyre, but without success.

Aside from these problems, which arose because of the refusal of the king of Jerusalem to accept the recognition by any bishop in his kingdom of the authority of any patriarch other than that of Jerusalem, the reconstruction of ecclesiastical provinces under their traditional metropolitan sees seems to have gone on without hindrance. The old province of H Syria, divided between the principality of Antioch and the county of Tripoli, and pierced by Muslim enclaves, was revived with its metropolitan center at Apamae, to which the bishop of Albara was transferred, with bishoprics at Valentina and Rasaniyyah.

The desire to revive those churches which had disappeared under Muslim domination did not result in the systematic restoration of all the bishoprics in conquered towns. Some of them were deserted and not worth reviving, although the crusaders gave the title of bishop of Lydda to Robert, conceding to him the great church of St. George and the neighboring town of Ramla; others were much too important. The Latinos respected the old ecclesiastical organization, leaving to each diocese its individuality, but they adopted the technique of

199 On all this see Rowe, op. cit. Tyrus claimed (in error) the obedience of Hama (Cesarea), which the patriarch of Jerusalem promised them.

200. C. Uichard, "Evénements d'Ammaour et minimaux dans le Proche-Orient en 1162," Mémoires d'Archeologie et d'Histoire, LXI (1949), 228-238; the matter was still pending in 1206 (see below, note 214). William of Tyre, X, 3 (MGR, Oct. 1, 344), calls the archbishop Guerius.

201 Richard, "Note sur l'archandia d'Apamee," pp. 103-104, only in 1263 did Urban IV and the dependence of the diocese of Rasaniyyah (reduced by this time to the region of Khart el Chellah) on Apamea, by uniting Rasaniyyah and Tartus. We have the text of the profession of obedience of bishop Turance of Valuma to the archbishop, Cité, dated Damascus 6, 1224. Francis Waymack, "The Peculiarities of Apamea," Het Nederlandse Arabisch-Egyptisch Jour- 

202. During the crusade (June 3, 1099). Possibly the crusaders wanted to give a bishop the fortresses of Ramla, which they had just taken, as they had already done at Albara.
uniting churches on a large scale. This allowed a bishop to administer several dioceses while preserving the possibility of their future separation. Thus Acre, an important town conquered as early as 1104, received its own bishop only about 1130, after its diocese had been administered by the patriarch of Jerusalem. The restoration of dioceses, therefore, was a gradual affair.

On the other hand, some places which had not hitherto been bishoprics, but which had been pilgrim centers, became the residence of a bishop and cathedral chapter, as also did some prominent centers which had been unimportant before the Arab conquest. This was effected by the transference of a bishopric. The establishment of a bishop in Bethlehem (1119), for example, was irregular; it was thought that the see of Bethlehem might replace that of Ascalon. In Galilee the monastery of Mount Tabor seems to have claimed the archiepiscopal title, but backed down before bishop William, who had been legally installed in Nazareth and who became archbishop in 1128 when it was decided to transfer the archiepiscopal see of Scythopolis (Bethshean) to Nazareth. In 1168 the archiepiscopal see of Philadelphia ('Ammān), which the crusaders never occupied, was transferred to Kerak, which was wrongly thought to have been the ancient Petra.

When it was finished, the ecclesiastical organization of the Latin church in the crusader states had the following form. The patriarchate of Antioch comprised six archbishoprics, Apamea (made an archiepiscopal see to which bishop Peter of Albara was transferred after the fall of Albara), Mamistra, Taranto, Duluk (transferred from Hierapolis, although the archbishop resided in fact at Tell Bashit).

201 See above, note 197; the See of Acre was united to that of Tripoli in 1169; patriarch Ananias of Jerusalem was confirmed by pope Alexander III in the possession of the towns and properties of Damasi, Jericho, Nazareth, and other principal places of which was not provided with bishops (Rohrbach, Regnum, p. 457).

204. At the time of the council of Nobles in 1129, patriarch Gerard appropriated the churches from the dominions of Jerusalem, Nazareth, and Acre (Rohrbach), he also disposed of the towns of the See of Acre in 1129 (see Chapt. XXI, and 203 Rohrbach, Ahdarschewa, p. 179). Later the priory of the monastery of the Holy Cross in Hebron was assigned in 1135 (Rohrbach, Regnum, p. 155); it was council "provisional" in 1129 (Rohrbach, p. 127).

205 This raised difficulties in 1133 when Ascalon was occupied by the Latin, and a bishop named Alcaudon was appointed; Paul Kien, "Dei triumph medio Novi Romae, xxiii, 449. The first Latin bishop of Ascalon was Ambrosius (1130 d. 1130).

206 The history of this is obscured by the foray of certain claims of Mount Tabor; of Hebron, 'Kirchliche Organisations,' p. 59.

207 William of Tyre, X, 1 (RHC, Oct., 1, 964–965). Some confusion arose; the Normans epirogonos of Antioch attacked the province of Ascalon in Antioch, with Bera as metropolitan over the province of Antioch, which was not under Damascus, but a province of Syria; with Bera as metropolitan over, and a province of Syria, with Bera as metropolitan over. This is why Antioch protected against the elevation of Kerak.
Mediterranean Sea
Cyrillus, and Edessa. The province of Apamea included the se fts of Rasafinlyah and Valaninia, Duhik, the se fts of Marrash and probably Kosouu. The se fts of Artah, Jabala, Lataakia, Tortosa, Tripoli, and Jubbil came directly under the patriarch. In the patriarchate of Jerusalem many of the se fts were filled rather late. There were four archbishoprics: Tyre, Caesarea, Nazareth (which had been made an archbishopric in 1228), and "Petrus" or Kerak (created in 1168). The archbishop of Caesarea had a suffragan at Sebastia (created about 1145); the archbishop of Tyre had suffragans at Beirut, Sidon, Acre (created about 1130), and Nablus, the archbishop of Nazareth had a suffragan at Tiberias (created about 1130). The bishoprics of Bethleem, Lydda, and Hebron (created in 1168) fell directly under the patriarch.

However, the Moslem reconquest had already wiped out some of the se fts, such as those of the country of Edessa, all of which disappeared about 1150. Many ceased to be provided with bishops, but not all. Some titulars took refuge in villages still in Frankish hands, either within their own dioceses or elsewhere. Thus the bishop of Sidon stayed for some time in Sarepta before Sidon was retaken by the Franks in 1228. Bishop Geoffrey of Tiberias fled to Sidon in 1243. Urban IV sought to reorganize the episcopal hierarchy affected by these dislocations, by uniting the see of Acre to the patriarchate of Jerusalem, and the see of Rasafinlyah to that of Tortosa. But bishops and archbishops succeeded one another regularly, despite the loss of their episcopal cities, thus leading to the titular episcopacy of later centuries.

Parish organization in each diocese depended upon the importance of the Latin communities to be served. In the beginning these were not very numerous. A Tripolitanian text informs us that the entire see of Nebias, stretching some twelve miles along the coast, formed a single parish. However, Latin parishes became more and more

200 Culmer, Syria ne jurid. pp. 300-323. Cyrrillus appears in this text as a simple bishopric. Its status as an archbishopric is clear from William of Tyre (XVII, 17, in NHG. Sec, I 706-710) and from the Provenzale communes extant, both of which refer to a Constantine archbishopric.

200 Horrobin, "Kirchliche Organisation." pp. 49-51. The see of Ascalon, created in 1223 at the time the town was occupied, but later suppressed, having been transferred to Bethleem Alexander III, who had elevated Hebrew and "Petrus," intended in 1209 to do the same for Jeaff before Horrobin "Die Ortschaften," p. 121. John of Demina, esp. 264 (NHG. Sec, I, 415), cites a deacon as archbishop of "Dammash" (Damascus), and gives the archbishop of "Petrus" a suffragan in the person of the (Greek) bishop of Paneas, residing at Simi.

210 NHG 33, XCVIII, 699. Ablahsh, Aladonesmar, nos. 1151b, 1247.

211. In fact, I believe that the "archiepiscopate, bishop, domesitikon, domesitikon, polis bishop of a certain Roman episcopal see" conveneri, granted by bishop Pons of Tripoli to the Hospitallers on 1119 (Duval, Le Romain, Concialiar, I. 40, no. 45), in the ecclesiastical...
numerous with the creation of new towns settled by Franks and the growth of towns already having a Frankish population.219

In the maritime towns, however, there were some difficulties arising from the concession of quarters to Pisans, Venetians, and Genoese, within each of which there was a church endowed with parish rights. Dedicated to the patron saint of the home city (St. Peter of Pisa, St. Mark of Venice, and St. Lawrence of Genoa), these parish churches paid tribute (corvée) to the cathedrals of Pisa and Genoa, and the bishop of Castello. But they also fell under the local bishop. For example, the patriarch of Jerusalem sent the holy chair to St. Lawrence of Acre, and the chaplain of St. Lawrence of Tyre owed obedience to the archbishop of Tyre.218 The Venetians, however, claimed exemption from the diocesan bishop for St. Mark of Tyre, founded in the third of the city belonging to Venice; and St. Mark of Acre likewise claimed to be exempt from the bishop of Acre.219 Furthermore, the churches of the Italian quarters also ascertained particular privileges: the Pisans of Acre, for example, married only in their church of St. Peter, even when they lived in the parishes of St. Andrew or St. Michael.220

Many parish churches belonged to monastic establishments, such as St. Peter of Jaffa, the property of the Holy Sepulcher, which thereby had the right to select the chaplain who was to serve the church, and to receive a share of its revenues, leaving to the diocesan bishop spiritual jurisdiction and the right to consecrate the parochialis vicarius.221 There was little difference in this respect between Latin

219 The Hospitallers claimed to 1759 from the bishop on the grounds of a privilege of "pope C," i.e., the privilege of Colonna 106th cited in Cartulaire, I, 40 (pp. 617-627). This church was in the area now left Pisa di Montecarlo and was the Negroni (see Appendix) family in which lived Nepomuc (Dami di Colombo, "L'antica Camera, regnante di Nepomuc" [pp. 204-210]).

218 There was a monastery in Laizelin (southern Ligurian) another at the head of Haifa and near in Ramla (Rohricht, Damascus, p. 299, 308), in the second of Edessa there was one at "Carmen" (Kemp, in al., op. 390, dated 1163 or 1164). Several Latin parishes were established in 1168 in the new town founded by the Holy Sepulcher (Kemp, Cartulaire, p. 238-239), at the new church of Nablus (Rohricht, Damascus, p. 484), and at Jaffa itself, ibid., p. 485, 486.

213 Rohricht, Damascus, op. 399, 402, 530, 1120, 7132, 7146; Achyldenau, op. 326-40.

214 Rohricht, Damascus, op. 376, 384, 387, 1104, 1125, 1171, 741 for Tyre, Damascus, op. 855; for Acre. In 1206, Honorius 31 put St. Mark of Tyre under the spiritual direction of the archbishop, Newman, Damascus, but in 1245 the Venetian guilds M. Zeno Crionis (Georgiou) insured that it was vacant. In 1267 a canon was paid to the holy see by St. Mark of Venus for the churches of Tyre and Acre; it was still being paid in 1266, although the pope had confirmed to the archbishop of Tyre the canon due from St. Mark of Tyre at Acre. The plethora paid a canon to the bishop to a mark of obedience only for the parish church of St. Domingo, annexed to the Venetian quarter (1260).

215 Rohricht, Damascus, op. 795.

216 Horne, "Carmeli," p. 122, ibid., "Carmelitae Ordinamentum," op. 56, 86 According to Mayer Schmidt, whom a canon was not restored by the Latins, the abbots who con-
parishes and Greek or Syrian parishes, equally viewed as the property of this or that religious establishment, they had to make payments to these establishments even though they were not subject to the authority of a Latin bishop.\footnote{217}

Some priories, communities of monks dependent upon a large abbey, also enjoyed parish rights. The priory of St. Mary Lateran at Latarka served as a parish church.\footnote{218} Gradually, because of this predominance of regular clergy, the parish clergy acquired a new status. The titles of rector or chaplain gave place to that of prior. From 1264 the church of St. Gilles of Are, held by a non-resident prior who farmed out the goods of the church to the Templars, was called rectorum seu prioratus secularis; in the fourteenth century, the clergy of Cyprus in charge of parishes would be generally called prieurs paroissiens.\footnote{219}

Besides the parish clergy, each diocese also had its cathedral chapter. These sometimes adopted the rule of canons regular which was the vogue in the west at the end of the eleventh and the beginning of the twelfth century. Such was the case of the Holy Sepulcher in Jerusalem,\footnote{220} and also St. John of Serafina, where Ubaldo admired the piety of the canons serving the cathedral. The chapter elected the bishop. It had the usual dignitaries, although there was only one archdeacon, since the dioceses, unlike those of France and England, were not subdivided into archdeaconries. Besides their responsibility for liturgical service, of particular importance where the cathedral was a well-known pilgrimage center, the canons played a role in the education of the clergy. There was a school at the Holy Sepulcher, and at Are a lecture in theology, although in the thirteenth century the mendicant orders also contributed to clerical education.\footnote{221}

A large part of the activity of the chapters had to do with the pilgrimage. In particular, they undertook charitable activities which, in


\footnote{218} Ubaldo, Regesta, no. 231


\footnote{220} See above, note 183.

\footnote{221} Horace, "Kryptonkide Organon," p. 55; also "Carmen Arvens," describing the life of the monks of the Holy Sepulcher.
the case of some of the chapters, attracted a large number of gifts. The canons of Bethlehem were gradually transformed into a Hospitaller chapter, while those of the Holy Sepulcher transferred the care of pilgrims to Hospitallers who acted under their direction.

Contrary to what Gaston Dodu has written, that the Latin church sought to undermine the foundation and development of the crusader states, one of the most striking features of the history of these states is the collaboration between the church and civil society. It is equally difficult to accept LaMonte’s view that Urban II sought through the establishment of Franks in the Holy Land to extend the patrimony of St. Peter, but that his successors gave this plan up in fear of seeing the patriarch of Jerusalem, who claimed supremacy over the royal power, emerge as a rival of the pope.

The drive to establish an ecclesiastical principality, to include the holy city itself as well as the port of Jaffa, came from Dambert and his successor Stephen of La Ferre (1128–1130), and Godfrey of Bouillon probably looked on it as compatible with his title of “advocate.” Dambert went even further, since he was able to get the homage of Bohemond and Godfrey in 1099, proper amor Dei, and at Easter 1100 to secure from Godfrey the acknowledgment that he was the vassal of the Holy Sepulcher and of the patriarch, which Baldwin I also acknowledged before his coronation. Later, however, there is no evidence of the paying of homage by the king or by the prince of Antioch to the patriarch of Jerusalem. The coronation ceremony included no such obligation. The king of Jerusalem was no more the vassal of the Patriarch than of the Holy See.

In Antioch, however, the prince paid homage to the patriarch of Antioch. Possibly the custom was introduced when the patriarch Bernard consecrated Roger in 1112. It is certainly attested to by Raymond

222. “La royauté historique et le royaume latin avec elle, parce que...” (Douda La Royaume latin de Jerusalem [Paris, 1910], p. 96).
223. See above, p. 197 and note.
226. Hengel Untersuchungen über das kaiserliche Patrimonium, p. 34, see also Hamilton, Latin Church, pp. 52–55
of Ponthiers (1136) and by Raymond Roupen (1216). We do not know, however, which the prince agreed to hold from the patriarch, and some princes seem not to have paid homage at all. Certainly there were quarrels between patriarchs and princes unknown in Jerusalem. Raymond of Ponthiers deposed Ralph of Dominique in 1159. Reginald of Châtillon imprisoned Aimery of Lumoges, who had refused him money. Bohemond III was excommunicated when he married Sibyl in 1180 despite the fact that he already had a wife, Theodora Comnena. Antioch was placed under the interdict, while the prince besieged the patriarch Aimery in Curcy. Some patriarchs had to undertake the defense of the principality against Moslems, Byzaantines, or Armenians, sometimes despite the prince himself. Finally, the crisis created by the conflict between Bohemond IV and Raymond Roupen forced the patriarch to take sides. Peter I died in prison in 1208. Only in 1239 did Bohemond V cease to be excommunicated.

Both in Jerusalem and in Antioch the ruler controlled the election of the patriarch. Baldwin I got rid of Daulmert and succeeded in appointing Arnulf, and custom would allow the king to choose between candidates designated by the canons. Henry of Champagne later defended this privilege, which had fallen into disuse when Rome began appointing the patriarch directly. The king apparently also claimed the right to appoint certain ecclesiastical dignitaries, as well as to influence episcopal nominations: royal chancellors received bishoprics. William of Tyre reports that on his return to the Holy Land, king Amalric would have given him the benefices of which he was the patron if he had not been prevented by those envious of William; later, however, when the opportunity arose, he had the diocesan bishops provide for him. Here again is the kind of development which gave the papacy the opportunity of providing a large number of benefices and dignities, thus diminishing royal influence in the nomination of ecclesiastics.

The independence of the church was well established. It had its own possessions, often considerable; it also had its own jurisdiction. Church courts dealt only with cases concerning the clergy (except when the offense was murder or treason against the lord), heresy, sorcery,


220. Hotz, "Kirchliche Organisations," p. 54; Lachmaner, Papstpal Hofmann, p. 251, Enno et al., Chronik (RHC Occ. II, 283). For Antioch see Caban, Sprte du nord, pp. 312-313

and marriage (including adultery), but left perjury to the civil courts. As for cases having to do with ecclesiastical property, a process of 1140 at Antioch reveals the custom of the principality: a dispute between the Holy Sepulcher and the abbey of St. Paul was transferred from the patriarch’s to the prince’s court because the property involved had originally been a grant made by a lay authority. Besides the established church courts, papal judge-delegates played an increasingly large role in the thirteenth century, while in the twelfth legates had intervened above all to ensure that councils were summoned where accused prelates had to be judged. Questions of episcopal succession were decided at Rome, which was not peculiar to the Latin east.

Tithes were always one of the great sources of contention between the church and civil authorities. In the west the tithe was primarily agricultural in nature; the clergy levied it directly on the produce of the parsonry. In the east the peasants did not belong to the Latin rite except in those villages settled by Franks, where the ecclesiastical lord collected the tithe according to the western custom. Also, the clergy claimed tithes not from peasants but from the lords themselves who caused much difficulty over their payment. It was only at the assembly of Nablus (1120) that the king of Jerusalem agreed to pay a tithe on his own revenues; but other documents prove that the practice had already been introduced. Bishops were the beneficiaries of the tithe, part of which they allocated to their canons or to religious establishments, which were normally exempt from paying a tithe on their own property.

The agricultural wealth of the churches aroused some restrictive measures designed to limit its growth. The Assizes of Jerusalem forbade the sale of the grant of a fief to a church or to a religious order.

---

231 Quoted, Nisaer, acta institutionum, pp. 328-329.
232 Londres, Crusades pp. 172-175; ibidem, Syrie du nord, p. 443.
233 For a case concerning the paying of a papal provision see Riehl, Regnans, no. 343
234 Riehl, Crusades p. 252, 254
235 This probably explains the claim of the Latin principality. If one can believe Rambaud, to whom the Armenian ambassador whom prince Toros proposed to send in the Holy Land saw the interpretation of this episode in Cuba, “Le Régime rural syrien,” p. 291
236 Maresi, Concilia, XCI and 263; Riehler, Regnans, nos. 36, 47, 60 (surmounting the auctoriam de rebus and the auctoriam per concubinatrum medium on the two tithe laws in table).
in incapable of providing the requisite service, since it was impossible for a church to pay homage to the king. In fact, however, some ecclesiastical lordships had obligations similar to those of the vassals. The archbishop of Nazareth sent ten knights to the royal host under the command of his marshal; the bishop of Lydda sent six. Nazareth, Lydda, Aphanes, and Cursat were the centers of veritable ecclesiastical seigneuries where the prelates raised their own contingents and undertook the defense of their own fortresses. Most of the religious establishments, however, had to contribute companies of sergeants, sometimes rather important (a thousand from the patriarch of Jerusalem and the Holy Sepulchre, two hundred from the bishop of Lydda). Thus, without counting the military orders, the church of the kingdom made an appreciable contribution to the defense of the territory, although only a few prelates were great feudatories with their own vassals.

Thus the church took its place within the states founded by the crusaders who had responded to the appeal of the Council of Clermont. It left temporal power to the princes and barons. It is in this sense that we may interpret the definition of John of Ibelin according to which the king was the seignor tempore, the patriarch, the seignor spirituel. The ecclesiastical hierarchy remained for the most part outside the political framework, but took cognizance of it; the intervention of the patriarch to lead the barons of Antioch to Jerusalem in moments of danger illustrate this, and the cooperation of the churches in the defense of the territory was marked by the importance of their contingents as well as their financial contributions when an assembly decided on a general tax (for example, in 1166 and 1183).

But the catastrophe of 1187 transformed the machinery of the Frankish states. Deprived of their territorial bases, these states could no longer guarantee any institutional continuity. They depended increasingly on outside help which brought in its wake the interference of western powers which viewed the kingdom of Outremer as a colony. From Frederick II on, the monarch was nonresident, further undermining royal authority. The barons closed ranks to oppose a foreign authority who sought to eliminate the customary control of vassals over the acts of their lord, a control which in Jerusalem drew particular force from the predominance of certain great families and

238 John of Ibelin cap. 143 (Rolls, Econ. Hist., 277).
239 Including the abbots of Mount Tabor (Richard, Royaumes lam., pp. 289-299, 123-130). At Jerusalem the patriarch possessed an extensive domain with broad seigniorial rights, but he apparently did not furnish a contingent for the royal army; see Preger, Crusader Seigneuries.
the interpretation which they placed on the Assise de la légèce. The result was an atmosphere of rebellion. The commune of Acre persisted for twelve years, giving way to a simple substitute for monarchical authority in the person of the "Lord of the kingdom," a mere representative of the last Hohenstaufens. The restoration of Hugh III of Antioch-Lusignan in 1268 came too late to reestablish royal authority. Meanwhile, the lands belonging to the princes of Antioch were torn apart by the struggle between the princely dynasty and the great families. The weakening of royal and feudal institutions went hand in hand with the gradual collapse of the crusader states, provoked above all by the increasing power of a Moslem state, Egypt of the Ayyubids and Mamluks.

It was then that the church took on a new role. The patriarch of Jerusalem, legates in the Holy Land, were the natural intermediaries to transmit the appeals for help and manage the assistance sent from the west at the instigation of the papacy. With the institution of the monarchy weak, and a feudalism incapable of providing the services for which it had been created, it was the church itself, now profoundly transformed, which assured the survival of the Latin states and controlled their temporal as well as their spiritual life during the last years of their existence. 246

It is more useful, however, to think of the internal organization of the crusader states as it was before this period of decline, characterized by a balance established among the monarchy, the feudalism, and the church, with a strict definition of their respective powers. It is precisely this balance which explains the interest which historians have always taken in their institutions.

246 Ibid., pp. 246-248
VI
AGRICULTURAL CONDITIONS IN THE CRUSADER STATES

Agriculture played a large role in the life of those states born of the crusades. This aspect of their history has often been overlooked—somewhat surprisingly, since in large part the fate of the different states hinged on their agricultural capacities. We shall try to determine the extent to which each could feed itself, or had to rely on other countries for essential imports. It is also important to determine which of them had so productive an agriculture as to contribute to international trade, and thus acquired the wealth which made them stronger than their neighbors. Agricultural productivity, however, will not be our only concern. The study of the agrarian regime is closely bound up with that of agriculture proper, and cannot be ignored. Finally, to complete our examination of agricultural conditions we shall consider how the soil was exploited by the crusaders’ descendants.

There are two recent studies, Claude Cazelles, “Mémoire sur l’histoire des croisades et de l’Orient latin,” II, Le régime rural syrien au temps de la domination franque,” Bulletin de la Société des sciences de Strasbourg, XXIX (1929-1931), 206-209, and Joseph Pernet, “Étude de quelques problèmes agraires et politiques en Somalie orientale au XIe siècle,” Bulletin de la Société des sciences de Strasbourg, XXIII (1935), 143-170, which refer primarily to the more or less permanent drawn up in 1263 by Maragheh Zard, the Venetian bishop of Acre, published by Nadel and Troumbis, H., 189-195. Still useful, however, are the following: Hélène G. Prost, Rural Conditions in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem (Philadelphia, 1908); Hans Prost, Kulturgeschichte des syrischen Bodenspan (Berlin, 1913); Werner Dorn, Gesellschaftliche Verhältnisse im Mittelalter (Berlin, 1913); and Rolf Brandt, Historische Beobachtungen (Berlin, 1913). Some more important, but less accessible, are René Parouty’s La Syrie à l’époque des croisades (Paris, 1893), and Jules Oudin’s Histoire du moyen-orient (Paris, 1904).
Agriculture and agrarian organization differed in the three major areas occupied by the crusaders—Frankish Syria, Cyprus, and the Latin empire of Constantinople. Each of these areas will be the subject of a separate section, and for each we shall give as complete a picture as possible of rural life during its occupation by the crusaders.
A. Agriculture in Frankish Syria

To designate the collection of Frankish colonies established in the territory of the ancient provinces of Syria, Palestine, Phoenicia, and Arabia, the Middle Ages used the generic term Suré. The name will serve us to signify the area embracing the kingdom of Jerusalem, the counties of Tripoli and Edessa, and the principality of Antioch. With the exception of Edessa, which did not remain in Frankish hands very long and has left us hardly any documents, this area forms something of a geographic unit because of the two chains of mountains parallel to the coast marching north from the Red Sea up to the edge of the Arnonian plateau. The relatively narrow plain along the shore; the mountains of Lebanon, Jabal Ansârîyâh, and the Andanus range, continuing the hills of Judæa and Samaria, an interior valley starting north of the Dead Sea and extending to the valleys of Ghur, al-Biqâ', Rujjâ (al-Rûjûj), and the plain of Antioch; and finally the chalk ranges of Transjordan, Anti-Lebanon, and northern Syria—these comprise four separate regions, each of which has quite similar agricultural characteristics from south to north, distinct from those of its neighbors to west or east.

The coastal plain offers a very narrow area for intensive cultivation, which is possible only where a river sprang from some gorge cut in the mountains, or where an important water source makes irrigation possible. The mountains of the Lebanon area are carved into terraces which retain cultivable soil while a relatively abundant rainfall assures needed moisture. Elsewhere, as in Judæa, the rocky aspect of the mountains and hills gives an impression of barrenness, but how false this is has been shown by travelers like Nâbir-i Khnawrâ and Ludolf of Suchem (Sudhura); provided there is no winter drought, the land there is fertile enough to give a good cereal crop, and to support fruit trees, grapevines, and fig or olive trees. The situation is similar in the Jabal Ansârîyâh, but with a few variations. As for the interior valley, there are excellent facilities for irrigation because of the rivers, the Jordan, the Luni (Lycus), and the Orontes, running

through it, and it is especially fertile because of its alluvial deposits. To the east, the plateaus of Transjordan provide excellent land for wheat, but as one moves farther north the mountain barrier to the west reduces the moisture in the interior. Nevertheless, the vast chalk range of northern Syria still had important plantations of grapevines and olive trees at the time of the crusades.3

Thus natural conditions favored agriculture, at least where there was careful irrigation to develop the fields of the coastal strip and the interior plains. Otherwise, as Muslim authors of the Middle Ages noted, good harvests had to depend on the winter rains, which were only too often unreliable.4

The agrarian organization of the Frankish period has been studied by several scholars who have described it in detail.1 The basic unit was the village, or casal; in effect, rural life was communal and isolated homesteads did not exist. The casal comprised a variable number of inhabitants, forming a community the members of which were bound together by the performance of collective services under the direction of chiefs called ravies. The casals included waste lands (pâtes), an exact description of which is difficult to come by. They were certainly unoccupied, serving as common pasture or as a reserve of cultivable land where new villages could be built. The arable land of the casal was measured in carucates (carucatiae), a term which had a double meaning. Some of these carucates corresponded to the faddan ‘urabi, the area that a pair of oxen could plow in one day (the word jornada was also used); others corresponded to the faddan rami, the amount of land which one team could cultivate in a whole year (these were called carucatares gracies, a term which appears to be synonymous with carucatiae francesae). One assize gave their measure in 24 cords by 16, or about 75 acres).5 It is in this latter sense that the texts ordinarily use the word carucate, which may be squared with manus. Like the western mano, the carucate was the usual holding of a peasant, although this did not stop some

4 Georges Duby du Brion, La Syrie, p. 24
5 In particular Helen Proctor, Claude Cahen, and Joshua Prawer
6. Yohanan, Yohanan, pp. 36–37; Cahen, “Manus,” p. 299. The distinction which Prawer has established between these two kinds of carucates corresponds with that made by Latouz, Vie rurale, pp. 11–16. The very words carucati gracies appear to be an exact translation of faddan rami (Dastur and Sarreman, Trésorier, p. 4 and note). The term is always composed of casal, the diminutive is the half of one hundred and may be land cultivated by a team of horses. The measure of the carucate, derived from that of the cord, has been established by Roy and by Prawer (who discuss this point in “Étude,” pp. 30–36).
of them from farming more than one carucate. The question whether these carucates were always cultivated by the same tenants or were redistributed by the rural community has not received any final answer.

The peasant, cultivating one or more carucates, was bound to the lord of the manor by obligations the details of which have come down to us in the documents. Some of these peasants were free, others not; at least, certain documents distinguish between free and unfree carucates, the latter very likely being held by the homilias, who no doubt were serfs. The "free carucates" appear to have been burdened only by a fixed rent of two bezants a year.

We know little about the obligations of the free men. The villains cited in the texts which have been preserved appear for the most part to have been serfs. These were bound to their holdings under conditions varying from place to place. An act of 1233 specified that in the county of Tripoli those who quit the land of a lord in order to establish themselves on the land of another might be seized on the demand of their first master, but it implies that the customs of Jerusalem, Antioch, and Cyprus might well have been different. In fact, there was at least one case in the principality of Antioch, Poni-de-Fer, where the lords could not get their runaway villains restored to them. At Jerusalem, however, the lord's right of pursuit was recognized by the Avases, as also the right of formariage, which obliged a lord whose male serf married the female serf of another lord to give the latter another female serf.

The payments demanded of these peasants were of two sorts, those proportional to the harvest, and reddarius personales of fixed amounts. This distinction must have continued after the Frankish period: in Mamluk Syria the proportional liard and the fixed darías were distinct, the latter apparently the descendant of the old Byzantine personal taxes (áuzóúcov). Each of these taxes appears to have had a territorial basis, the carucate (the old jugato) serving as the

7 The man might have several lands, either dividing among themselves the returns, or possibly sharing among themselves the entire revenue of the village, as happened in the undivided sélégements between France and Meuse; see Jean Richelet, "Les Partages du seigneurial entre Francs et Musulmans," Syrill. XXVII. 72-82.
9 Stäbler, Tabulae, pp. 106; Robert, "Syria mura," ZDPV, X (1887), 4, note 3.
fiscal unit. A head tax was levied on the Moslems in the region of Tyre, but we do not know whether it fell on all the serfs. The fixed rents paid on each carucate bore the name of "guits" (exemue). Three times a year— at Christmas, at the beginning of Lent, and at Easter—the lord received a hen, ten eggs, a cheese, and a load of wood (or, in some places, wax and honey), or their equivalent in money. 12

The rent paid in proportion to the harvest (Ahardy, sometimes latinized as curragium) ordinarily consisted of payments to the lord of a part of the harvest varying from one quarter to one half the produce of the fields, but most often a third. 13 The same proportion applied to grapes and olives. A contract in August 1236, between the Hospitallers of Tripoli and some peasants allowing the latter to plant olives on their lands, fixed the share of the knights at one third. 14 There were other payments as well. In addition to his partison, or third of the harvest, the lord might require of the villager a hoghead of cheese per carucate, and a bee as interest for the wood which he advanced them each year (that is, terra seminetur). 15 Finally, we should mention the taxes on livestock, especially on goats (coqueta) amounting to one carucate per head, and the tax on bees. 16 The peasants of Syria, however, though heavily burdened, apparently were not forced to perform any very heavy corvées. This suggests that there was practically no seigneurial "reserve," all the land of the casal being divided among the tenants. Certain plots, however, were reserved for particular purposes, such as the sugar-cane plantations near Tyre cultivated under Venetian control. These plantations were probably worked by tenants fulfilling their corvées as well as by agricultural laborers or even slaves. Joshua Prawer believes that the one day's labor per carucate required from the tenants in this area is one day per week, and so four to six days per month. 17 It is possible that the seigneurial domain was of more importance in some other areas; in the diocese of Acre the Teutonic Knights cultivated lands, vineyards, and olive groves at their own expense. 18

Besides the lord's arable land, which was not very important in

---

12 Cahut, "Notes," p. 34; Peucer, Rural Economies, p. 46.
13 Cahut, loc. cit.
14 J. Doirelle Le Rout, "Terrainaire de la province du Vau de Terre de l'Hôpital," ROL, Ill (1891), 54 (not. 249).
15 Streulinx, Tributes, pp. 92-93, Thiel and Theuma, pp. 371, 374.
16 Streulinx, Tributes, p. 28.
17 Prawer, Rural Economies, p. 43; Prawer proposes an interpretation which would allow for four to six days during a month ("Second," p. 165). H. J. F. Prandoni (pp. 45) interprets the same quotation as referring to one day's labor per year—a very light burden.
18 Streulinx, Tributes, p. 91.
comparison with the extensive peasant holdings, the seigneurial re-
serve included a certain number of buildings for economic exploita-
tions. Probably the premises where the grapes or olives were brought
and the ovens in which the bread was baked were directly controlled
by the lord, or else by some intermediary who held them directly of
the lord en appanç. The lord also owned the mills. Some of them
were turned by animal power; some, at least from the time of the
Third Crusade, were driven by wind like those at the castle of Safad;22
but the most important mills were run by water power. Those which
the Venetians had below Tyre had only one or two millstones, but
the mills which Bohemond IV of Antioch had constructed under the
walls of Antioch had three, and it was possible to add a fourth. In
principle, only the tenants of a lord had the right to use his mill,
except when the lord enjoyed a privilege similar to that which Bohe-
mond IV granted the Teutonic Knights, et franchize que tuit ofi qui
voudrunt moudre a vosso moltin par a dreiture payante, ... que il faia
le poission.21 These hanaüues—presses, ovens, and mills—naturally
brought to the lord a drouiture, just as the use of his measures to sell
the produce of their lands obliged the peasants to pay him a men-
suragium. Apparently the owner of the threshing floor on which they
threshed their grain exacted the payment of still another fee (porta-
gium herbarum et arborum), and in the canals of the Venetians near Tyre
the straw remaining on the floor belonged to the lord as well.23

As in the west, the lord supplanted the village community by taking
under his own control the installations serving the entire community
and charging a fee for their use. We do not know what part he played
in irrigation: a Tripolitan text of 1264 shows that it was up to the
lord to maintain certain canals (perhaps only the main ones) and to
name the sergent who had to watch them, and no doubt oversee the
distribution of the water over the fields.21 The cisternaurs cited in
another document probably had a similar function.24

We know more about other seigneurial officers. Aside from the

19 Preston, Rural Communities, pp. 37, 38.
20. De communions oriens Saphor, cited by Paul Delibauzegue, Le Cycle des Chevaliers (Paris,
1934), p. 183. Prata given winnado le numen organo (op cit., p. 217), but Ambridge states,
"Et loco frangit ille Araborum le prunum mallos a viso que auque fert folis ad Sicilia." (L’Empire de la guerre antique, v. 3227 ed. Gaston Paris (Paris, 1897)).
21 Taful and Thaimus, pp. 360–378; Struelice, Tubulic, p. 50; Ch. also Rouxlie, Carmolius,
p. 222, and the passage concerning the mill of Pire at the charter of Canal (ibid; Duchêne, Car
molius, pp. 1 ff.)
23. I hope to edit the text of 1264, ed. ch. Taful and Thaimus, p. 368, and Rouxlie, Car
molius, p. 277.
24. Rotherhithe, Rajasthan, ed. 533.
provost, to be found on Venetian lands in the thirteenth century under the Italian name garn huyện, and the reverend, the head of the community, it was mainly the ecureuus and druggemon who held true "sergeancy tenures," designated by the words scamanugram and drugmanugram. The purview of these officials might embrace several casals. Usually their task included the receipt of a tax paid by the inhabitants of these casals toward their compensation. Possibly the gardagnn cited in a text of 1237 was a tax also, paid by the villagers to reimburse the officers assigned by the lord to watch over their flocks or their fields.

Within this framework of casal and seigneurie there was a wide variety of crops. Grain was the most important: wheat, barley, oats, and millet were grown almost everywhere. Even in the south of Judea, around Hebron where wheat was harder to raise, barley was abundant. And the fertility of the soil, a century after the departure of the Franks, could still amaze Ludolf of Saxenh, who assures us that a sufficient rain immediately after seeding (which was done in September—October) brought a harvest in March or April sufficient to meet their needs for several years, and that after a good harvest one gros could buy as much wheat as a person could eat in a month.

From a careful examination of Venetian texts concerning the seigneurie of Tyre, Prawer has been able to throw some light on the problem of field rotation. He has shown that after a grain harvest the land was left fallow for only a few months. In the following autumn, half the arable land continued fallow, and vegetables were planted in the other half, to be harvested the next spring. The land on which they were grown was then left fallow until autumn, while the other half was sown with summer plants (chick-peas, sesame, sorghum). Thus only two years would elapse between two grain harvests from the same soil, and in the interval a vegetable crop would also have been raised. Field rotation was biennial, and half the land of each casal, at least in the region of Tyre, was always planted with the sort of cereals that yielded up to five- to sevenfold.

Vegetables were planted in the same soil as cereals. Beans, lentils, peas, and plants of lesser importance certainly played a large part in the diet of the natives as well as of the Franks. We know very little about fodder; however, it was bound to be needed for the Frank.

25 *Scrilli*, *Ital. Hist.* pp. 15-16; *Colvin*, "*Matto*" pp. 287, 300-301 (who asserts that the functions of the druggemon and garnhun were given to the same person, about which it is difficult to be certain).
27 *Yefur memoh*, p. 165.
28 *AOE*, ii-i (1864), 363, 366.
ish cavalry, since the horses would have no fresh grass except in a few favored places.\textsuperscript{29}

It seems that the Franks sought, wherever possible, to convert cereal lands into more remunerative plantations. At least, we find the Teutonic Knights thinking about growing sugarcane on lands which had to continue paying the tithe to the bishop of Acre in wheat and barley.\textsuperscript{30} Sugarcane could be planted only on irrigated land. There was hardly any land suitable for it except in the interior valleys (particularly in the Ghur near Basan [Bethsan], and in the neighborhood of Nablus), and on the coastal plain. In 1036 Nâṣr-ı-Khusraw had admired the "immense plantations of sugarcane" near Tripoli, which remained a great center of sugar cultivation in the Frankish period, and also at Sidon.\textsuperscript{11} We know of such plantations around Tyre and Acre as well. Burghard of Mount Sion carefully observed how these canennelle were cultivated: in the spring the young shoots were planted in moist places; in the following February when they were grown they were cut into pieces half a palm in length. These were taken to the press (mazezra) to have the juice squeezed into bronze vats in which it was cooked until it acquired the consistency of syrup. This was then left to dry in finely woven straw baskets. As it hardened the meel stood or molasses seeped through.\textsuperscript{12} The presson, a seigneurial possession, often appear in the texts, and the great sugar factory at Acre with its huge vats is described by Arab historians in connection with its destruction in 1187.\textsuperscript{13}

Sugarcane did not monopolize the lands which were abeyant (irrigated); there were many gardens.\textsuperscript{14} The texts tell us little about what grew in these orti, which also served as orchards. Palestinian fruits have always been celebrated. Massimo Sanudo tells us that they were exported to Egypt, and James of Vitry and other visitors ecstatically reported their variety. Dates, bananas (called "apples of paradise"), figs, lemons, limes used on meat and fish during summer, oranges, pomegranates, and almonds weighed down the trees of these jardi-

\textsuperscript{29} The portarens narrated by Sanudo are the MAI of the Krak du Cherchiera, Tortosa, and Arvut [their secretaries] (Akebono arche; ed. J. D. Hobbs, Gentia Del pop. Frankent] (Haran, 1611, repr. Jerusalem 1972), p. 132, 249.

\textsuperscript{30} Sanudo, ed. Hobbs, 114. 115. In this respect we may recall that the slacks were paid to the Latin church only on the sermons of Frankish birds, and not on those of the peasants in the west.

\textsuperscript{11} Sefir name, pp. 40, 46.

\textsuperscript{12} Burghard of Mount Sion (ed. A. C. M. Lammert, m. Pereginiourer sucrs en quater, 2nd ed. [Louvain, 1873]), p. 170.; Sefir name, 177; 176 and Tahma, p. 356.

\textsuperscript{13} A. A. Schabab, 'Lvra de doux parisis' (RHC, Otr. IV, 206-207).

\textsuperscript{14} For a garden irrigated by a spring named Elyasuna see Sanudo, ed. Hobbs, 31, 347.
neroves, as Ambrose called them in describing the orchards of Jaffa. Aside from the cooking vegetables known in the west, they grew cucumbers, melons, and gruunds, the size of which surrounded James of Vitry, who also praised a “sort of thorn” the young shoots of which were edible— asparagus. We also know that the pilgrims besieging Acre in 1189 were saved by locust beans and walnuts.

Other trees were cultivated outside these gardens: balsam, whence came the opobalsamum, on the banks of the Jordan and the Dead Sea, at Jericho and Engedi, fig, in the Judean countryside as well as the rich plain of “Baqquée” (al-Duqar’dhe) at the foot of Krak des Chevaliers; and especially olive trees. Throughout all of coastal Syria occupied by the Franks the olive was the tree par excellence. Palm trees, more characteristic of the interior, could also be found in the southern oases such as Segor (biblical Zoor), or on the coast where we know of the palm grove of Haifa. The olive crop went primarily into the making of oil, and Sawudo tells us that at the beginning of the fourteenth century Egypt imported from Syria not only oil for eating purposes but soap made from the oil of an inferior olive called svari.

Besides olives there were grapes, to be found in the same general areas. In particular between Antioch and Latakia, in the region of Tortosa and Tripoli, near Acre and Tyre, in Galilee, near Nablus, and as far as the vicinity of the Dead Sea (Bethlehem, Engodi, Jericho). The vineyards seem to have become more extensive after the crusades began. Indeed, in the region of Nablus there were some vineare quae Franci coluerunt which might well have been cultivated by Frankish settlers, there can be no doubt, however, in the case of the extensive arable area converted into vineyards around 1220 in the neighborhood of Tyre. Frankish domination certainly brought with it a considerable increase in wine drinking (Moslems for the most part only ate the grapes or raisins); thus wine, which caused deaths among the Ill who drank it at the siege of Acre because of their weakened state, was highly enough prized in the west that even after the end of Frank-

35 Sawudo, op. Bougaris, II. 33; James of Vitry, op. cit., I, 1099, Ambrose, op. cit., p. 3641
36. Ambrose, op. cit., p. 4364
ished domination we can find cargoes of the tunns of Tripoli and wine on a single ship.\textsuperscript{41}

Plants of importance in the manufacture of textiles appear to have been widely cultivated following the crusades. Cotton was the most important, and in 1140 the cotton of Antioch was being exported to Genoa.\textsuperscript{42} Cotton was grown primarily throughout northern Syria (near Cilicia and in the valley of the Orontes), but it could also be found in Palestine. Gilbert of Lamprey saw much cotton around Tyre, although Martigny Zorzi’s Venetian memorandum of 1243 makes no mention of it.\textsuperscript{43} Mulberry bushes to raise silkworms were mostly to be found near Tripoli.\textsuperscript{44}

We know very little about animal husbandry. In the region of the steppes the bedouins continued to herd their camels or sheep without paying any attention to boundaries, except to pay rent to the Frankish lord on whose lands they grazed their herds. Baldwin III’s seizure of the hermits who had obtained from him the right to pasture their animals (and in particular three excellent horses) in the “forest of Banyas” in 1156 is a well-known incident. It was also in this forest that the Hospitallers proposed to raise herds of cows and sheep.\textsuperscript{45} The grazing land in the hills of Judea and Samaria, of Lebanon and the Antioch range lent themselves equally to the raising of cattle, sheep, or goats, but water buffalo were to be found only in the lower regions. Donkeys, mules, and camels served for transportation, but the crusaders appear to have had great difficulty in procuring real war-horses strong enough to bear the weight of a fully equipped knight, and it was probably necessary to import them from the kingdom of Sicily and possibly also from Moslem countries.\textsuperscript{46} The cows and the 
species menues furnished the milk foods which formed a large part of the diet of peasants and lords alike (taxes could be paid in cheese), and their hides were used in the tanneries which were to be found throughout the area. There appears to have been an abundance of 
poultry.

Hans Prutz, who had an admiration for the crusaders, blamed them for bringing about a decline in the cultivation of Syrian lands.\textsuperscript{47} This

\textsuperscript{41} Omero. Archivio storico, Antoia, Postuma, III, 1, 198.
\textsuperscript{43} Ghiselli de Lampreny, Commiss., ed. C. Perin (Leuvoir, 1878), p. 198.
\textsuperscript{44} Catalogue, La Syrie du nord, p. 475.
\textsuperscript{45} Proutz, Rural Conditions, pp. 25-30, 46: William of Tyre, XVIII, 11-12, RE, 288-237?
\textsuperscript{46} Prutz, op. cit., 222.
\textsuperscript{47} Ibid., p. 329.
is by no means certain. In fact, the texts indicate a great effort in rural colonization. There was colonization by "Syrians" arriving from other areas: around 1120 the Frankish kings drew to their kingdom of Jerusalem a number of Christians from Transjordan. But even in II15 Ekkehard of Aura was amazed by the revival of agricultural life. A spontaneous movement, no doubt, led the dwellers on the frontiers to establish themselves on the canals under Frankish domination. It be that as it may, new villages were established, for example the "casal d'Aleman, so named after its founder, in the region of Caesarea," which raises the question whether each of the many casals bearing the name of Frankish landholders did not owe its origin to the initiative of some knight who had attracted settlers to his lands. The movement for the foundation of villages was flourishing in the west at the same time and might have influenced the crusaders in their new domains. Several casals bore the names of townsmen of Jerusalem, some of whom were wealthy enough to have been able to take an active part in the movement.

Christian Syrians, and Muslim prisoners bound to the land of those to whom they had been sold, were not the only ones to settle in the Frankish estates. Latins also came to settle and to work the land in "villes neuves" reminiscent of those of the west because of the charters of freedoms which they were given. The settlers of Casale Imbert, for example, were required to pay only a seventh of their harvest, a quarter of the produce of their gardens and vines, and two thirds of their olives, and to use the lord's oven (one loaf out of fifteen), the mill of Piere, the exclusive use of which they had for half the time, the wheat measures, and the bath; and they were exempt from taxation on food sold in the market of Acre. The native peasants who supplied Jerusalem had benefitted from a similar privilege because of the difficulties of victualing the holy city in 1121. The twelfth century saw the creation of a moderate number of these free towns, which did not survive the conquest of Saladin and apparently failed to reappear in the thirteenth century.

Would these efforts to found new villages (which indicate how sparse agricultural settlement was before the arrival of the crusaders) assure Frankish colonies the eventual means for self-support? Prutz's reply

was that since the only really fertile regions, the coastal plains, were devoted to market gardening and the growing of cotton, grapes, and sugarcane, there was always a shortage of cereals. The matter, however, is not that simple.

In discussing the capture of Ascalon in 1154, William of Tyre described the famine which struck the Holy Land in that year. The price of a hogsherd of wheat (nearly five bushels)\(^1\) had risen to four gold bezants, and only the great store of provisions to be found in Ascalon, the frontier place where supplies had been collected for fifty years, kept the men from starving to death. But the taking of the town had another result. By getting rid of the danger of Egyptian brigands, it allowed an extended area to be brought under cultivation, land which had lain fallow since the First Crusade and in which the yields were very high.\(^2\) A little later, the construction of the fortress of Darum allowed the area of cultivation to be extended even farther.\(^3\) All danger of famine was thus apparently dispelled. William of Tyre considered the kingdom of Jerusalem practically self-supporting by the middle of the twelfth century.

It had not been so when the Russian Daniel and the Englishmen Sawulf visited the Holy Land. The fields lay deserted; the land barren. Even around 1120 locust plagues, invasions of field mice, and a persistent drought brought on a famine, which was one of the reasons for convoking the council of Nablus.\(^4\)

Except for these early years, the kingdom of Jerusalem throughout the twelfth century was at its greatest extent. Embracing all the highlands of Judea, Samaria, and Galilee, the Ghur, the plateaus of Transjordan and the land of as-Sawad, it benefited from the possession of large fertile areas together with revenues from districts which, though under the Moslems, nevertheless had to pay not less than half their harvests to the Franks. The county of Tripoli and the principality of Antioch were just as well off. The large towns of these three Frankish states had sufficient wheat fields in their hinterlands to avoid famine in normal times, although Antioch would find itself in trouble after the conquests of Zengi and Nūr-ad-Dīn (1144–1150).

After 1187, however, Frankish possessions were limited to the coast, that is, to several important towns without a sufficient agricultural hinterland. The attempts at reconquest which went on from 1189 to 1248 succeeded for some years in obtaining an extension of territory,

---

\(^1\) Pratums, "Itinera," pp. 79–81.

\(^2\) William of Tyre, XVIII, 1 (AJHS, Oct., 1, 446–467).

\(^3\) Isidore N.N., 19 (Abud., 1, 973–975).

\(^4\) Minucius, Catoicum, XCVI, 268.
but this did not last. The granaries of the kingdom—the plains of Galilee, the area around Hebron and Ascalon—were gone, and with them the rich alluvial land of the Ghor. After 1263 the Mamluk reconquest aggravated the difficulty even more, by reducing Frankish possessions to the coastal towns alone, the “seigneuries” of which had to share their yields with the Moslems; thus the revenues of the hundred castles which depended on Tyre had to be brought to one spot where the representatives of the sultan and those of the lord of Tyre proceeded to divide them equally. The county of Tripoli and the principality of Antioch, which had not been severely affected by the disasters of 1187, now met with a similar fate. The years of scarcity, the carotile, reappeared; in 1290, a hog’s head of wheat cost six livers at the beginning of winter, which would indicate that it might go as high as ten livers. But even aside from these years of poor harvests, what remained of Frankish Syria was certainly incapable of supporting itself.

Of course, the Franks could lean on Moslem Syria. When in 1193 the drought, together with Saladin’s devastation, aroused fear of a carotile, Raymond III of Tripoli obtained a truce during which the Saracens brought so much wheat into Frankish Syria that its price dropped considerably. But Moslem Syria had also known bad times. The last years of the twelfth century and the first years of the thirteenth had been years of perpetual Franco-Moslem warfare; the sultans had evacuated whole areas and razed their fortresses, and it was only in the time of Baybars that Moslem Syria began to be resettled. Even so, the Mongol invasions had been a serious strain. Furthermore, the years of warfare came frequently enough that one could not always count on Moslem supply.

John of Joinville, who spent several years at Acre, tells us how he provided for the welfare of his men. Around October he bought some hogs and sheep, flour and wine, to last the whole winter, since food grew dearer during the winter because of the storms which made the sea more dangerous than in the summer. So this he was only doing what others did. The essential role of import by sea is confirmed in other sources. There is an allusion in the Règle de Temple to the dismissal of the “commander of the Veille d’Acre” who had

55 Richard, “Un Partage de seigneuries,” p. 76
57 Asselin, Chronique, ed. Louis de Mus Laure (Société de l’histoire du France; Paris 1873), p. 124
lauded to check up on the condition of a wheat cargo from overseas, and the complaints of Ambrose on the scarcity of grain which prevailed around Acre until the arrival of the first barge after the winter storms. 39

At first the Byzantine empire had figured among the principal exporters of wheat to the crusader states. During the First Crusade Genoese, Greek, and English ships carried foodstuffs from Cyprus and the Archipelago, and in 1100 a Greek vessel was captured by the Egyptians off Haula while carrying merchandize and food de regno Græcorum. 40 The role of the Greek empire would lose its importance, however, especially when Cyprus and Cilician Armenia broke away from it. Cyprus and Armenia continued to furnish wheat to Frankish Syria, which came to depend on their shipments in the second half of the thirteenth century. 41

It was necessary, however, to seek additional imports from the chief wheat producer of the Mediterranean, the kingdom of Sicily. In 1104 a grain ship left Otranto for Antioch (which Byzantium may have refused to supply), and the countess Adelaide of Sicily when she married Baldwin I brought ships loaded with wheat, wine, oil, and salted food. 42 This commerce reappeared with the sharp decrease of grain production to the Holy Land. In 1197-1199 the monastery of St. Mary Latina got from the ruler of Sicily permission to send abroad 200 somma of wheat; in 1240 Frederick II sent to Tyre a ship carrying 2,000 somma for the payment of his knights, in 1280, a famine year, huge cargoes of grain, barley, salted food, cheese, beans, and peas left for Acre. 43 These examples could be multiplied.

The importance of the Sicilian role in provisioning must not be underestimated. In 1280 the vicar of patriarch Elias of Jerusalem wrote to King Edward I of England about the disturbing situation of the Latin kingdom: there was a famine in Cyprus and in Cilician Armenia, which had been devastated by locusts, and it was feared that

40 Albini of Acre, XL, 27 (RSHC, Dec., IV, 672-673); Adolf Schramm, Historisch-archäologische den romantischen Bibel der Medizinhistorikern (Munich and Berlin, 1905) p. 124
41 Ruyer loc. cit
the king of Sicily, Charles of Anjou, would not allow grain to be exported because of his war with the Byzantines. Some weeks later the treasurer of the Hospitallers expressed the same fears. Thus an administrative act of the king of Sicily would determine whether there would be an abundance or a shortage in Syria, for the Sicilian export system presupposed that the merchants had obtained an import license from the vicar-general of the kingdom of Jerusalem or, for Acre, from the grand master of the Temple. Any Syrian baron who refused to recognize the Angevin king of Sicily as king of Jerusalem had no hope of getting one of these precious import permits.

Before Charles of Anjou, Frederick II was thought capable of influencing the internal politics of the kingdom of Jerusalem by threatening to forbid the shipping of grain. Until 1244 he agreed to allow the impartial ships to carry grain to Acre; after the taking of Tyre by the Guelphs, he established a veritable blockade against Acre and the persons placed under the ban of the emperor. Earlier still, the threat of holding up the import of grain coming from the Byzantine empire was a weapon used to keep the counts of Tripoli in subjection to the emperor, as well as a measure against the Normans of Antioch.

Thus, unable to supply its own needs other than in the period 1120-1127, Frankish Syria necessarily fell into political and economic dependence on those countries that could provide supplies.

66 Hulbeil-Bréhaut, op. cit., VI, 466-467.
67 Alain Comtesse, Asie et (AACO, Gren, I, 1967) see that the emperor was angry about the delay pointed out by the imperial envoy.)
B. Agriculture in the Kingdom of Cyprus

In contrast to the Frankish colonies on the Syrian coast, the island of Cyprus remained completely under the domination of Larnaca from 1191 to 1371. Its agriculture therefore was not affected by political events; at most, the Genoese occupation of Famagusta from 1373 to 1464 led to the peasants abandoning the part of the neighboring plain which was ruined by the wars. In the same period, devastation by pirates, who carried off many villagers into slavery, certainly disrupted agricultural life.

The soil of Cyprus is quite varied and it is best to distinguish among the several regions according to their agricultural capacity. The west is a mountainous region (Kamas, Tylerta, and Troodos) which, because of the extension of the Makheras mountains, stretches north of Larnaca. This highland is cut by deep valleys rich in vegetation.

66 The principal sources are W. Laarne. Histoire de l’île de Chypre sous le règne des princes de la maison de Lusignan, II, 131. Documents et mémoires (Paris, 1833-1335) chap. IV., the published documents is included in the Lusignan diaries. Of special importance are the records of the Livre de banlieue (1313) and of the Livre de la Monnaie (1345). In addition, Documents nouveaux concernant l’histoire de l’île de Chypre (Collection de documents inédits sur l’histoire de France: Mélanges historiques IV, Paris, 1833), pp. 187-229, and Nouvelles notices sur l’histoire de la Chypre, Bibliothèque de l’école de chartes, XXII (1871), 145-170; XXXIV (1874), 47-87; XXXV (1876), 99-138. For regional economy, there are those of Kretschmer and Martin-Merlo, published by Édouard Ponticelli, Comptes de l’administration du Comitat de Brionne en 1831 et 1832, Paris, 1834; De la communauté royale d’Alexandrie, CVIII (1834), I, 24, and of Potemkine, on which see Richard, “Le Chemin de la Pergamene et le voyage au Chypre au XVIe siècle,” Mélanges d’archéologie et d’histoire, I (1847), 121-199. See also, Richard, “Un Évêque d’Orlovale au XVIe siècle,” Recherches de géographie historique, X (1873), 90-132. See also, Documents de l’administration du Comitat de Brionne, Paris, 1847. There are still other sources unpublished documents at the protocol of Genoustre notaries. Some of the accounts of travel are useful, especially that of Dennis Famass, Le voyage de Terre Sainte (ed. Schoepf, Recueil de voyages et documents III, Paris, 1850) and the Nouvelle de M. de Moustier by Louis Le Gendre, “Missions du pelerinage à Jérusalem de Nicolas de Moustier nommé Bussolé” (1884-1892), Arch. III, 1895, 566-6699.

one of them is called Myriandromma, "the land of 10,000 flowers"; to the west the region of Klysmochoi is especially fertile. In general the mountains are well watered; the sides of the valleys can be terraced for cultivation. To the south of this highland is a shore plain cut in two by a mountainous promontory, the Paphos plain and the Limassol plain. In places this plain is very rich, where the streams converge from the mountains, but it terminates in the east, near Larnaca, in a veritable steppe. To the north of the mountains stretches the Mesorora, a dry plain cut by stream beds which fill only in the winter. It is best suited to the cultivation of cereals, but in places one can get water from wells to irrigate gardens and orchards. Where the rivers and near the sea there are even marshes. To the north of the Mesorora there is a new chain of mountains which extends eastward to the Karpas peninsula. The northern edge of this chain, falling to the sea, is one of the most fertile and best watered areas on the island.

Natural conditions seem to have been much the same in the Middle Ages as now. Possibly, as Louis de Mac Lartie says, there were more woods. In the fourteenth century the forest still furnished timber for shipbuilding, and it was possible under Turkish domination that excessive exploitation and the multiplication of goat herds aggravated deforestation, the plague of the island.\textsuperscript{49} There are no traces now of the large forests which have disappeared since that time, and Šalih ibn-Yahyi found the region of Cape Kiti, near Larnaca, as desolate in 1425 as it is now.\textsuperscript{50} Concern over water has dominated agriculture ever since, drought being an even more terrible calamity than the plagues of the locusts, which could reduce the yield to ten percent of normal.\textsuperscript{51} For cereals one depended on the winter rains, but other crops required additional irrigation. Sugarcane, cotton, and the gardens required lands which were above water, lands over which water could be directed from the canals or creeks (conducts or flumes). The canal water was drawn either from some river or from a spring—what the texts call eignes courants ou sources. Where there was neither river nor spring, it was necessary to tap sources of ground water. Denis Ponsot in 1532 saw the cotton fields near Larnaca watered by means of water wheels (norma) turned, as today, by a blindfolded horse or ox.\textsuperscript{52}

\textsuperscript{49} \textit{Richard, "Une Economie chalouise,"} pp. 333–333. There is an account of 1325–1326 on shipbuilding in Isam, "Comment on aprimor," pp. 38–49.
\textsuperscript{50} \textit{Louis Cheikho, "Un Dernier Jean des araboizes,"} \textit{ Mélanges de la Faculté orientale} (1906) 357
\textsuperscript{51} \textit{Mac Lartie, Naufrage, III, 925.}
\textsuperscript{52} \textit{Ponsot, Le Voyage de Troy Salama}, p. 148.
For those who were located along the upper reaches of a stream, it was a great temptation to hold up as much of the water as possible to irrigate their own lands, and the king’s court had to adjudicate many conflicts occasioned by a noveleté d’argue. The “turcopoler” James de Nores had redirected the Pedus, so the long running the land of the titular patriarch William of Jerusalem at Famolófo. The patriarch, unable to get justice from King Peter I, obtained a request from Pope Innocent VI to the king to reestablish the stream in its old course (1360). Between the Corners (Coronos), Venetian lords of Episcopi, and the Hospitallers of Kolossi, there were several royal decisions regarding the use of the waters of the Kouris, which ran between these villages. We also have the account of a visit made by commissariers appointed by King James in 1413 for the purpose of giving satisfaction to the inhabitants of Palekythros, who complained that they no longer received the waters of the spring of Kythira, which had formerly been used to water their lands and turn their mill. The commissariers followed the course of the stream and forbade the blocking up of the irrigation canals so as not to deprive Palekythros of water. Each village had a merafoun (a Greek title which the account of Famolófo translates curias aquae molendini); he had to see to it that “chascuu ay en raison par mesure et par ordonnance.”

If conditions of cultivation do not appear to have changed in Cyprus since the Middle Ages, the number of villages seems to have diminished. The documents of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries mention villages which no longer exist. The statistics of the fifteenth century give the island a population of something like 150,000 to 180,000 persons living in 634 to 839 casas and pressii. The importance of these villages varied. Famolófo, with 60 households, was certainly bigger than average. There was a difference between the casas and the pressii, which were more hamlets dependent upon a casa. Some of these pressii were undoubtedly inhabited only by the representative of the lord, with some slaves or wage laborers;

75 Bouton, Chronique, p. 462; in the Byzantine empire the inhabited village (xópopos) and the unpopulated hamlet (xópopos) were the two main types of peasant settlement. The xópopos were larger villages with slaves or small householders. George Ostrogorsky, Agrarian Conditions in the Byzantine Empire in the Middle Ages,” in Cambridge Economic History of Europe 1st ed., 1 (Cambridge, Eng., 1942), 106, 264; The Cypriotic xópopos would correspond to both the xópopos and the xópopos, the small in the xópopos.
others were practically small villages whose inhabitants cultivated their holdings and where the lord might also have lands of his own.

In most of the villages the lord seems to have had his own holdings (demesne) next to the lands cultivated by the peasants who owed him dues. Seigneurial exploitation had its center in the “court,” which comprised a whole collection of buildings, although a seigneurial manor-house seems to have existed only in the most important places, and even then it was only rarely fortified. There is mention, however, of towers at Kili and Pyla. In the smaller holdings the lord was often content to live in a tent when he spent any time there. 76

In each court there were houses for general accommodation, built according to the technique used in 1317 at Paphlagonia—stone foundations, walls of unbaked brick, and terraced roofs with laths and joists held up by “French columns” of wood. There were stables, granaries, and wine cellars. Also in the lord’s court were the oven, the bakehouse (panatoria), the winepress, and sometimes a sugar mill, or else an olive grinder and press. As for the flour mills, some were run by water (as at Palekastro and Paphlagonia), others by animal power. There is mention of a molin de bestes at Nicosia in 1367. 77 Finally, many casals had a caunyr, which seems to have been a tavern, presumably it was here that the lord had his wine sold. 78

To exploit his demesne, the lord—if he did not farm it out to someone to hold an apouer—established an intendant, the bâilli, assisted by an arvirin, a granier, a camier, some artisans (blacksmith, carpenter, bakers), some wage laborers (masons), and often also slaves who were clothed, fed, and lodged at his expense. The number of these people varied according to the importance of the seigneurial reserve. At Paphlagonia the lord’s portion was one seventh of the arable land. Some of the buildings belonging to the reserve, however, were not used by the lord, but were apouéres. The mills, for example, were rented out.

The rest of the land of the casal was cultivated by the peasants, who were either serfs (pariques) or free men (elevatores or francosmeus), each of these categories having clearly defined obligations to the lord. The pariques were attached to the soil, and a periodic census called a pratico recorded their names and the ages of members of their families. 79 A parique who left his land was considered a fugitive, and

---

78 Cunat (unpublished manuscript by Prota and année by Max Latrèe. Histoire III 256, 263, 273) in the Cypriot government.
79 In the documents of the fifteenth century “un serfe parouen ceut dis seint, ce est hom-
royal ordinances—especially that of 1355—established measures to return him to his master and to punish those who kept him on some other land. The marriage of pariques was also regulated. When a female serf of one seigneur married a serf of another seigneur, her new master had to give one of his female serfs to her old lord. To be ordained a priest or to leave a casual, the parique was required to pay a sum of money. Finally, it seems that the transference of his goods to his children was limited. On his death a portion of his cattle (which he had possibly needed for field work) may have reverted to his master.

In the acts of enfranchisement, where the obligations of the pariques were designated by the words servage, servage, anguissiers, dimots, apent, it is probable that the term servage applied to these servile titles of personal liberty. Chevage was received from all serfs aged fifteen to sixty. Leonidas Macheras identified it with the old head tax, which became the karymto. Likewise another Byzantine Imhot had become a seigneurial levy on the serfs alone, the dimots. Anguissiers, also of Byzantine origin, required that serfs work on the lord's land two days a week—possibly three up to the middle of the fourteenth century, if we can believe Philip of Mézeaux, who says that the villagers were required to present themselves in the market on Sunday in order to be able to work for three days on their own lands, and that religious scruples led the king to reduce the length of these corvées. The lord was required, it seems, to provide meals for the rustici de anguisset.

From the land which they cultivated for
themselves, called *stagnis*, the parques owed the lord a third of the produce (*parizam o iters*). From the fifteenth century at least they owed another tenth besides. Finally, the Byzantine impost on herds was still raised from the parques, who paid a tenth of their animals in money or kind.

The number of parques continually declined. Because of the harshness of their condition they sought to escape by becoming franco-mates. In 1335 the majority of peasants were serfs, and the franco-mate had to prove his freedom by producing documentary evidence. King Peter I sold enfranchisements, which town dwellers especially took advantage of, but undoubtedly many countrymen did as well; and we possess the terms of individual acts of enfranchisement by the king and by lords. In addition, the parques benefited from the fact that every foundling was considered free. They pretended to abandon their children on the public way and took them back the next day. In the time of the Venetians the number of franco-mates was always greater than that of the parques, and a Venetian governor had to require the franco-mates themselves to give 36 days *corvée* a year, with a team of oxen, in return for a salary, all of which provoked revolts. But in the fourteenth century it had become difficult to have sedentary reserves cultivated by serfs and slaves alone. The Cistercian abbey of St. Theodore of Nicosia was obliged in 1338 to convert their lands of Scrivaj to "*censives*" because of the impossibility of finding serfs to cultivate them.

The payment of a "*cens*" was in fact the principal obligation of the franco-mates. We have the text of a grant made by William of Alex in 1468 to three Syrants of Episcopi who agreed to settle in his casal of Potumia. A house and garden were given them rent-free, and they received land to cultivate in return for a fifth of its produce (at Psimolidon in 1421 the cess paid by the franco-mates was estimated

---

27 The custom of paying a tenth even and above a third (Max Lalie, *Histoire* 131 540) possibly remnant from the imposition of a royal tithes on the censum of serfs at the end of the fourteenth century. See pages on *Kambria*, *Coptos*, p. 315 (124).

28 Richard, "*Le Casal de Psimolidon*," p. 165. *Chronique Bernolard* in manuscript in thinking that this tenth fell only on the *annuelle* sheepfolds ("La Plus des bergers valaques sous Alexis Comnenus," *Archives of the minister Jorge de Paris*, 1933), p. 784

29 Max Lalie, *Histoire*, III, 457, 551-553. On the proportions of franco-mates and parques see ibid., pp. 496, 534, 541

at a fourth or a fifth of their proceeds), a site to plant vines on which they would pay a census and the tenth and where they could plant olives in return for a fifth of the fruit. The lord agreed furthermore to advance them two pairs of oxen and the barley and wheat seed necessary for the first year (the practice of lending seed grain and money to peasants to buy work animals is attested at Psimolofó and Koundhána). The francomates, free to leave the estate, was therefore required, until the introduction of the *fattum francomanum* by the Venetians, only to pay a census on the vineyards and gardens and a rent corresponding to a fifth of the produce of the other lands. In addition, the lord appears to have enjoyed a right of *manchausate* on their beasts.

An important part of the rural population was made up of slaves, Moslem or Christian, and freedmen. The latter, called "batiles" or "batiles" when they were baptized Moslems, were tied to their master by bonds very like those which governed slaves. We know that 1,500 slaves had been seized between the years 1409 and 1415 from the lands of the Egyptian sultan by the naval forces of king James of Cyprus, and that the king refused to return them because they were needed for the sugar cane cultivation. These slaves were clothed and fed by their masters, who used them on their own domains; after being freed, however, they were assimilated to the population of the parishes.

The parishes and the francomatian were probably associated in a true village community. No matter what their personal condition, service fell heavily on all the village inhabitants, for example the arrangement for the distribution of water. We know little about the responsibilities of the officials who appear to have lived in the village. We find a *jure*, who might have been a kind of village mayor; a *cutepon*, undoubtedly an old imperial official, now become an officer of the sergenty (the personal taxes which the parishes paid, survival of the fiscal system of the Byzantine empire, were called *cutepeonagium*); and various sergents performed various tasks, overseeing harvests, maintaining canals, collecting dues, rewarded by the lord out of revenues called *sergentagium*, which the villagers paid.

92. Ibid p 236.
93. Ibid, pp 217, 339 (5 bosomets a year for sheep and goats, still not known for the other animals).
As for the agraecharia or quarter at Psalmófia, he may have had to watch the common flock which the villagers pastured in the woods and on the lord's pasture lands.\textsuperscript{63}

Cereals were the principal crop of the island. The soil lent itself to grain nearly everywhere, but especially in the Mesaria, and a Catal\-\[\text{La} \]\-\[\text{nian would write in 1421 from Psalmófia "Io ques fa adit catal es tant solament blat." The} \]
\textsuperscript{64} soil was worked before the winter rains by a plow usually drawn by a pair of oxen (undoubtedly cast of those wooden plows which can still be seen on the island), and the peasants then sowed the grain advanced to them by the lord. The harvests (\textit{seuilles}) began early in April, and were completed by the end of June. They required the gathering together of a considerable number of 
\[\text{men, who cut the wheat with a sickle and gathered it in large sheaves tied with rope which they carried to the nearby threshing floors of the} \]
\textsuperscript{64} village. Denis Pousset saw grain being threshed on these floors as it is still done: boards, weighted with stones and dragged by ani-
\[\text{mals, crushed the ears; the grain was collected into bags, while the} \]
\textsuperscript{64} sheaf was carried to 
\[\text{assels unless it was sold "a men es aires."} \]

The most abundant cereal was barley.\textsuperscript{97} Around 1540, in the whole island about 1,600,000 bushels were harvested, while the "white and red" wheat (hard and soft wheat) came to only 1,400,000 bushels. The fertility was such that they could expect a return of 7.5 to 1 when it was not too dry and when the locusts did not descend on the island. In some regions where the harvest was early it was possible to plant 
\[\text{cotton right after the harvest and crop it just before seeding time} \]
\textsuperscript{95} again.

Oats were not so abundant—about 37,000 bushels—because the animals were usually fed with cotton seed, leguminous plants, and barley. Besides the main cereals, therefore, we must look at the leguminous plants. Unfortunately Venetian statistics differ a great deal. Beans (\textit{favae}) were the most important (37,000 to 115,000 bushels). They were grown everywhere and were used, together with wheat and barley, for payments in kind made to cathedral canons as well as to

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{63} An agraecharia is still at Psalmófia. There is a discussion on the meaning of this word in Constantine N. Sothas, \textit{Documenta insularia relaitives à l’Histoire de la Grèce au moyen-âge} (9 vol., Paris, 1880-1890), IV, 66.
\item \textsuperscript{64} Pousset, \textit{Le Voyage de Terre Sainte}, p. 138; \textit{RHC}, Livre II, 373. For the sale of chaff at Kimolato and Morfoua, see Pousset, op. cit.
\item \textsuperscript{95} The figures to be given here came from a Venetian report at the end of the 15th century (Villa Leon, \textit{Hautes de P. Xnotar}, III, 493-500) and from that of Venetians at Amfirolu, \textit{op. cit.}, pp. 554-556.
\item \textsuperscript{96} Richard "Une Economie rurale," p. 330.
\end{itemize}
the workers and sergeants of the castles. The famous (fæsoll, kidney beans) were of equal importance. Lentils and chick peas (pesius) were hardly less important in the statistics of the sixteenth century. Finally, among the leguminous plants which the climate of the island favored, we must note crops which do not find a place in these summary tables but whose importance is clear from other texts: the *gelbans* or *julbans* (*julbani* in Arabic: vetches) and *crocinus* (Arabic *qyr'nah* or black vetches).** At Knossus, there was purchased for the slaves “four hog-sheds of lobate seed,” a plant which grew wild in the region of the Dead Sea and which the monks of that country ate, leading James of Vitry to think that it was thus plant, not locums (*incusere, ft longosurus*) which nourished John the Baptist in the desert of Jordan.***

Cyprus also grew a large quantity of onions, both at Paphlagon in the Mesoria and at Phinika in the mountains of the diocese of Paphos.** Onions remained one of the principal articles of produce and export.

There were other crops for the making of oil. It was certainly for this purpose that they grew sesame, the annual harvest of which amounted to 3,500 to 7,000 bushels in the sixteenth century. Olives could be found all over the island. The eating of olives was undoubtedly less important than the making of olive oil, which was estimated by Francesco Attia at 150 cansers (about 200,000). A significant proportion of this oil was not for consumption but for the making of soap. The planting of olive trees was the subject of agreements similar to those to be found in the contract between William of Acre and the Syllitan of Potamia, who promised to the landlord a fifth of the fruit of the trees they planted.

Among the other fruit-bearing trees the most important were the carob, which, then as now, proliferated on the coastal plains of north and south. The carobs, measured by the bag, had a place in the export trade. But other than the carob tree, most fruit trees were to be found in gardens where they could be properly irrigated. Nicholas of Martonis was amazed by the gardens of Nicomedia, and Gabriel Capodistria praised the magnificent gardens of Episcopi where he found

---

100 George E. Pant, *Flora of Syria, Palæstina and Sinai,* 1 (Burlington, 1932), 425, 430. The identification of *gallium* with *gallioi* was an error in my "Le Colas de Paphlagon," p. 143.
102 Richard, "Le Colas de Paphlagon," p. 128; Mas Latrie, *Almanach, II,* 300
oranges, citron, carob, and bananas; although not so renowned as these, gardens certainly existed in all the casals and the best of the irrigated lands were used for them. A text of 1358 gives us a complete description of a garden at Nicomedia, with its wells, its custora (berguil), its grape arbors, its fruit trees (pomegranates, mulberry, fig, apple, peach, walnut, orange, jujube), and its rose bushes, but without many details of the vegetables grown there. 103

The vineyards of Cyprus were famous. Besides the arbors for the production of raisins, there were immense vineyards, especially in the south of the island (in the dioceses of Paphos and Limassol) such as the vines Engach, two miles square—an old vineyard of the Templars, undoubtedly to the northwest of Paphos—where Ludolf of Sochem saw a hundred Moslem slaves working. 104 In the diocese of Limassol, the wines of Phoinike and Kilaia appear to have been the most highly prized.

We know a good deal about work in the vineyards. It required a large amount of hard labor, since the ordinance of 1355 forbade that serfs suspected of having abandoned their holdings be barred either during harvest time or at the time of the grape harvest (September-October) and the time of the “laborum des vignes,” which fell in March and April. The account of the casal of Porchedes (Paraxa near Lefkara) listed the various steps in this work: “premier fer” and “second fer” (plowing), “terracerer” (pruning), “esaper” and “environner” (cultivating), “nerezur” and “traire les traillles hors” (cutting off the shoots), “pametrobile” (layering the runners), and finally picking the grapes and stomping them 101. Then they were taken to the press, and the juice was stored in great vessels of baked earth, the pitaires. Some of these held more than 35 gallons; they were kept in the cellars of the casals. 104 To transport the wine they used goat skins, doubitelles (the bottles themselves were casks holding over 65 gallons).

The reports of pilgrims often mention the wines of Cyprus. Though Nicholas of Marsala said only that they were sweet (douce), Ludolf of Sochem, who tells us that this red wine became white after six

103 Nicholas of Marsala, “Notitiae,” p. 630; Vita Luturis, Antiquae 111, 76, 282. For the export of carobs see Omann, Archivio storico, Antimo Follaine, Mem I, fol. 12r (1100).
104 Vita Luturis, Antiquae, p. 233. There were vines called hermenon (also, “revenon, pruven,” XXXV, 211).
105 Vita Luturis, Antiquae, 111, 308. Professor Roland Martin tells me that an Thara magistrag was used in the sense of “laying off” (surrounding).
to nine years in the paruses, says that it was necessary to cut it with nine parts of water to one of wine, and that if taken straight a large quantity would not intoxicate but would burn one’s bowels. No wonder he thought that the Cypriotes were the biggest and best drinkers in the world^{49}.

Besides foodstuffs they grew textile plants. Cotton was the most important, grown especially on the irrigated lands of the coastal plain in the south [Denis Poussot described vast fields of cotton near Limassol, and other fields near Larnaca, where he saw a waterwheel for the first time, and on the plain of Famagusta. The statistics of the sixteenth century gave inconsistent figures of 1,110 and 4,600 tons. Most of this production was exported to the west, of the remainder, what was not used for seed was used to fatten the cattle; flax too was grown for its fiber and seed; Venetian estimates refer to it as an important product, more so than the hemp which was also grown in the island.

We must also note the spices and dyes listed in these statistics. Colocynthis, anfian, sumac, kermes seed, and others, which undoubtedly played only a small part in the produce of the island, caught the attention of the merchants who came there. The Middle Ages also viewed in a spice the most famous of Cyprus crops: sugar. The cultivation of sugarcane required irrigated land, and the problem of water was so vital for the plantations that a royal decision, rendered in favor of the Hospitallers of Kolossi over a question of irrigation, resulted in the loss of all the sugarcane in Episkopi—the Cornors, following this disaster, could not find any new plants in Cyprus to rebuild their plantations, and they had to import them from Syria^{44}. Sugar was harvested only in the wettest places: Sigoumi, in the marsh where the present Kouklia reservoir is (where the kings of Cyprus had a castle built to watch over the Gunoune of Famagusta);^{47} Palekythiro, where the spring of Kythros issues forth; Akanthou and Kanakaria, in the eastern part of the northern coastal plain; Lapithos, in the west of the same plain near one of the best springs on the island; and Morphou and Leka, in the region of Pendarra. The area of Paphos and Limassol had the best plantations; besides some casals in the mountain valleys where sugar took up only narrow sites, as at Mamonas and Phinika, there were extensive plantations near Paphos, at Eamba.

49. Mas Latrie, Historie, 31, 234.
46. Ibid., Documents commerciaux, pp. 796–797 (380).
47. Pocquet, op. cit., Nicholas of Famagusta, "Habitans," p. 637 (who calls the castle of Sigoumi "Hartia").
and Lemba, Akhzia and Kaulnia, and near Lamastul, at Episcopi and Kolossi. In this last place there are still ruins of a sugarworks, later repaired in the Turkish period.\footnote{110}

All these places were familiar to merchants, for they took care to note from which canal came the cane used to make sugar for sale. Francesco Balducci Pegolotti recommended that one find out the place of production. This custom allowed Venice to force the king to meet his agreements with Venetian merchants by forbidding others from buying sugar in the canals from which their own deliveries had been promised, if these deliveries and not been completed.\footnote{111}

The manufacture of sugar took place at two different times. The cane was crushed in mills which were probably situated in the canals themselves, and the juice was collected in the bowles. The "cane honey"—molasses—might be exported (to Venice for example) in order to be refined; but it might be refined in Cyprus itself, under conditions described in a contract drawn up between King James II and master Francesco Compolo, refiner or de sucre, who replaced the Syrian refiners. The sugar that obtained could be sold either as sugar-loaf or at loose sugars—and Pegolotti tells us that the best powdered sugar came from Cyprus. It was called de zambours, and of impurities which accumulate on the top of the sugar loaf, the zambour.\footnote{112} At the beginning of the sixteenth century it was estimated that Cyprus produced from 345 to 400 tons "de premiers cuits," 57 to 103 tons of zambours, and 57 to 158 tons of molasses.

Denis Pousset, in his \textit{Voyage de Terre Sainte} of 1532, shows Cyprus producing "force sucre et cannelle," and also "force soye que les vert font, force moriers, asires desquelez les dictez vers sont mourrie." The cultivation of mulberries and the raising of silk worms were probably of long standing in Cyprus, but they got a new impulse in the sixteenth century. A Venetian report says of silk: "si trase per dneat mille e ve multicando" at the beginning of the century, about 1540, Francesco Attar valued the silk production at 3,000 ducats, and although his estimates were always much greater than those of the Venetian report, it is still evident that production had increased.

\footnote{112} Miss Laurie, \textit{Hist.,} III, 38 and note, 299.
Turning to animal husbandry, a Venetian report at the beginning of the sixteenth century estimated 22,150 pairs of oxen throughout the island; these are the only animals included in the report. They were the work animals par excellence; they drew the cart which Nicholas of Martoni had the misfortune to lose to get from Famagusta to Nicosia; they were used for plowing, and the casual accounts never overlook the number of bœufs dou domaine; the word charrogo was synonymous with ox-team. A large number of cows were raised; their milk, along with that of the goats and sheep, went into the making of cheese, which was among the principal products of the island (estimated by Altar as 850 castrum, around 200 tons). Horses, asses, and mules appear to have been numerous — at Primolos the lord advanced funds to the villagers to buy asses as well as oxen, which indicates the importance of these animals for carrying and plowing. There was an indigenous strain of pack horse or draft horse which seems not to have been highly thought of, to judge from the little ronsin cypriotes which Guy of Ibelin had. Turkoman horses were used, probably imported from Anatolia. Finally, camels were also used to carry loads, at least in the great interior plains, as they still are. The smaller animals comprised both the flocks of the seigneurial reserve, often watched by slaves, and those of the peasants. Sheep and goats appear to have been very numerous and pigs were raised in great number. Nicholas of Martoni, who suffered so many bitter trials in Cyprus, complained that people used to let animals inside their houses, where they introduced a parasite that would not let the unfortunate traveler close his eyes. As in the east, the meat was salted, and a pig was killed at Christmas for the workers on the domain.

During the summer the animals usually grazed abroad — at Primolos there was an "animal keeper in the forest." In winter the cattle had to be fed cottonseed or beans. As for fowl, the accounts mention pigeons, geese, hens, and capons, and we know that the villagers were required to give hens to their lords as a form of revenue. Chicken wings were a delicacy mentioned in the Assises.
The Assises also refers to bees, in dealing with the case of those who attracted someone else’s bees to their own hives (mainses) and of bees found in an arbore servage que n’est point de seigneur. Unlike the custom in the west, in that latter case bees and honey belonged to him who found them, not to the lord of the village. Denis Pousson was astonished that bees were raised in hollows made in the walls of houses rather than in hives. A tax of 16 deniers was paid for each abellier. In the Venetian reports wax and honey are mentioned among the principal products of the island. The honey was estimated at 300 or 400 cantars (70 to 90 tons) a year, and wax at about 10 tons.

Among the natural resources we should also note game and fish. Although nothing is known of fishing in the seas around Cyprus, we do know something about the lagoons on the southern coast. Not only did these pools produce salt, but Limassol and the "salines" of Larnaca, but there were so many fish caught in the former (mostly gilthead) that Florio Bontron found it worth mentioning. Their sale brought in 5,370 bezants a year to the king, according to the account of the tithe of Limassol (1367). Hunting was the favorite pastime of the Frankish nobility. The animals they hunted have since been so thinned out that they have almost disappeared, at least in regards rabbits and hares; but at the time of the Lynxmata they could still hunt wild sheep and roebucks called agrivi. Travelers have left us accounts of the hunt, the lords often spending a month under canvas in pursuit of the game through the forests and mountains, using trained leopards and hunting dogs. The Venetian statutes mention wild fowl also. They were hunted with falcons. The travelers were scandalized by the luxurious trappings of the chase. Ludolf saw the 500 hunting dogs of Hugh of Iselin, the titular count of Jaffa, with a huntsman for every two dogs, and he figured that each nobleman had enough falcons to keep a dozen falconers busy (an exaggerated number to judge from the bishop of Limassol, Guy of Iselin, who had only three). Nicholas of Martoni says that king James I had 24 hunting leopards and 300 falcons. The cost of these animals is suggested by an asset of king Hugh IV on May 16, 1335, setting a reward of two bezants for whoever found and returned to the owner an adult goshawk or falcon, one bezant for the trezous (tercel?), sparrowhawks, and merlins, and two bezants for hunting dogs. A heavy fine

120 P. 22.
121 Nicholas of Martoni, "Relevi," p. 627; Ludolf of Saxony, "Mon Lutrin, Historie, II, 215."
was imposed on those who received stolen animals.\footnote{RAC Libr. 82. 372-374 Richard, "Une énumération minuscule," p. 345, note 37} No wonder that Cyprus was a country in which hunting literature flourished: it was probably in the fourteenth century that the two authors of tracts on falconry lived; one of them, Michaeus, had been a falconer to a king of Cyprus, while the other, Makrops, dedicated his Livre dou Prince to prince John of Antioch, Peter I's brother.\footnote{Three two tracts were used by Jean de Frascatari to write his well-known Censumundi at the end of the fifteenth century—Roel Wintel, "Le Livre de Censumundi de Jean de Frascatari. L'animal et sa zone," Filologus Aebt., XI (1967).}

The census of the produce of Cyprus confirms the impressions of travelers, who were assured that a country covered with rocky hills could be so fertile. The resources of Cyprus were extremely varied, and a large enough number of people worked on the land so that in the middle of the sixteenth century Francesco Attar figured that nine tenths of the cultivable soil was in production. But was such cultivation designed to feed the populace or to enrich the Frankish lords? In defining the general characteristics of Cypriote agriculture a recent book has insisted on the "colonial" character of the production of the Mediterranean islands in general and of Cyprus in particular. According to the author, Fernand Braudel, everything was sacrificed to the needs of the western cities Genoa and Venice, of which Cyprus had been a protectorate. These cities had forced Cyprus to develop certain crops—cotton, wine, and sugar cane—at the expense of the needs of the inhabitants of the island and for the sole profit of the dominant aristocracy, to such an extent that the Turkish conquest seemed to the islanders an economic liberation raising their standard of living.\footnote{Fernand Braudel, La Méditerranée et le monde méditerranéen au XVIII siècle (Paris, 1949), pp. 122-123}

That Cyprus was an exporting country of colonial produce was certainly true. Sugar in particular played a large role in the commerce of the island. Although it is possible that sugarcane cultivation was of recent introduction (sixteenth century?), and although it developed especially when the possibility of the west's getting sugar from Syria declined, it was sufficiently important at the beginning of the fourteenth century for contracts drawn up in Famagusta to preserve evidence of purchases made by Genoese merchants at Episcopi from...
the countess of Jaffa, and for Pegolotti to emphasize the importance of Cyprus sugar. Cotton also appeared in these contracts. Products such as resin and indigo were certainly destined for the western market. Cyprus wine was also known overseas. Bishop Arnulf of Lison in about 1147 compared the abstinence of another prelate to Cypriote wine, “sweet to the taste, but fatal if unmixed with water”.

and the *Bataille des vins* of Henry d'Andeli around the end of the twelfth century ranked Cyprus wine first. In 1307 a boat left Cyprus to take wine to the Hospitallers besieging Rhodes. Its popularity would last throughout the Middle Ages. It was precisely to compete with Cyprus that the Portuguese planted sugarcane and vines imported from Cyprus in the island of Madeira.

The example of Madeira, however, where the exclusive cultivation of sugar and grapes had disastrous effects on forest and soil alike, cannot be applied to Cyprus. There sugar and cotton could be grown in only a small part of the country, which was much drier than the Atlantic island; and vineyards prospered only in a limited area beneath the slopes of the Troodos. The greater part of the island was given over to cereals and other foodstuffs, and the harvests were sufficiently abundant to provide large exports. In the twelfth century Cyprus appears to have victualed the crusaders; in the thirteenth it was the abundance of food there which dictated the use of the island as the base of operations for the crusades. Louis IX’s provisioners had been prepared to buy veritable “mountains” of wheat and barley, which Joinville found amazing. Contracts of 1300, 1301, and 1302 reveal cargoes of wheat and barley, beans and vetches destined for Cilician Armenia (possibly for Egypt also, although illegally). In 1347 a cargo of wheat left for Venice, a city which continually had to count on Cyprus for the grain for which it had such pressing need.

The provveditore Bernardo Sgarrella complained in 1562 that the Signoria overestimated the capacities of the island in demanding that he send 40,000 staves of grain. 121

120 Genea, Archivio storico, Antonino Felbo, II, fol. 52° (1308), and Lambert di Sembarathe, *Annali* II, fol. 227 and 213°.

121 Ibid. Antonino Felbo, II, fol. 97°: the purchase by a Genoese of 50 “staves” of wine.


124 Deslarmes, “Avant plusieurs de 200 à 1000 par devant le maitre pilote Lambert de Sembarathe,” *NotC* (1695), 139, 310, 322, 325, 327 (1300); Antonino Felbo, II, fol. 6° (1302); Giovanni Bardi, *Annali*, I, fol. 13°. For the shipping of wheat, barley, and beans in 1449 see *Annali*, XIX, 39–40.

Cyprus, a greater producer of cereals than even of sugar or wine, provided its inhabitants the means of a good life. In a normal year a hogshead of wheat was worth one bezant; a rote (5 lbs) of the whitest bread was never more than 6 deniers, and the same weight of barley bread (grana) which the poorest ate was rarely more than 2 deniers. The daily pay of a carpenter in the shipyards of Famagusta rarely fell below half a bezant (24 deniers, the price of a hen), and two centuries later the francolates required to do forced labor by Venice received one bezant a day. Cyprus therefore had a low cost of living.

Since Cyprus was above all an agricultural country, it can be regarded as a vast exploitative enterprise yielding fat profits to the king and the Frankish aristocracy. The lords' granaries and cellars were the source of their wealth, and the merchants had a path to their door. It was to the storehouses of John of Ibelin, the titular lord of Ayni, that a Genoese went to buy 130 jars of “Paralime” wine on October 14, 1300. In 1406 the Dragash family intended to withhold 7,878 hogsheads of wheat bought from Queen Heloise in magazenum ad casalis. Despite their precautions in sealing the storehouse door, the queen had it reopened to sell the wheat at a better price a little later. Moreover, the king's financial year was determined by the date he leased out his casals, as well as when he sold his wheat, cotton, and wine; very frequently he made his payments in sugar to be drawn from the harvest of one of the “beadlings” of the royal domain where sugarcane was grown. Not only the king but the entire Frankish nobility of Cyprus lived off the sale to the merchants of Outremer of the products of their lands, like Antilles planters in the eighteenth century.

However, the Cypriote population did not suffer much under their regime. The most striking fact of the history of the peasantry during the Frankish period is the steady improvement in its condition. All
the charges which continued to burden the parikes had been im-
posed during the Byzantine regime; the Franks seem not to have intro-
duced any new ones (before instituting the tax to pay tribute, first
to Genoa, then to Egypt, and in particular the "mote don sel").

Under the Lusignans emancipations increased, and seigneurial do-
 mains were subdivided for the benefit of the franco-comtes who had
to pay only the "cas." Attempts to exploit these lands with slaves
would fail, especially when the Genoese prompted the slaves to revolt
in 1373. With the decline of labor provided by the corvées (as well
as a reduction in the number of days of the corvées, if Philip of Mâcon
is correct), the exploitation of the seigneurial reserves became increas-
ingly difficult, we find great planters like the Cornas forced to rely
on some 50 franco-comtes, in addition to their slaves and serfs, to har-
vest the sugarcane at Epicycle in 1396.

The passing of most of the peasants into the free classes and the
reduction of their obligations would have unforeseen results. The Ven-
etians, seeking to get as much out of their new colony as possible,
tried to keep the parikes in their service by every means at their com-
mand, and to get labor for the seigneurial estates by forcing the fran-
co-comtes to perform the corvée. At the same time they tried to develop
production of those things particularly necessary to Venetian industry,
such as silk. The passing of the island into Venetian hands therefore
modified the conditions of agricultural life. Under the Lusignans ag-
riculture guaranteed a livelihood, supported local industry (textiles,
soap, and so forth), and provided a surplus for export which enriched
the nobility and, by giving the peasants the means to buy their free-
dom, led to an amelioration of their lives. The misfortunes of the
late fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and the Venetian conquest,
converted an economy essentially Cypriote into an economy increas-
ingly colonial.

136 Richard, "La Révolte de 1360 dans le royaume de Chypre," Bibliothèque de l'École
des études, CX (1953), 113

C. Agriculture in the Latin Empire of Constantinople

It is impossible to describe the conditions of rural life in the whole of the Latin empire of Constantinople, because it lasted such a short time and left us so few records. We can, however, get some impression of those conditions from the texts provided by those parts of the empire which remained in Frankish hands somewhat longer. Except for the Morea, however, specific studies are lacking, allowing us only a brief sketch.

The parts of the Latin empire which we shall deal with are the principality of the Morea, which was Frankish throughout the thirteenth century but began to slip away during the fourteenth, the Venetian towns of the Morea (Coro, Modon, and their dependencies); and

138 I was able to see an important article by Jean Longnon on "Les Colonies maritimes dans l'Empire Latinos." The manuscript of which he has kindly allowed me to examine, and a résumé of which has appeared in his J. Histoire latine de Constantinople et de principauté de Moree (Paris, 1946), pp. 206-212. Other studies include Peter Topping, "La Royaume apostolique dans la Peripherie latino de XIe siècle," Bulletin des correspondants, vol. 2, No. (1956), 201-295, and David Jacoby, "Les Archontes grecs et la fondation de Marche agnese." Opusca du noble reine athénienne et civilisationByzantine, 113, 111-114, and J. (1947), 221-241, and Paul the Venetian philanthropist, Fredy Thiriet, La Rome de Constantine (Paris, 1952). The above article indicates legislative acts, towns, names of chancellors, and, above all, the first descriptions and documentations which document. Three documents, some edited by J. C. M. Jansecke, Nouvelles recherches historiques sur le principalement francimene de Moree et son histoire byzantine, I (Lille, 1943), and edited by Spyros A. Trassopoulus, "Proposea archeologiai ta, thy poimeneis, archonise sthe Altheos (Athens, 1906). Following his translation of the work of Oggeri, we have access to Longnon and Topping, Documents sur la royauté de terre dans la principauté de Moree au XIe siècle (Paris and The Hague, 1959), with very important comments. Some important titles are added by Ernst Gerlach, Neue Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzerhebungen Patras (Bibliotheca graeca et romanorum Teubneriana, Scriptores morti et profani, 9; Leipzig, 1903). And for the documents in Venetian archives, they have given us only two important publications. Salser, Documents indirects relatifs à l'histoire de la Grèce au moyen âge (3 vols., Paris, 1800-1890); and Tassios Nalitis, Documents indirects pour servir à l'histoire de la documentation byzantine et Crète du 1080 à 1400 (Bibliotheca ecclesiastica d'Archidieres et de Rouxe LXI, Rome, 1932). A systematic search through the archives of Venice, Otranto (especially for Crete), and Malta (by Rhodes) would certainly turn up a number of new documents. I have been able only a sketch of our present knowledge, which documentary discoveries may in large part modify. On Crete the sixteenth-century work by Eleftherios Giannikou, History of Crete (ed. Philip Argyropoulos, Cambridge, Eng., 1943), is useful. See also Théron, "Villes et colonnes au Crète du XIe siècle au XVIe siècle," Actes de l'Institute Internationale des Études des anciens étranger, II (Athens, 1922), 497-439.
the Venetian islands (Corfu, Lefkoe, Tesor, Myconos, and especially Cret). The islands in the hands of independent lords (duchy of Naxos, Zante, Cephalonia) have left hardly any documents.

This spread hardly lends itself to a precise description of the infinitely varied natural conditions of the different countries. There are some well-developed mountain areas as well as fertile alluvial plains such as the valley of the Euripus, the plains of Messana and of Elis in the Morea, and the Lelantum plain, which one text calls "the eye and the garden of Negroponte." 139

The seigneurial regime appears to have been much the same everywhere. It seems to have been a survival of the Byzantine regime, save that in the Morea the lords had replaced the emperor and taken the imperial revenues for themselves. In the Venetian colonies the commune of Venice was able to reserve quite extensive powers for itself and to exact from the nobles, to whom fiefs had been granted, payment in kind. This made the nobles tenants of a special kind, but did not leave them the independence which they would have enjoyed in the principality of the Morea. Most of the peasants were serfs, and we find here the same "parioqui" which we have met in Cyprus. These parioqui, or vileni, subjected to the vinculum vilanitici or servitutis, were tied to their staits, bound by restrictions concerning marriage and the right to dispose of their goods. The staits, or holding, together with the team of oxen or the ass with which it was worked, was in any case inalienable and was considered the property of the lord. 140

The peasants paid the angaria personalis, a personal tax like the Cypriotio chevaux— but one which was undoubtedly imposed on the peasant in place of forced labor—which Venice offered to cancel in 1434 in return for the payment of a large lump sum, hoping thus to avoid the high costs of collection. 141 Further, they had to pay a land tax to the lord, the old Byzantine aperente, and a proportion of their harvest, the daties, famae, or terrarium 142. As for the Cypriotio

139 Sandoe, op. cit., III, 455.
140 Longman and Topping, Democrae, pp. 265, 267; Sacher, op. cit., I, 262. II (1) IV, 20, 31. 71, 146-146 (grazing the inhabitants of Crete and modern greater Armenia to make wills, 1329); Nautot, op. cit., p. 256.
141 Sandoe, op. cit., I, 268-279 (in 1473 the lord of Zante wanted to have the refugees from the Morea contributio rum e personam, i.e. quota perche a voluntate I, 24, 421, Norto, op. cit., p. 263. This angaria personalis probably corresponds to the servitutus personalis cited in Buchen, op. cit., p. 11). Topping, "Macedon agriculture," pp. 268-272, Longman and Topping, Democrae, pp. 271-272.
142. Sandoe, op. cit., I, 24, Norto, op. cit., p. 267. The fomae possibly correspond to the meditaece (Langman and Topping, Democrae, pp. 268-269, which was paid besides
kapnikon, for which there was no equivalent in Frankish Morea, it existed in Euboea, Thess., and Myconos under the name capnucho e vighetico, and appears to have been a payment in lieu of military service. The pariques were also required to do forced labor, either on the lord's demesne, or in Venetian territories on public works, or even to take part in the great hunts (such as the annual partridge hunt, the paganos, of Chios). Despite their complaints, those who depended on Venice saw the number of their days of corvee increased from one to two, then, in spite of the rules, to four. They often demanded the suppression of other customs (delivery of straw and hay to the Venetian governors, gifts to the castellans) without success. Moreover, the custom of making gifts (enemics) to the lord existed in Frankish Morea also.

The pariques, however, enjoyed the right to have recourse to the books in which were inscribed their names and the details of their obligations, books which were called praxico or serasticos. Those also included the names of those who settled in the coast to work the wastelands. Possibly these were the people (called angisini in Corfu in 1413) who formed the class of nicuirisi which Longnon noted in the Morea. Then there were the Albanian tribesmen who invaded Greece in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. They asked to be allowed to settle in the Venetian territories (Euboea for example), agreeing to pay one ducat per household per recognitione servituti and to give military service. These seminomadic herdsmen were thus assimilated to the serfs.

We do not know if the Albanians were required, as the pariques were, to pay taxes on their cattle. The tithe on small animals, like that of Cyprus, is cited in the Moreote texts, and there was a tax...
called *ovocurtun* collected on the other animals at the rate of nine hogsheds of cheese per ox, four and a half per cow. On Tenos and Myconos, horse-raising country, a *thurnarchos* was levied under the pretext that the lord ought to have a stout batalny. Finally, the herds which grazed in the forests overnight gave occasion for the raising of new taxes.

We know even less about the demands made on the freemen, the *franchus* whose liberty Venice recognized in 1299. Probably they were subjected only to the payment of the corvée on their land. It seems that the old free rural Byzantine communities continued to flourish by hanging on to their old privilege of paying their taxes jointly. The parques sought enfranchisement, and even tried to invoke the thirty-year prescription to escape the servile bond. An enfranchisement granted in 1364 to a Cretan reveals that by not paying either the personal tax or the proportionate levy on the harvest, and by avoiding the servile, one could prove one's "franchise."

There were not enough parques to cultivate the land. In Creto the lords employed day laborers or even bought slaves for the job. Besides the lands cultivated by *acronarchos*, there were others given out on lease (ad affitto).

The villages in the Morea and the islands were also called *cassas*, and they had the same officials to be found in Cyprus, although with different titles. In place of *casparus*, *agorarchi*, *jurats*, or *nereforos*, there were *curatorii* and *vererati*, and the apportionment of water in the fields was in the hands of a *pantarochos*.

The sciansurias of the Morea, better known to us than of
The islands, included a segmental reserve of some importance, called the despotico. It comprised cultivated fields, lands planted with vines or fruit trees (ambellonia), and gardens, and included banalities of mill, olive press (carbonum), the limonarium where linen was treated, the tavern for the sale of wine, the silk workshop, and probably also the wine press.160

The different areas which made up the Byzantine empire before 1204 did not have the same agricultural capacities, and their produce varied widely. The Morea, the largest of the Frankish colonies, had insufficient wheat fields to feed its population, but it had other resources. Its wines were known in the west, the wines of "Clarence" (Glarentsa) on the northwest coast and the "Malmsey" (Monemvasia) wines of the east coast attained a wide renown. The texts reveal that vines prospered throughout the peninsula. They were grown both on the segmental reserves and on the peasant holdings, and the peasants got special privileges for bringing land under cultivation by planting vines. The wines, however, were not all of the same quality, some spoiled quickly and it was necessary to sell them in the taverns of the capital; it was impossible to export them.161

Olives were also important in the Morea. The peninsula exported both raisins and olives preserved in salt, primarily, however, olives were used to produce oil.162 Textile plants were also grown, especially flax. Venice had to forbid its being steeped in the rivers which provided water for its colonies of Corfu and Modon.163 The production of sugar was large enough to warrant the notice of Sanudo;164 and bees supplied honey and wax in abundance. The rearing of silkworms was also important, and Lacoaus was one of the regions which produced the most raw silk, to be sent off either to Italy or to the weavers of Thebes. Some dyes were produced, above all the scarlet wood of the hermes oak.165

The Morea also possessed two resources which most of the Latin east lacked: forests and prairies. Sanudo thought that this region

160. Isabella, op. cit., pp. 54–55; Lascaris, Epigraphia, pp. 97, 99–100. For a land of "despotico" on the domain of the Dukes, see Quarter, 1397 see Isabella, op. cit., p. 99. See also Lascaris and Tophy, Descriptio, p. 275
161. Lascaris, Epigraphia, pp. 96, 100–101. For leas of vineyards see Garland, Near Quarters, pp. 223, 225
163. Sanudo, op. cit., IV 35.
165. For all this cf. Lascaris, Liber usurarii, p. 205; Sanudo, op. cit., III, 204.
could provide a crusade with the wood needed for the construction of ships and war machineries. The acres of the Morea provided food for pigs as well as corn grown by the dyers of the west. Pasture lands not only allowed the raising of cattle, but several regions were turned over to horse-raising, especially Elis, Messenia, the plain of Tegea, and the duchy of Athens (the duke of Athens asked the Venetians of Negroponte to look after his stallions during the threat of a Turkish invasion; no doubt they were usually kept in the plain of Boeotia).

The produce of the Venetian islands showed less variety. Corsica produced cotton, silk, and scarlet wool; Euboea, wood and cotton. But the archipelago lent itself to little more than animal pasturage. Other than the cotton of Thera (Santorini) and the mill wheels of Melos, it was usually for their horses and mules that the islands were known. They tried to develop other resources: in 1432 Venice farmed out Tenedos and Mykonos to a contractor to bring the uncultivated land into production, to plant vines and fruit trees, and to develop the production of honey, with what success we do not know. Chios was famous for its mastic, produced by a tree of the lentiscus family; Rhodes produced sugar. But the small size of these islands did not allow production comparable to that of the Morea or Crete. Crete was the best example of a colony exploited at the order and for the needs of the metropolis. It had an unsettled history. The thirteenth century and most of the fourteenth were marked by frequent revolts, and Venice had to keep a close watch over the government of the great island and take measures to prevent any new uprisings. As a result, agriculture was forbidden in some of the most fertile locations, since they happened to be too close to the habitual centers of revolt, to deprive potential rebels of the possibility of obtaining provisions which could sustain their uprising. The plain of Lascid and the region of Anopolis were therefore empty from 1384 to 1443 because of government orders.

166 Samoudo, ed. Bongars, p. 80
167 Duchesne, op. cit., p. 60; Samoudo, op. cit., III, 90
168 Samoudo, op. cit., I, 176-179; the quinones have been supplied especially by Lartigue in Chiosse roman,
169 Samoudo, ed. Bongars, pp. 67-68; Samoudo, op. cit., II, 99, 100; III, 90
170 Samoudo, op. cit., II, 119; Neuraut, op. cit., pp. 283, 287; Samoudo, ed. Bongars, pp. 67-68
171 Samoudo, op. cit., III, 412
172 Samoudo, ed. Bongars, p. 34; On the mastic of Chios and the regulation of its export, see Giustiniante, ed. Argenti, pp. 207-209; The island also produced cotton, silk, some reputable wines, and fruits (pp. 205-214, 75-79, 83-86); Cambiaso gives details on the use of wine and watermelons for xerophytes (pp. 17-18, 75, 88).
173 Neuraut, op. cit., pp. 36, 418.
But in the early fourteenth century Venice made Crete its principal
supplier of wheat. Marmo Sanudo complained about this, suggesting
that the Venetian government might better get its wheat from the nearer
Apulia (where the wheat was a better grade anyway) and leave the
island as a possible supplier for the crusades.\footnote{174} By the end of the
century, however, everything was subordinated to the production of
the wheat needed by Venice. There was a description \textit{fadutorum}, an
accounting of the harvest, on the basis of which the government decided
on the amount of wheat the seigneurs had to deliver to the state
granaries and the amount they could dispose of for sale abroad. Even
then they could sell only to countries subject to Venice. They got ex-
port licenses (\textit{bullator}), which had to be endorsed by the Venetian
authorities at the places of sale. Thus the third of their harvest which
the peasants owed their lords came under the disposition of the
government.\footnote{175}

These licenses eventually provoked shortages. The fam-
lle of 1455 appears to have been brought on (if we can believe the
complaints of the island feudatories) when the government stipulated
the quantities of wheat to be expected on the basis of an assessment
of land under cultivation rather than of the actual harvest. The har-
vest was bad, exports drained the island of wheat, and famine was
the result. Following the crisis, Venice was asked to send millet seed
to introduce this new crop into the island and thus provide a new
food source. Venice refused (1462) because of the expense, and the
only measure taken to avoid the recurrence of famine, by planting
the plain of Lassithi and the other areas where cultivation had been
forbidden since 1364, reinforced still more the single wheat crop \footnote{176}
The concentration on wheat was not complete, but the worry about
the food supply of Venetian colonies overrode all other concerns. The
feudatories always had the greatest difficulty in maintaining the horses
which they owed the commune for their military service. The horses
of the Archipelago, and with still more reason the mules of the same
area, could be used only as draft animals (and it was still necessary
to have Venetian authorization to import them). Furthermore, the
knights ruined themselves buying riding horses in the west or in Turkey.

\footnote{174} Sanudo, ed Bemurs, p. 87

The feudal lord objected to surrendering the serfs to the commune on the
grounds that they still had to advance money to their peasants to buy cattle (pp. 477 (f.),
and reduce to slavery the obligation by renting out their land (p. 498). For procedures
against one who had used grain for salt (\textit{Calda} see p. 342; and for payments in kind for
exporting grain to Famno and Rhodos during years of abundance see pp. 2, 229

\footnote{176} Nebrue, op. cit., pp. 491, 472, 475, 496, 494, 497; Thuris, \textit{La Romaine}, p. 413
In 1462 they asked for permission to turn some of the lands near Candia into pasturage, but Venice granted permission only in 1471, and it was only after that that horses could be raised on Crete. Venice did try to introduce products of particular interest to merchants, such as sugar cane and mastic trees. But the privileges granted to those who were given the task of introducing these appear to have been insufficient to guarantee success, and Crete continued to produce the same old crops. Crete had some very important cotton plantations, and there was also flax. Scarlet seed was an article of export. Crete also exported Cypress wood, which was widely popular, but Venice limited its exploitation in 1412. Since it was used extensively for the construction of boats and houses, the eventual result was that it could be found only on the steep slopes which the mules could not reach without great difficulty. Thereafter its export was prohibited and its use on the island regulated.

Grapes vined prospered throughout the island—too much so, indeed, for the various villages tried to forbid the introduction of their own territory of wine coming from other parts of Crete. They had to import casks, especially from "Romania." These were so cheap as to threaten the ruin of Venetian cask makers, and to their import was taxed. Cretan wine—of the Malmsey type—provided an important item of export. We know that it went not only to Alexandria, but also to London and Flanders; it was necessary to stop smugglers from hiding spiced in the wine casks leaving for these countries.

Animal husbandry was based on oxen, which provided a source of labor power. Venice had to take steps to forbid speculators from selling them to peasants at excessive prices. Likewise, there were attempts to stop speculation in sheep (merchants advanced to the peasants the price of their sheep to allow them to buy animals), but it was necessary to bow to the necessities of cheese-making, one of the foods Crete exported; Egypt in particular bought Cretan cheese. It was also necessary to modify the regulations to allow commerce

177 Noirot, pp. 227, 228, 237, 252, 172, 461, 519.
178 Ibid., p. 394, 397, 398, 402; Thurnt, La Romanie, pp. 422–440.
179 Noirot, pp. 145, 161, 162, 393, 394, 395, 396.
180 Ibid., pp. 226, 233, Thurnt, La Romanie, pp. 382, 446.
182 Noirot, op. cit., p. 234, 345 (Crete exported India (policies) to Egypt); Thurnt, La Romanie pp. 330–331, 415.
183 Noirot, op. cit., pp. 55, 59, 228, 235, 304; Thurnt, La Romanie, p. 326.
in oxen and sheep destined for the abattoir, so as to supply meat to the Venetian squadrons at Crete, although it was primarily the wheat biscuit which the squadrons bought in Crete.

Despite the existence of these other products, however, Crete was devoted above all to the production of wheat. Probably natural conditions had a hand in this, but the policy of Venice gave to wheat production a preponderant place, to the detriment of a balanced economy in the island. Crete thus offers a particularly noteworthy example of a medieval colony exploited in the exclusive interest of a metropolis. It submitted because the aristocracy living on the island, Venetian or Greek, had been hastily repressed after its revolts, and because it had passed without change from Byzantine domination to Venetian.

Of the other countries of the Latin east, none presents the same characteristics as clearly. Cyprus, a fertile island and not too exposed to danger, had been cultivated for the great benefit of its kings and the Frankish nobles who sold their wine and sugar, but even under the domination of Venice it was not subjected to any agricultural specialization similar to that of Crete. The islands of the archipelago did not provide sufficient resources, although the Morea, incapable of self-sufficiency because of a shortage of wheat, did provide a quantity of foodstuffs which found a good market abroad, bringing in considerable revenues to the nobility living either in the peninsula or in Italy. Unfortunately we know little about the duchy of Athens, but the wealth of its dukes from the thirteenth to the fifteenth century suggests a sufficient agricultural productivity.

The case of Frankish Syria is quite different. It was a crusading territory, exposed to frequent devastation, encroached upon, and obliged to furnish pilgrims and crusaders in addition to the indigenous population. The Frankish nobles could not exploit their domain at the lord of Cyprus and the Morea did theirs. The sale of sugar, cotton, and other products demanded by overseas commerce was offset by the need to import foodstuffs. Outside of a short period (the second half of the twelfth century) agriculture was not an important source of revenue.

In all these areas, agricultural exploitation was carried on within

---

184 Notrot, op. cit., p. 289.
185 Ibid., p. 499.
186. Conrad has noted that the Venetian system of exploitation of the island reached perfection after the representation of the last revolt in 1364. "Kretas als venezianische Kolonie (1284-1669)." Historisches Jahrbuch der Eidgenossenschaft, XXH (1898), 19.
187. Heye mentions only figs and vines from Athens (op. cit., III, 273); the plains of Boeotia were formerly covered with cornfields, and find banks of barley, but documents are very scarce for the duchy of Athens.
the framework of the seigneurial regime. This does not appear to have become more severe during the period of the domination by crusaders— the Venetian rule was probably no harsher than the Byzantine which it replaced. The condition of the peasantry in the Holy Land was much as it was in the time of the Moslems, who themselves had retained many traces of old Byzantine institutions. Cyprus preserved the regime which had existed under the Comnens; the Morea and the islands, the Byzantine regime at the time of the Fourth Crusade. Almost everywhere the Frankish aristocracy took the place of the previous public authorities, but the levies which the peasants paid corresponded to the taxes which they had previously paid. And gradually, as the centuries went by, a slow evolution tended to enlarge personal liberty.
VII
THE POPULATION
OF THE CRUSADER STATES

Population pressure was stressed by pope Urban II in his famous speech at Clermont. Speaking of the condition of France, he is alleged by Robert the Monk to have said, "This land in which you live, surrounded on one side by the sea and on the other side by mountain peaks, can scarcely contain so many of you. It does not abound in wealth, indeed, it scarcely provides enough food for those who cultivate it. Because of this you murder and devour one another, you wage wars, and you frequently wound and kill one another. . . . Begin the journey to the Holy Sepulcher; conquer that land. . . ." This overpopulation was hardly true of northern France, whatever the condition of the area near Clermont, but it may have been true of the fighting class from which the crusaders were drawn, although too many of the others went along. Since each knight was drawn from almost


a thousand persons, a considerable population was required to provide a financial base for the crusading armies and to pay their very heavy expenses. Their opponents had the same problems, but without the extra cost of transportation to the scenes of battle and pilgrimage. Thus population had a definite bearing on the ultimate results of the ventures. Its analysis helps explain why the Syrian expeditions failed, why the campaigns against Moors, Albigensian heretics, and pagan Slavs in eastern Europe succeeded, and why the political crusades resulted in something like a draw.

Demographically, the crusades occurred at a time of great population increase, the period 1000–1348. The period is somewhat deficient in demographic data, despite the existence of occasional collections such as the Domesday Book in England. Except for a slow but steady increase in total population, conditions were fairly stable and probably much the same throughout the crusading areas east and west.

Usually there were more men than women, except in the cities. In part this was caused by the shorter life of women, but even allowing for this, the numbers of females appear inordinately low, a major demographic mystery. The sex ratio (number of men to 100 women) often was as high as 130. The average length of life of males was about thirty to thirty-five years, while the females lived about five years less. Of course the heavy infant and maternal mortality was responsible for shortening the average length of life. If a man lived to be twenty, he could well hope to make it to forty-five or fifty years of age. If he lived to be sixty he still had about a ten years’ expectation. Half of the people were under the age of twenty. On the average, four to five children were born to a family, but the number in a simple family (man–wife–children) at any one time was about three and a half. If the grandparents or other relatives lived with the family, the number in the household was higher. It can be seen that some conditions were quite different from those we know today.

Not much different, however, was the span of life, the approximate number of years attained by those who lived longest. Long before the crusades, the pillar saints (Stylites) of the Holy Land had provided examples of how long men could live under favorable conditions of life isolated from contact with communicable disease. The pillar saints lived on platforms on the tops of pillars, sheltered by a roof above and protected by a railing around the top of the column. They were saved from contagion by their lofty position and their infrequent communication with persons below. They might live close

to a hundred years. By the time of the crusades this movement was
largely spent. Of secular persons in the east the famous fighter and
writer Usamah Ibn-Munqidh lived until he was ninety-three, while
his uncle, Sulaim, lived between seventy-two and eighty-five years, but his father
Munshid only sixty-nine. No crusader is known to have lived past
seventy. In the west, persons occasionally lived a hundred years. Table
1 gives the age at death of those crusaders for whom it is known,
while the ages of death of Moslems are from Syria and nearby Islamic
countries, derived mostly from the Encyclopaedia of Islam. Since
they include scholars and other civilians who survived childhood, they
are not quite comparable to the western crusader list, but the notable
difference in age expectancy can hardly be explained by differences
in age expectancy can hardly be explained by differences
in types of occupation. Shortness of life among the crusaders often
led to troublesome minorities, wardships, and short terms for holders
of fiefs, preventing consistency of policies. Failure to adjust to the
climate must be reckoned among the foremost crusading problems.

The indication of the healthiness of upper-class Moslems is paralleled
by some information about the Syrian peasants, although the
sample is small. In a few villages near Tyre fourteen family units show
ten men who had twenty-one sons. Since three of the children are
indicated as being four or five years of age, we may assume that all
the children were under twenty. Contemporary English experience

2 Philip B. Hielt, “An Arab Syrian Governor and Warrior in the Period of the Crusades” (CURAC, 11, New York, 1929); p. 54 for Usamah’s age; p. 5 for his father; p. 6 for his uncle who was born before Usamah’s grandfather died at 1003 and after his father’s father in 1018.
4 The 55 crusaders were (in alphabetical order) Adalric II (1124-1174), Baldwin I (1061-64-1138), Baldwin II (1150-1165), Baldwin IV (1065-1112), Baldwin V (1153-1156), Bohemund II (1106-1155), Bohemond III (1146-1154), Bohemond IV (1123-1175), Fulk of Anjou (1092-1143), Godfrey of Bouillon (1061-1106), Henry II of Cyprus (1177-1183), Henry III (1177-1224), Hugh I of Cyprus (1105-1124), Hugh II of Cyprus (1124-1136), Humphrey II of Verona (1177-1179), Humphrey I of Jerusalem (1173-1205), Isabella of Bourbon (1161-1226), Isabella of Leiningen (1219-1254), John I of Cyprus (1167-1182), John II of Verona (1180-1195), Joseph (1134-1198), Mary of Montfort (1192-1207), Mehemoun (1130-1164), Philip of Verona (1176-1180-1227), Pons of Tripoli (1098-1137), Raymond of Tournai (ca. 1230-1269), Raymond of St. Gilles (1043-1068), Raymond

5 The 55 crusaders were (in alphabetical order) Adalric II (1124-1174), Baldwin I (1061-64-1138), Baldwin II (1150-1165), Baldwin IV (1065-1112), Baldwin V (1153-1156), Bohemund II (1106-1155), Bohemond III (1146-1154), Bohemond IV (1123-1175), Fulk of Anjou (1092-1143), Godfrey of Bouillon (1061-1106), Henry II of Cyprus (1177-1183), Henry III (1177-1224), Hugh I of Cyprus (1105-1124), Hugh II of Cyprus (1124-1136), Humphrey II of Verona (1177-1179), Humphrey I of Jerusalem (1173-1205), Isabella of Bourbon (1161-1226), Isabella of Leiningen (1219-1254), John I of Cyprus (1167-1182), John II of Verona (1180-1195), Joseph (1134-1198), Mary of Montfort (1192-1207), Mehemoun (1130-1164), Philip of Verona (1176-1180-1227), Pons of Tripoli (1098-1137), Raymond of Tournai (ca. 1230-1269), Raymond of St. Gilles (1043-1068), Raymond

6 The 55 crusaders were (in alphabetical order) Adalric II (1124-1174), Baldwin I (1061-64-1138), Baldwin II (1150-1165), Baldwin IV (1065-1112), Baldwin V (1153-1156), Bohemund II (1106-1155), Bohemond III (1146-1154), Bohemond IV (1123-1175), Fulk of Anjou (1092-1143), Godfrey of Bouillon (1061-1106), Henry II of Cyprus (1177-1183), Henry III (1177-1224), Hugh I of Cyprus (1105-1124), Hugh II of Cyprus (1124-1136), Humphrey II of Verona (1177-1179), Humphrey I of Jerusalem (1173-1205), Isabella of Bourbon (1161-1226), Isabella of Leiningen (1219-1254), John I of Cyprus (1167-1182), John II of Verona (1180-1195), Joseph (1134-1198), Mary of Montfort (1192-1207), Mehemoun (1130-1164), Philip of Verona (1176-1180-1227), Pons of Tripoli (1098-1137), Raymond of Tournai (ca. 1230-1269), Raymond of St. Gilles (1043-1068), Raymond

7 Data in Tufel and Thimmes, II, 254, 396.
TABLE I
Comparison of Ages at Death of Christians and Muslims:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years of Age at Death</th>
<th>Christians in Syria</th>
<th>for Whom Age at Death Is Known</th>
<th>Muslims in Syria and Nearby Islamic Countries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-29</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-39</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-49</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-59</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-69</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-79</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80-89</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90-99</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

would suggest that twenty-one sons would normally replace twelve fathers. If the twenty-one here were replacing only the ten men said to be fathers, Syrian conditions were probably healthier. Since English conditions were better than average, this sample of Syrian conditions suggests that they were good enough to increase the population.¹

The populations of the European areas which provided those active in the crusades may be estimated as follows (in millions):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A.D. 1000</th>
<th>A.D. 1200</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>France and Low Countries</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany and Scandinavia</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Isles</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>33.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This excludes the Byzantine empire and the Balkans, which were largely neutral, although the empire did help the Franks at times. The populations of Islamic territory were roughly as follows (in millions):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A.D. 1000</th>
<th>A.D. 1200</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anatolia</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syria</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Africa</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>12.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Even here much of Anatolia was either Christian or under Byzantine rule, although areas like that of Mosul and even Baghdad might have

¹ Assuming that children aged 5-25 were replacing fathers of 36-40; see Russell, British Medieval Population, pp. 181-182.
helped to offset the Anatolian situation. The population of Egypt was increasing rapidly in this period; there is no certainty about the size of the North African population. The weight of western population should have led to the conquest of the Near East in 1095, especially since the Islamic world was badly splintered.

Probably the growth in numbers of the fighting class in the west was even greater than that of the population at large. In the first place, there was a change in nursing which saved the growing use of wet nurses, especially in royal and noble families; mothers who nursed their own children gave birth less frequently than those who allowed wet nurses to care for them. This meant a large increase among the upper classes in the number of younger sons, ideal candidates for the crusades. Except for the church, medieval society had few places for younger sons. Later, of course, the increase in royal authority offered openings for the more ambitious among them as mercenaries, officials, and lawyers, while the tremendous increase in the regular clergy in the new orders absorbed thousands. But in 1095 the crusader offered exceptional opportunities, both religious and secular.

Even though the members of the military class in 1095 were numerous and eager, they had some habits and customs which were undesirable in pilgrim-crusaders. They had no inhibitions, as the pope had noted in his Clermont address, against fighting other Christians. There was no pillage, any convenient locality was very strong; and, of course, the right to pasture animals at will was assumed. What chance then was there for armies of such men to pass day after day, particularly in a foreign land, without getting into trouble, even in Christian lands? Retaliation from countries as powerful as Hungary, Byzantium, and even the Serbs and Bulgars might be serious.

Furthermore, the northern fighter seldom considered water transit. One exception was the abbot of Cervera, who was said to have bought a ship for himself and his associate. More typical was Jornvold, who meditated somewhat fearfully on the perils of the sea. "Soon the wind filled the sails and had taken us out of sight of land, so that we could see nothing but sky and water; and every day the wind took us further from the homes in which we were born. How foolishly ... for when

---

9 The data in the table above are from Deane, "Late Antique and Medieval Population," p. 145. Except those for Egypt, see which see idem, "The Population of Medieval Egypt," Arno, p. 146. See Russell, "Aspects démographiques des âges de la féodalité," Annales: Economies Sociales, 27 (1956), 270-272. 10 The subdivisions of putains were the immense of schools also opened places for thousands.
you go to sleep at night you do not know whether you may find yourself in the morning at the bottom of the sea."

This avermum, if not outright fear, must be taken into account when one tries to explain why crusaders continued to go east by land.

The demographic implications of the crusades as pilgrimages to the east are of importance, particularly with respect to the several countries through which the crusaders passed. Years ago Professor Duncalf showed that the pope had a plan for the First Crusade which included meeting at Constantinople in the spring of 1097. Recently H. E. J. Cowdrey has confirmed that the main objective was Jerusalem, whether the plan was primarily for a pilgrimage or for holy war. Since the objective was clear, the meeting at Constantinople meant war against Turkish forces in Anatolia with its demographic problems.

While one may assume a very considerable ignorance by medieval man about geographic conditions even in his own country, the pope must be assumed to have been as well versed in traveling conditions as anyone in his day: he said at Clermont that it was now a two months' journey through the conquered land (of Anatolia presumably) His messengers were constantly traversing the ecclesiastical world, especially in the east, since Urban II was on good terms with the emperor and in touch with him. Pilgrims also went to Jerusalem regularly in the century before the crusades. In planning for such a great expedition, considerable attention should have been paid to the problems of moving a large army toward the chief objective, Jerusalem. This is of importance because one did not have to pass through Anatolia to reach Jerusalem: there was the alternative, even from Constantinople, of going by sea.

It is an axiom of medieval economic history that travel by sea was less expensive and usually faster than by land. Already by 1005 the great cities of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa had sent ships to the east, so that regular patterns of sailing had emerged to take advantage of Mediterranean winds and to avoid fog, rain, and bad weather. Usu-


ally one round trip a year was made to the east. Ships were apt to sail east either in the spring, or—more likely—in the early fall, not to return until the following spring. Later crusades followed similar patterns. In 1239 French crusaders sailed from Marseilles in August and were at Acre in September. Even later, the next year Richard of Cornwall left England on June 10, 1240, spent three months getting to Marseilles, but sailed from that city in mid-September and landed in Acre October 8. In 1248 Louis IX left Aigues-Mortes about August 25 and was in Cyprus by September 17. Returning a few years later he sailed from Acre on April 24, 1254, and "after a long and dangerous voyage he landed at Hyères in Provence early in July." The great Italian cities all sent fleets which operated successfully within the first decade of the crusading period.

From Venice to Antioch was probably a sea voyage of about sixteen to seventeen hundred miles, from Genoa perhaps a hundred miles more. The trip by sea (which, of course, could be planned ahead) took from three weeks to over two months, to judge from the instances above. These were fair samples, since they involved crusading armies with their horses and weapons. Although Louis IX obviously had the means to prepare very carefully for the journey, the other two expeditions probably would not have been able to prepare as thoroughly. To the time needed for crossing from the Italian seaports to Syria, the march from Paris to Genoa or from Cologne to Venice would add 500 miles. The crusaders probably marched in several groups since they did not need guidance or protection. The march might have taken two months, since the Alps had to be crossed. In short, the journey from the west to Antioch would have been a matter of four months, possibly five to allow for delays at the port of embarkation.

The demographic implications of the sea voyage should not have been very serious. Before embarkation, the crusaders were in their own or friendly countries, presumably in small enough groups so that they had ample market facilities and knew the languages well enough for communication to be simple. At sea there were the usual problems of heavy weather and Moslem corsairs, even though the Italian cities had mastered the Mediterranean quite well. The problem was that they occasionally went ashore and were apparently ready to fight.

15 In the fourteenth century the monopole would allow winter corvigation; see Fredric C. Lane, "The Economic Meaning of the Invention of the Compass," American Historical Review, LXVII (1962), 585–617.
16 See volume II of the present work, p. 472.
17 Ibid., II, 483.
18 Ibid., II, 493, 508.
with little reason. Richard I of England took Messina by storm and
sacked the city while arranging for winter quarters, and then cap-
tured Cyprus the following spring; one division of his fleet aided the
Portuguese in capturing Sáfias as it passed by. His forces thus had
considerable practice on the way. Even the salutary Louis IX had
difficulty getting to Palestine; he captured Damietta on his first expedi-
tion before losing his army in the Nile delta, and died fighting at
Tunis on his second expedition. Thus one may wonder whether, had
the First and Second Crusades gone by sea, they would have passed
between Crete and Cyprus on one side and Egypt on the other with-
out yielding to temptation. Crusaders had great psychological dif-
culties in getting to the Holy Land without fighting. This made the
size and strength of the population, which they could not resist fight-
ning, a matter of considerable importance.

According to Sir Steven Runciman, “land travel was always cheaper
than sea travel, and the Byzantine roads through Anatolia down into
Syria were excellent.” 19 Perhaps for a pilgrim or small groups of
pilgrims bagging their way it was cheaper, but for any who paid their
way this is very doubtful. Consider merely the energy involved. If
a man sailed from Venice or Genoa, he sat or slept on the ship for
a few weeks, needing a minimum of food. If he went by road he
used his own energy or that of a horse. Food for both, at part of
a large migrating group, was expensive; many crusaders complained
of the high price of food or even of its lack. The very size of the
great caravans caused scarcity of which the local people took advan-
tage. If the crusader slept out, he had to carry his shaker, which meant
more horses and servants. If he slept in inns, it was often expensive.
The reasons for choosing the land rather than the sea route must be
sought in medieval habits of traveling and thought rather than in con-
iderations of cost.

The journey by land was quite different from the land-sea voyage
from western Europe, even if both went through Italy. The great Ger-
man pilgrimage of 1064-1065 was probably what the pope and cru-
saders had in mind as a precedent for the First Crusade. The pilgrims
left Regensburg in the middle of November and reached Jerusalem
on April 12, a journey of only about five months. Apparently they
sailed part of the return journey. One pilgrim, bishop Gunther of
Hamburg, died in Pamphilia on July 23, a few weeks’ journey from
Regensburg. 20 From that city to Constantinople must have been a

19. Ibid. 1, 73.
20. Elmar Lorchman, “The Great German Pilgrimage of 1064-1065,” Crusades and Other
Historical Essays, pp. 3-43, esp. pp. 16, 31, 39
thousand miles, with another six hundred to Antioch, and two hundred more to Jerusalem. If one started from Paris another four hundred miles had to be added. It took at least six months to go the 2,200 miles from Paris to Jerusalem. Those who went by Italy and the Balkans had about the same distance, not counting in some cases the crossing of the Alps. Most pilgrims who set out for Jerusalem were probably veterans whose trip was the culmination of a career of lesser pilgrimages to the shrines of the west. Their experience and travel habits would hardly be duplicated by a crusade of the feudal lords and lesser folk often setting out for the first time on such a venture.

In the spring of 1097 five crusading armies converged on Constantinople, a city of perhaps 100,000. The population of the Byzantine empire in Europe was probably about four to five million, although this included some Serbsians and Bulgarians. In Anatolia the imperial subjects probably numbered a couple of million; Turks held Nicaea, nor far from the capital. The population of Anatolia was probably about seven million, of which the Turks, although a minority, were masters of perhaps four million. The crusaders at Constantinople must have numbered at least 2,500 knights as part of a mass of perhaps 20,000 persons of all sorts, even after the initial removal of Peter the Hermit across the Bosporus had been crushed. Granted that the attitude of Byzantium and the crusaders to the Turks was hostile, what was the degree of hostility? Even more interesting, how did the parties to the coming confrontation on the march between Nicaea and Antioch regard their relations as a holy war to drive the Turks from Anatolia or as the passage by a hostile armed force bent primarily on a pilgrimage? The Byzantine empire probably had many more in Anatolia who were favorable to it even if subject to the Turks.

Subject to more careful study, the demographic computations would seem to be in favor of the thesis that all three parties viewed the crusading expedition as essentially an armed pilgrimage rather than a holy war, despite the pope’s emphasis on helping Byzantium. The Byzantines apparently doubted that a combination of empire and crusaders could destroy the Turkish power; this rather suggests a lower estimate of the size of the crusading army. Still, the Byzantine emperor Alexius Comnenus hoped that the Turks would be so weakened by the crusaders that they would not threaten the empire, while it

the crusaders were hurt badly, the Turks might not blame the empire for helping them. The Turks hoped to damage the crusaders as much as possible, and to avoid being hurt so badly that the empire would profit. The crusaders, in no mood to go all out to restore the Byzantine empire in Anatolia, were not eager to fight the Turks to the finish. In fact, however, the demographic situation would have favored success of a joint crusader-Byzantine venture in 1097, a success that might have prevented the development of the Ottoman power later and given the crusaders a better chance to capture all Syria and hold it a much longer time.

The First Crusade suffered serious losses while crossing Anatolia. The two ventures of 1091 and the two in 1147 all experienced disastrous failures: apparently only the faster mounted cadets escaped, and few fought another day. In 1190 Frederick I, in spite of sending embassies to the Turks, had serious trouble before he drowned near the end of the journey, after which only a small fraction of his army got through. Actually until 1187 the enemies of the crusaders were stronger in Anatolia than in Syria.

Once the armies were in Syria the character of the crusading project changed abruptly from pilgrimage to holy war. It was nearly a year from the time the siege of Antioch began until they captured Jerusalem. Feudal customs and habits of fighting at the end of a short journey no longer handicapped the crusaders; in fact they were almost ideal for the situation in Syria, a land of small Muslim communities each independent and fighting to preserve or to enlarge its own territory. The crusading armies, even after they suffered losses crossing Anatolia, were still probably larger than any later ones, perhaps in the neighborhood of three thousand knights and twenty thousand others, some reinforcements having come directly by sea. The demographic questions now concerned the number and social status of those who came and remained, the number and attitude of the mass of Syrian peasants, and the size and distribution of Muslim armed forces in the country.

Once the crusaders took over an area and were reasonably successful in their fighting, they could apparently count upon the local people to supply the usual payments and services which they were accustomed to pay to any dominant group. There was little danger of disaffection from even the local Muslims unless the crusaders were losing badly. On the other hand they could not count upon the undying support of Armenian or Syrian Christians, who had done well.
under Moslem rule. The control of the country centered about walled
cities and castles or other strongly fortified places; they were local
administrative centers as well as military strongholds. Their strength
made them difficult to assault, and the custom of avoiding winter
fighting made lengthy sieges impractical and unusual. Thus the size
and character of the area taken in the First Crusade was vital, since
the Moslem forces were caught unprepared and at their weakest while
the crusading strength was at its highest. The adjustments made in
the first few years would not be easily altered. If we assume that the
Syrian population, like that of western Europe, would support about
one knight or horseman of first rank to each thousand of the popula-
tion, its size can be related to the position of the two contending
groups.  

The population of Syria has been estimated at about 2.7 million.  
The estimated size of the ten largest cities, shown in table 2, is based
on the area within their walls (at 125 people per hectare, except Tripoli),
since the constant fighting probably made for relatively little extra-
munial building. Hebron was about the size of Acre. Many famous
towns are not included in this list; their population is sometimes hard
to estimate for the crusading period, since older walls of great extent
remain. A quick survey will show how small many of the remaining
cities were.

Several places, although experiencing some of their greatest days,
were still quite small. One of these was Ascalon. The Byzantine city
may have been only ten hectares in area; under the crusaders it prob-
ably reached about twenty-four hectares with a population of about
three thousand. The chronicler who tells of its siege in 1099 says that
of ten thousand killed, two thousand seven hundred were residents
of the town. In 1111 it had to pay only 7,000 dinars to a besieging
force, a relatively modest sum. William of Tyre tells of its mighty
walls and trained defenders, who were said to have been double the
number of the crusaders’ besieging army in 1153; it is possible that
troops poured into the city in time of siege.  

24. A good discussion of this appears in Robert C. Sandell, Crusading Warfare (1097-1191)
25. Russell, Late Anarion and Medieval Population, p. 446
Quarterly Statement (1921), p. 195; and (1916). p. 28a. Plus some on both Émilie Lamberti,
Bibliothèque descriptif historique et archéologique du Proconsu (Paris, 1865). III, 204 and Rey,
Étude sur les mouvement de l'archéologie méditerranéenne dans la croisades au Syrie (Paris, 1872), pl. xxxii.
pp. 48-49. For the year 1111 see Silik Ibn-al-Qalb, in AHC, Ch. III, 540. For 1153 see William
of Tyre in Emily A. Bullock and Krey (CL/RC, 33; 2 vols., New York, 1943), 21, 220
TABLE 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>City</th>
<th>Houses</th>
<th>Population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Antioch</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>60,625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Edessa</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>24,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Damascus</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>15,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Aleppo</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>14,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Tripoli</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>8,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Hamah</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>7,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hamah</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>6,125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Caesarea</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>5,625</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*From Russell, *Modern Regents and their Cities*, pp. 310-311. The density of Tripoli is estimated to be 100 more than that of other cities per hectare, because the flow from the sea to the mountains have influenced the density.

These other cities besides Homs which had served as provincial capitals under the Fatimids were quite small in this period: Qinnasrin, Ramla, and Tiberias. Qinnasrin had become very small, although its exact area is not known. Ramla was the capital of modern Filistin and, al-Ishir and in 1154, was the largest city in Filastin after Jerusalem, perhaps 160 hectares in area. It had been wrecked in 1133 by an earthquake, which apparently destroyed a third of it. Saladin is said to have destroyed it anew in 1187. Tiberias was a long narrow city beside the Sea of Galilee, although once capital of the province of Jordan, it enclosed only about eighteen hectares. The mighty fortress, Krak des Chevaliers, covered only thirty-five hectares.

Other cities were small in the crusading period although they had been famous at an earlier date. Salamcomprised about fifteen to twenty-five hectares in this period, but Caesarea only about ten. Yaqut said in the thirteenth century that Caesarea was only a village although it had once been a fine city. Jaffa had a walled area (probably medieval) of about the same size. More is known about Tyre, which had perhaps three thousand inhabitants.


better known earlier were also quite small during the time of the crusades. Baalbek was a small Arab village scattered among the four-hundred-hectare remains of the city. Jericho, if its medieval walls were no more extensive than the ancient walls, comprised about thirty-six hectares. Boasa, although a rather important desert center, covered only about twenty-two hectares, while Palmyra, well out in the desert, probably had comprised about twenty. In general the border areas next to the desert seem to have been drier during the period of the crusades than earlier.

The areas of some of the other places may also be estimated. Beirut, to judge from the obviously medieval area of the modern city, may have comprised about thirty-five hectares, but some of this area may have dated from the later medieval period. Gezer (Mount Grisard) had perhaps twenty-seven hectares. Jbeil (Byblos) seems to have covered only five to seven hectares. Nablus was a fair-sized city of perhaps thirty-six hectares, again judging from the medieval appearance of a section of a modern map, while Tortosa enclosed about fifteen to nineteen hectares. As can be seen, information is usually accidental for the smaller places; there were many places for the size of which no information seems to remain. In the north, particularly in the Edessa-Aleppo area, even larger places existed about which little data remain.

The size of the inhabited area of Syria is hard to estimate because of the desert next to it and the mountainous character of the land itself. Perhaps it included about 100,000-110,000 square kilometers. If we divide the largest estimate for the village units (12 square km) into the smallest estimate of habitable land (100,000 square km), this gives about 8,300 villages. Dividing 110,000 square km by 7 square km gives about 16,000 villages. The range between these is thus quite large. The average population of the villages has been estimated as

---


30. Michæl M. Akmon, History of Samaria Clinton, 1899, pp. 4, 7 (cf. L. Montebart, 1896), Jerusalem: Palestine Exploration Fund, Quarterly Statement (1939), p. 244r. The modern inhabited area of Boasa is about twenty hectares but the earlier area apparently was larger; see L. Montebart, Jerusalem, III, 529; P. Palmyra (Tadmor): Thamaller Wiegand et al., Palmyra (Berlin, 1912), 1, 15; Jambret, Histoire, 162-163.


32. Jambret, Histoire, III, 385 (Jambret, 395 (Nabulum), 694 (Tartous)); Rey Etienne, pl. 318 (Tartous); Rey, Les Colonies frangaises, p. 444 (Jebel), pl. 130 (Cherisse). For Jbeil see also Maurice Dumas, Famille de Byblos, 2 (Paris, 1937), pl. 213, an estimate of the medieval portion of the city.
about 200-210 persons. At this size the total village population would vary from a low of about 1.7 million to perhaps double that. Given the mountainous character of the land, an estimate of about 2.3 million for the total village population of Syria would seem reasonable, if very approximate, living in perhaps 11,000 villages. This would mean a.horseman to each four or five villages (much like the support of a knight in the west) and two foot-soldiers to a village, assuming about seven foot-soldiers to each knight.

The assumption then is that table 3 gives a fair model of the Syrian population. The military establishment is estimated at 2,500 horsemen, a little higher than the ratio of one to a thousand despite the mountainous character of the land. It is assumed that each horsman would have about four retainers and the fopmen one each. The top ten cities would have about 137,000 and the next sixty-five or so (those above a population of a quarter) about 130,000.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>No. of Units</th>
<th>Total in Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horsemen</td>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their retainers</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot-soldiers</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their retainers</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>160,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First 10 cities</td>
<td>277,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next 65 cities</td>
<td>110,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Villagers</td>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>2,777,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the first years of the initial crusade the crusaders took six of the ten largest cities, which probably represented about the same proportion of the land. The estimated population of the cities held by the two sides was (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crusader</th>
<th>40.6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Damascus</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tripoli</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairo</td>
<td>4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homs</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The crusaders thus held about 68 percent. If one estimates a total knight service for all Syria at about 2,500, this proportion would sug-

33 Russell, Medieval Kingdoms and Their Cities, p. 206.
gest 1,700 crusader knights, and about 800 for their enemies. In fact, the crusaders set up a system of military service approximately as follows (in number of horsemen): 34

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kingdom of Jerusalem</th>
<th>642-675</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tripolitania</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antioch &amp; Edessa</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temple &amp; Hospital</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>1,342-1,775</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The coincidence is reasonably close. A part of the support of the Temple and Hospital came from the west.

The situation was complicated because both crusading and Moslem groups were divided among principalities which sometimes fought intra-faith battles. Aleppo was in a notably weak position and might well have been captured by the crusaders if the three crusades of 1101 had not all broken up fighting in Anatolia. The disastrous effect of crossing Anatolia was never worse, for from that date the crusaders were, in general, on the defensive. The struggle in the north saw outside forces from Mardin, Mosul, and even Baghdad intervening and offsetting the inherent initial advantage of the crusaders within Syria. The metropolis was Mosul, a great commercial center of Iraq in the ancient Assyrian past, a city probably the like of Antioch. Eventually the combination of Mosul and Aleppo under Zangi was too much for the crusaders, who lost the large city of Edessa to him in 1144. Even within the crusading states this now produced an approximate equality of lands supporting horsemen. Still, the distance of Mosul and even Edessa from Antioch and Palestine made it difficult for the Moslem forces to take over all of Syria; Kerbogha’s army from Mosul arrived too late to prevent the Frankish conquest of Antioch.

The great growth of the Egyptian population made the eventual conquest of the crusading states inevitable. Unlike Syria, which seems to have grown only slowly during the period of the crusades, Egypt grew very rapidly by medieval standards. This seems clear from surveys of land taxes then, which suggest a population of about a million and a half at the time of the First Crusade. 35 Egypt was very weak both demographically and militarily; despite its later growth in population, the low opinion which the crusaders had of it never changed. By the time of Saladin its population had reached about two and a

34 For background see Small, Crusading Warfare, pp. 39-90, 88 note 3, 96 note 8. The range of estimates varies about these figures; see volume II of the present work, pp. 321, 378, 381, 402, 424, 520-565, 565-600, 601-608, and especially 599. This is about Prawer’s estimate, History of the Latin Kingdom, 1, 459-461
half million, in part because of a great expansion along the west border of the delta and up the Nile river. By the end of the thirteenth century, surveys indicate that the population had reached four million. The Egyptian population grew only as fast as its commerce, so the large population had a strong economic base. Saladin's use of the power of both Egypt and the Muslim parts of Syria was obviously too much for the crusaders. Only his death and the subsequent difficulties of his successors postponed the end. The victory by the Mamluks under Baybars in 1260 over the Mongol hordes, a victory no other force between Japan and central Europe could match, indicates the great strength of the Egyptian-Syrian army. Even if the crusaders had possessed all of Syria, their defeat would merely have been postponed. The attempts of the crusaders after the two captures of Damietta to go on to Cairo must be classed as gross miscalculations.

Most of the holy wars proclaimed outside the Holy Land dealt only with enemies within the country or within relatively easy journeys. Chief among these were the Reconquista of Iberia from the Moors, the war against the Albigensian heretics of southern France, and the conquests of the pagans in Prussia and the Baltic region by the Teutonic Knights and their associates. The reduction of the enemies of the church was rewarded by granting much the same privileges to these expeditions as the eastern crusaders received. For the governments in each of these cases there were secular rewards in making the conquests parts of the kingdoms and in some cases taking the actual possessions of the defeated. The losers had to join the church and pay the tithe, the heaviest regularly collected tax in the west. The shortness of the journeys, the nature of the rewards, and the religious advantages made these crusades much more attractive than the adventures in the east, except as pilgrimages to the holiest of Christian shrines.

The demographic picture of the Iberian peninsula during the Reconquista is quite complicated except at the beginning and the end of the Middle Ages. At first and occasionally thereafter for three centuries the population of a single state, the emirate and caliphate of Cordova, was pitted against a group of small states in the north. At the end, for more than two centuries, the kingdoms of Aragon, Castile, and Portugal dominated the emirate of Granada. At each of these times the demographic picture is rather simple. In between, the problem is complicated not only by the confusion of many states within the peninsula but by the appearance of help or aggression from outside—the Berbers, such as the Muraves (Almoravids) and the Muwahhidus (Almohads), of North Africa and the French and other crusaders from
northern Europe. Both sides were occasionally willing to accept help from outside, but generally neither side was particularly happy to have massive invasion: the invaders too frequently stayed as rulers.

Islam was always a religious and cultural minority, although many Christians (renegados) were converted to Islam or accepted its presence and coexisted with it. On the other hand the connections of Spanish and Portuguese Christianity with other parts of the Latin church were a matter of no small importance.

Demographically, two developments influenced the situation. The first was the more rapid growth of population in the northern half beginning in the tenth century, a growth evident throughout Europe. The second was the Christian colonization of lands taken from the Moslem governments, which accelerated the momentum of the drive southward. This included an extensive substitution of conquerors for conquered, as in parts of the Balkan islands and event of the cities Valencia, Seville, and others. In addition, villages and surrounding farm lands were distributed by land charters which designated the area and the types of colonists permitted. This probably gave the Spanish the experience which made them such successful colonists in the New World.

Europe in the Middle Ages was primarily an area of regions with metropolitan cities as the driving forces. The history of late medieval Iberia reflects such a pattern, with the regions of Barcelona, Toledo, and Lisbon impinging upon and gradually taking over the region of Cordova. Even this development was helpful to the Christians, since the division, as mentioned above, left the Moors with only one great center in the peninsula. Furthermore, the demographic development of outside forces were in favor of the Christians: France, England, and Germany were all rapidly increasing in population while North Africa seems not to have changed much. Centrally the latter after 1200 showed little tendency toward territorial expansion.

In the Iberian peninsula the institutionalization of crusading zeal led to the creation of several military orders which eventually acquired vast wealth. The leaders of the orders were among the great and influential men of the realms. From the standpoint of social classes the result of the crusading effort, so long and so successful in Iberia, was to raise in prestige the religious-military values at the expense of those of the commercial classes. We know who acquired the holdings in and around Seville, for instance. 35

37 John Gonzalez, Repertorium del Sevilla (Madrid, 1952).
not who lost the holdings, although they were probably men of commercial interests. The military, non-commercial character of the new men is evident. The great decline of seventeenth-century Spain was certainly exacerbated by the deterioration of the commercial classes in the peninsula.

The reduction of the Albigensians was, of course, on a much smaller scale both chronologically and demographically than the Reconquista. It occurred in the south of France, while the crusade came largely from the north, especially from the regions of Paris and Dijon. The north of France, like that of Iberia, grew much more rapidly from 1000 to 1348 than did the south. By 1200 the region of Paris was one of the most thickly settled areas of northern Europe. The problem of crushing the relatively weak Albigensians and their local protectors was difficult only before Peter II was killed at Muret in 1213. It hardly needed a crusade, but the expeditions provided advantages for the crusaders. The people of Carcassonne left the city “taking with them nothing but their sins”: obviously many in the army of the crusaders received more than absolution for their sins. Probably Beziers was the object of similar exploitation. The demographic factor was a minor one; other factors amply explain its quick success.

The order of the Teutonic Knights began their campaign to convert and conquer Prussia at just about the time of the conclusion of the Albigensian Crusade, although earlier German groups had had permission to lead crusades once. Here the conquered were largely pagan in religion and Slavic in race. The paganism of the conquered made the conquest a virtuous act and the thinly settled character of Slavic culture made it a relatively easy matter. The crusade was, indeed, merely a continuation of the Drang nach Osten, much like the work of the Iberian military orders in southern Spain. In fact, one could compile a single account of the military orders as a whole—there were many common developments inspired by the success of the earlier orders. The Prussian military groups descended from the Teutonic Knights functioned in German history much like the Iberian military orders in Spanish and Portuguese history. But of these, the Teutonic Knights were the most successful in that they became the ruling class of a great area south and east of the Baltic. Demographically, the thinly settled character of their lands allowed the order to rule until the rapid increase in the population of neighboring Poland and Lithu-

38. “The useful outcome of the size of the army can be made; as thou report to the pope the largest number is in the greatest army ever assembled in Christendom” (Austen P. Evans, in volume II of the present work, p. 307, from PL. 286, cols. 131-139).
39 Evans, ibid., p. 289
The political crusades of the thirteenth century, declared by the popes against Hohenstaufen and Aragonese leaders who seemed to threaten the papal states in Italy by enveloping them, do have interesting implications. By 1239 it was clear that the regions of Venice, Milan, and Florence included a very powerful group of cities in an area with a total population of perhaps four million. Even as early as 1176 a group of them known as the Lombard League had defeated Frederick Barbarossa and his powerful German army. In the thirteenth century these cities were stronger while the German imperial government was much weaker and, indeed, much little help to Frederick II. In his kingdom of Sicily, which included southern Italy, Frederick II ruled a population of perhaps 2.5 million. In energy had its strength, even in warfare, the south was no match for any important combination of northern Italian cities. Parma, alone, a city of perhaps twenty thousand, practically wrecked the imperial expedition in 1248 by a single battle. Under the circumstances it is difficult to believe that the papacy was really threatened by the emperor’s attempt to conquer Italy. The attempt to exterminate the Hohenstaufens was an irrational, vindictive policy which blinded the curia to the danger of its side effects.

From an Italian standpoint the imposition of a French prince, Charles of Anjou, as king of Naples and Sicily and defender of the papacy was unfortunate. The region of Paris was, as mentioned earlier, a thickly settled area with a population of probably over five million. To it the crown had already added much of the regions of Toulouse and Montpellier and even part of the region of Dijon. The population of the kingdom of France in the second half of the thirteenth century must have been well over ten million. That made it twice as large as any other political unit in western Europe except Germany, which at the time was chaotic politically. France had an aggressive policy; Louis IX tried first to conquer Egypt and then Tunisia, and was active in the extension of royal power in France. Shortly after entering Italy as king of Sicily, Charles of Anjou achieved a dominant position in the peninsula, threatening the papacy there and the Byzantine empire across the Adriatic. He was thwarted only by a series of

accidents. French influence inevitably increased within the church, especially during the seventy years that the papacy was in Avignon and during the schism which followed. In the long run the papacy escaped from France only because of the incredible inefficiency of the French army, which was tied up by England, one-third the size of France.

With the exception of the papal crusade against the Hohenstaufens, the crusades in western Europe were sound demographically. They were undertaken by populations in France and Germany with both weight of numbers and momentum in their favor. Neither the Albigensian heretic, the Moor, nor the pagan Slav could offset that disadvantage. These thirteenth-century armies were much better disciplined than the more purely feudal forces of the preceding centuries.

Demographically, the crusades provide an interesting study. The great superiority of western Europe, particularly of feudal families, made it possible for the First Crusade to draw at least three thousand knights and perhaps seven times as many others to Constantinople in 1097. The combination of these armies with the Byzantine should have succeeded, as Urban II had planned, in clearing Turkish rule from Anatolia. Whatever the failure, it was not demographic. The armies which reached Syria, supplemented by men and supplies brought by the Italian cities, should have been enough to conquer all Syria; they failed to take Aleppo, Homs, Hamah, and Damascus, or to colonize the conquered countryside. Later expeditions, from 1169 to 1189, did not take account of the military strength of the Turks based on the large population of Anatolia, the same armies carried by sea would have reached Palestine in a few weeks with relatively little danger. They attacked Egypt just when it was increasing rapidly in population and in military strength. Even when they captured Damietta and could probably have traded it for Jerusalem, they twice tried to go on to Cairo and foundered in the Delta. The crusades failed in the end, not from lack of manpower, but from failure to take into consideration demographic realities, notably in Anatolia and Egypt.
A. Foundation and Organization of the Order

The two oldest military religious orders—the order of the Temple and the order of the Hospital of St. John—came into existence after the successful First Crusade. The former evolved from a handful of devout Frankish knights in Jerusalem who had vowed to defend with the sword the Christian pilgrims and pilgrim routes to the holy places.

The basic source for the founding of the Teutonic order is an anonymous early mediaeval account, Historia del primum ordinis teutonis, the lone available of the text was by Max Teppe in Scriptores rerum prutenarum: Der Geschichtsquellen der prutenischen Verwalt bis zum Untergang der Ordenswirksamkeit (3 vols., Leipzig, 1876-1878), I. 230-239. Max Forbach, Die Statuten des Deutschen Ordens (Halle, 1898). pp. 399-400, and ordenskommiss, Quellen zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens (Quellenansammlungen zur Kulturgeschichte der V. Kulturgeschichte, Zit. (Gottingen, 1934), pp. 46-50. The authoritative study for the organization and relative life of the Teutonic Knights is the account of the order, by Forbach and above-cited Ludolf Storm, The History of the Teutonic Knights. A Study of Religious Chivalry (New York: University of Pennsylvania, 1909). The principal collection of original documents relative to the compilation of the statutes, the order's jurisdiction in the crusader states, its historical policy, and its disputes with the Hospitalers and Templars is edited by Ernst Steinberg, Teutonic order documents in Teutonischen rechts Beratungsberichten (Berlin, 1909; reissue Toronto, 1915).

There is no single collection of sources for the details of the Teutonic Knights; these sources are in numerous writers and are occasionally mentioned in various medieval chronicles. The chief works are Oliver (Saxo), Historia Danorum, ed. Hermann Hagenow, Die Schriften des Konig der Dauernlasters späteren Bundes von Paderborn und Kardinale-Wiktor von S. [sic, error] dhalen Olivier, History of the Interwoven Rulers of the Teutons, CTH (Tubingen, 1894) 159-282, and John J. Garvagh, The Capture of Damrosch by Oliver of Paderborn (Philadelphia, 1944), Matthew Paris, Chronicon anglorum, ed. Henry R. Luard (Rolls Series, 57: 3 vols., 1872-1883); or John A. Gilman, Matthew Paris's English History from the New 1235 to 1275 (3 vols., London. 1852-1854); Rupert of Worms, Flores historiarum, ed Henry G. Hewlett (Rolls Series, 14, 3 vols., 1890-1899); or Gilman, Flowers of History: The History of England from the Death of the Saxon to A.D. 1233 (2 vols., London, 1849); L'Esprit de Droit en son emperer et le conquist de la terre d'Oristamme: La conquiste du l'Estat de Ceil laume occidental du Say (RHC: Occ. II., 1-401); Continuation de Guillaume de Tyr, ed 1229 to 1261 aus des manuscrits des Rollin (RHC: Occ. II., 403-639); Philip of Novara, Memoire in Les Curieuse des Chevaliers, ed. Ordens Raymond (SIO, SP V. Genova, 1897), pp. 25-136 also in RHC. Avre, II. 651-726; portion ed. Charles Kahler (Les Chevalier franc d'outre-montage X. Paris, 1918); or John L. Labours and Martin J. Hubert, The War of Frederick II...
In Palestine The latter arose from an Amal'fitan hospital brotherhood in Jerusalem, whose members cared for the sick, the old, and the poor. Only gradually did the brethren of these two foundations assume the duty of defending the crusader states, but once they began to participate in skirmishes and wars against the Saracens, their reputation as zealous Christian knights grew rapidly, and their possessions and wealth increased accordingly.

The third of the great military religious orders, the order of the German Hospital of St. Mary of Jerusalem, commonly known as the Teutonic Order or the Teutonic Knights, was not established until after the Peace in Acre and Cyprus (CURC, 23: New York, 1934), the "Templer of Tyre," Chronicle in Les Comtes des Chretiens, ed. Raymond, pp. 393-394, also in RHC Ann. 11, 737-772. On the participation of the Teutonic Knights in the defense of Acre in 1291 the most detailed accounts are in by I. vanHasselt, "Bekendt", Deressen Genave Sinaeus, ed. Ferdinand Dychla, in Abb. des Ordens der Hospitaller zu Jerusalem, cyt. 237; and in Het deel van de Oostelijke Poort, Studia a laevoeque, 1931, 1-104. Also in A. Germanus, Requiem de Hohenstaufen, ed. Arnd von Kämpfert (Laud der germanischen Forschungen 2, Bern, 1897), pp. 95-104, w. Aubrey Scowen, Description of the Holy Land and of the Way Thither (MPTS, XII 3 [1895], 1-142); and by Osbert of Vienna, Chronica Monastery: ed. Joseph Sanmiguel (NACH, Scripturae saec. XI-15, 1900-1913). For the short-lived enterprise of the Teutonic Knights in Transylvania the main collection of materials is V. Vossenlach, zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens in Ungarn, in Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte, XVII, (Stuttgart, 1878), 520-528.

About the deeds of the individual masters only those of the fourth master Hermann of Salou are widely repeated in contemporary sources. The most comprehensive work on Hermann and his relation to emperor Frederick II is the chronicle by Johannes P. Wulfor, Regesta imperii, vol. V. Das Regnum der Kaiser Capetian, Otto IV, Friedrich II., Heinrich (1174), Conrad IV, Heinrich Roger, Wilhelmus und Richard (1183-1232), ed. Julius Meier and Eduard Wachsmann (4 vols. in 3 fasciculi, 1901-1908). The basic collection of primary sources about Hermann under Frederick II is edited by J. L. A. Mullard-Boehm, Geschichte diplomatische Friedrichs II. (3 vols. in 12. Paris, 1899-1906); many of the documents also appear in NACH, Scripturae saec. XII 3 v. monasterii prelatum, ed. Georg H. Paris and Carl Niederburg (3 vols. in 7 fasciculi, 1904-1904); and NACH, Scripturae saec. XII 3 v. monarchiae dominium regnorum, ed. Ludvig Welland (3 fasciculi, 1904-1904). The most important contemporary narrative in which Hermann is mentioned is written by Richard of San Gemino, Chronica 1164-1193, ed. Paris (NACH, 39), XIX (1865), 323-340. About Hermann's role in the incorporation of the Illyrian lands into the Teutonic order the most explicit contemporary account is written by the chronicler Hermann of Hildesheim in "Verzeich ein der Vereinigung der Schlesischen Herzogtümern und der Deutschen Orden und des Raum des Reichs durch den Lauen.", ed. Theodore Hirsch (NACH, 1912, 160). Other remarks about the accomplishments of the masters are collected in Förtsch, "Deutsch-Ordens-Geschichte," in Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte, XVII. (Stuttgart, 1878), 337-351.

most eighty years later, after the disastrous German failure in the Third Crusade. It was founded by a few German clerics and knights from the remnants of the scattered crusader army of emperor Frederick II Barbarossa, who had drowned in Anatolia. Though the early achievements, and significance of the Teutonic Knights differ from those of the Knights Templar and Knights Hospitaller, their history is closely related to that of the other two military religious orders.

Tradition links the Teutonic order with German hospitals in Jerusalem and Acre. There is no official document extant about the founding of the Teutonic order, but the clearest references to a German hospital.


The main sources about hospital work among the Teutonic Knights in the Middle Ages are:

- General works on medicine: In this time the classification is well described in The Science of Salutary Medicine by John Arderic, a recent work in 1938.


Among the principal secondary works, important must be noted first of the Encyclopedia of Church History, Geschichte des Konigreiches Jerusalem (Hamburg, 1932); Lohmeyer, Feudal Monarchy in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem 1190 to 1291 (Cambridge, Mass., 1933); Sepp von Mackensen, A History of the Crusades (5 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1923-1934); Hans Priez, Das gotische Ritterorden (Munich, 1926), and Geschichte der deutschen Erweiterung des Mittelalters (Berlin, 1931); and the Deutsche Ordensgesellschaft, e.V., Die Gotischen Ritterorden Europas (Munich, 1931). The ecclesiastical history of the Teutonic Knights in the Near East is covered by Kurt Fiechter and M. Hoffmann, Die Geschichte der deutschen Erweiterung des Mittelalters (Berlin, 1931); and the Deutsche Ordensgesellschaft, e.V., Die Geschichte der deutschen Erweiterung des Mittelalters (Berlin, 1931).

Among the significant monographs, the most valuable are:

- Die Geschichte der Deutschordenszeit in Heiligen Lande (Berlin, 1877); H. Schmidt, "Das Leben und die Entwicklung der Deutschen Orden in Jerusalem" (Jena, 1902); and F. von Hahn, "Das Leben und die Entwicklung der Deutschen Orden in Jerusalem" (Berlin, 1905).
- H. Schmidt, "Der deutsche Orden in Jerusalem" (Jena, 1902); and F. von Hahn, "Das Leben und die Entwicklung der Deutschen Orden in Jerusalem" (Berlin, 1905).

tal in Jerusalem are those of James of Vitry, Bishop of Acre (1216–1228), and John of Ypres, abbot of St. Bertin (d. 1383). James of Vitry has left us an account of German pilgrimages to Jerusalem in the early twelfth century, in which he states that after the conquest of Jerusalem in 1099 by the crusaders, many Germans went thither as pilgrims, but that only a few of them knew Latin or Arabic. Therefore a German couple who lived in the city built at their own expense a hospital for the care and housing of poor and sick Germans, as well as a chapel dedicated to the Virgin Mary. This account is very similar to the tale of the Amalfitans and their hospital a century before. The German couple seem to have maintained the establishment from their own wealth and from alms, for many Germans gave money in order to support the hospital, and some even forsook worldly occupations in order to care for the sick.\footnote{1}

John of Ypres gives a similar account. He then goes on to describe the development of the German house in Jerusalem in a somewhat confused passage: “With the increase of devotion increased also the number of brothers there serving the Lord, and they subjected themselves to the order or rule of St. Augustine, wearing white mantles (mantellos albice deferentes). In the following years, like the Hospitalers, they were virtually forced to take up arms, and they devoted themselves to God and the rule of St. Augustine in defense of their lands and the Fatherland,\footnote{2} and added black crosses to their white vestments as well as to their banners... on the year 1127. This order is the German order and the order of St. Mary of the Teutons.”\footnote{3} Such were the vague traditions about the early years of the German hospital in Jerusalem which John, writing over two centuries later in Flanders, had picked up. Possibly about that time the German hospital in Jerusalem established some relation with the Hospital of St. John.

Some time in the early twelfth century the German hospital in Jerusalem was, for some unknown reason, on bad terms with the Hospitalers, who brought charges against the German hospital before the papal curia. On December 9, 1143, pope Celestine II wrote to the master of the Hospitalers, Raymond of Le Puy, that the German


\footnote{2} James of Vitry, op. cit. 8. 7056 John of Ypres, Chronicles, III, 636

\footnote{3} That is, the kingdom of Jerusalem.

\footnote{4} John of Ypres, loc. cit.
hospital had stirred up dissensions and scandals. In order to avoid further discord the pope placed the German hospital under the supervision of the Hospital of St. John, though allowing the Germans to retain their own priests, servants, and the German language. There is no evidence in the sources that Conrad III had any relations with the German hospital during his stay in Jerusalem in 1148.

In the sixties or seventies of the twelfth century a priest, John of Würzburg, visited Jerusalem and later wrote a Description of the Holy Land, in which there is a short passage on the German hospital: "In the same street which leads to the house of the Temple lies a hospital with a chapel which is being rebuilt anew in honor of St. Mary, and which is called the German house (Domus Alemanorum). Few other than German-speaking people contribute anything to its support." At that time, seemingly, the German hospital in Jerusalem was of little significance.

In 1172 Henry the Lion, duke of Saxony and Bavaria, made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem. In an extended account of the journey, Arnold of Lübeck describes how Henry was met outside the gates of the holy city by the Knights Templar and Knights Hospitaller. Arnold goes on to relate how Henry gave arms and a thousand marks to each order and how the Templars accompanied him to Bethlehem and Nazareth and bade farewell to him at Antioch. But Arnold writes not a single word about the German hospital in Jerusalem. Some four years later Sophia, countess of Holland, died on her third pilgrimage to Jerusalem and was buried in the German hospital.

On the origin and development of the German hospital in Acre and its transformation into a military religious order we are better informed. The most explicit source is the anonymous contemporary account called A Narrative on the Origin of the Teutonic Order. 11


7 John of Würzburg, in PL, 155, col. 1118.

8 Arnold of Lübeck who accompanied Henry the Lion in Jerusalem (and who continued, to 1209? Holmstedt's "Chronica de Saxe"), Chronicon, ed. Johann M. Lappenberg (MGH, SS. XXII), p. 121.

9 Avanzani, Storia, ed. Flory (MGG, XXVI), p. 488. For this chronicle of the monastery of Essen in Tyrol, written from the twelfth to thirteenth centuries by several writers, see Introduction, ibid., pp. 431-445.

10. Fritz, Steinen, p. xxii, assumes that the Narrative was written about 1231, after the hospital was transformed into an order; Holmstedt, Quellen, p. 26, between 1204 and 1211. C1 Narrative 1, 220-223
According to it, on September 1, 1190, a contingent of German crusaders in fifty-five ships arrived in the port of Acre and prepared to help Gny of Lusignan, king of Jerusalem, in the siege of the city. Among them were citizens from Bremen and Lübeck who, under the leadership of a certain Sibrun, set up near the cemetery of St. Nicholas a hospital to care for the wounded, using the sail of a ship for shelter. For over a month they carried on their work as good Samaritans until the arrival of Frederick, duke of Swabia and Alsace, and son of the late Frederick I Barbarossa, to take command of the remnants of his father's army. Soon afterward the crusaders from Bremen and Lübeck left for Germany, but before departing, on the insistence of duke Frederick and other noblemen of the German army, they handed the hospital over to Frederick's chaplain Conrad and his chamberlain Burkhard. Thus, the only hospital for the German forces seems to have been well endowed with alms for its work in caring for the sick and wounded. Conrad and Burkhard renounced the world and devoted themselves to the hospital. Like the German hospital in Jerusalem this new hospital was dedicated to the Virgin Mary, probably in the hope that after the reconquest of the Holy Land it might be moved to Jerusalem and made the principal house.11

From the Narrative it is clear that the German hospital outside the walls of Acre was a new establishment independent of the German hospital in Jerusalem; but the German hospital of St. Mary in Jerusalem was still remembered, and it was clearly the intention of the German crusaders to revive it in Jerusalem, which, even if it had not been destroyed, was in the hands of the Saracens. The Narrative goes on to relate that duke Frederick sent messengers with letters to his brother (later the emperor Henry VII) asking him to obtain papal recognition for the hospital at Acre. In his letter of December 21, 1196, to the German hospital in Jerusalem, Celestine III listed the hospital at Acre among its possessions, probably repeating an acknowledgment by Clement III some five years earlier.12

In the meantime, before the fall of Acre, some crusaders joined the German hospital. After the capture of the city on July 12, 1191, the brethren bought a garden inside the walls at the gate of St. Nicholas where they built a church, a hospital, and other buildings. In the church the remains of duke Frederick, who had died on January 20,

11 Brut, i, 318-322, and note i on p. 318.
12 Strickland, Tabulac, no. 294; bull of Celestine III, December 21, 1196, taking the order under his protection; identical to no. 295 and of Clement (Feb. 6, 1190) which is regarded by Strickland as probably a forgery. There are, however, many instances in papal correspondence of this kind of repetitive reliance.
1191, were buried, and in the hospital, run by clerics, the sick and the poor were cared for. When, in 1196, Celestine III took the hospital of Jerusalem and its dependencies under his protection and exempted it from papal tithes, he placed the brethren under the ecclesiastical supervision of the local bishop, if he was a Catholic approved by the apostolic see, and granted them the right to elect their own masters.

Emperor Henry VI had assembled a great army in Palestine, but died on September 28, 1197, before taking command. After news of the emperor's death reached them, a number of the German princes and magnates decided to "donate" to the German hospital in Acre the "rule of the Knights Templar." To carry out this decision, the German ecclesiastical and temporal princes met in the house of the Templars and invited the prelates and barons of Palestine to the party. All present unanimously decided that the German hospital should be modeled on the hospital of St. John of Jerusalem, in the care of the poor and sick, but that religious, knightly, and other activities should be modeled after those of the Knights Templar.

Then, says the Narrative, the brothers of the German hospital who were present elected one of the knights, Hermann, called Walpot, as master, and to him the master of the Templars, Gilbert Horal, handed a copy of the rule of the Knights Templar. A knight named Hermann of Kirchheim entered the German order, and to him Horal gave the white mantle of the Templars. Then the German princes and prelates present at the meeting sent master Hermann Walpot, accompanied by bishop Wolffger of Passau, to the Roman curia, with letters to pope

13 Nortecic, c. 232.
14. Ibid., 2, 233 "Hospitali proinde ordo militarum templorum donatur." The Narrative dates the gathering March 1195, but Töppen gives evidence to show that it took place in 1196.
15. Nortecic, c. 233, 235 "Aramdon fraterm Hermannum munus." Peter of Dusburg, in describing his work Chronicae juris Praemonii (ed. Töppen in SERF, 1, 218-219) to the author Werner of Osnabrück states that he dedicated it to an order of the army and that it begins with the history of the founding of the order in the Holy Land, because it tells the Narrative, but naming (p. 230) the first master Henry Zwanzig of Hermann Walpot. For Peter of Dusburg see Altnematische Biographiae und Memorien, ed. Helmut Diefen, "Peter von Dusburg und die Geschichtsschreibung des Deutschordens im 14. Jahrhundert in Deutschland," Historische Schriften, CCLXXII (1955), 7-56. Since the brothers of the Teutonic order did not understand Latin, the master Jacob vom Brunnwark (1231-1235) ordered the translation of Peter of Dusburg's poem German from German verse; this was completed sometime after 1235. For Nicholas see Altnematische Biographiae und Memorien, ed. Helmut, op. cit., pp. 56-56. Nicholas's work Di Kritike vo Pravenzio is cited by Steinhil ne in SERF, II, 389-390. Nicholas, like his master Peter, calls the first master Henry in 1238. The older generation of German historians, such as Töppen, favor Hermann Walpot, the younger generation, Henry Walpot, see Hribisch, Quellen, pp. 28-29, and Schroeder, op. cit., pp. 647-648.
Innocent III asking for confirmation of the new order. Thus by 1198 the Germans were observing the rule of the Templars and wearing the white mantle in accordance with that rule.

By a bull of February 19, 1199, Innocent III confirmed the order of the hospital "quod Thematonicum appellant," and specified that it should model itself on the Templars as far as priests and knights were concerned, and on the Hospitallers in caring for the sick and the poor. The order was variously called, but the usual appellation was either *hospitate sancte Marie Thematonicorum Jerusalemitanorum* or *der ordre des Düschen hussis.*

A sharp distinction must be made between the German hospital in Jerusalem and the hospital in Acre: the former was founded by German merchants, the latter by German crusaders; the former was established for the care of sick and poor pilgrims, the latter for the care of sick or wounded crusaders. There is no evidence that the members of the hospital in Jerusalem ever undertook military duties, but the hospital in Acre within eight years was turned into a military brotherhood, like the Templars, with the additional duty of caring for the sick and the poor, like the Hospitallers. Why the change? While there is no evidence apart from the statement in the Narrative that the German princes insisted on a reorganization, it seems plausible that the German hospital was turned into an order with the hope of keeping permanently in Palestine some of the Germans eager to go home. This view is supported by the fact that at the gathering in 1198 when the change was decided upon, all the principal ecclesiastical and secular magnates of the kingdom of Jerusalem were present, along with important German princes of the aspiring army of Henry VI.

16 *Narratio*, I, 225.

17 *Strahlen*, *Tabulae n* 297: *Sunt eos quos auctoritates commendavimus in auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum et Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et auctoritate ordinis Thematonicorum Hospitalitarum et in proprietate et in fide et in virtute, quod propter haec non et auctoritate decretalium et aucto
In this connection a passage in the chronicle of James of Vitry is pertinent. "They [the Teutonic Knights] . . . are humbly obedient to the Lord Patriarch and to the other prelates. They render oaths of all they possess, according to the existing law and divine institution, not molesting the prelates." 20 Perhaps, too, some of the German knights wished to stay in Palestine, but did not wish to enter any of the existing non-German military orders.

The Teutonic Knights did not for some time have a distinct rule of their own. Innocent III as late as 1209 referred only to the customs (customudines) which had been observed by the order since its foundation. These customs included the privilege of wearing the white habit of the Knights Templar. However, in 1210 the Templars complained to Innocent about this practice, 21 and the pope forbade the Germans to wear the white habit. In the following year, however, after the patriarch of Jerusalem had negotiated a compromise between the Teutonic Knights and the Templars, Innocent restored the privilege of wearing the white habit to the Teutonic Knights. When the Templars continued to complain to Rome, pope Honorius III tried on January 9, 1221, to end the dispute by declaring that the Teutonic Knights were allowed to wear the white mantles and other vestments "according to their statutes." 22 Then it appears that by 1221 one can already speak of some form of "statutes" of the Teutonic Knights. But the Templars still objected, and the controversy dragged on until 1230, when pope Gregory IX forbade the Templars to molest the Teutonic Knights any longer on the question of the white mantles. 23 About this time, too, the Hospitalers again began pressing their claims to jurisdiction over the Teutonic Knights.

21 Strabulis, Zehnder, nos. 299, 300: bulls to the Teutonic Knights and the patriarch of Jerusalem: August 27, 1209.
22 Strabulis, Zehnder, nos. 301, 302: bulls to the Teutonic Knights, July 28, 1211, and January 9, 1221.
23 Strabulis, Zehnder, nos. 368, 449: bulls to the Teutonic Knights, April 17, 1222, and September 15, 1230.
Whatever the claims of the Templars and Hospitallers—and as late as the treaty of 1258 among the three military orders the Hospitallers continued to claim authority over the Germans—the Teutonic Knights after 1240 succeeded in gaining effective autonomy. Some time before February 9, 1244, when Innocent IV replied to their petition, the Teutonic Knights asked permission to discard certain paragraphs of their rule, still based on the rule of the Templars. The pope granted the order's petition, declaring, “We allow you . . . with the approval of your chapter or the greater and wiser part of it, to alter the aforementioned and other paragraphs of your rule, in the observation of which neither spiritual usefulness nor knights' honor is served.”

From the pope's words it appears that the reason given by the Teutonic Knights for the desired change was that the brothers were not observing those parts of the rule which seemed useless to them. This may have been true, but it was probably the hidden intent of the Germans to get their own rule, and make themselves independent of both Hospitallers and Templars.

There is no direct evidence as to what action was taken by the Teutonic Knights immediately after 1244 to adapt the rule of the Templars to their own needs. The oldest extant copy of the statutes of the Teutonic Knights dates from 1264; it contains, besides the rule, the calendars, the laws, the customs, the vigils, and the penitential. Thus in the twenty years following the papal authorization of 1244 the Teutonic Knights not only changed certain paragraphs of the rule of the Templars, but also compiled new, or codified old, regulations for their order.

The chief source shedding some light on the final composition of the statutes is an undated letter containing regulations for the Prussian branch of the order, issued in Prussia by the vicomte Eberhard of Sayn. In this letter Eberhard refers to the rule (ordo), the customs (constitutiones), and the laws (iusdictia) of the Teutonic Knights, so by dating Eberhard's letter we may approximately date the time

26. Strahlen, Teutonic. no. 726: bull of the Teutonic Knights. February 9, 1244. Forbach, Meinzen, pp. 369–370; has shown that these belong to the rule of the Templars, see Henry de Contino, s.s., La Regale di Almango (Paris, 1896), p. 32. 27. 28. Eberhard of Sayn was grand commandant of the order in the Holy Land before his departure for Prussia; see Strahlen, Teutonic, no. 100; letter of the lord of John of Alemann lord of Cossa- roman, April 30, 1249. Apparently Eberhard was sent by the master to Prussia and Livonia in vain to reconcile and supervise the order's affairs in its northern provinces. After his arrival in Prussia he issued regulations for the Prussian branch of the order in which he calls himself “Frater E. de Saeen vostra maximi . . . praesides in Prussia” (see the documents, see Forbach, Strahlen, pp. 164–166, bull Ermes, Rome, ed., Die Stadtmens des Deutschen Ordens (Königsberg, 1896), pp. 221–224.
when there were already in existence. It is clear that Eberhard visited Prussia in 1249 after master Henry of Hohenlohe's death, for on January 1, 1250, he renewed for the Prussian branch the order's charter of privileges, which had been burned; 26 by 1252 he was active in Livonin. Thus it seems that by 1250 the rule, the customs, and at least n part of the laws were already in existence, and that the revision of the rule of the Templars for use by the Teutonic Knights had been undertaken during the years 1244-1249, while Henry of Hohenlohe was master and before Eberhard of Sayn arrived in Prussia. Eberhard must have taken with him a copy of these recently revised statutes, for paragraph fourteen of Eberhard's regulations states: "Every Sunday during the chapter meeting a section of the rule, of the customs, and of the laws shall be recited before the brothers." 27

The statutes, as drawn up by 1264, comprise the calendar, the Easter tables, a prologue, the titles of the rule, the rule, the laws, the customs, the vigilas, and the penitentials. 28 Thus the term "statutes" means a complex of statutory regulations for the use and observance of the brethren of the Teutonic order. They themselves called this collection the Ordenbuch—the "Book of the Order." It contains no indication of papal approval, nor is there any known evidence of such confirmation in the surviving fragments of the order's archives from the Holy Land or in the records of the papal chancery. 29 Moreover,


27 There is no certainty as to who undertook the revision of the rule of the Templars for the use of the Teutonic Knights. Pfeilbuch confirms (ibidem, p. 117) that the revision was done by cardinal-bishop William of Sebaste, who was for many years dealt with the affairs of the Teutonic Knights in Prussia and Livonia. Even so, the revision did not necessarily complete the statutes and laws for the prologue refers explicitly only to the rule (regular). The rest of the statutes may have been compiled at Acre by a priest or priest of the order who knew which regulations and rules taken over from other military orders were observed by the Teutonic Knights. Likewise, certain regulations and statutes of the chapter of the order at Acre were incorporated in the laws. Show no complete record of those dominions in question. It is difficult to determine exactly how many were worked into the statutes. For William of Sebaste see Giarrat A. Domenic Cardinal Wilhelm von Sebaste, Abend des Walden 1223-1274 (gidoserlicher Lebens in den nordischen Ländern; Kl. 1275) (Sachsa von Statthart, Commentaries Einarusius literatur, 11, sect. 3, Helsingfors, 1929), and Aquinas Parvislini Boghini, Carindoll et curia et familiae eundem dicti et 1227 de 1220 (Frasinus, 1972), I, 140-147

28 Pfeilbuch-Schröter, pp. xiv-xvi, for the monasticus (Latin, vernacular German, Modern) see The Monastic Constitutions of Laymen in. Euan Daniel Evans (Medieval Classics, London 1954), p. 24, note 2. "The phrase 'monasticus,' 'monasterio,' etc., originally used of the act of 'living, permanent' came to be the entirely neutral sense of 'permanent.'"

29 The question of the language of the official version of the Ordenbuch is discussed at some length by Pfeilbuch (ibidem, pp. xiv-xvi, xiv-xvi), who believes that the prologue and the rule of the knights were composed in Latin. Even so, there must have existed contemporary translations into German. For chapters of the rule were to be read before the brethren of the order.
prior to the 1442 revision of the statutes there are only four known copies of the statutes in Latin, whereas from the same period there are at least twenty-five extant manuscripts in German.

The medieval chroniclers and the members of the papal court regarded the Teutonic Knights as a German order, and the express reason for founding a German hospital in Jerusalem was the German pilgrims' ignorance of languages other than German. There is no reason to believe that the German crusaders in the thirteenth century were more fluent in other tongues than the pilgrims of the twelfth century. The statutes themselves offer some insight into the literacy of the Teutonic Knights. A candidate for admission into the order was required to learn, within six months of his admission, only the Lord's Prayer, the Hail Mary, and the Creed, evidently in Latin, if he had not learned them in the first half year, he was given another six months to do so. If he had not learned them in a year, he was to leave the order, unless the master and the brethren allowed him to remain. Even this minimal requirement was too high for some brothers, for master Werner of Orselin (1324–1330) repeated this regulation in his laws, with the addition: "If the brother does not understand Latin, let him recite the Lord's Prayer, the Hail Mary, and the Creed in German." 30

The Teutonic Knights regarded the statutes, as preserved in the copy of 1264, as unchangeable, for later addition to the statutes were never organically incorporated into the existing regulations, but were added as supplements, as new laws, by the ruling master, leaving unchanged the original "Book of the Order."

The more than thirty extant German manuscripts are in various dialects, for every commandery had its own copy of the Ordinbuch. Naturally, as more and more copies were made, they began to differ not only in language but also in accuracy, and various supplements were made. Therefore in 1442 the chapter of the order decided to revise the "Book of the Order" and make three master copies, one to be kept in the main house in Marienburg, another in the German master's residence in Horneck, and a third in the Livonian branch in Riga. All further copies were to be made only from these three master copies. 31 Thus the German version was made the official version of the statutes of the Teutonic Knights. There is again no evidence that approval was sought from the pope.

To analyze the structure and organization of the order and the functions of its various office-holders in the crusader states, the basic source

30 Frühsäch. Statuten, p. 147
31 For the extant manuscripts see Frühsäch. Statuten, pp. x–xxx, inc.; also Hamm. Statuten, pp. 29–30
of information is the 1264 version of the "Book of the Order," as supplemented by chapter decrees before the transfer of the headquarters of the order in 1309 to Marienburg in Prussia.

In organization the closest models for the Teutonic order were the two other religious military orders, the Templars and the Hospitallers. Like the other two, the Teutonic Knights based their rule on the rule of St. Benedict. In administration, however, the Germans followed neither the more rigorously centralized Dominicans nor the loosely organized Franciscans, but the federated organization of the Cistercians. It cannot be proved that Bernard of Clairvaux introduced into the rule of the Templars the administrative pattern of the Cistercians, for no version of that rule contains such organizational details as are found in the Carta cartarum of the Cistercians. However, in later statutes the Templars adopted many institutions concerning organization from the Cistercians, and in turn the Teutonic Knights took over these organizational patterns from the Templars, though the organization of the Teutonic Knights was later modified by the canons of the Fourth Lateran Council. Thus the Teutonic order and, in its structural pattern, the characteristics of the religious life—the three monastic vows, the living in community, the religious exercises, the chapter and chapter meetings, and an official hierarchy—combined with other worldly knighthood features.

The head of the Teutonic order was the elected master, who was "over all the others" (rule, par. 34), for "all the honor of the order and the salvation of souls and the virtue of life, and the way of justice, and the protection of discipline depend on a good shepherd and on the head of an order" (customs, par. 4). The master not only was to "rule over the house and the order" (customs, par. 6), but was also the highest judge among the brothers (rule, par. 37). Furthermore, the master was the commander-in-chief (customs, par. 24), entitled to four horses, and an extra one in war. His household was made up of a chaplain and his assistant, an Arabic scribe, a cook, and three Turcopoles, of whom one was his shield-bearer, one his messenger, and one his chamberlain, and in the field he had an extra Turcopole. On long journeys, if needed, his retinue was increased by two brother knights as companions and one brother sergeant as steward; when in the field, by two sergeants. The master was expected to reside in the Holy Land (customs, par. 12). By 1244 his headquarters was the castle of Montfort (Starkenburg); after the fall of Montfort in 1271, it was shifted to Acre.

The master was elected for life by an electoral college made up
of thirteen brothers of the order. Though not specifically stated, the master had to be a knight, and no one who was of illegitimate birth or who had been convicted of unchastity or theft could be master (customs, par. 4). The symbols of his office were the master's rug and the order's seal (customs, par. 6). He had his own standard, and special insignia on shield and banner (customs, par. 32).

The two greatest officials below the master, sometimes deputizing for him, were the grand commander and the marshal, each acting in his strictly prescribed field (customs, par. 21, 22, 30). The marshal's status is clearly defined in the customs: "All the brothers who are given arms are subject to the marshal and shall be obedient to him after the master." To the marshal's office belonged everything pertaining to arms, horses, mules, weapons, tents, the saddlery, and the forge (customs, par. 19). He was the order's minister of war and the commanding general of the order's army in the absence of the master (customs, par. 24).

The marshal's counterpart in matters of administration, finance, and supply was the grand commander, originally the commander of the house at Acre. "To the office of the grand commander pertain the treasury and the grain supply, and the ships, and all the brother clerics and lay brothers and their domestics who live in the house, and the camels, pack-animals, wagons, slaves, craftsmen, the armory and all the other workshops save those under the marshal" (customs, par. 28). But "if the marshal is sent out of the province, the grand commander shall take his place in looking after the horses and all things pertaining to arms" (customs, par. 21). Furthermore, "the marshal shall have precedence, when on campaign, and shall hold the chapter if the master himself is not present or his deputy. But if the marshal is not present, then the commander shall hold the chapter." But "when they are borne, then the commander by right has precedence and holds the chapter. But if the commander is not present, then the marshal shall hold it" (customs, par. 22). In short, both officials "shall take pains to be in harmony and to bear each other's burdens, so that, when one of them is not there, the other shall take his place and carry out his duties" (customs, par. 30). These regulations clearly demonstrate how well the central administration of the order was organized.

The master's most essential or intrinsic duty was representation of the order. The customs (par. 32) make this clear: "The brother who deputizes for the master may raise his standard and have carpets and the great tent and the things which he needs to do the honors for guests whom he may receive in the master's place. He shall, however,
not use the master’s shield and coat of mail; also he shall not take
his place at table or in church.” The master’s second prerogative was
doing justice: “If the master or his deputy has imposed a penance
on any brother, he may not be relieved . . . either by the commander
or by the marshal or by any other brother without the permission
of the master or his deputy” (laws, III, 4). Yet the rule (par. 35) and
the laws (III, pars. 35, 36) make clear that the chapter was the actual
body that decided on the punishment of a brother, and that the master
administered the chapter’s decision.

Like the master, the marshal and the grand commander each had
his own erouorage—both were chosen, and could be dismissed, jointly
by the master and the chapter of the main house of Acre; thus their
offices, strictly speaking, were not for life.

Various brothers might depurate for the master, but the commander
and marshal had permanent deputes: the vice-commander, or “little
commander,” and the vice-marshall, or “under-marshall.” The former
was in charge of the workshops and the servants in the workshops,
and of the gardens. He had to provide “carnels and wagons, slaves,
carpenters, masons, and other workmen, whom he shall put to work
and supply with whatever they need.” He had likewise to see to the
proper disposal of grain and cloth arriving by ship (customs, par.
35). The exact nature of the duties of the vice-marshall or “under-
marshall” (customs, par. 19) are not given, but he may have been the
same person as the “master of the esquires,” in charge of allocating
the sures to the brothers and of paying those serving for wages
(customs, par. 19). He also gave out fodder, curry-combs, and other
supplies for the horses.

To complete the central administration of the order, the master
jointly with the chapter chose four more high office-holders: the hospi-
tailer (in charge of charity), the draper (responsible for armor and
clothing), the treasurer, and the castellan of the fortress of Starken-
berg (customs, par. 8). The treasury was guarded with three locks
and three keys, “of which one shall be in the master’s hands, another
in the grand commander’s hands, and the third in the treasurer’s hands,
so that no one of them alone may have separate access” (customs,
par. 9).

The marshal had two subordinate supply officers, the brother in
charge of the saddlery (customs, par. 40) and the brother in charge
of the small forge. The latter repaired bits, stirrups, and spurs, and
handed out the rings for hose, belly-bands, surcingle, and pack straps
(customs, par. 41). The saddlery supplied all kinds of belts and straps
for the brothers’ arms and for harnessing the horses (customs, par. 40).
The grand commander likewise had two important subordinate supply officers, the master of victuals (customs, pars. 55 and 59) and the brother in charge of the armory (customs, par. 30). The armory (smiths) was probably a shop and storeroom where crossbows, bows (customs, par. 29) and arrows, and similar weapons of wood were made and repaired. The master of victuals was in charge of land supply and distribution to the brothers (customs, pars. 55 and 59). These four supply officers of lesser rank were chosen by the master with the advice of the most discreet brothers, and had to render their accounts not to the chapter, but to the master and their respective superiors (customs, pars. 71 and 81).

This analysis of the order's hierarchy in the Holy Land shows how well the order was organized and administered, and prepared for military operations. In addition to all the regulations for horses, supplies, and equipment, we find in the customs detailed regulations for military expeditions, the chain of command, the order of battle, and other matters (customs, pars. 44, 46–51, 53–54, 61, 63).

The organization of the branches or provinces elsewhere seemingly was modeled on the main organization in the Holy Land. The head of the province was the provincial commander or master, who was appointed by the grand master with the approval of the chapter (customs, par. 11). Thus it appears that a provincial master was lower in rank than the six high office-holders in the Holy Land who were chosen jointly by the master and the chapter—the grand commander, the marshat, the hospitaler, the treasurer, the draper, and the castellan of Starkenberg—but higher than all the rest of the office-holders in the Holy Land, who were chosen by the master with the counsel of the most discreet brothers. Once installed, the provincial master was almost independent and removable only for grave crimes. The master could visit a province in person (customs, par. 14), or send others as visitors (laws, II, b), but he could remove a provincial master only for grave misconduct, or, as the customs put it, if he found "any commander so infamous and vicious that he cannot be tolerated or excused." As long as a provincial commander was kept in office, the master could put no one over him (customs, par. 15).

Provincial masters were given a free hand in military activities, for the main branch in the Holy Land could neither organize nor support operations in a distant province. The rule allowed the superior, with the counsel of the wisest brothers, to decide all things in the land where the war was fought, "since the customs of the enemy in fighting and in other matters differ in different lands, and therefore it is necessary to oppose the enemy in different ways" (rule, par. 22).
This would obviously apply to provinces like Prussia and Livonia where the order had conquered much territory and was in constant combat defending it. As in the main branch, provincial office-holders were chosen by the provincial chapters and had to give account of their offices in the annual chapters (laws, II, 15; customs, par. 7a).

The basic unit of the order, however, was the individual house. A major house had a convent, that is, twelve brothers, in accord with the number of Christ's disciples, and a commander (rule, par. 13). A house which did not have a convent was a minor house. According to Eberhard of Sayn’s instructions of 1250, the commanders of individual houses were to be installed and dismissed with the advice of the provincial chapter (par. 4); the provincial commanders and chapters could admit new brothers to the order (par. 13); and provincial masters should have their own seals (par. 1).

An important aspect of the organization of the order is the chapter and its role in giving counsel. Many statutes emphasize that the master and the higher officers had constantly to seek the advice of the wisest brothers, singly or in chapter. The general rule was simple. In very important matters advice and consent was to be obtained from the chapter, where the opinion of the wiser part was to prevail; in less important matters, from the wisest brothers at hand; on minor matters, no advice was needed (rule, par. 27). The rule states: “Which is the wiser part in case of disagreement shall be left to the judgment of the master or his deputies, and, furthermore, piety, discretion, knowledge, and good repute shall have more weight than a mere plurality of the brothers” (par. 27).

Matters on which counsel had to be sought from the entire chapter were numerous. They included admitting new members to the order (rule, pars. 27, 29, 30; admission ritual), alienation of property (rule, par. 27; customs, par. 17), loans or gifts of 500 bezants or more (customs, par. 10), absence of the master from the Holy Land (customs, par. 12), imposition and termination of penances (laws, III, pars. 36–44), and revocation of customs (laws, III, pars. 31).

Three kinds of chapters may be distinguished. First, there was a weekly chapter on Sundays (laws, II, introduction and par. 1). Here the brothers in each house gathered together to listen to the reading of portions of the statutes, and some brothers were disciplined (laws, III, pars. 25, 38). Whether this chapter also discussed the business of the house, or whether this was done at another time, is not stated in the statutes. Second, there was the annual general chapter, held on September 14 in the main house and in all the provinces (customs, par. 18). By this chapter the higher office-holders in the Holy Land
and in the provinces were chosen each year, and in this chapter they surrendered their offices and rendered their accounts to the brothers (customs, pars 7a, 18). In the annual chapter in Acre were discussed all the important matters referring to the order; each provincial chapter discussed business regarding its province. The third kind of chapter was the electoral chapter which was convened after the master’s death to elect a new master (customs, pars 2a–6).

The members of the electoral college were coopted until thirteen were chosen—one priest, eight knights, and four other brothers. “Care shall be taken to avoid having a majority from one province.” Therefore to the electoral chapter were summoned the commanders of the provinces of Prussia, the German lands, Austria, Apulia, Romania, Cilician Armenia, and Livonia, to join with the convent of the main house in the electoral proceedings and, as representatives of the new master, to carry the news home to their enboardmates (customs, pars 2a–6).

Thus the order was organized on representative principles, but “democratic” representation was not typical of the Middle Ages. A superior, seeking advice from the chapter or from the wisest brothers, in theory obtained the consent of the entire community of the brothers of a house, a province, or the brotherhood in the Holy Land. A superior’s decree or a chapter’s decision was binding on everyone; appeal outside the order against the laws of the order warranted a one-year penance (laws, 15, 4). It was the master and his council, in fact, who, as an oligarchy, ruled the order in the Holy Land.

In many respects, however, the provinces were independent. They held their own annual chapters where they elected and dismissed their own office-holders, and also elected the commanders of the individual houses. The provincial commanders and chapters admitted new members and carried out visitations of individual houses. The provincial commanders, though appointed by the master, could be dismissed only for the gravest offenses. Since conditions varied in the different provinces, the provincial commanders were given a wide discretion in conducting military operations. Unlike the Hospitallers, the provinces did not have to contribute financially to the support of the main house. But the provinces had to send an annual report to the main house (Eberhard of Sayn, par. 18), and every second or third year each province had to send a representative to the Holy Land to report on the province (Eberhard, par 18). Every new brother admitted by the provincial chapters had to swear allegiance to the master and obedience to the chapter in the Holy Land (Eberhard, par 13). Finally, new laws decreed by the provincial commander, with the
consent of the provincial chapter, had to be confirmed by the master and the chapter in the Holy Land (Eberhard, par. 16). Thus the Teutonic order, in the mid-thirteenth century at least, displayed certain characteristics of a centralized state, and certain aspects of a federation. In the early days, with provinces spread from Livonia to Armenia, the federative aspect probably predominated, but with the move to Marienburg in 1309, the possibilities for centralization increased.

The order's professed brothers included knights, priests, and clerics, and a group of lay brothers serving in military or other capacities. Orbiting around this nucleus was a large group comprising military auxiliaries such as mercenaries, knights, esquires, domestic servants, haltpawerstern, and slaves. We know that the order of the Teutonic Knights was the smallest of the three military orders in the Holy Land. How many Teutonic Knights there were we do not know, but we can get some idea of the relative strength and importance of the three classes of professed brothers from the composition of the electoral college, which was made up of eight knights, one priest, and four other brothers.

Though "this order had a hospital before it had knights" (rule, par. 4), yet the brother knights dominated the order, which was "specially founded for knights fighting the enemies of the Cross and of the faith" (rule, par. 22). The order was the "Holy Knightly Order of the Hospital of Saint Mary of the German House" (prologue, par. 4). The brother knights were the actual electors of the master; most of the highest office-holders of the order were knights. Since the brother clerics were subordinate to the grand commander, himself a knight, the knights in the order controlled the religious life of the order, though, of course, they did not celebrate divine service.

A knight who decided to join the order had to secure a sponsor among the brothers to recommend his admission (rule, par. 29). Admission took place in full chapter, where the candidate was questioned on his marital, legal, and religious status, his health, and his financial liabilities. If no impediment to his entering the order were found, the candidate was asked to promise to care for the sick, to defend the Holy Land and the lands pertaining to it, to keep the counsel of the chapter and the master, not to leave the order without permission, and to observe the rule, the laws, and the customs. After making these promises, the candidate might choose either to enter after a one-year probation period or to be received at once. In the latter case he took the three vows of poverty, chastity, and obedience, vow-
ing to be obedient to the master until death, and then was clothed with the habit of the order and, on the same day, participated in the sacrament of the mass (ordination ritual). This was the ritual for all who entered the order, but the prospective brother knight, as a sign of his religious knighthood, was clothed in the white mantle with the cross, which had been blessed and anointed with holy water (rule, par. 29).

The distinctive features of the knight’s clothing were the white mantle and the surcoat (rule, par. 11). Otherwise his clothing, as well as bedding, did not differ from that of the older brothers. Clothing consisted of linen shirts, drawers, hose, cape with the cross, and, for the knights, one or two mantles and surcoat, all with the cross. In cold climates the brothers also wore fur coats (rule, par. 11). Each slept on a bed of straw, with one sheet, coverlet, rug, and pillow (customs, par. 34). The military outfit of a knight consisted of the customary accoutrement of any secular knight, including horses, of which he might have four (customs, par. 42). However, his arms and the trappings of his horses, in contrast to those of secular knights, were not to be ornamented (rule, par. 22). Brother knights were not allowed to participate in tournaments and other knightly games, or attend worldly festivities (rule, par. 28). The chase was permitted for food and clothing (furs), but hunting with hounds and hawks was prohibited (rule, par. 23). All kissing and converse with women was strictly forbidden (rule, par. 28, laws, III, par. 36, no 2). These latter regulations applied as well to other brothers in the order.

When the knights were commanded to prepare for combat, they had to do everything according to order; they could neither don their armor nor saddle their horses until told to do so, nor could they mount their steeds or ride out of the convent of their own accord (customs, pars. 46 and 60). Every pace of the knights’ progress on the road was regulated. They had to ride in rank and file, surrounded by their esquires and trailed by the caravan of spare horses and pack-mules. While proceeding in battle array, they were not allowed to ride about or talk to each other except in an emergency; even watering of horses was restricted (customs, pars. 46–48). In the field they were under discipline as rigorous as in the convent. They had to pitch their tents, usually on a ring, to protect the horses, the arms, and the “chapel,” attend divine service day and night (customs, pars. 50–52), and continue their penances, if they were doing any (customs, par. 65). They were not even allowed to take off their armor at will (customs, par. 60), or to graze their horses, or to go far from camp without special permission (customs, pars. 52–53)
Their greatest hour came "whenever the marshal or he who carries the standard attacks the enemy" (customs, par 61). Then the brother knights advanced to battle while their attendants (esquires) gathered round a standard, carried by a brother sergeant-at-arms, with the spare horses and spare weapons, and prayed "until God sent their lords back again" (customs, par 61). No brother knight could attack "before he who carries the standard [of the order] has attacked." After the knight joined in the attack, his next steps were left to God's dictates "in his heart," but when it seemed "opportune," he might return to the standard (customs, par 61). The Knights Templar had detailed instructions on conduct in battle; the Teutonic Knight had only to remember: "If a brother in cowardice flees from the standard or from the army," or "goes over from the Christians to the heathen," he was committing the most serious sin, for which there was no pardon or redress, he lost the order forever (laws, III, par. 39, nos. 4, 5, and end). As a matter of fact, when a religious knight met the enemy of the faith in battle, he had only one choice, so gallantly portrayed by the poet Hartmann of Aue:

Mit zimmet, rixer, lesen leben
und each dem moue
durch en ster in alle hir geschehe
lip each gosen.

. . . . . .

Wun rounen dar ist hourenart
dar ist dar wol gosen,
dar gisst hestr

der werlne kop, der gis de halte.10

Pope Urban II promised no more to his crusaders when he proclaimed at Clermont. "Enraptured with your own blood, you will gain everlasting glory."

If a sick or aging brother were lucky, he could leave the Holy Land, not to go "at his own pleasure here and there, where he wishes," but to spend his last days in a convent of the order in Europe, where he could expect tender treatment (customs, par. 13). Those who, because of wounds or for other reasons, had to spend their days in the infirmary in the Holy Land were to be honored and cared for with patience (rule, par. 25). When the brave brother knight's last hour

12 "Now, oh knights, pay your tribute with your life; and your courage to him who has sacrificed for you both his body and his riches. For he on whom the lot has fallen to depart further, will be rewarded two-fold: with the world's reward and the soul's salvation." See Hartmann of Aue (ed. c 1220), "Denn kriemel sint wol rifer Eins," in Karl Bartholoz and Wolfgang Gielhardt, eds., Deutsche Autorenlisten der zwölften bis vierzehnten Jahrhundert: Einteilung, Ausgabe 4th ed. (Berlin, 1940), pp 86-87
had come, he confessed and received the eucharist and extreme unction (laws, III, par. 10). If a brother died before vespers, he was to be buried at once, his body covered with a white cloth with the black cross. If he died after vespers, he was to be buried the next day after prime (rule, par. 6; laws, III, par. 20). The clothes of the deceased brother were distributed to the poor, as were the food and drink to which he was entitled, for forty days, "since alms liberate from death and shorten the punishment of the soul who has departed to grace" (rule, par. 10).

A brother knight was not, however, only a warrior; he was also a religious who, like the canons regular, and to take the three religious vows (admission ritual), live in a convent (rule, 163), attend mass and the canonical hours, and receive the sacrament (rule, pars. 8, 9; customs, par. 63). He was measured (rule, par. 12), and communications with the world outside, sending and receiving letters, and receiving visitors and gifts were restricted (rule, par. 19; laws, III, 37, no. 2; customs, pars. 38, 56, 57). His meals, if the rule was rigorously observed, were meager (rule, par. 13), his bodily strength was weakened by regular fasting (rule, par. 15), and his religious maturity was promoted, to some extent, by learning the Lord's Prayer, the Hail Mary, and the Creed (laws, II, 1, e). If the lay brothers (and those included the knights) were insufficiently moral they might, with the permission of the superior, "recite with the priests the canonical hours or the hours of Our Lady with the psalms and the other things pertaining to the pilgready office" (rule, par. 8).

A penal code, not the most severe but certainly the most systematic, of all penal codes of the military orders in the Holy Land, was drawn up, and if rigorously applied, beyond doubt could not only have brought any sturdy knight to his knees, but also have broken his body and his devotion to the religious life. However, one may doubt whether a one-year penance was often enforced upon a brother knight who fought against the "infidels," for the Holy Land was more in need of bold, though turbulent, warriors than of religious and chaste penitents. Even the Roman pontiff prescribed fighting against the heathen as a penance.

"Among the members are also priests who play a worthy and useful role, for in time of peace they shine in the midst of the lay brothers, urge them to observe the rules strictly, celebrate for them divine service, and administer to them the sacraments... [and in war] strengthen the brothers for battle and admonish them to remember how God also suffered death for them on the Cross," states the prologue (par. 5). The clerics were not numerous and possibly possessed
little weight in running the order's business; their role was spiritual rather than administrative. "The other brothers shall honor the brother priests and provide for their needs before all others, because of the dignity of their order and office, for God is honored in them; and moreover the brothers shall honor them the more diligently, since they are lovers of the order and of the religious life and are gladly furthering the religious life" (laws, III, par. 2).

The role of the brother priests and clerics was to provide for and guide the religious life of the lay brothers. They officiated at the canonical hours, celebrated mass, administered the eucharist to the brothers seven times a year, and also the other sacraments (rule, par. 9), prayed for the brothers, servants, and benefactors of the order, living and dead (rule, par. 10), said grace at meals (rule, par. 13), and conducted worship in the hospital for the sick poor and in the infirmary for the brothers (rule, pars. 5 and 24; laws, III, par. 12). Moreover, the brother clerics probably taught the lay brothers the Creed, the Lord's Prayer, and the Hail Mary (laws, II, 6), heard their confessions (laws, III, par. 21), read the rule and the laws to the brothers, and acted as scribes (laws, III, par. 27). The Teutonic order had a special penal code for the brother priests and brother clerics, but in general a sinful cleric was treated like a lay brother: he was tried in the chapter and received the same punishment as the lay brothers.

Like the other military orders, the membership of the Teutonic order included, besides knights and priests and clerics, "other brothers," mentioned occasionally as sergeants, or serving brothers; sergeants at arms, at office, at service, or at labor. While the three highest office-holders (customs, par. 8) and the custellan were certainly knights, and the hospitaler (rule, pars. 5, 6; customs, pars. 21, 31) and treasurer (customs, pars. 9, 15, 31, 36) probably were, the draper may possibly have been a brother sergeant at service (customs, pars. 35, 38), as may also have been the brothers in charge of the saddlery, forge, and other workshops, and the master of victuals (customs, pars. 40, 41, 35, 55, 56). Tacked on to the admission ritual was a statement that "brothers who do not wish to practice their trade shall be kept on bread and water until they do it cheerfully." All these "other brothers" had their place in the chapter, but probably had little or no voice in the affairs of the order, though some were members of the master's council (customs, par. 9).

Assisting the professed brothers of the order was a host of individual ranging from auxiliary knights to "slaves, if there are any in the house" (laws, III, par. 38). Highest in rank were the knights who served the order for charity; they were probably crusaders of knightly birth.
Another category of fighting men was the Turcopoles, who initially were mercenaries of Turkish origin in the Byzantine imperial army, and now and then were mentioned in crusader chronicles. William of Tyre calls them light-armed knights or cavalry, and Raymond of Aguilers says that “Turcopoles were so named because they were either reared with Turks or were the offspring of a Christian mother and of a Turkish father.” Turcopoles fought in Alexius I Comnenus’s army against the Turks and the Latins and were used also by later Byzantine emperors.

In the crusader states separate fighting units called Turcopoles were in the employ of the military religious orders, and seemingly were recruited locally either from indigenous converts or from mixed native and Latin stock who served the crusader cause as soldiers. The insignia of the Knights Templar and Knights Hospitaller clearly indicate that they were second-class members of the orders, inferior to the brother knights but higher in rank than the servants. They comprised the orders’ light cavalry, and under their own commander participated in the defense of the crusader states. The Teutonic Knights, adapting much of their organizational pattern from the two older orders, also took over the idea of such a native auxiliary force. They


34 Raymond of Aguilers, Historia Francorum qui supra montem Thaborum (RHC, Oct. 11, 123-1089), ed. John Hugh Hill and Laurence L. Hill, Raymond of Aguilers: Historia Francorum qui supra montem Thaborum (Memorials of the American Philosophical Society LXXI. Philadelphia, 1968, cap 1; Albert of Aachen, Libri Christianorum expeditionis pro regno sine assumenda, ecclesia, ecclesiasticae, ecclesiasticae, ecclesiasticae (RHC, Oct. 14, 363-711), V, 1, calls them “an impious breed, said to by Christians only by name, not dead, born of a Turkish father and a Greek mother.”


36 Two brother knights were allowed to as much men as three Turcopoles, and two Turcopoles to as much men as three servants (Carmola, La Regle des Templiers, 1er, 155, see also para. 370 and 375); the Turcopoles did not eat like brothers with brother knights, but not at their table; only those brother knights had to sit with the Turcopoles who were doing penance in full garment (ibid., 219, Denneville Le Roulan, Cartulaire, no. 1493, par 109)

37 Carmola, La Regle, pp. 160-172, Denneville Le Roulan, Cartulaire, no. 1493, par 5.
were organized into a special unit with its own commander, the Turcopole, who in turn was under the command of the marshal; he was also the commander of the brother sergeants-at-arms, with his own standard. Turcopoles were assigned to the master’s household: one as shield-bearer, another as messenger, and a third as chamberlain; and on campaign, a fourth (customs, par. 11); the marshal’s standard-bearer also was a Turcopole (customs, par. 19). The grand commander likewise had one Turcopole at home and a second in the field (customs, par. 29).

As light-armed soldiers the Turcopoles and the sergeants-at-arms in battle array rode either in the van or at the rear. There is no information as to the number or deeds of the Turcopoles who were in the service of the Teutonic Knights. After the expulsion from Acre in 1291 the order temporarily established its headquarters in Venice. In 1292 a general chapter was held in Frankfurt, where the master, Conrad of Feuchtwangen, decreed supplemental laws about Turcopoles and sergeants-at-arms. However, by then the institution of Turcopoles in the Teutonic order had lost its meaning, for in the conquered territories of Prussia and Livonia the Teutonic Knights did not admit the natives to the ranks of the order. In these countries, in case of war, the order’s light cavalry was supplied by the order’s German vessels, and the conquered native peasantry gradually became serfs and were often forced to accompany the order’s army as loot-soldiers and in the supply train. The term “Turcopoles” disappears from documents after the fourteenth century.

Another segment of the order’s membership was the squires. Like secular knights, each of the brother knights had attendants (knechte) (rule, par. 23) or squires, who were under the master of the squires (meister der schiltknechte), who received them into service, allocated them to the brother knights, and determined their pay, if they were not serving for charity, once a week he held a chapter with those attendants (customs, par. 39). When the brother knights rode in battle array, these attendants naturally accompanied them (customs, par. 46), but ordinarily did not participate in battle; instead they rallied round the standard behind the lines, and were expected to pray for the safe return of their lords (customs, par. 61). Since the same word, knechte, is used in the “Book of the Order” for squires and for domestic servants, it is sometimes hard to determine which are referred to.

The helpswestenen or sister-ads provided for us the rule certainly were domestics. They were “not admitted in full service and fellow-

38 Penketh, Statuten, p. 419-423
ship" but were introduced because there were "some services for the sick . . . and also for livestock which are house performed by women than by men" (rule, par. 31), they may also have worked in the laundry (customs, par. 34). They lived in separate quarters from the men. By the latter half of the thirteenth century, there were also halpbrüder, who were used to graze and tend the cattle, to cultivate and till the fields, and to do other kinds of work according to the commander's wishes and the needs of the house. They received food and clothes from the order. Their outer garment was a short mantle (schapron) "of religious hue" with wide arms, but without the full cross. Their shoes were three or four finger-widths higher than those of the brother knights, and they were required to cut their beards and hair in line with their ears. They had to learn the Creed and to fast like the professor brothers, but their punishments for offenses in certain cases were lighter. When they applied for admission to the order, they were asked the same questions as the full brothers, but they were not asked to do a year's probation. Both the Halpbrüderen and the Halpawesteren had to take the vows of chastity, poverty, and obedience (laws of Burkhard, par. 1; supplementary laws, 1264–1269, first collection, par. 5).

The order also received lay people, married or single, as domestics, "who submit their bodies and property to the direction of the brothers." If one of the married domestics died, half of the estate fell to the order, the other half "to the survivor until his death; and after his death the entire estate falls to the use of the order." Married or single, they had to lead an honest life and were not to pursue illicit trade. They also, like the Halpbrüderen and Halpawesteren, wore garments "of religious hue, and without the full cross" (rule, par. 34).

In addition to all these servants, whether called Halpbrüderen, Halpawesteren, heimliche, knechte, gensdle, or pflegere (in the hospitals and infirmaries), there were other servants: artisans and laborers who worked for charity or for wages. Gardeners, carpenters, masons, and other workmen were under the command of the vice-commander (customs, par. 35).

At the bottom of the scale were the people perpetually bound to the order, the serfs and the slaves. The rule (par. 2) allowed the order to "possess in perpetual right people, men and women, serfs, male and female". These serfs, probably donated along with lands to the order, may have worked directly for the brothers. Slaves were prob-

29 See later supplements to the "Book of the Order" two collections of laws from the Holy Land (decrees between 1264 and 1269), and the laws of Burkhard of Schwaben (1269), ed. Furthbach, Statuten, pp. 136–137.
ably to be distinguished from them. The laws (III, par. 38) decree that a brother doing a one-year penance "shall remain with the slaves, if there are any in the house." The slaves "pertained" to the office of the grand commander, and the vice-commander and to provide the slaves (customs, pars. 28, 35). The statutes do not describe more closely this group of wretched people, nor state how they were acquired. In Prussia and Livonia slaves were the beaten prisoners-of-war or persons who had committed crimes and, unable to pay heavy compensation, had to pawn their own bodies to save their lives.

The measure of drink is an index to the relative rank of these people in or serving the order. A brother was entitled to two quarts of drink a day, a Turnepole to a quart and a half, and a knehte to a quart (customs, par. 58).

The statutes of the order also regulated the care of the sick brothers. They were entitled to special attention in the infirmary according to their needs and the resources of the house; they had to be treated honorably and with patience (rule, par. 24, customs, par. 55); they were allowed to go barefoot (laws, I, par. 22) and sleep on featherbeds, mattresses, or felt (laws, I, par. 24). Whenever a brother, even a high office-holder, except the master, became sick, he was allowed to have three meals daily in his bed; but on meat, eggs, cheese, fish, or wine (laws, III, par. 10).

During the first half of the thirteenth century, when the statutes of the Teutonic Knights were compiled, the most celebrated center of medical learning in the west was the medical school of Salerno in southern Italy. There is no question that the name of its physicians was well known to the Teutonic Knights, for their most renowned master, Hermann of Salza, sought a cure for his illness in Salerno in 1234. It is likely that medical knowledge among the crusaders and in the military religious orders in the Holy Land was based mainly on the teachings and practice at the medical school there.

Our best information about the application of medical learning at Salerno is derived from the Regimen sanitatis Salernitanum, an anonymous twelfth-century verse compendium, probably by several authors, on diet, hygiene, treatment of diseases, and medical practices. To supplement our scanty knowledge about the curing of the sick by the Teutonic Knights, on the assumption that they followed the medical practices of the west, one can compare the various pro-

40 For the authorship of the Regimen see George Sarton, Introduction to the History of Science (3 vols. in 5 Buitelant, 1927-1940), II, 1, 434; II-2, 294.
41 A late-fourteenth-century MS. of 152 folios which among other texts contains a Latin
visions of the statutes of the Teutonic Knights with the Regimen. The
Regimen gives the following advice on meals for the sick: "All pears
and apples, peaches, milk and cheese, salt meats, red deer, hare, beef,
and goat, all these are foods that breed ill blood and melancholy;
if sick you be, to feed on them were folly" (p. 80). About cheese it
adds: "For healthy men cheese may be wholesome food, but for the
weak and sickly it is not good" (p. 97). However, eggs, fish, and wine
were recommended for the healthy, and not forbidden to the sick.

If a brother knight's illness worsened, he had to go to the infirmary
which was set up at every house of the order and was looked after
by a warden. In the infirmary the sick first confessed and received
the eucharist and, in case of emergency, extreme unction (laws, III,
par. 10). The grand commander was in charge of supplies for the
infirmary, including the provision of a physician, if one could conve-
niently be secured (rule, par. 24; laws, III, par. 11). The physician
was admonished to pay equal attention to all brothers in the infirmary.

No direct information about drugs and medical treatment in the
infirmary has survived, but it seems that, besides improved food and
blood-lifting, spicy herbs, syrups, and electuaries were the basic cura-
tes. The use of syrups (sticky liquid of fruit and vegetable juices cooked
with sugar), electuaries (paste masses of honey or sugar and drugs),
and spices was forbidden to the brothers without permission, as these
remedies were reserved, as was common in the Middle Ages, for the
sick. Wine, mixed with spices, was regarded as good medicine for
all ills, and its use was recommended in the Regimen, particularly
during the winter (p. 130). To the Teutonic Knights, as to religious
in general, the making and consuming of spiced wine (German Äter-
freuk, Latin pigmentum) was forbidden (laws, I, par. 8). Sugar for
making syrups certainly was used by the Teutonic Knights, for al-

---

62 Quoted from the 1469 ed. of Bl. John Hunyadi, The School of Salvation and Hu-
bert, the spelling is modernized.

63 Probably no such procedure existed, but traces of the origins of liquor-making by the religious
community can be seen.

64 Charlemagne, no. 20; "Dictionnaire universel de médicine," ed. O. A. L. Henshel (Paris, 1849-1850); and
"quinzéme" and "quinzouye," and Matheus Loria. Medicinae universae historiae et praxis, 2nd ed. (Leipzig,
ready in February 1191 (before the German hospital in Acre was transformed into an order) the hospital received sugar for the needs of the sick.45 Comparing the described syrups, syrups, and electuaries with corresponding medicines used by Moslem physicians in the late twelfth and early thirteenth centuries, as described in The Medical Formulary of al-Samarqandi (d. 1222/3), one notices a close similarity between the drugs administered at Salerno and by Arab physicians.46 Likewise vinegar was a common remedy among Arab physicians.

Another way of improving the health of a sick brother of the Teutonic Knights was bathing: only the sick in the infirmary were allowed to bathe;47 all others had to obtain the permission of their emperor (laws, III, par 11). The Salernitan Regimen recommends bathing in the spring, advises one to keep warm after a bath, and adds “Wine, women, bath, by art or nature warm, used or abused do much good or harm” (p. 84, cf. p. 124). As-Samarqandi’s Formulary contains a brief chapter on aromatic bathing, recommending it as a therapeutic exercise.

The statutes of the Teutonic Knights contain long and detailed regulations about fasting.48 Although the idea of fasting was based on biblical rules, it was undoubtedly also regarded as a form of dieting, to keep the human body in good health. The Regimen is very explicit about the benefits of diet and fasting: “To keep good diet, you should never eat until you find your stomach clean and void” (p. 80). Fasting was recommended in every season, but particularly in the summer: it keeps the body dry, and is a remedy for vomiting and dysentery (p. 128). For the sick in the infirmary the statutes of the Teutonic Knights ordered improved food according to the means of the house, but at least one dish more than for the brothers at the convent table. However, beef, salt meat, salt fish, salt cheese, lentils, unpecked beann, and other “unhealthy” foods were not allowed in the infirmary (laws, III, par 8). About the use of salt the Regimen says: “Salt makes unsavory viands edible, to drive some poisons out, salt has ability, yet things too salt are never recommendable. They hurt the sight, in nature cause debility, the scab and itch on them are ever breeding, the which on meats too salt are often found” (p. 107). Beans and lentils,
according to the Regimen, spoil eyemght (p. 124); about peac the
Regimen comments "as peac good qualities and bad are fued, to taka
them with the skin that growth aloft, they wondy be, but good without
the hide" (p. 96)

Those members of the Teutonic order who were wounded, or who
had contracted dysentery or some other illness which might disturb
the comfort of the brothers, slept apart from others in the infirmary
(laws, III, par 13), and brothers suffering from quartan fever (malaria)
were, with the master's permission, given meat three days a week dur-
ning the fast period before Advent and Christmas; they were also ex-
tempt from attending divine service (laws, III, par 14). To those who
suffered from dysentery the Regimem advised fasting and goose meat
(p. 48; cf. p. 90); of malaria, called ague, the Salerno physicians said
that it is bred by long sleep after noon, and recommended as a cure
butter (but not milk) (p. 97), white pepper, purging, and blood-letting
(pp. 97, 122, 130). For fever as-Samarqandi recommended cress pow-
der and lobelia, syrups, and losenges, "but the keynote in treating
fevers is the opening of blockages which cause putrefaction of humor."49
For this process violets, plums, apricots, laranas, jujubes, the root
and seed of endive, hubbard, agrimony, and cuculia could be used.49

Blood-letting (phlebotomy) was recommended by the Salerno doc-
tors as a cure for malaria. It was also practiced by the Teutonic Knights,
for the laws clearly state that blood-letting can be administered to
the sick in the infirmary only with the permission of the head of the
infirmary (laws, III, par 12). Blood-letting was considered a univer-
sal remedy for all maladies, and the Regimen offers detailed informa-
tion on its alleged salutary effect, a person's age and strength, the
quantity of blood let (veneected), and the season of the year were
to be taken into consideration. Neither drunkards nor persons recov-
ering from long sickness nor the too young or too old were fit for
veneected (p. 150). The incision for bleeding should be made neither
too long nor too deep, as that sinews were not touched but there
was a sufficient cut for speedy escape of the blood (p. 154). In the
spring and summer one should be bled in the right arm, in fall and
winter in the left arm; in the spring blood can be let twice as much
as in the fall (p. 155). For six hours after bleeding sleep and exposure
to moist and unwholesome air had to be avoided; consumption of
cold meats, spirits, milk, and meats made with milk had to be post-
poned for a similar period (p. 154). Moderate food of light meats
was recommended, as well as gentle physical exercise (p. 153)

49 As-Samarqandi, op. cit., p. 93.
The presumed benefits of blood-letting were many: the pensive were cheered, "the raging flames bred by burning love" were removed (p. 153), the spirit and senses were renewed; the brain was cleansed; the eyes were relieved, appetite was improved; sleep was restored; voice, touch, smell, taste, and hearing were mended; the marrow was given heat (p. 148); and to the spleen, breast, and entrails exceeding help was lent (p. 156). Spring and summer bleeding mended the heart and liver, fall and winter venesection, the hand and the foot (p. 156). The Moslem Syrian memoirist Usamah says that blood-letting was widely practised by Moslem physicians to cure sickness, and Usamah himself recommended phlebotomy even after heavy bleeding from wounds. He also believed that bleeding in the forehead could cure inflammation of the eye.

Surgery, if one believes Usamah, was more advanced among the Moslems than among their western contemporaries, though considered to be on a lower level than medicine among both the Latins and the Arabs, and surgeons were regarded as less respectable medical practitioners than physicians. In fact, surgery was approved neither by the Moslem nor by the Christian faith, because of the prohibition in the Koran and the Bible against spilling human blood, and because of the insult to the human body, which was created by God in his own likeness. Moreover, Innocent III in the Fourth Lateran Council had forbidden subdeacons, deacons, and priests to participate in surgery if cutting and burning were performed.

The Teutonic Knights cared not only for their sick brothers but also for the laity. The rule of the order contains regulations for establishing, operating, and financing hospitals. "Because this order," the rule states (par 4), "had a hospital before it had knights, as appears clearly from its name, for it is called the hospital, so we decree that in the main house, or where the master with the counsel of the chapter decides, there will be a hospital at all times, but elsewhere, if someone wishes to give an established hospital with funds to the house, the provincial commander with the counsel of the wisest brothers may accept or refuse. In other houses of this order, where there is no hospital, none shall be established without special command of the master with the counsel of the wisest brothers." Thus hospitals were established.
ished for the care of sick lay people; the sick brothers of the order were admitted to the infirmary.

Admission to the hospital was very similar to admission to the infirmary. After a sick layman had arrived at the hospital, but before he was put to bed, he had to confess and receive the eucharist, and he had to hand his possessions (if he had brought any with him) over to the brother in charge of the hospital in exchange for a written receipt (rule, par. 5). The hospitalers then decided about the needs of the sick person and entrusted the patient to the care of the warden, the actual administrator of the hospital, and of physicians and attendants. Again, emphasis was put on loving care, improved food, and spiritual needs: on Sundays the epistles and the gospels were read, the sick were anointed with holy water, and the healthy brothers had to walk in procession before the sick; at night a light had to be kept burning in the hospital (rule, par. 6).

The compiler of the rule of the Teutonic Knights was zealous in following the decrees of Innocent III. 54 The sick in the hospital were given food in charity before the brothers of the order had had their meal, and every care was to be taken to supply all the necessaries for the welfare of the sick (rule, par. 6).

The hospital was not only a place where the sick were given medical treatment and spiritual care, but also an asylum for the aged and the infirm. About the organization and the medical care in the hospital the statutes of the Teutonic Knights are silent, but it can be assumed that treatment in the hospital was similar to the care of the sick brothers in the infirmary. The rule provided for the admission of sister-aids as members of the order, “since there are some services for the sick in the hospital . . . which are better performed by women than by men.” However, “they shall be received only with the permission of the provincial commander, and, after they are received, they shall be housed apart from the quarters of the brothers, for the charity of professed brothers, who dwell with women, although a light is kept on, still is not safe, and may not last long without scandal” (rule, par. 31).

Some light may be shed on the German medical work in the crusader states by the regulations of the Hospitalers, for the Teutonic Knights followed the rule of the Knights Hospitaler in regard to the care of the sick. In 1181 the hospital of St. John in Jerusalem was ordered to employ four physicians who knew how to examine unite,
diagnose disease, and administer appropriate remedies. Provisioning was organized by fixing the deliveries from the subordinate houses: 200 cotton sheets to be sent to Jerusalem yearly, 4,000 ells of unstain, 2,000 ells of cotton cloth for coverlets, and 4 quantals of sugar for making syrup and medicine for the sick. The sick were to be given fresh meat, pork, mutton, or chicken three days a week, also comfortable beds, long enough and wide enough, each with its own sheets, and also each was to have a fur cloak and boots for going to the leperies; abandoned children were to be received and fed in the hospital, and cradles were to be made for babies born to women pilgrims; the almoner was to give twelve pence to prisoners when they were released from jail, and the convent was to feed thirty poor persons every day at the convent table. The rule of the Teutonic Knights (pars 4-7) includes regulations for the hospital, evidently taken over from the Hospitallers, but the laws and the customs include no further regulations. Thus, though the German house started as a foundation to care for the sick poor, by about 1244 such care seemingly played a decreasing role in the activities of the Teutonic Knights.

John of Würzburg, who visited Jerusalem about 1170, has left a brief description of the hospital of the order of St. John. The hospital was annexed to their church of John the Baptist; it occupied several rooms, and there were housed about two thousand people, both men and women, who were "tended and boarded to health daily at a very great expense." John also admits that the mortality in the hospital was rather high: "in the course of one day and night more than fifty are carried out dead, while many other fresh ones keep continually arriving." The Hospitallers also supported with victuals many more poor people who did not live in the hospital. Another traveler from Germany, Theodoric, who visited Jerusalem about the same time as John, or perhaps a few years later, mentioned that the hospital of the Knights of St. John was a beautiful building abundantly "supplied with rooms and beds and other material for the use of poor and sick people"; according to his estimate there were more than one

55 John of Würzburg, tr. Stewart in PPT, V.2, 66. For a general account of the hospitals of the Knights Hospitaller see Edgar E. Haenke, Ministerial Work of the Knights Hospitallers of Saint John of Jerusalem (Rahineuwen, 1948), and Jacob van Steyning, Mitteilungen der Hospitaller der Orden und Sundrie als Einrichtungen der salzmünser Scharfevision (Sommertische Schriften, XXXIV Berlin, 1970)
thousand beds in the hospital. Naturally, the hospitals of the Teutonic Knights at Acre and at Montfort were much smaller; there it also no evidence that the provinces of the Teutonic order had to deliver supplies to the hospitals in the Holy Land.

The most famous of Montfort hospitals in the thirteenth century, called the great hospital of al-Mansur (Kalavun), was founded in Cairo in 1284. It was open to all the sick, rich as well as poor, in contained wards for both men and women; and the sick were cared for by male and female attendants, like the sick at the hospital of the Teutonic Knights. The Cairo hospital had four different wards: one for blood-letting, one for surgery, another for sufferers from fevers (probably malaria), and the fourth ward for dyers and hundred ailments. There was thus some resemblance to the arrangement in the infirmary and hospital of the Teutonic Knights.

For running hospitals, supporting their own members, and defending the Holy Land, the Teutonic Knights certainly needed material wealth funds, bequests, and regular income. To support their work, the Teutonic order in Acre was richly endowed with alms of all kinds: As early as the siege of Acre in September 1190, men after the founding of the German field hospital, the king of Jerusalem, Guy of Ligneron, donated to the hospital a house within the walls of the city, at the gate of St. Nicholas, and another place for building a permanent hospital, as well as four acres (carucates) of land near Acre. After the capture of the city in July 1191, the brothers of the hospital bought a garden adjacent to the house, and built there their residence, a hospital, and a chapel; in February 1192 King Guy confirmed an earlier donation and the new acquisitions and buildings. The hospital already housed the sick. In 1193 Henry II, the ruler of the kingdom of Jerusalem and count-palatine of Troyes, donated to the brotherhood of the German hospital a manor (cav룍), Cafron, in the district of Acre, and a tannery (barbacena) at the gate of St. Nicholas, together with towers and walls, a moat, and a vault at the town wall.

59 Narrarius, vol. 25: letter of grant to the German hospital outside Acre mid-September, 1190.
60 Narrarius, vol. 27: letter of grant of King Guy to the German hospital in Acre, February 10, 1192.
on condition that the brothers repair the rampart as required for the defense of the city, so with this bequest the brothers of the German hospital in Acre were entrusted with their first military task.

In April 1195 Henry II presented to the hospital a house in Tyre and two acres of land at Sidon, north of Tyre. In the following year Henry II gave as a present to the hospital land in Jaffa and a vineyard outside the city. All these possessions were confirmed to the hospital on December 21, 1196, by Pope Celestine III. In February 1198 Aimery of Loupian, king of Jerusalem and Cyprus, sold to the German hospital a manor called Aquilla in the district of Acre, together with its villae and germini. Thus the German hospital in Acre possessed landed property in and around the city before it was transformed into a military religious order.

Acre, the main crusader city after the loss of Jerusalem in 1187, also remained the headquarters and the center of activities of the Teutonic Knights. Acquisitions of new possessions continued after the official founding of the order in 1198: more houses, gardens, plots of land, and other buildings were acquired, mostly by purchase, in Acre and in the nearby towns north of Acre and in Tyre, Sidon, Tripoli, and Antioch, as well as south of Acre in Caesarea, Jaffa, Ramlas, and Ascalon, and in many other locations, for the most part unidentifiable. In April 1229, after Frederick II had negotiated


64. *Ibid.*, no 296.


70. *Ibid.*, no. 61, same, January 1228; cf. no. 138, p. 126.


the transfer of Jerusalem to the Christians, he gave to the Teutonic order the former house of the Germans in Jerusalem. In addition, he gave them a house which once and belonged to King Baldwin, located in the Armenian Street near the church of St. Thomas, as well as a garden and six acres of land. However, the Teutonic Knights did not move their seat from Acre to Jerusalem, as they seemingly had wished to do in 1198; they returned their headquarters to Acre, but built a new residence for the master at Montfort. After the Moslem recapture of Jerusalem in 1244, the Teutonic Knights again lost their possessions in the holy city, never to regain them.

It seems, however, that economically more important and profitable to the Teutonic Knights than their possessions in cities were the landed estates in the country, because from these holdings the order not only obtained part of the victuals and income for the support of the brothers, but frequently also established there convents or houses, and eventually built fortresses, thus contributing their share to the defense of the crusader states.

The first landed estates were obtained by Germans before the official founding of the order. Further donations and purchases of estates were for the most part located in three districts: around Acre, near Tyre, and between Sidon and Beirut. These last possessions, northeast of Sidon, were acquired by the order partly as donations, partly as purchases between 1257 and 1261 from the lord of Sidon, Julian Grenier, and were made up of a large land complex, called Souf or Schuf, which contained about one hundred manors; in part payment the order gave Julian of Sidon 20,000 crusader bezants. In 1258 the order bought a manor from John de la Tour, the constable of Sidon, and from John of Schuf two more manors. In 1261 the order bought from Audred of Schuf a fief called Schuf, which was made up of several manors; all these possessions were located between Sidon and Beirut. In addition to all this, Julian Grenier of Sidon in 1257 donated to the order a fortress called the Cave of Tyron, located about twelve miles east of Sidon. However, all these possessions were

76. See note 69, letter of confirmation of rights of Frederick II, April 1222. Pruni, Der Kreuzzug, says that the king was Baldwin I.
77. See note 108, 109, 110 letters of grant from January 1257; and no. 117 letter of grant from March 1261.
78. Ibid., nos. 114, 115, 116 letters of confirmation of rights of Julian, lord of Sidon, March 30 and June 11, 1257, and March 1261.
79. Ibid., no. 118 letter of grant of Julian, January 4, 1257.
lost to the Moslems in May 1263 after the victory of Baybars at Sidon. In the vicinity of Tyre the order held two acres of land at Sedium from 1195 on, and later acquired more land and a house outside Tyre.

The order, however, possessed by far its greatest complex of landed estates in the region of Acre. It inherited from the German hospital in Acre two manors and two acres of land. Then, again partly from donations, partly by purchase, the order in 1200 acquired cultivated and unoccupied land, such as two manors north of Acre, in 1220 a complex of fiefs, again north of Acre, made up of forty-six manors. In 1228 the order acquired another complex of fiefs, made up of fifteen manors and two parcels of wasteland; this complex of lands also included an old fortress called Montfort. Northeast of this, in the vicinity of Toron and Chastel-Neuf, eight more manors were restored to the order in 1229. The acquisition of land continued until 1261, when the order obtained from John II of Jbeln, lord of Beirut, three more manors north of Acre. It seems that after this acquisition in 1261, the order acquired no more real land; the last traceable acquisition was a house in Acre in 1273. Besides all these mentioned localities, the order possessed many unspecified and, for the most part, unidentifiable parcels of land; it also possessed property in Cilician Armenia and Cyprus. Of great significance were the order's possessions in Europe, especially after the fall of Acre in 1291.

Little is known about the nature and exploitation of the order's landed estates, but a manor (castrum) normally contained cultivated and unoccupied land (garrina), peasant families, mountains, valleys, plains, woods, waters, and pastures. The manor was worked and...

---

80 Ibid., no. 30 (letter of sale to Altamyr, king of Jerusalem, October 1220).
81 Ibid., nos. 33-54, 56: letters of confirmation of rights of John of Juturna, regent of Jerusalem, Honorius III, and Frederick II, May and October 1220 and January 1226.
82 Ibid., no. 63 (letter of exchange of land of James of Amaury, April 26, 1228).
83 Ibid., no. 65 (letter of confirmation of the exchange, April 1229).
84 Ibid., no. 66 (letter of restitution of rights, April 1229).
85 Ibid., nos. 73, 77, 79, 81, 82, 84, 87, 90, 100, 109, 119 (letters of various lands to the Teutonic Knights, October 1229 to November 1264, cf. no. 130).
86 Ibid., no. 120 (agreement between the Teutonic Knights and the Hospitallers in Acre, August 1127).
87 Ibid., nos. 46, 71, 82 (letters of the kings of Armenia and Cyprus to the Teutonic Knights, April 1212, June 1229, and January 1226, cf. no. 126, pp. 126-127).
88 Ibid., no. 120, pp. 127-128.
89 Ibid., no. 77 (letter of sale to Jokal of Juturna, and his husband Raimond Sannard Perrot, 1234; and no. 78, confirmation of the sale by Richard Filliaghet, temporal bailiff at Tyre. The description of the appendages of this manor is very similar to the usual description of manors in feudal charters.)
tiled by local native peasants who were obliged to deliver to the order as dues in kind part of their produce: wheat, barley, oats, buckwheat, millet, chickpeas, lentils, beans, peas, figs, fruit from orchards, wine, oil, sugar, salt, honey, wax, cattle, sheep, goats, hens, eggs, cheese, and vegetables. All these victuals are mentioned in the statutes of the order as needed for their table and in the infirmary (rule, par. 13, laws, 111, par. 6). The order also could make use of its wooded hills to provide its own firewood and stakes. Thus the Teutonic order in the Holy Land was not only a fighting force and a charitable organization but also a landlord, deeply involved in the economic exploitation of its landed possessions.

Moreover, besides being exempted from paying tolls, dues, and taxes and from offering obedience, the order was allowed to levy its own dues, such as gate toll, charcerade dues, measure dues, and alms collection. Raymond Roupen, lord of Antioch, in March 1219 granted the Teutonic Knights the right of free commerce in his principality, and Bohemond IV, who succeeded Raymond in June 1228, donated to the order one hundred crusader bezants of income yearly from his share of the tolls at Acre. Emperor Frederick II in April 1229 conceded to the Teutonic Knights 6,400 crusader bezants of annual income from the tolls at Acre, and in July 1244

90 Ibid., no. 112, pp. 92–93 agreement between the Teutonic Knights and Freifelt, archbishop of Acre, September 1257.
91 Ibid., p. 93.
92 Ibid., no. 30
93 In 1194 Henry II of Champagne donated the Curns hospital at Acre like the Knights Hospitaliter and Knights Templar, from paying tolls in his kingdom on all victuals and provisions purchased for their own use. The Teutonic Knights interpreted this privilege as one from God in the kingdom of Jerusalem. See no. 120: p. 825 “De libertate vestrali et habitu.” No. 301 p. 273 in 1216 Honorius III forbade secular and ecclesiastical lords to receive from the Teutonic Knights any oath of allegiance oaths of homage to another as well as other manner of demands from secular persons. No. 305 in 1218 Honorius III restored to himself the right to communicate the Teutonic order: see also no. 305 p. 306, pp. 277–278 in 1228 Honorius III exempted the Teutonic Knights from ecclesiastical jurisdiction. No. 310: in 1221 Honorius III exacted the extermination of the tribe from those possessions of the Teutonic Knights which they themselves established.
94 Ibid., no 111, p. 92.
95 Ibid., no 105, p. 277.
96 Ibid., nos. 312, 304, 312, 317, 335, 340, 363: bulls of Honorius III to the Teutonic Knights, January 15, 1221 to February 20, 1222.
97 Ibid., no. 51 privilege to the Teutonic Knights.
98 Ibid., no 64 letter of grace of no. 129, p. 129.
99 Ibid., no 66 privilege to the Teutonic Knights, of no. 130, p. 123. This letter of grace was spent on the purchase of the comports of that called Traffic, which included the fortress Monfort.
from James of Amide the order received 7,000 crusader bezants of yearly income from the harbor of Acre; thus the order's income from tolls at Acre alone totaled some 13,400 crusader bezants yearly. Counting four grams of gold to a bezant, it comes to nearly 54 kilograms or 118 pounds of gold as annual income.

Because of lack of information no one will ever know the economic value of the order's possessions and enterprises in the crusader states. However, the German historian Hein Prutz has imaginatively interpreted very limited information about the tithe the order paid to the bishops of Acre from the income of its lands and possessions in the diocese of Acre, which was under the order's own management. According to the order's own estimate the tithe, for an uncertain period of time, was 24,000 crusader bezants. Thus the full value of the income from the villages, manors, and properties and economic enterprises from the diocese of Acre alone was about 240,000 crusader bezants, or 960 kilograms or 2,112 pounds of gold. It should be kept in mind, however, that a large part of the order's possessions was cultivated by the native peasants, whose labor represented an additional income now impossible to estimate.

The legal base of the order's economic undertakings may be found in the second paragraph of the rule: "The brothers, on account of the great expenses arising from the needs of so many people and hospitals and of the knights and the sick and the poor, may possess, to be held in common in the name of the order and their chapters, monasteries and foundations, lands, fields, vineyards, mills, castles, churches, parishes, chapels, tithes, and such things as are granted in their privileges. They may also possess in perpetuity right people, men and women, serfs, male and female."

The order's wealth and landed estates provided the financial and economic basis for the supplies to its army and fortifications. We know nothing more of its headquarters in Acre than the bare fact that it had there a church, a hospital, part of the city wall with the
adjoining rampart, and the conventual lodging. To contribute their share to the defense system of the crusader states the Teutonic Knights acquired and rebuilt several strongholds in the vicinity of Acre, such as Judin, Castellum Regis, and Montfort, which the Germans renamed Starkenberg. All three fortresses were located northeast of Acre, in a mountainous region. About Judin we know nothing besides its name and location some three miles south of Montfort. Castellum Regis, together with its appurtenances, the order bought in May 1220 from Count Otto of Henneberg for 7000 marks silver and 2000 crusader bezants; about the castle itself nothing is known. When the chronicler Burchard of Mount Sion visited the Holy Land after Baybars' attacks and his devastation of the district of Acre, he found Castellum Regis in the hands of the Saracens and castle Judin in ruins.

Montfort lies about seven miles northeast of Acre in a mountainous region called Trefile, and was purchased by the Teutonic Knights on April 20, 1228, from James of Antioch, together with the entire complex of fields, for 6400 crusader bezants (25.6 kilograms or 56 pounds of gold), which were given to the order by emperor Frederick II from his income from the tolls in the harbor of Acre. This purchase was confirmed by the emperor on April 1229 at his palace at Acre. The Teutonic Knights called Montfort the new castle, indicating that there was already an old castle of which the Teutonic Knights took possession in 1229, immediately beginning its reconstruction and expansion. The rebuilding of Montfort was permitted by the peace treaty between Frederick II and Sultan al-Kamil, concluded on February 10, 1229.

The fortress was halfway between Acre and Tyre, on a wooded hill between the branches of the brook Wadi Kur; being some six

102 Burchard of Mount Sion, op. cit., p. 103. For Rudolph of Fuchsen, see: Rudolph of Fuchsen, n. 1.
103 Burchard of Mount Sion, op. cit., p. 104.
hundred feet above the brook level, it was difficult of access. Located close to Saracen territory, it was regarded by the knights, the papacy, and the westerners as a good stronghold against Moslem invasion of Christian territory. To obtain funds for rebuilding and fortifying the old castle the master, Hermann of Salza, asked the pope for financial support, and in July 1230 Gregory IX published an indulgence for ten years of a yearly remission of the seventh part of penitence to Christians who contributed money for rebuilding Montfort.107 By 1240 the castle was already occupied and had a castellan, and by 1244 the reconstruction of the fortress was far enough advanced to permit the moving of the seat of the master to Montfort.108 (Master Gerard of Malberg resigned his office at Montfort in 1244.)111 To complete the rebuilding of Montfort pope Innocent IV in September 1245 granted a new indulgence of thirty days to all Christians who contributed funds for this purpose.112 As early as 1266 Montfort was attacked by sultan Baybars, but the fortress was not taken.113

In 1271 Baybars renewed his offensive against Christian possessions in the crusader states, after capturing the Templar castle Chantel-Marc in February and the mighty Hospitaller fortress of Krak des Chevaliers and 'Akkār in May, he marched southward and in early June laid siege to Montfort. On June 11 Baybars took the suburb and on June 18 the bastion, and then the Saracen soldiers began to make breaches in the wall of the fortress. Baybars promised 1,000 dirhems for each stone the soldiers removed from the wall. As the battle for the fortress advanced, messengers appeared from the castle, sent by the Teutonic Knights to negotiate terms of surrender. The sultan allowed the garrison of Montfort a safe conduct to Acre, but the knights were not allowed to take with them any possessions or arms. After the German withdrawal the sultan's standard was raised on the fortress. Later Baybars ordered the destruction of Montfort, its demolition was completed by July 4, 1271.116 Such was the ignominious end of the mightiest German fortress in the Holy Land. Since Baybars' destruction the castle has never been occupied or rebuilt. Burchard

107 Ibid. No. 72: encyclical of Gregory IX July 16, 1240.
108 Ibid. No. 74: agreement between the Teutonic Knights and the Hospitaller about the income from the manors Acre, 1244; and no. 79: letter of gram of James of Amaury to John, July 7, 1244.
111 Ibid. No. 406: bull of Innocent IV, January 16, 1245.
112 Ibn-al-Fard, Ta'rikh, p. 252.
114 Ibn-al-Fardh, Ta'rikh, as quoted in Forstouren, pp. 232-233.
of Mount Sion, who saw the fortress after its destruction, could only
sadly testify to its utter ruin. 115

Western travelers and scholars of later centuries have visited Mont-
fort and left several descriptions of the ruins of the fortress. Accor-
ding to the most reliable of these descriptions, 116 Montfort lies 590
feet above sea level at the confluence of two streams on a rather nar-
row ridge, which restricted the shape of the castle’s layout. The stone
castle was about 350 feet long, 90 feet wide, and probably three stories
or approximately 90 feet high, with a large convent hall, a chapel,
dormitories, rooms for the household, and a partial basement. The
castle was surrounded by a wall about 1,500 feet long, with an in-
dependent detached donjon within the walls. Water was supplied to
the castle from cisterns. At the bottom of the hill lay the ruins of
another building complex, which have been variously identified as
a mill, as a church, and as an infirmary or hospital. 117

115 Burghard of Mount Sion, tr. Sherring, p. 21. The Moslem geographer ad-Dinashir
(1256–1277) visited Montfort about 1270 and wrote a brief description of it in his geographi-
cal work, cited in the bibliographical note, above. The paragraph relative to Montfort (tr. Le Strange,
p. 47) “A fine castle on a hill and well fortified as its lands in Al Kowal (Montfort) an
impassable castle lying between the two hills, and this was a famous frontier of the Franks.
It was taken by Sultan Baybars. There grows near it a valley most pleasant and celebrated among
all the valleys, full of sweet-smelling, the like of which we could nowhere else find, with
plentifulness of fragrance and excellence of finest. There are also grows here streams of such a size
that a single fruit weighs 6 Damascas Bush (or about 10 lbs.).”


B. Deeds of the Order and its Masters

About the first three masters of the Teutonic Knights nothing definite is known. We are not even sure of their correct names, as some sources call the first master Hermann Walpot, others Henry. Walpot died on November 3, before 1208, but by September 1208, the master was Otto of Kerpen; he died on February 7, 1209. In 1209 the new master was a certain Burt, who, like Walpot, is called "Henry" in some sources, "Hermann" in others; he died on June 3, presumably in 1210.118

The fourth master was Hermann of Salza (1209f-March 20, 1239). He is not known when he was born nor when he was elected master, but it is probably in 1210, for in October of that year a master Hermann was present in Acre, with other dignitaries of the crusader states, at the coronation of John of Brienne as king of Jerusalem.119 In contemporary documents Hermann is mentioned as the master for the first time on February 14, 1211.120 Hermann was a son of a family of the lower gentry whose members served the landgraves of Thuringia. Because of his devotion, energy, and talent, Hermann became not only the most famous master of the Teutonic Knights, but also a confidant, counselor, and agent of emperor Frederick II. He was a gifted diplomat and the founder of the order's state in Prussia.121 His early years as the master, until 1215, were probably spent in the Near East.122

In 1211 the Teutonic Knights made their first appearance in Transyl-

119 Ebersen de Privas, XXX, 2; a brother Hermann, master of the Teutonic Knights, is mentioned in 1209 (ibid., XXX, 40), but it is impossible to establish whether this was Hermann Burt or Hermann of Salza; see Purtsch, "Novellae," passim. Peter of Dusburg, SSAP I, 34-32, Schröder, op. cit., pp. 491-493.
120 Strzygowski, Tabulae, no. 49, patriarch Albert of Jerusalem's letter of arbitration between Martin Röte and Hermann of Salza, February 24, 1211.
122 Strzygowski, Tabulae, no. 45, text above, note 120, and no. 48, Bishop Regensburg imperial, no. 15047. Mattheus of Schwarzburg's letter to the Teutonic Knights, April 9, 1215.
vania; they were called in by king Andrew II of Hungary to fight the Kumans there, and received from the king as their base a district called Burzenland, a stretch of land between Transylvania and Wallachia. In the next two years the order obtained from Andrew the privilege of using its own coinage in Transylvania and also received the castle of Kreuzburg.

In 1216 Hermanu of Salza appeared in the west. In December, he was in Nuremberg at the court of Frederick II; because of Hermann's piety and honesty, the emperor bestowed upon the Teutonic Knights a house and other income in Brindisi in southern Italy. It is not known under what circumstances these two men first met, or how Hermann attracted Frederick's attention, but once their mutual trust was established they remained friends for life. From this time on Hermann was a member of the emperor's court; he accompanied Frederick on his journeys, and traveled as his cuisinier throughout the Hoheitsstaaten empire. Only seldom and on special occasions did he return to the Holy Land.

In 1217 Hermann returned from Germany to Palestine to lead his order in the Fifth Crusade. In October Hermann, together with the brothers Peter and Claris of Montaigu, masters respectively of the Knights Templar and Knights Hospitaller, and other dignitaries and leaders of the crusade, took part in a council of war in Acre, over which Andrew II, the king of Hungary, presided. The leaders of the crusade had selected the Templar castle Château Pélerin as their place of assembly. Therefore in the spring of 1218 the Templars, aided by the Teutonic Knights, fortified that castle.

In May 1218 Hermanu and his knights arrived at Château Pélerin to embark for Egypt; they landed off Damietta on May 30. They participated in the siege of Damietta, and in February 1219 they occupied the abandoned Muslim camp on the west bank of the Nile. On July 31 the Teutonic Knights went to the rescue of the Templar

123. Zschardt, u. v. Hassenauer, Urkundenbuch, nos. 89 and 106; Böhm, no. 156; feudal charter of Andrew II to the Teutonic Knights, May 1191, Peter of Durburgh, SSNP, II, 11, 14.
124. Zschardt, u. v. Hassenauer, Urkundenbuch, no. 132, and Böhm, no. 159.
125. Zschardt, feudal charters of Andrew II, 1282.
126. Böhm, Agnesen, nos. 89 and 106; feudal charters of Frederick II, December 1218.
128. Enchiridion Franciscorum, XXXI, 10; Böhm, Regesta imperi, V, no. 1504.
129. Enchiridion Franciscorum, XXXI, 13; Matthew Paris, Chronicon majorum ab inuent. III, 14, Oliver ed. Hoogeweg, cap. 23.
130. Enchiridion Franciscorum, XXXI, 13; Matthew Paris, Chronicon majorum III, 33; Oliver ed. Hoogeweg, cap. 29.
camp, which was being heavily attacked by the Saracens. On August 29 they participated in a battle against the Moslems and, like the other two military religious orders, suffered heavy losses: the Teutonic order lost thirty knights. 512 Sultan al-Kāmil then offered the Christians the return of Moslem-occupied territory in the kingdom of Jerusalem, and the return of the Holy Cross and the Christian captives who were in his hands, in exchange for a complete Christian withdrawal from Egypt. To consider this proposal the Christian leaders at Damietta convened in a council; the Teutonic Knights, John of Brienne, the regent of Jerusalem, and some of the prelates were in favor of accepting this proposal, whereas the Knights Templar, the Knights Hospitaler, the Italians, and many other prelates successfully opposed it. 513 After the Egyptian garrison abandoned Damietta on November 5, 1219, Hermann, together with other dignitaries, on November 11 sent to pope Honorius III a report on the capture of Damietta by the crusaders and on the planned advance toward Cairo. 514 Hermann also wrote a letter to Leo, cardinal-priest of Santa Croce, complaining about the plundering and pillage of the captured city by the Christians. 515 In March 1220 the Teutonic Knights were forced to turn over to John of Brienne half of the order's spoils taken at Damietta. 516 By May 30 Hermann was back in Acre, leaving his knights in Damietta, where they were attacked by the Saracens and lost a ship with a supply of barley. 517

Meanwhile Hermann himself had proceeded from the Holy Land to Italy, where in October he was acting as Frederick II's messenger to the pope, and on November 25 we find him in the emperor's chancery, near Rome. 518 Since that was only three days after the coronation of the emperor by Honorius III, one must assume that Hermann was present at the ceremony. 519 He had probably conveyed

---

131 Oliver, ed. Hoengen, cap. 22, 29; Macnamee-Park, Crusader monarchs, III 48-50
132 Estoire de Erance, XXXII, 20
133 Bohmen, Regesta imperii, V, nos. 10045, Röhrich, Regesta, no. 925
134 Bohmen, Regesta imperii, V no. 10048; Röhrich, Regesta, no. 946, for the pillage of Damietta see Oliver, ed. Hoengen, cap. 40
135 Bohmen, Regesta imperii, V, nos. 10058, and Röhrich, Regesta, no. 930—upon letter of John of Brienne, March 220.
136 Kühnle, Treiber, no. 52; letter ed. Hoengen, contrary ed. Humann, May 30, 1220; Oliver, ed. Hoengen, cap. 40-49
137 Estoire de Erance, XXXVII, 57 and Bohmen, Regesta imperii, V, no. 1106, letter of Frederick II to Hermannus, 9 November, 1220; ed. Röhrich, Regesta, 1220 Frederick II's proem, November 23, 1220
138 Some indirect indications of Hermann's departure in the correspondence can be traced in Frederick's letter of confirmation of privileges to the Teutonic Knights, December 1220, in Husbauer-Brüchelmann, Herrvœ, II, 224-225.
a message to the pope in October regarding the proposed crowning. In April 1221 at Taranto Hermann secured from Frederick II several privileges for the Teutonic Knights, the most important being the right to voyage freely between Calabria and Sicily, exemption from taxes and customs, free use of waters, pastures, and woods, the right to receive fief within the empire, and the donation of a hospital at Palermo. 139

Hermann was not only a crusader and a friend of the emperor; he was also the head of the Teutonic order, and he never missed an opportunity to secure from the Roman curia new privileges for his brothers. While on crusade he had asked the emperor to intercede with the pope to help him to obtain for his order the same status that the two other military religious orders, the Knights Templar and the Knights Hospitalier, enjoyed, as well as papal permission to wear the white mantle. On his coronation day Frederick II approached Honorius III on this matter and received a sympathetic hearing. 140

On January 9, 1221, the pope in two separate bulls granted Hermann and his brothers the right to wear, as the Templars did, the white mantle, and also granted the Teutonic Knights the same immunity as the Knights Templar and Knights Hospitalier had. 141 In order to provide means for the Teutonic Knights to procure white mantles, the emperor in December 1221 provided the order with 200 ounces of gold in yearly income from the town of Brindisi. 142

Hermann, once having won the goodwill of Honorius III, continued to strike while the iron was hot. During his month-long sojourn at the papal court in the Lateran palace from January 9 until February 9 Hermann secured from the Roman pontiff no less than fifty-four separate bulls confirming existing privileges and granting new exemptions to the Teutonic order. 143 Hermann had secured the benevolence and protection of the two most powerful men in western Christendom. He remained a trusted friend and a valued servant both to the emperor and to the papacy for the rest of his life.

In July 1221 Hermann was back in Egypt, 144 where he participated in the negotiations between the Christians and the Moslems for the return of Damietta to al-Kamil, and was delivered, together with the masters of the Templars and Hospitaliers, as a hostage to the sultan.

139 Ibid., II, 156-166. Letters of Frederick II to the Teutonic Knights, April 1221, and 226-228. Frederick's confirmation of privileges to the same. November 1221.
140 Ibid., II, 224.
141 Strehlke, Werke, nos. 306-308. bulls of Honorius III, January 9, 1221
142 Ibid., 226-227.
143 Ibid., 226-227.
144 Oliver, ed. Hungerry, cap. 57.
to ensure the surrender of Damietta to the Mamluks according to the provisions of the treaty. On September 6, 1221, Hermann and the master of the Templars, as representatives of the Christian army in Egypt, surrendered Damietta to the Saracens.

By February 5, 1222, Hermann was back in Italy to report directly to the pope and the emperor on the failure of the Fifth Crusade. On the same day he obtained from Frederick II for the order the church of St. Thomas at Barietta, where seventeen years later his body was buried in the order's chapel; today no trace of his tomb is to be found.

By 1222 the order had made good headway in Transylvania; it had built several strong stone castles, had gained more land, and had begun to colonize the acquired territory with settlers from Germany. Thus the order had begun to build its own state in Transylvania, a territory which was part of the Hungarian kingdom, presumably with the consent of Andrew II. But the Teutonic Knights in that country not only increased their power and grip on their possessions, they also began to treat the Hungarian nobility and clergy with indignity. There is no evidence of the part Hermann played in shaping the order's local policy in Transylvania, but anti-Teutonic sentiments in Hungary were increasing. When Pope Honorius III in 1224 issued a bull which informed the Hungarian bishops that he was taking the order's possessions in Transylvania under papal protection and was exempting the order's lands from local episcopal jurisdiction, it was evident that the publication of the bull was the result of Hermann's diplomacy. This bull also revealed the political goals of the Teutonic Knights in Transylvania: with papal support the master wanted to establish a German mission state, independent of the king of Hungary, between the Hungarians and their eastern neighbors, the Kumans, thus converting the Transylvanian branch of his order into a state of the order.

In the winter of 1224-1225 the resentful Hungarian nobility, led by King Andrew II, attacked the Teutonic Knights and expelled them from Transylvania. Hermann returned to Italy in the early spring of 1225, and probably approached Honorius III with a complaint about

145 Ibid., mw. 79
146 Ibid., chap. 9. Hullerod-Brahimi, Almarn, III, 41. Frederick II's open letter, December 6, 1227
147 Ennoire de Francia, XXXI, 28; Ridolfi, Regesta impert, V, no. 1772: feudal charter of Frederick II
the expulsion, for in June the pope asked Andrew for the restitution of the possessions and privileges of the Teutonic Knights in Transylvania. The Hungarians paid no heed: Transylvania was lost to the Teutonic Knights forever.

Late in 1225 Frederick II married Isabel of Brianc, princess of Jerusalem, and became regent of the kingdom. Hermann of Salza was present at the wedding ceremony. Hermann used this occasion to obtain new favors for his order from the newlyweds. In January 1226 Frederick, because of Hermann’s faithful service, took under his special protection the order, its brethren, and all their possessions in the kingdom of Jerusalem. Isabel in a separate document affirmed that the emperor had acted with her consent.

The loss of Transylvania by the Teutonic Knights in 1225 was compensated for by an offer in the same year from Conrad, the Polish duke of Masovia, who sent a delegation to the master in Italy asking the order to undertake a crusade against the pagan Prussians. During the pontificate of Innocent III, a Cistercian monk named Christian had been appointed bishop to the Prussians, and energetically began to spread the word of God among the Prussian tribes. In 1221 Christian even organized a crusade against the Prussians in which several Polish dukes and bishops participated. But in 1224 the Prussians destroyed Christian’s mission, attacked their eastern Polish neighbors, and devastated the borderland between Prussian and Polish territory. In order to check Prussian attacks and save his own land from further destruction, Conrad of Masovia solicited the aid of the Teutonic Knights. Whether there was any connection between the expedition of the German knights from Transylvania and their invitation to Prussia is difficult to establish, but such a request suited Hermann’s goal. He neither refused it nor accepted it outright, but, being a shrewd politician and far-sighted diplomat, sought the emperor’s support and protection for such an intervention.

Consequently, Frederick II in March 1226 at Rimini issued one of the most important imperial edicts concerning the Teutonic Knights: this edict, usually called the Golden Bull of Rimini, not only opened the door for German colonization of Prussia, but also legalized the founding of the order’s state in the conquered territory. From this

151 Entwurf der Erkenntlich, XIXII, 30.
152, Stichwörter, Zitatangaben, mm. 54, 59, and 71/2. Rogers propaganda, v. 1570, 1571 and imperial privileges to the Teutonic Knights.
edict we also learn that in return for the requested help, Conrad was compelled to cede to the Teutonic Knights a border district between Prussia and Masovia called Kholm, and another unnamed territory. Furthermore, Hermann secured from Conrad his consent in advance for the Teutonic Knights to keep any territory they conquered from the Prussians, it was easy for Conrad to give away territory that was not part of his domain. To confirm the agreement, Frederick in the edict solemnly announced: "We concede and confirm to this master, his successors, and his house, in perpetuity the above-mentioned land [Kholm] which he will receive, as promised by the aforementioned duke, and in addition, land that may be given to him [in the future], as well as the whole of territory which he, with God's help, will conquer in Prussia." Hermann did not depart for Prussia but sent one of his knights, Conrad of Landsberg, to Masovia to investigate conditions there. Hermann was needed at the court of Frederick II to help him to prepare for the long-delayed crusade.

Honorius III died on March 18, 1227, while Hermann was still in Germany, and the new pope, Gregory IX, in April supported Hermann's mission in Germany by repeating his predecessor's plea to the Germans. In June Hermann was back in Italy and was sent by the emperor to Gregory, probably to introduce himself to the new pope and to discuss matters relative to the crusade. Finally, in August 1227, the main body of the crusade of Frederick II sailed from Brindisi to the Holy Land, and the emperor followed on September 6, accompanied by the leader of the German contingent, landgrave Louis of Thuringia. But the landgrave, struck down by plague, died shortly after leaving Brindisi, and the emperor, also ill, on the advice of his companions disembarked at Otranto to recover from his illness. However, the emperor's flotilla of twenty ships, under the command of duke Henry of Limburg, Gerald, patriarch of Jerusalem, and Hermann of Salza, in mid-September continued its voyage to the east. From Otranto Frederick sent envoys to Gregory at Aragon to inform him of the new delay, but the pope, placing no credence in Frederick's story, excommunicated him on September 29.

After stopping at Cyprus the flotilla, with Hermann aboard, arrived in the Holy Land, probably in October 1227. Frederick, still

133 Hohasser, Quellen, no. 9, privilege to the Teutonic Knights, March 1236.
134 MGH Epistolae aevi XI, 2, nos. 351-354, and Billiet, Regesta Imperii, V, nos. 666-67, papal letters to the emperor and various German princes, April 16, 1227.
135 Balder von San Germano, Chronica, p 347
136 Hambach-Grüninger, Historien, III, 44: open letter of Frederick II, December 6, 1227.
137 Matthew Paris, Chronica majora, III, 126.
under papal excommunication, landed at Acre on September 7, 1228, 
a year after his first embarkation at Brindisi. In Acre the emperor 
was met by many local dignitaries, including the masters of the 
Templars, the Hospitallers, and the Teutonic Knights. However, it 
soon became apparent that because of the papal ban, many of the 
leaders hesitated to support Frederick and his plans for the crusader 
states, only the Teutonic Knights, the Genoese, and the Pisans stood 
by the emperor.138

Hermann of Salza met Frederick at Acre and accompanied him 
during his stay in the Holy Land, acting as his counselor and amanuensis. 
When the emperor moved to Jaffa in mid-November, Hermann was 
with him and remained with him until he left the city in mid-March 
1229. During this time Frederick conducted negotiations with Sultan 
al-Kāmil for the return of the holy city to the Christians, and though 
it appears that Hermann had no active role in the negotiations, his 
opinion was sought by the emperor. Hermann, together with the 
masters of the other two orders (Peter of Montfort and Bertrand of Thonon) 
and the English bishops, advised the emperor to obtain consent for 
such a treaty from the patriarch of Jerusalem, Gerald, an unyielding 
supporter of Gregory IX and the leader of the anti-imperial party 
in the Holy Land, but Frederick disdained the advice. The agreement 
between the emperor and the sultan was concluded on February 10, 
and Hermann, with Thomas, count of Accra, and John, lord of 
Sidon, was dispatched by Frederick to al-Kāmil to secure his oath 
to the treaty. After receiving al-Kāmil's oath, the latter two departed 
for the court of an-Nasir Dā'ud, the ruler of Damascus, to obtain 
his support for the treaty, while Hermann was sent to patriarch Gerald 
to procure his consent, as well as to ask the patriarch to participate 
in Frederick's solemn entry into the holy city. Hermann's eloquence 
failed to persuade the patriarch, and consequently Frederick decided 
to effect his entrance into Jerusalem without Gerald.

On March 17, 1229, Frederick entered the holy city, and the master 
of the Teutonic Knights and many of the crusaders accompanied the 
emperor. The Knights Templar and the Knights Hospitaller, however, 
obeyed the ban by the patriarch against associating with the emperor 
as an excommunicate and outlaw of the Roman church.139 Next day 
in the church of the Holy Sepulcher Frederick—Hermann again 
being present—crowned himself king of Jerusalem, and afterward read 
to the congregation, probably in Italian, a manifesto about his cru-

138 Riehl, III. 1465. Leibnitz, Reginae imp. V. no. 1732x. description of Frederick III's 
landing at Acre, September 7, 1228.
139 Estoire du France, XXIII., 9-2.
sade, which the master of the Teutonic Knights was asked to render in Latin and German. After the coronation ceremonies, Hermann advised the emperor to request Templar and Hospitaller support for the rebuilding of the fortifications of Jerusalem; on behalf of the emperor Hermann then made such requests to the masters of the two orders. But they hesitated to promise their support, and Frederick, angered by their reluctance, departed the following day for Jaffa. On March 22 the emperor, accompanied by the Teutonic Knights, entered Acre. Frederick rewarded the service of Hermann and his knights rather generously; he granted the order 6,400 crusader bezants in yearly income from the revenues of the harbor of Acre, for a period of four years.

The Teutonic Knights served Frederick well, not only in the Holy Land, but also at home in Italy. On March 7, 1229, a Teutonic Knight named Leonard had brought to the emperor at Jerusalem news from Italy about the invasion of Apulia by papal troops. Perhaps he had already brought Frederick the letter from Thomas, the count of Acerra, warning him of the dangers of papal animosity and describing the speedy progress of the army led by John of Bremone in southern Italy. On May 1, 1229, Frederick left Acre for Italy, accompanied by Hermann of Salza. After stopping at Cyprus, Frederick landed in Brindisi on June 19, and shortly afterward sent Hermann, together with other members of the order, as ambassadors to Gregory IX to negotiate peace. The negotiations progressed rather slowly, and Hermann had to make several missions to the curia, during these peace overtures Hermann was the chief negotiator, though he was always accompanied by ecclesiastical and lay dignitaries, including cardinals, archbishops, and a delegation of German princes.

Finally on July 23 at San Germano the emperor took an oath to avert for all matters over which he had been excommunicated. On August 29, 1230, he was absolved by two papal envoys, John Halgrin, cardinal-bishop of Sabina, and Thomas of Capua, cardinal-prince of St. Sabina. On September 1 the emperor was received with great pomp by Gregory in Anagni, where the former adversaries had a long

168. Heinrich-Brüderlin, Historie, III, 100; according to Hermann of Salza's account "verba sua ipsa latine at thesinesse aequamveniam"; according to geanisch Gerold's account (ibid., III, 109) "primus in dominium et pontium in gallia et sodalices de popularum haesitavit."


171. Richard of San Germano, Chronicon, pp. 359-362; see also Thietmar, Regesta imperii, V, sec. 6825ff. Heinrich-Brüderlin, Historie, III, 227; Frederick III's encyclical, September 1230.
private conversation in the papal chamber, with only the master of the Teutonic Knights present. The next day Frederick returned to his camp outside Anagni, and Hermann went with him. 164

Hermann, while striving after peace, did not forget the interests of his own order: in May 1230 the emperor confirmed a gift to the Teutonic Knights of several possessions in Apulia, while Gregory on January 18, at Hermann's request, confirmed to the order those grants of castles and territories which had been made by Conrad, duke of Masovia in 1228, and urged the Teutonic Knights to undertake a crusade against the heathen Prussians. On August 27, 1230, the pope repeated this confirmation. 165 But Hermann's role in rehabsituting the emperor was not over yet. Frederick had crowned himself king of Jerusalem, but Gregory had not recognized his title. Hermann continued to carry on negotiations between the pope and the emperor until the pope finally recognized Frederick's title in August 1231. 166 The grateful emperor in September granted the Teutonic Knights more possessions in Italy: "In view of the unfailing faithfulness and praiseworthy devotion of brother Hermann, the venerable master of the German House of the Hospital of St. Mary, and of his convent, our faithful supporters . . . and in view of the service offered and received, which the master and convent have fully rendered to our Majesty, both in the kingdom [of Sicily] and overseas, most unstintingly render now, and . . . may render in the future, out of our natural generosity, and in gratitude, by which we are used to provide for our good servants and followers, we grant and concede [certain specified pieces of land] . . ." 167

In 1233, upon the insistence of the people of the kingdom of Jerusalem, Hermann was sent to the Holy Land by the emperor as his representative to negotiate a reconciliation between the imperial and the papal parties in Acre. In 1234 an agreement was reached and the pope and the emperor approved it and urged the barons and the bishops in the Holy Land to respect it. In July 1234 Hermann was back in Italy and remained with the imperial entourage. 168

164 Richard von Wenemen, Cronica, p. 362.
166 Hofforden-Breholles. Historia, III, 294-297; letter of Gregory IX to Frederick II, August 12, 1231.
167 Ibid., 303; letter of Frederick II to the Teutonic Knights, September 1231.
Frederick's second wife, Isabel of Brienne, had died in 1228 after giving birth to a son, Conrad (IV). In 1235 Frederick was contemplating his third marriage, this time to Isabel Plantagenet, daughter of King John and sister to Henry III of England. According to Matthew Paris, Frederick sent two Teutonic Knights with an entourage to Henry with a letter requesting Isabel's hand. The messengers arrived at Westminster on February 23, four days later they were given Henry's favorable reply. What Hermann's role in the marriage arrangements were, we do not know, but the king of England in late April asked the master to intervene on his behalf at the papal and imperial courts. Meanwhile Frederick was preoccupied with another problem, the independent ponty of his son Henry (VII) in Germany. To bring him to obedience and to celebrate his wedding with Isabel, Frederick left Italy for Germany. Hermann accompanied him, and persuaded Henry to submit to his father. Frederick took his son captive at Worms on July 4, and on July 15 in the same old imperial city married Isabel Plantagenet.

At Viterbo, while mainly awaiting Lombard negotiations, Hermann in the presence of the pope succeeded early in 1236 in concluding an agreement with the representatives of the citizens of Acre which restored to Frederick and Conrad, his son by Isabel of Brienne, all their rights and privileges in the Holy Land.

Hartmann of Heldrungen, a Teutonic Knight and future master of the order, reports that for six years the master of the order of the Swordbearers, Volquin, had been asking Hermann of Salza to agree to the incorporation of the Swordbearers into the Teutonic Knight. After long hesitation, Hermann finally in 1235 dispatched two brothers to Livonia to investigate conditions there. They returned to Germany in 1236, when Hermann was in Italy. Hermann's deputy in Germany, Louis of Orlanden, convened a chapter of seventy brothers at Marburg to whom the emissaries reported their conclusions.

---

169. Matthew Paris, Chronica majora, III, 316; Böhmer, Regesta imperii, V, no. 3051 letter of Frederick II to the same, Aug. 1236; Ibid., V, no. 1673; letter of confirmation of Frederick II, July 1234.


171. H. Spalding, num. XCV, 1 nos. 676, and Böhmer, Regesta imperii, V, no. 7123 letter of Gregory IX to Frederick II, February 21, 1236; see also H. Spalding, op. cit., II, nos. 671, letter of Gregory IX to the Teutonic Knights in Acre, February 19, 1236


---
about conditions in Livonia. Since the chapter could not reach a consensus, it decided to refer the matter to the master, and Hermann, after returning from Italy, received in Vienna, perhaps in January 1237, a delegation which included Hartmann and Lothar. After consultation with this delegation, Hermann decided to receive the brothers of the order of the Swordbearers into the Teutonic order.

To obtain papal sanction for his decision, Hermann "himself rode to the Roman curia," evidently in March 1237, accompanied by Hartmann and a representative of the order of the Swordbearers. They found the pope at Viterbo, but while the delegation was awaiting the papal decision, another messenger from the Swordbearers arrived to inform the pope that the master of the Swordbearers had been killed in a battle with the heathen natives, together with sixty members of that order, thus the order was practically annihilated. The pope again was pressed for his consent to the incorporation of the Swordbearers into the Teutonic order, and finally on May 12, 1237, Gregory agreed to this. 118 The act of incorporation was solemnly performed in the presence of the pope: the representatives of the Swordbearers knelt before Gregory; he addressed them, and they then took off their white mantles with the red sword and star of the Swordbearers and put on white mantles with the black cross of the Teutonic Knights; a brother of the Teutonic Knights, Conrad of Strassburg, served as papal marshal. After the act of incorporation, Hermann asked his companions in their quarters: "Tell me, brothers, what have we gained in castles and land?" and Hartmann responded that Livonia was a rich country.

Hermann's decision about the Swordbearers in Livonia became the cornerstone on which was founded the expansion of the Teutonic order in that remote northeastern corner of Europe. Later, after the loss of Acre and the expulsion of the Teutonic order from the Holy Land in 1291, both of Hermann's decisions— to participate in the conquest of Prussia in 1226 and to incorporate the Swordbearers in Livonia into the order in 1237— proved so wise and advantageous that the possession of those two countries not only justified the continued existence of the Teutonic Knights, but also made the order a mighty territorial lord and a German and Catholic bulwark against Russian and Greek Orthodox expansion in the Baltic region. Therefore all German historians consider Hermann of Salza the founder of the Deutschniederlassung. His decision to seek papal approval instead of

imperial sanction, as he did in 1226 about Prussia, probably reflected the fact that the Swordbearers were subject to papal authority, not to the emperor. Moreover, by this move of Hermann, Livonia was formally exempted from the jurisdiction of the emperor.

In August 1238 Hermann departed for Salerno to seek a cure for his illness from the famous physicians there. However, their skill could not heal the ailing master; he died in Salerno, probably on March 20, 1239. On the same day, Gregory IX again excommunicated emperor Frederick II, and on June 11 he threatened to revoke all the privileges of the order if they supported the emperor against the papacy.

Theobald IV, count of Champagne and king of Navarre, landed with his French crusaders at Acre in September 1239 and soon afterward held a council of war with the local barons; among the participants was the recently elected master of the Teutonic Knights, Conrad of Thuringia, the youngest son of landgrave Hermann I. At this meeting it was decided to attack Ascalon, but on November 13 the Saracens defeated the main Christian army near Gaza; many were taken prisoner. When this news reached Theobald, he hurried with the Teutonic Knights to the aid of the Christians, but the Germans arrived too late to rescue the captives.

The Knights Hospitaller, taking advantage of the rift between Gregory IX and Frederick II and of Hermann of Salza’s death, had asked the Roman curia to subject the Teutonic order to the jurisdiction of the Hospitallers. On January 12, 1240, Gregory ordered the Teutonic Knights to send their representative to Rome to answer the Hospitallers’ demands. Consequently the new master, Conrad of Thuringia, departed for Rome in April to defend his order. Many German princes urged Gregory IX to use the good offices of the master to negotiate a reconciliation with the emperor; however, Conrad died on July 24, 1240, soon after his arrival in Rome. In 1241 at Acre a former marshal of the Teutonic Knights, Conrad of Malberg, was chosen the new master of the order.
In the meantime, on October 11, 1240, the brother of the king of England, Richard, Earl of Cornwall, had landed in Acre with his crusaders, and the crusader barons with the support of the Templars and the Teutonic Knights attempted to persuade the earl to respect the peace treaty which had been concluded between Theobald of Champagne and the Ayyubids earlier in 1240. In the Holy Land relations between the various Christian lords were not much better than those in Italy between the papacy and the emperor. By 1241 the Hospitallers were engaged in open hostilities with the Templars, who also had attacked the Teutonic Knights at Acre and driven the main body of their convent out of the city, for the Teutonic Knights were known as staunch supporters of the Templars' enemy, Frederick II. In February 1242 the master of the Teutonic Knights, Gerard of Melberg, departed for Italy, perhaps to complain to Frederick about the Templars, and to take up again with the papal curia the Hospitallers' request for the subordination of the Teutonic Knights to the Knights Hospitaller. Frederick II took advantage of the master's appearance at his court to send him as his emissary to the papal curia to pursue negotiations in the Lombard quarrel. Thus Frederick continued his policy of using the master of the Teutonic Knights as his advisor on and mediator with the papacy.

When on June 25, 1243, Innocent IV was elected pope, Frederick immediately notified him of Gerard's official status as his emissary. The new pope received the master sympathetically: Gerard offered the pope his oath of fidelity, and Innocent, in turn, renewed the order's rights over Prussia, and granted the order certain concessions in regard to its statutes. With this, Gerard's mission to Italy was completed, and he returned to the Holy Land. It appears that at Acre — during the feud between the Templars and the Teutonic Knights, which lasted well into 1243 — a strong opposition to the master had grown among his own brethren, in fact, internal strife had developed between two factions within the order. As a result of these quarrels, of which we know nothing, Gerard with his adherents resigned from

183 Gregorius IX, April 4 to May 11, 1243. For Gerard of Melberg see Richard of San Gimeno, Chronica, p. 302, where he mentions that in February 1242 a recently elected master has arrived at the papal court, the exact election date of Gerard is not known.
186 Richard of San Gimeno, Chronica, p. 302.
187 MGH, Legenda Conventuum, II, no. 239: Letter of Frederick II to Innocent IV, June 26, 1243.
188 Sarchilla, Tabulae, no. 470; Roll of February 9, 1244.
the order at some time before July 1244, at Montfort. In January 1245 Innocent IV granted Gerard the right to enter the Knights Templar, but he never did so. From Innocent's privilege, it is apparent that work at Montfort had advanced far enough to allow its use at the master's official residence.

After Gerard's resignation, the Teutonic Knights elected as their new master Henry of Hohenlohe, who is first mentioned as master on July 7, 1244. The first engagement in which Henry might have participated as master of the Teutonic Knights took place in October 1244 near Gaza, where the Egyptians and the Khwarazmians annihilated the combined Christian and Syrian army. According to Matthew Paris and the Continuator of William of Tyre, only three Teutonic Knights escaped captivity or death; if these accounts are correct, then Henry was not present at the battle. After this disastrous defeat Henry departed for the imperial court in Italy. From there Frederick II in April 1245 sent the master to the Council of Lyons to negotiate peace between the emperor and the papacy, but his efforts brought no positive results. In the following year Henry went to Prussia to lead in person the order's campaigns against the duke of Pomerelia, Swantopelk. After the conclusion of a peace treaty with Swantopelk in 1248, Henry of Hohenlohe returned to Germany, where he died on July 15, 1249.

In 1250 Gunther of Wittersleben was elected as the next master; there is no information about his deeds. However, before Gunther's election Louis IX, the king of France, had landed with his crusaders in Egypt, and on June 6, 1249, captured the city of Damietta and allocated certain houses in the city to the Templars, the Hospitallers, and the Teutonic Knights, who had fought with the crusader army. The great defeat of the Christians came on February 8, 1250, at Mansura, where the vanguard of the crusader army, led by the king's brother, count Robert of Artois, was completely destroyed. According to the Continuator of Williams of Tyre, only four Teutonic Knights...

185 Matthew Paris, Chronica majora, IV, 236; Stephani, Thesaurus, no. 487, letter to the Teutonic Knights.  
188 Jacobus and Richardo, Regesta, III, nos. 93, 94; Tenius, op. cit., p. 47; Perlbauch.  
189 Schreiber, op. cit., p. 662.
were lost; however, Matthew Paris records that only three Teutonic Knights escaped. Then, on April 6, Louis was taken captive with the rest of the French contingent. Negotiations for ransom and the release of the prisoners were begun immediately, and after Louis had agreed to deliver the city of Damietta to the Saracens and pay a substantial amount of money, he was released from captivity together with William of Chalonnes, the master of the Hospital; twenty-five knights of that order, fifteen Templars, ten Teutonic Knights, and seven hundred other captives. Whether Günther of Willersleben had any part in the crusade of Louis IX is not known. Günther died on May 3 or 4, 1252.

Poppo of Osterna was elected in 1252 to succeed Gunther, about his death as master nothing is known. In 1256 in Rome, where he held a general chapter, Poppo resigned his office. The same chapter elected as his successor Anna (abbreviation of Johannes?) of Sangerhausen, who is first mentioned in documents as master on January 4, 1257. Before his election Anna was the master of the Teutonic Knights in Livonia; during his long tenure many important events in the order's life took place in the Holy Land. According to the Continuator of William of Tyre, the Teutonic Knights, together with the Templars and the local barons, in 1257 acknowledged Henry II de Lusignan as the legal king of Jerusalem. He was opposed by the Hohenstaufen Contadin, the son of Conrad IV (who died in 1254) and grandson of emperor Frederick II (who died in 1250). If the author of the Continuator is correct, this was a shift in the traditional policy of the Teutonic Knights from support of the Hohenstaufen and their claim to the throne of the kingdom of Jerusalem.

In 1256 the frequent and enduring disputes between the Venetian and Genoese merchants in Acre had led to open hostilities, nicknamed the war of St. Sabas (1256-1261), over the possession of the monastery of St. Sabas on the mound of Montjou, which overlooked the city. The military religious orders became involved in this conflict, with the Knights Hospitalier supporting the Genoese, while the Teu-

190. Monumenta de Rhedeli, v. 63, 64. Matthew Paris, Chronica majora, V, 156.
195. Monumenta de Rhedeli, v. 79.
Masters of the Teutonic Knights

During the war of St. Sabas the masters of the three orders — Thomas Berard of the Knights Templar, Hugh Revel of the Knights Hospitaller, and Anna of Sangerhausen of the Teutonic Knights — met on October 9, 1253, in the church of the Holy Sepulcher in Acre to sign an agreement to end their mutual feud and conclude a "permanent peace and pleasing harmony." To stress the importance of this reconciliation the great dignitaries in the Holy Land assembled to witness the signing of the treaty: the papal legate to the kingdom of Jerusalem, patriarch James of Jerusalem; John of Ibelin, lord of Artaf and constable and baize of Jerusalem; Geoffrey of Sargines, seneschal of Jerusalem; and many others. More significant than the witnesses, however, were the solemn pledges undertaken by the three orders to respect the reconciliation: the text of the agreement was to be recited and sworn to every year by the present masters and by every newly elected master in the general chapter of his order in the presence of twelve brethren from the other two orders; likewise all brothers of the three orders were ordered to observe the agreement inviolably. Furthermore, as soon as they were elected, all commanders, castellans, and their subordinates in the crusader states and in Cyprus had to take an oath similar to that of the masters to respect this agreement. In case of breach of the agreement, in part or completely, the offending order was obliged to compensate the other two orders with one thousand marks in silver; the orders' movable and landed possessions were offered as security. Finally, to give the agreement a greater effect, it was sworn to upon the Holy Gospel and was accompanied by renunciation of all privileges and immunities of the three orders that would contradict this agreement.

Subject to this agreement were all questions and quarrels among the three masters and the brothers of their orders in the kingdoms of Jerusalem, Cyprus, and Cilician Armenia, the principality of Antioch, and the county of Tripoli. Exempted, however, were disagreements over castles, manors, and burhards; such disputes were to be brought before ecclesiastical or secular courts.

The masters of the three orders agreed to support each other with counsel, aid, and assistance in their wars against the enemies of the faith, and each order had to offer aid at its own expense to the other

197. Thietmar of Wied, no. 106, agreement among the Teutonic Knights, the Knights Templar, and the Knights Hospitaller, October 9, 1253.
two if war should be waged in the kingdom of Jerusalem, Cilician Armenia, the county of Tripoli, or the principality of Antioch. However, if the Teutonic Knights went to the aid of the Knights Templar and Knights Hospitaller in Tripoli and Antioch, their expenses for victuals, forage, and men were to be met by the order to whose aid the Teutonic Knights were called. There was a further stipulation that in joint operations within the kingdom of Jerusalem the Teutonic Knights had to support themselves only for one month, and only west of the Jordan. If the brothers continued beyond a month, then the order which had asked for help from the Teutonic Knights had to supply victuals and fodder for the German troops for three months. On the other hand, if the Knights Templars and the Knights Hospitaller went to the aid of the Teutonic Knights against the enemies of the faith, it was their obligation to support themselves anywhere in the crusader states (out of their own expense), though not in Europe. This restriction entailed the exclusion of the Templars and Hospitallers from participation in the wars of the Teutonic Knights in Prussia and Livonia. This stipulation was as convenient to the Templars and Hospitallers as to the Teutonic Knights: the former two were not committed to participate in the wars of the Teutons outside the Holy Land, while the Teutonic Knights kept the other two orders out of territories which the Germans claimed as their own.

The concluding paragraphs of the agreement regulated administrative matters and the jurisdiction of the orders; brethren of the three orders could not bear arms against each other, if a master of one order left the crusader states, presumably for Europe, before his departure he had to make arrangements with the other two masters and their brethren for the support and defense of his order during his absence. This regulation was inserted probably because of the frequent and prolonged absences of the masters of the Teutonic Knights from the Holy Land. The final statement, beyond doubt, was included at the request of the Teutonic Knights: "We order the master or the convent of the Hospital of St John to raise the question of obedience of the master and brethren of the German hospital of St. Mary, the independence of the orders in question to be preserved according to the present agreement." This agreement would receive papal confirmation only some seventeen years later, on March 13, 1275, by Gregory X, and then upon the express request of the Knights Hospitaller. One result, nevertheless, appears certain: the Hospitallers never again tried to exercise jurisdiction over the Teutonic Knights.

196 Ibid. to 1275 bull of Gregory X.
Whether the decision by the chapter of the Teutonic order after 1264, which states that no master should leave the Holy Land without the chapter's consent, was the immediate result of the 1258 agreement, it is impossible to determine. However, the document clearly indicates the growing resentment by the brothers of the order against the established tradition of the long absence of the masters from the Holy Land.

During the tenure of Azzo of Sangerhausen, in 1260, while a war was being waged between the Mamluks and the Mongols, the Teutonic Knights jointly with the Hospitallers and the Templars fortified the cities of Acre and Tyre. After the Mamluk general Baybars seized the throne of Egypt and Syria in 1260, he became increasingly active against the Christians; in the summer of 1266 he even attempted to take the city of Acre. To oppose Baybars, Hugh III of Luignan hurried from Cyprus to the Holy Land in October 1266 and led a combined army of his knights, Templars, Hospitallers, and Teutonic Knights against the Mamluks. The Saracens killed some five hundred of the Christians, but failed to take the city. In 1269 Baybars again appeared before Acre, the knights of the three military religious orders fought side by side in defense of the city, and Baybars had to retreat without taking Acre.

However, Baybars' pressure on the Christians continued: after capturing the Hospitaller stronghold Krak des Chevaliers and the Temple fortress Chastel Blanc, Baybars on June 29, 1271, appeared before the seat of the master of the Teutonic Knights, Starkenberg (Montfort), and after a week's siege, took the castle on June 12, and destroyed its fortifications. On June 15, 1271, Azzo concluded an agreement with the Armenian lord Constantine of Sarrashtikar, who allowed the Teutonic Knights to erect a customshouse, probably in the city of Sarrashtikar.

The skirmishes between the Christians and the Saracens continued; on November 23 the three military religious orders, aided by the king of Cyprus and the crusaders, departed to the district of Caesarea to capture the tower of Casso (Qaquin). Unfortunately for the Christians, no real army prevailed in their ranks: when in 1272 a quarrel arose between the king of Cyprus and Jerusalem, Hugh III and his

199 Perkboom, Sassenen (“Gezinsheerkwisten aus 1269”), III, p. 5 (p. 135), see also “Ge- welkinhoven,” p. 12.
200 Manuscrit de Rochefort, esp. 80.
201 Estoire de Eniacis, XXXIV, 9; Templar of Tyre, ed. Raymond, esp. 349.
203 Estoire de Eniacis, loc. cit.
barons, the master of the Templars, the marshal of the Hospitallers, and the grand commander of the Teutonic Knights sailed for Cyprus to patch up their differences; they returned to Acre without achieving anything. Not until a year later was a compromise reached. Even then the cooperation among Hugh, the barons, and the three orders did not improve. In 1276 Hugh III went to Acre by a ship which belonged to the Teutonic Knights but, enraged by the hostility of the Templars and the commune of Acre, he departed for Tyre, intending to return to Cyprus. The Templars and the Venetians now openly displayed their hostility toward Hugh, whereas the Hospitallers, the Teutonic Knights, the Pisani, the Genoese, the podestatuers, and the commune of Acre realized the danger of the Christian discord in the Holy Land and asked Hugh to appoint a bailee for the kingdom of Jerusalem.

In the meantime master Anno of Saalburg had died on July 6, 1273; he was succeeded by Hartmann of Heldrungen. There is no information about the Teutonic Knights in the Holy Land during the tenure of Hartmann. He was succeeded in 1283 by Burkhard von Schwanden, the last master elected in the Holy Land. The bitter strife between the Lusignan king of Cyprus and Jerusalem and his subjects at Acre continued during the tenure of Burkhard; in June 1288 Henry, the last king of Jerusalem, arrived at Tyre to be crowned king, but the three masters of the military religious orders were hesitant to welcome him, only after learning of the popular enthusiasm which greeted Henry did they change their attitude toward the young king. Even as late as 1289 discord was raging among the potentates of the Holy Land, though the masters of the three orders now held a common line in the internal disputes.

Finally in the year 1290 a Mamluk army from Egypt under sultan Kalavun began the last assaults on the Christians in Acre. In this year Burkhard returned to the Holy Land after a recruiting mission in Europe, bringing with him forty brothers and some four hundred crusaders. Shortly after his return Burkhard, for undisclosed reasons, suddenly resigned his office and joined the Hospitallers. The com-

---

205 Temple of Tyre, ed. Raynaud, p. 300.
206 Extrait de Gracia, XXXIV, 38.
208 Schmieder, op. cit., p. 672.
210 Peter of Dusberg, SSAP, 1, 1205; Colin de Seylac, Österreichische Reisemähr, ed. Schmitz, passim. 4220-4222, gives the number of the regular crusaders as seven hundred. For Ottokar see Stanislaus und Langend, Die Dt. Staaten 1819, V, colae. 834-842.
mand of the Teutonic Knights in the Holy Land was taken over by Henry of Bolanden, who because of the siege and the critical situation in Acre was never officially elected master. The Teutonic Knights under his command, together with the royal troops, defended the most vulnerable part of the town wall, the triangle at the Accursed Tower. Henry of Bolanden fell in the final assault on the city, on May 16, 1291. Thaddeus of Naples, though giving no specific facts, praises the bravery of the Teutonic Knights during the siege. And Ludolph of Suchem (Sudheim) relates the last days of the Teutonic Knights in Acre, "the masters and brethren of the orders alone defended themselves, and fought unceasingly against the Saracens, until they were nearly all slain; indeed, the Master [Henry of Bolanden] and brethren of the house of the Teutonic order, together with their followers and friends, all fell dead at one and the same time."

Upon Henry of Bolanden's death the master of Germany, Conrad of Fanchwanga, who had accompanied Burkhard of Schwanden, being the highest surviving commander among the Teutonic Knights, was chosen, again without regular election, by the brother knights in Acre as their new master. Conrad, seeing the crusader cause lost and wishing to return to his own province of Germany, followed the example of the Hospitallers and with the surviving German knights battled his way through the enemy to the ships. Ottokar of Styria, who between 1301 and 1319 completed his "Austrian Chronicle" in verse, tells his readers that the knights had requested Conrad to stay and fight on and share the fate of the rest of the defenders of Acre. However, Conrad had told the Teutonic Knights that it would be a mistake to allow the sultan to kill the knights "without guilt and without need." Ottokar also made Conrad promise to avenge the slaughter of the knights in Acre with the destruction of heathens in Prussia and Livonia. Conrad of Fanchwanga, with some Teutonic Knights and the surviving Hospitallers and Templars escaped by sea to Cyprus, and Ottokar of Styria, combining melancholy and sarcasm, continues his story of the crusader tragedy in Acre: "Now, on the high seas, gathered the small army who called themselves Christians."
Conrad of Feuchtwangen and his knights did not settle in Cyprus, but took sail to Venice, which remained the official seat of the master until 1309, when it was permanently moved to Marienburg in Prussia. With that move their second and greater epoch began.


219 See Edgar N. Selinuk, "The German Crusade on the Maine," in *volume III of the*...
IX
VENICE AND THE CRUSADES

The growth of Venice depended upon the profits to be gained from sailing the seas. Aware of its dependence upon Byzantium, Venice at first extended its seaborne trade under the protective mantle of the Greek navy. But during the eleventh century, however, Venetian maritime strength became great enough to assist, to challenge, and finally to supplant the Greeks on the waters of the eastern Mediterranean. Venice gradually gained marketing privileges from local rulers, next received small enclaves in these cities, then took possession of entire towns, and finally conquered the hinterland of several of these ports. Venetian trade and colonies were concentrated in Romania, those lands bordering the Aegean Sea and the approaches to Constantinople which were under Byzantine political control before 1204. To trade successfully in Romania, Venice had to protect its shipping on outboard and homeward voyages on the Adriatic and Ionian seas.

Above the emblems in this chapter is on Venice, the bibliography will be limited to significant works relating to Venetian affairs. The major modern sources include those of Dandolo, Chiericato veneziano et ghiaccato (MGNO, SS., VII, 1–47); Goodfellow de Venetis domini, La Conquête de Constantinople, vol. and ed. L. Chabanon Paris, 1933; Chiericato veneziano e voci venezie, ed. J. Chabanon, Paris, 1934, new ed., Bologna, 1952–1953; and Martin de Flandre Les Venitiens di Venezia, ed. and ed. Albert L. Amoretti (Fontes historiae Carol. Civitatis venetiae, 1851–1879). The excellent new edition supersedes the older La Cronaca dei Venetian di Antonio Maria da Canale, ed. Giuseppe A. Polfer, Archivio storico Italiano, VIII (1845), 228–394. The present collection of documents in the old and new Latin used in the following holds and contemporaneous of the Republic, follows the Breve historique des Byzance et l'Empire by M. M. Thomsen (Fontes rerum stirpium, I, 1240–1250, 1260–1285, 1286–1287) and A. A. Pani, 1960).

Venetian law codes from this period include Gli Statuti veneticani di Jacopo Papiolo del 1242 e le loro storia, ed. Giuseppe A. Polfer, Archivio storico Italiano, XXX, 3 (Venice, 1931); another edition Gli Statuti veneticani venetians from 1255, ed. Giuseppe A. Sivolello (Venice, 1935).

During the crusading centuries two additional trading areas attracted Venetian seafarers—the shores of Syria and Palestine, where the crusaders established Latin states at the beginning of the twelfth century, and Moslem Egypt. Other Italian seafaring peoples—the Genoese, the men of Amalfi and Catania—similarly extended their influence into the eastern Mediterranean during the Middle Ages. The military expeditions of the crusades provided a stimulus for these developments. This chapter is a summary of the Venetian commercial coloni

zation in Romagna, in Syria-Palestine, and in Egypt during the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth centuries.

For several centuries after its founding, Venice recognized the political superiority of the Byzantine emperors and gave constant but distant allegiance to the Greek world, rather than to the Latin world in the Italian peninsula. As part of the Greek world, Venetian seafarers

accepted the protection of the Byzantine fleet and of Byzantine laws, and Venice grew increasingly strong as a western Byzantine outpost. When Byzantium was no longer able to protect the Adriatic, the growing Venetian navy gradually assumed the defense of these waters. The Greeks, hoping to continue their domination there, relied more and more upon Venetian assistance against the Saracens and, later, the Norman kings of Sicily.

Venice, like the other Italian sea republics of Amalfi, Pisa, and Genoa, fought against Saracen sea power two centuries before the crusading epoch. In the ninth century Pisa and Genoa fought independently against Muslim sea powers in the western Mediterranean and the Tyrrhenian Sea, while Venetian fleets in collaboration with the Byzantines fought against Saracen encroachments in the Adriatic. Exploits are recorded for the years 827, 829, 840, 842, and

---

*The Mediterranean world was ever a commercial one.*

*Studies which refer particularly to the Venetian colonial empire during and after the Fourth Crusade include Giovanni Gradenigo, "L'Imperialismo veneziano nell'impero bizantino nel XII secolo," Rivista storica italiana, LXXXVI (1964), 385-425; idem, "La dominazione veneziana nel Mediterraneo nel XIII secolo," Rivista storica italiana, LXXXIII (1965), 363-421; idem, "La dominazione veneziana in Romaniei nel XIII secolo" (Naples, 1964); idem, "La dominazione veneziana in Romania nel XIII secolo," Rivista storica italiana, LXXXIII (1965), 313-326; idem, "La dominazione veneziana in Romania nel XIII secolo" (Naples, 1965).
846. A powerful Venetian fleet of sixty ships was destroyed in 846 as it attempted to drive the Saracens from Taranto. Consequently, Moslems operated farther north in the Adriatic. Although Venice won a naval victory over the Saracens based on Taranto in 871, Saracen corsairs continued to raid Adriatic shipping.

During these early centuries of its existence, Venice tried to regulate its commerce in conformity with Byzantine law. In 876 and 960 Venetian dogs promulgated decrees prohibiting their citizens from engaging in the slaved trade. The Byzantine emperor Leo V (813–820) prohibited his subjects from visiting Moslem ports, and, in response to an official request presented by legates of the Greek emperor, dogs

---


2 Andreus Damadeo, "Chronicon," pp. 258–259; Tafid and Thoma, 1, 17–25
Peter IV Candiano in 971 decreed that Venetians should not take number or weapons to Saracen lands—Barbary, Egypt, Crete, parts of Anatolia, and Sicily.

With the decline of Byzantine maritime strength, Venice, for its own protection, began to force the seaports on the Adriatic to submit to its authority. The Venetian doge Peter II Candiano (932–939) and Peter III Candiano (942–959) reduced the upper Adriatic (Ravena to Pola on the Istrian peninsula) to dependence on Venice. Their navies destroyed Comacchio and defeated the Istrian ones by enforcing an economic blockade. However, pirates in the middle Adriatic successfully challenged the Venetian navy before 1000, indicating the weakening of Byzantine naval power.

At the end of the tenth century, the Byzantine emperors Basil II and Constantine VII asked Venice to supply transport ships to carry a Byzantine military force to southern Italy. In return for this assistance, the emperors in this bull of March 992 granted special commercial favors to their Venetian subjects. These included a reduction to 2 solidi in the taxes paid at Abdyas by each Venetian ship bringing cargo to Byzantium and a reduction to 15 solidi for each departing Venetian ship, the difference being because the Venetian ships brought cargoes of low value to the east and took away cargoes of high value. Ships of other nationalities paid more. The Venetian merchants were expected to abide by Byzantine law and were placed under the jurisdiction of a Byzantine official, the logothete de dromo.

The recipient of these privileges from the Greeks, doge Peter II Orseolo (992–1009), also received an extension of Venetian commercial rights and privileges on the mainland of Italy from the German kings Otto III, in July 992, and Henry II, in November 1002.

Having gained international recognition, Peter prepared to wage what would be his most successful campaign against the Dalmatian pirates, especially those from the Narenta river and nearby on the Dalmatian islands of Curzola and Lagosta. His victory won for Venice the undisputed dominance over the area and for himself the title duke of Dalmatia. Thus by 1000 Venice had reduced the Dalmatian pirates and had begun to police the Adriatic.

Peter also led the Venetians in a successful military venture against the Saracens. The Apulian city of Bari, nominally under Byzantine

3. Thiel and Thomas, I, 29–30; Thurn, La Romantica, p. 34
4. Thiel and Thomas I, 36–39; the text is incorrect; consult Brown, "The Venetians and the Venetian Quarter," pp. 65–70; Thurn, La Romantica, p. 34, note 2; Conz, Venetian diplomacy, I, 159–172, of Apulian Dalmatian Chronicon, p. 193.
control, was besieged by the Moslems. A fleet from Venice, probably acting on behalf of Constantinople, assisted the local Christians and saved not only the city but the surrounding countryside from the Moslems in 1002-1003. The mouth of the Adriatic Sea, Venice's threshold, was again freed. The Byzantine emperor Basil II, in gratitude for these Venetian naval victories, betrothed his niece Maria to John, the son of the doge.

During the eleventh century the Venetians assumed further control of the Adriatic by pacts with the German emperors, with the Dalmatian cities, and with Slavic princes, and by tacit recognition from the Croats. Later eleventh-century Venetian treaties with the port towns along the Adriatic coast of Italy, especially Fano, show a nominal respect by Venice for the sovereignty of these cities, but their terms, which included heavy military duties and an oath of fidelity, indicate that Venice was the actual sovereign.

That the Venetians were cooperating with the Greek emperors in policing the Adriatic is further attested by their naval activity against the Normans. Venice sent ships to assist the Byzantines against Robert Guiscard's invasion of the Balkans from 1061 to 1063. Venetian fleets were especially active in the siege of Durazzo from 1081 to 1084 and in curtailing the Norman advances in the lower Adriatic in 1093 and 1084. After Robert Guiscard's death, his Balkan conquests reverted to Byzantine rule, and the entire Dalmatian coast north of Durazzo entered the Venetian sphere of dominance.

As a direct result of this Venetian naval assistance against the Normans, emperor Alexius I Comnenus granted Venice more commercial privileges. These privileges, enumerated in the charter of May 1082, included freedom for Venetians to trade in the Byzantine empire without paying any duties whatsoever. The Greeks also granted annual revenues to the Venetian churches, revenues to Domenico Cervone, the patriarch of Grado, and a title and revenues to the Venetian doge.

6. Titel and Thomas, 2, 50-54; Brown, "The Venetians and the Venetian Quarter," pp. 70-72; Koenen, Rheinische, 1, 178-179. For another description of the Venetian quarter see E. Giorgio Maggioni, ed., Lazzeroni, II, no. 49. Recently Chyrsostomos, "Venetian Commercial Privileges under the Palaeologoi," p. 266, defined the Venetian commercial privileges thus: "Venetians were given the right to buy and sell, import and export any commodity and to arrive by land or by sea with or without armament without paying any of the customary taxes such as the tenemus, dimissiouris, and the tenemus taxus. Exceptions were prohibitions of the import of home-grown wine and the requirement to report goods belonging to non-Venetians on Venetian ships. These privileges were renewed in 1126, 1148, later under the Angeis, and also in 1264 and 1277.

7. The title was also propagated as 'principalis unde dicti Halbaricis et Crescents. Titel and Thomas, 2, 52; Andrea Duquela, Chronica, p. 297; Bebius, "La Costera," p. 35, note 5 Cocal, Noticia abate, 11, 129, note 1.
Domenico Selvo. In addition, the citizens of Amalfi in the empire were required to pay annual tribute to Venice. The emperor also awarded Venice a quarter in Constantinople itself, on the west bank of the Golden Horn between the Gate of Vigla and the Porta Pamatis; it was about one third of a mile long and averaged one hundred seventy yards in width. Drumgargy Street ran the length of the Venetian quarter and was flanked by houses on each side. Crossroads led down to three wharves. The great Venetian warehouse and market stood just inside the Porta Pamatis. According to the text of 1082, the quarter included the church of St. Akundynas, rededicated by the Venetians to St. Mark, its adjacent bakery ovens, the church of St. Mary of the Lains that had formerly belonged to Amalfi, and the monastery of St. George. There was another religious establishment dedicated to St. Nicholas.

In addition to gaining a quarter in the Byzantine capital, the Venetians obtained the right to trade freely at the following Byzantine ports and inland cities: Latakia, Antioch, Manistra, Adana, Tarsus, Adalia, Strobilo, Ephesus (Theologos), Phocaean, Abydos, Scutari, Selymbria, Heraclea Rodosto, Apira, Adrianople, Perithoerion, Thessalonica, Demetrias, Negroponte, Thebes, Athens, Nafplia, Corinth, Modon, Cotinthus, Ventisa, Corfu, Avia, and Durazzo. The only Aegean island open to them was Chios. The Black Sea was closed to them, but on the Adriatic the Byzantine emperor ceded to the Venetians, as his faithful subjects, the church of St. Andrew in Durazzo and its revenues. Neither the other Italian merchants nor the Greeks had such privileges as the free trade and the annual Byzantine subsidies. The city of Amalfi lost its privileges in Constantinople because it had become part of the Norman kingdom.

Venice applied in 1119 to Alexis's successor, John II Comnenus, for a renewal of these privileges, but they were not renewed until 1126, and then only after it made war on the Byzantine islands of Corfu in the Ionian Sea, the Samos, Lesbos, and Rhodes in the Aegean, on Cyprus and Cephalonia, and on the Byzantine port of Modon in the Morea. Obviously the Greeks could not defend their outlying possessions against the Venetians, so John renewed the Venetian subsidies and titles. Venice's other commercial privileges were renewed and the special privileges of the Venetian quarter in Constantinople were reconfirmed, a later act of John.

---

9 Tito and Thoma, I, 53-56
10 Andrea Dandolo, Chronique p. 238; Tito and Thoma, I, 70
Comnenus extended the Venetian trading privileges to include Cyprus and Crete. 11

Not only were the Greeks unable to defend their empire from attacks, such as the Venetians had made in 1124-1125, but they were unable to protect their citizens against attempts by the Sicilian Normans to conquer them. The Byzantine empire continued to need Venetian naval assistance. During the Second Crusade, while the fleets of Genoa and Pisa were supporting the crusade in Spain, the Norman king Roger II, like his father sixty-five years earlier, seized the opportunity to expand his growing kingdom onto the Adriatic at Byzantine expense. While the Norman fleet raided the Morea and Asia, the Venetian ambassadors in Constantinople, in return for more privileges promised naval aid to the Greeks. In a chrysobull of March 1148 emperor Manuel I Comnenus defined in great detail the boundaries of the Venetian quarter in Constantinople. 12 In October 1148 the emperor issued a second bull which permitted the Venetians to trade freely, for the first time, in Rhodes. For this part, doge Peter Polani prohibited all commercial voyages for that season, called Venetian ships home, and organized an armada to assist the Greeks. It was an uneasy alliance, marked by growing tension and quarrels. When, however, the Norman fleet under George of Antioch demonstrated against the Byzantines by threatening the city of Constantinople and its commerce, the Venetians once more cooperated with the Byzantines. The Venetian fleet defeated the returning Normans off the coast of the Morea in 1149. 13

By mid-century the Venetians had gained the most liberal commercial privileges of any group of merchants in Byzantine waters, and Venetian commerce flourished. They now had complete freedom to trade in the Byzantine empire and complete exemption from all tolls, even those paid by the Greeks themselves. However, Venetian galleys still served in the Byzantine navy; there were thirteen in Byzantine service in 1150. 14 The Greeks had also granted similar, but not as extensive, privileges to the Pisans in 1111 and to the Genoese in 1153. No Italians were permitted to trade on the Black Sea. Byzantine ships probably continued to carry cargoes between ports within the empire. 15

11 Tafel and Thesaurus, l, 93-98, 234; Brown, "The Venetians and the Venetian Quaestor," p. 79.
14 Andrea Dandolo, Chronicon, p. 243, Hestoria dasynn venetiorum, in MGH SS.-XIV, 73, 27 Manoukh, Colossaeum, l, 150-152.
15 S. Clergeau Wiegand, II, no. 248, On their way across the Ionian Sea the Venetians may have seen Murano la Camal, Les Italiens de Venue, 1, 26 (pp. 38-39).
16 Hamdy, "Byzantines, 1081-1204," pp. 48-49.
In addition to the Venetian secular interest in the Greek east, Venetian churches possessed certain areas in Constantinople. As early as 1090 the Venetian doge Vincenzo Falier donated all the ducal properties in the Venetian quarter of Constantinople to the great Venetian Benedictine monastery of San Giorgio Maggiore. Seventeen years later another Venetian doge, Ordelaffo Falier, gave St. Mark (the former St. Akindynos), the main Venetian church in Constantinople, to John Grisengo, patriarch of Grado, the principal ecclesiastical official in Venice. This church and its possessions, including treasury, ovens, taverns, weights, and measures, were given to repay a debt Venice had incurred under the previous doge, Domenico Salvo. It is possible that these eleventh-century doges donated these state properties to the church in return for money to finance their government, as did their successors, doge Enrico Dandolo, one hundred years later.  

Venetian ecclesiastical authorities also owned property on the Byzantine island of Lemnos, in Byzantine Rodosto on the north shore of the Sea of Marmara, and at Halmyros, the Byzantine port in Thessaly. These three ports often served Venetian merchants in the twelfth century. In July 1116 Peter, prior of the Venetian monastery of St. Mark in Constantinople, subject to the monastery of San Giorgio Maggiore, received the oratory of St. Basil on Lemnos, with its dependencies, from Michael, Orthodox archbishop of Lemnos. In return, the Venetians promised to build a church in honor of St. George the Martyr and to give all annually to the Greek archbishop.  

In 1145 doge Peter Polani granted jurisdiction over the Venetian church of St. Mary in Rodosto to the Venetian monastery of San Giorgio Maggiore. In 1151 San Giorgio's control over St. Mary in Rodosto was declared sovereign, as neither patriarch nor doge nor the commune of Venice had the right to intervene. These privileges in Rodosto were the subject of a special embassy sent in 1147 by Venice to the emperor Manuel. The jurisdiction of San Giorgio Maggiore in Rodosto was further defined in October 1157, when Hugo, the abbot of St. Mary in Adrianople, granted to San Giorgio Maggiore the church of St. Mary in Rodosto, together with "its buildings, hospital, gardens, and all charters new and old, Greek and Latin."  

16 Tolto and Ussher, 1, 95-96; S. Giorgio Maggiore, 31, no. 69. For St. Akindynos, see Tolto and Ussher, 1, 67, 74.  
17 Lombardo and Moreano della Rocca, Notizie piacentinesi, no. 8. Doge Enrico Dandolo in 1198 received 3,871 Venetian pounds from the Opera ecclesiæ B. Marci in apostoliarum martyrum communi.  
18 Tolto and Ussher, 1, 106-107; S. Giorgio Maggiore, 31, no. 182.  
19 On Rodosto see Tolto and Ussher, 1, 103-104, 107-108, 137-139; Lombardo and Moreano della Rocca, Notizie piacentinesi, no. 12.
The Venetian monastery of St. Mark in Constantinople, dependent on San Giorgio Maggiore in Venice, also acquired land with buildings in Halmyros, some of which had belonged to a private Venetian citizen who had pledged it to the monastery as security for a loan. When the sum was not repaid, he ceded his property to the monastery with the privilege of living there for life.20

Thus during the first crusading century the Venetians accumulated trading privileges in the Byzantine empire, achieved freedom from Byzantine taxation, acquired a quarter in Constantinople and property on Lemnos and in Rodosto and Halmyros. Numbers of Venetians came to reside in the Greek world, where they made their living as merchants. It is clear from the documents that control of the real estate was passing into the hands of the Venetian church. The great Venetian Benedictine monastery of San Giorgio Maggiore had the most responsibility, exercised through its representative, the monk who was also prior of St. Mark's in Constantinople. In addition to the Latin title of prior, he also bore the Greek title of "most precious."21 Also important were the holdings of the patriarch of Grado. In his church of St. Mark (St. Akhidynos) in Constantinople were kept the weights and measures of Venice. All surviving legal documents of the Venetians in Constantinople are connected to these two Venetian ecclesiastical institutions—the monastery of San Giorgio Maggiore and the patriarchate of Grado. Their representatives in the Greek state controlled the transfer of real estate, the registration and drawing up of notarial contracts, and the regulation of standards of measurement. This control by ecclesiastical officials would not have seemed at all unusual to the Greeks. A secular agent of the doge assumed charge of Venetian affairs in Romania only on those rare occasions when the doge sent special delegates to Constantinople.22

It would seem that, at least until 1187, Venetians in the Greek world were considered Greek subjects under Greek law, and that their affairs in Constantinople were directed by church officials.23 Apparently any legal disputes between Venetians and Greeks were settled

---

20 Tafel and Thomas, i, 126-133, 136-137; S. Giorgio Maggiore, ii, nos. 231, 252, 283, 371
21 S. Giorgio Maggiore, ii, no. 240.
22 See also Shaarawi, "Byzantine merchants and the Rise of Merchant Colonies." Names of the known agents are listed in Marchesi della Rovere and Lombardi, Documenti, i, no. 33, cf. Lombardi and Marchesi della Rovere, Nuovi documenti, no. 8; Tafel and Thomas, i, 187-199. Marchesi della Rovere and Lombardi, Documenti, i, no. 95.
in the Byzantine courts. Cases in civil law concerning Venetians only were settled before the Venetian elders in Constantinople. Not until the chrysothym of 1187 did the Byzantine state recognize Venice as independent and equal. Only after the chrysothym of 1190 issued by Alexius III Angelus were Venetians in Constantinople governed by a legate sent from the Venetian doge. This legate could apply Venetian civil law in his court when the defendant was a Venetian. If the defendant was a Greek, the crime or dispute was adjudicated according to Byzantine law. But this Byzantine recognition of Venetian law came barely five years before the fall of Constantinople to the Latins.

The position of Venetian merchants in Syria and Palestine was considerably different. In these lands the Genoese and the Pisans assisted the crusading effort several years before the Venetians, and these western Italian maritime republics gained greater rights and colonial privileges than did the Venetians. Certain cities in the crusader principalities such as Antioch, jubail, Tyre, and Acre came to be the center of the Genoese colonial empire. The Pisan strength lay in Tyre and Jaffa, with some grants also in Sidon, Acre, and Caesarea. The Venetian colonies in the crusader states were never as large or as profitable in their counterparts in the Byzantine empire. The Venetians, however, like the Genoese and the Pisans, profited from the dependency of the Latin inhabitants of the crusader states upon Italian sea power. Venetian colonies in Syria and Palestine were centers of Venetian law and custom, unlike the Byzantine areas where Venetians were subject not to Venetian law but to Byzantine law. The Venetians in the Holy Land, like the citizens of other Italian cities, gained fractions of ports and also parts of the adjacent countryside.

Whereas during the First Crusade Genoa transported the crusaders to the Levant and assisted them in their battles, and Pisa sent its archbishop, Dalmert, and a powerful fleet, Venice participated only later and unofficially. A private Venetian fleet of only thirty ships commanded by John Michiel, the son of doge Vitalie I Michiel, sailed from Venice in July 1099. It stopped at Zara and along the Dalmatian coast, wintered at Rhodes from October 24, 1099, to May 27, 1100, where it defeated a numerically superior Pisan fleet, and finally arrived in Jaffa on the coast of Palestine. In July 1100 the Venetians in Palestine

24. Bertocchi, "Il Commercio veneziano," p. 997 and note 57, draws a distinction between Venetian Venetians resident in Constantinople outside the Venetian quarter and those who lived in Constantinople for brief periods in the Venetian quarter, the former being subject to Byzantine law and obligations, the latter enjoying all the privileges granted to Venetians. It is difficult to accept such a distinction.
received from Godfrey of Bouillon generous promises of privileges in the kingdom of Jerusalem, after his death, they supported the Christian forces besieging Hysma in the fall of 1099 before returning home.

Godfrey's promises included special rights in all cities, inland and coastal, to be conquered by the Franks, comprising in each city a church and a marketplace and exemption from all tribute. The Venetians were to have all rights of recovery in case of shipwreck, especially near Jaffa and Hysma. However, these generous promises were probably not implemented with specific grants in particular cities. The general rights were renewed by Baldwin I, king of Jerusalem, sometime between 1101 and 1104. Evidence of specific Venetian territorial and commercial grants appears later. The Venetians gained a street in Acre as a reward for their help in the conquest of Sidon, where they had sent a large force of 100 vessels in 1110.

A decade elapsed before the Venetians participated again in the crusades or received any additional territorial grants in the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem. At the request of legates sent in 1119 by king Baldwin II, doge Domenico Michiel sent a Venetian fleet to Syria. This fleet won a great battle with the Egyptian fleet off Ascalon in 1123 and assisted the Frankish knights in the siege of Tyre until its capitulation July 7, 1124. Venetian money also assisted the crusaders at Tyre; 100,000 bezants were lent to the patriarch and the king.

The specific Venetian privileges promised before these battles are described in detail in a document issued to the Venetians by Gormond ("Warinmundus"), patriarch of Jerusalem, the actual ruler of the kingdom while Baldwin II was held captive by Naimer, lord of Aleppo. This grant, known as the pactum Warimundi, promised Venice one third of the still-to-be-conquered cities of Tyre and Ascalon. Also the Venetians received as much real estate on the Piazza San Marco in Jerusalem as the king had. With their land in Acre they received a mill, an oven, a bath, exemption from tribute, and, unless buying from non-Venetians, the right to use their own weights and measures in other cities of the kingdom which had been mentioned in earlier

26 Tafel and Thomas, 1, 64.
28 Tafel and Thomas, 1, 78; Venet M.S. readings give the fleet at 200 galleys and worship or in 4 heavenly scenes ouring pilgrims. Knights and heroes, along with 40 galleys.
treaties, the pactum Wurmundi again proscribed them a street, a bath, an oven, and full right of personal inheritance, even if the Venetian died intestate. The Venetians were given their own law courts for suits between themselves or whenever a Venetian was sued or accused by a non-Venetian. If, however, a Venetian sued a non-Venetian, the case was to be tried in the royal courts. The property of a deceased Venetian would remain in Venetian hands. The Venetians loan to the crusaders at Tyre was to be repaid to Venice by a grant each June of 300 "Saracen bezants" (dinars) from the revenues of Tyre. These privileges, when considered as a whole, signifies that Venetians in Acre and Tyre were to enjoy complete extraterritorial rights. In addition to these extraordinary legal rights, the Venetians in the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem, as in the Byzantine empire, had astonishing tax exemptions. They needed to pay no taxes or tributes, in contrast to other local inhabitants, Latin or native. These grants to the Venetians were confirmed by Baldwin II after his release in May 1123. In return, for the future defense of Tyre, Baldwin II leased the Venetians to agree to furnish defenders in proportion to their one-third share of the city. These grants and special privileges were confirmed even in the thirteenth century.

These basic grants of the pactum Wurmundi were made to the doge Domenico Michiel, to his successors, and to the people of Venice. Tyre became the principal Venetian port in the kingdom of Jerusalem, and the cathedral of St. Mark in Tyre, subject to St. Mark in Venice, became the principal Venetian church in Syria. The doge continued to enjoy these revenues from property in the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem until 1164 when another Michiel doge, Vitale II, needed money to finance his state. He mortgaged his revenues in the Latin kingdom to the Opera Sancti Marci, the quasi-public institution in Venice which directed work on the construction of the basilica of St. Mark, and whose chief officer, appointed by the doge in the twelfth century, was called the Procurator of St. Mark. The Tyrian property which the doge thus alienated from his private purse comprised the street in Tyre and the Venetian wharf, the cathedral of St. Mark in Tyre, and the revenue of 300 bezants collected from the customs at the port of Acre. In the spring of 1165 he also alienated title to a street and an oven in Tripoli.30 The next doge, Sebastiano Ziani, in 1176 mortgaged the ducal revenues in Tyre to the Opera Sancti Marci for five years in order to repay Romano Maitano the 600 pounds.

30. Tafel and Thomas, I, 440-442.
of Venetian pennies he had spent in 1272 to rescue Venetians from Constantinople. Nevertheless, the Venetian citizens in Tyre and Acre continued to enjoy the protection of Venetian law, although after 1164 it was administered not by civil magistrates but by the procurator of the cathedral church of St. Mark in Tyre.

An example of Venetian law functioning in Tyre occurs in a document dated April 1157, after a Venetian citizen, Vincenzo Pantalone Maliciousus, died in Tyre. When his nephew John Pantalone arrived from Romana to claim the inheritance, he called together all the Venetians living in Tyre to meet in the church of St. Mark. There, after much discussion, it was unanimously decided that John should inherit his uncle’s house and goods, as well as the case (sacramentum) containing the certificate of fief and deeds of land which he had owned. However, Peter Moretis, rector of St. Mark in Tyre, disputed the award, since he had possession of the sacramentum and claimed that the deceased had bequeathed the deeds to him. This example of Venetian justice in Tyre illustrates the unusual judicial freedom granted the Venetians in the pactum Harumundi. It also illustrates the strength of the great noble land-holding Venetian family of Pantalone in twelfth-century Tyre.

During the Third Crusade, after the Venetians had sent a fleet to assist the crusaders in the siege of Acre, the Venetian privileges in the Holy Land were reconfirmed in May 1190 by Conrad of Monferrat on behalf of King Philip Augustus. The Venetians also received papal guarantees that their church of St. Mark in Tyre would continue to enjoy its special privileges.

The Venetian state, in separate treaties with the Latin princes of Antioch and Tripoli, had its particular privileges in these principalities confirmed. The first surviving treaty with Antioch is dated May 1140, but a treaty of 1153 refers to grants made by the Antiochene princes to Venice at the beginning of the century. The Venetian privileges granted in May 1140 by Raymond of Poitiers included the right to enter, to depart, and to remain in Antioch. In Seleucia two mucks in each camel-load of merchandise were to be free from tax. The Venetians also gained freedom of the seas and the right to recover ships and merchandise in case of shipwreck, as well as the right to be judged by their own laws in their own courts and the grant of a fondaco, a garden, and a house. 31

31 Ibid. 2, 167–171
33 Ibid. and Thurner, I, 162. 163. The addition of Selucia to this treaty suggests that Ray-
These Venetian privileges in Antioch were again detailed in 1153 by Reginald of Châtillon, his wife Constance, and her son Bohemond (II). This enumeration, however, appears to be merely a repetition of the grants made by earlier princes of Antioch, Bohemond I (1099-1111), Tancred (regent 1104–1112), and Bohemond II (1126–1130). It was witnessed by all of Reginald’s vassals in the principality of Antioch. By the terms of the grant, the Venetians could come and go freely and, subject to certain taxes, could trade throughout the principality. The Venetians were to pay a sales tax at a lower rate than that paid by other merchants. For transactions in silk and linen cloth, the rate was reduced from five percent to four percent, and for other transactions, from seven percent to five percent. The departure tax was also reduced, from 1 bezant & 6 denarii to 1 bezant for each ass-load of merchandise, and from 2½ bezants to 2 bezants for each camel-load. They were granted the right to recover their ships and goods should they be shipwrecked on the coasts of the principality of Antioch or of its dependencies. They were also permitted to hold a court in their fondaco in Antioch, where Venetian law and legal procedure would prevail, including the right of appeal to Venice itself. Although these princely grants did not mention any Venetian lands in the principality of Antioch, other documents do. Pons, count of Tripoli (1127–1137), gave the usufruct of a house in Tripoli to the church of St. Mark in Venice. In 1167, the Venetian legate to the court of the prince of Antioch received exemption for Venice of one half the commercial tribute, and later Bohemond II exempted Venice from all tribute except a one percent sales tax.

The Venetian privileges in Tyre, Antioch, and Tripoli also were included in the mortgage executed by Vitale II Michael to the Opera Sancti Marcii in 1164, and confirmed in a bull of Pope Alexander III in the spring of 1165, and renewed in 1176.

This catalogue of privileges enjoyed by Venetians living in the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem and in the principality of Antioch and Tripoli demonstrates a continuing Venetian mercantile interest in these ports. Here the Venetians could live under Venetian law, which they could not do in the Byzantine empire. As long as Christian Latin rulers held control of the coastal cities in Syria and Palestine...
in the twelfth century, the Venetians sought to maintain their interests there.

The conditions of Venetian trade with Moslem Egypt were different, because from time to time both popes and Byzantine emperors prohibited Christians from trading with Moslems. Since traces of this trade survive from the earliest years of Venetian overseas commerce, however, Venetians must have found it quite profitable.

The Venetians began commercial relations with Saracen Egypt at an early date, but their commercial and legal privileges there are not well documented until the thirteenth century. In the seventh century, Venetians were already trading in Egypt with the Byzantine family of Prussi. During the reign of doge Giustiniano Partecipazio (827-829) two Venetian merchants, Bono, a tribune of Malamocco, and Niculò of Torcello, sailed to Alexandria with ten merchant vessels. The voyage was illegal, because doge Angelo Partecipazio had agreed in 819 to support emperor Leo's prohibition of all trade with Egypt and Syria. When they arrived in Alexandria, Greek monks, who were custodians of the shrine of St. Mark and feared the Moslem Egyptian rulers, assisted the two Venetians in removing the body of St. Mark from its accustomed place and hiding it in a barrel of pickled pork. Here the relic would be safe from搜索 by Egyptian port officials because pork was an abomination to Moslems. After they carried the barrel with its sacred relic on board a Venetian vessel, it was stored directly under the mast. They returned safely to Venice, protected from storms or Egyptian attack by the relics of the saint, or so the chronicles relate. Such clandestine voyages to Egypt continued.

During the century before the crusades, the Venetian fleet was more powerful than the Byzantine navy and operated independently of it. In the marketplaces of Egypt, Venetians exchanged Dalmatian slaves, ship timber, and weapons for luxury products. The great Venetian doge between 991 and 1009, Peter II Orseolo, legitimized the Venetian trade with Egypt by concluding a commercial treaty with the Fatimid amirs.

During the later eleventh and twelfth centuries Venetians voyaged to Alexandria in every generation, but with varying frequency. Products carried to the Egyptian ports included oil, horsehair, lumber, and

---

38 For the Prussi see the Andrea Dandolo, Chronicon, p. 29. For the episode of the relics of St. Mark see ibid., pp. 146-147; John the Damos, in REGN, 83, VII, 16, Martin du Canal, Les Événements, ed. Lammert, pp. 85-25; cf. Mascaroni, I Colonnizzatori, 1, 7, Krutschmayer, Geschechter 1, 64.
39 Krutschmayer, Geschechter, 2, 36, 139, 177.
copper. Goods brought out of Egypt by Venetians included pepper, alum, and linen. 40 Venetian legal business while in Alexandria was handled by Venetian priests and notaries, who apparently traveled with the ships. 41 No evidence suggests that Venice had any permanent commercial settlements in Egypt before the thirteenth century.

The intermittent nature of these ventures can be explained by Venice’s occasional naval assistance to the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem. A Venetian war fleet in Palestine always resulted in a rupture with Egypt, because Muslim Egypt attempted to dominate these waters with its fleet. Early in the twelfth century, when the crusaders were trying to conquer the seaports of Palestine from Egypt and Damascus, the king of Jerusalem and the pope requested Venetian naval assistance. Doge Domenico Michiel had a large Venetian fleet in Palestine and, on May 30, 1123, won a great victory over the Egyptian fleet near the port of Ascalon. The Venetian chronicler reports that so much Saracen blood stained the sea that more blood than water could be seen. 42 After the victory the Venetian ships captured ten Egyptian vessels loaded with rich spices, silks, tapestries, and precious stones. Thereafter, the Venetian fleet participated in the conquest of Tyre. These victories secured for the Venetians important commercial rights in Palestine, as noted above, but Venetian trade with Egypt is not documented again until 1136.

Venetians engaged in vigorous trade with the Egyptian ports of Alexandria and Damietta between 1136 and 1141 and again between 1161 and 1168. The greatest number of Venetian voyages to Egypt occurred in those years when Venetian trade with Constantinople was unsafe or prohibited. 43 Venetian commercial voyages to Egypt abruptly ceased

40. Moreano della Rocca, Documenti, 1, nos. 11, 12, 140, 141, 341, 342 The source of one Venetian ship in 1182 included linen cloth, amber, soap, wax, hides, alumina, brass, and silver. Mos. op. cit., p. 331.

41. The priest and notary Peter Magrani, possibly related to the Venetian merchant Romanino Mainardo, figured prominently in the notary who drew up most Venetian commercial contracts in Alexandria. He did not live there, however, but traveled with the Venetian fleet. He also drew up contracts at Zara and Accra. Moreano della Rocca and Lombardo, Documenti, 1, nos. 248-252; 294, 295, 300, 304, 312, 313, 322, 323, 331.

42. Historia chiesa universitatis, in MGH, XIV, 74. See also Friedmann, Chronicae, 1, 223-234; Crum, History, p. 495.

43. We know of only two Egyptian voyages by Venetian ships in 1136, see Moreano della Rocca and Lombardo, Documenti, 1, nos. 45 and 74, and Zusto, ed. Lambruschini, pp. 16, 19. We know of only one Egyptian voyage by a Venetian ship in 1141, see Moreano della Rocca and Lombardo, Documenti, 1, nos. 152, 167, 184, 185, 201, 203, 207. For voyages to Egypt from 1173 to 1184, when Venetians were expelled from the Egyptian ports by the Fatimids, see Moreano della Rocca and Lombardo, Documenti, 1, nos. 347, 348, 354, 347, 351 and Zusto, ed. Lambruschini, no. 27.
In March 1168, when the winter voyages between Constantinople and Alexandria of that year were paid off. Because Byzantine and Pisan ships in 1168 and 1169 supported the invasion of Egypt by King Amalric of Jerusalem, it was not safe for any Latin merchants, including the Venetians, in Moslem Egypt.

Between 1173 and 1184 Venetian commercial voyages to Egypt greatly increased. The only twelfth-century evidence of Venetian trade with the North African cities of Coutsa and Bugia comes in these years also. An official peace treaty was drawn up between the government of Saladin in Egypt and doge Sebastian Zani of Venice about 1175. By its terms Venetians could buy and sell their wares and also travel in safety in Egypt. Simultaneously Venice made peace with the Moslem rulers of Tunisia. These treaties were negotiated to compensate the Venetian merchants for their loss of trading rights in Constantinople after the great Byzantine raid on the Venetian quarter in 1171.

In the last quarter of the century, the Egyptian destination seems to have been an alternative or extra port-of-call for Venetian merchants. In 1182 a Venetian fleet sailing to Constantinople was met by another Venetian fleet fleeing from the Greek attack on the Latins in Constantinople. Warned by their compatriots, the outgoing Venetian fleet redirected its voyage to Egypt. For the next two years, prudent Venetian merchants scheduled their voyages either to Constantinople or to Alexandria. After the Venetians returned to their quarter in Constantinople in 1183, Venetian voyages were often planned to both Constantinople and Alexandria. In 1183 a Christian war fleet, including Venetian ships, sailed against Saladin in Egypt. Nonetheless, Venetian voyages to trade in Egypt continued until 1184, when doge Orto Mastropiero stopped all overseas voyages in response to Venice’s preparations for the Third Crusade. A large Venetian war fleet challenged Egyptian naval supremacy in 1189 by landing in Tyre and assisting Richard I of England in recovering Acre. Venetians hesitated to trade in Egypt in the last decade of the century. These rup-

44 Andrea Dandolo, Chroniche, p. 300; Cronaca, Mistra, 1164–1171, 542–551
45 Kreutzmayr, Geschichtsbuch, 1, 219; Gresens, Moslems, 1, 31
46, “Dexerto subito; Quide estis hic, ut non vendes eum non emisses ad finibus Constantinep. Eorum venustarum.” Memoriae della Ronca e Lombardo, Documenti, 1, no. 331
47 Ibid., I, nos. 343, 347; Zizza, ed. Lundrighi, no. 27.
48 For such contacts between 1166 and 1169 see Memoriae della Ronca e Lombardo, Documenti, 1, nos. 148, 149, 157, 159, 159, 185, 187, 191, 191–197 from 1169 to 1190 see ibid., 1, nos. 345, 347, 360, 375, and Ronca ed. Lundrighi, no. 20
49 Kreutzmayr, Geschichtsbuch, 1, 210
50 Andrea Dandolo, Chroniche, in MGH, SS., XIV, 22; Andrea Dandolo Chroniche 270
tures explain the intermittent character of Venetian commercial contracts with Egypt, in comparison with Byzantium or the crusader states.

In summary, Venetian privileges in the Near East during the first century of the crusades consisted of the right to trade freely at specific ports, to exercise special customs privileges, and to have fondechi in certain major centers. These rights were different in the Byzantine empire, in the crusader states, and in Mameluk Egypt. The Greek emperors carefully designated which ports were open to Venetian merchants, excluding the Black Sea and most of the islands of the Aegean Sea. They allowed the Venetians to pay lower duties than Byzantine or other Latin merchants, and allowed them their own quarter in Constantinople.

In the Frankish principalities in Syria, Venice received grants even more generous. The absolute dependence by the Latin kings of Jerusalem upon Venetian, Genoese, and Pisan sea power forced them to promise large trading areas in their seaports to Venice held in Byzantine ports. Often these promises were made even before the Christians had conquered these ports. In addition, the crusader princes regarded Venice as an independent state, permitted it to exercise its own law and justice, and exempted it from most or all taxes in the Syrian and Palestinian cities. Venetians also had the right of recovery in case of shipwreck. Their envoys received these grants not only from the Latin kings of Jerusalem but also from certain princes of Antioch and from Pons, count of Tripoli.

Venetian commercial arrangements with the rulers of Egypt before the Fourth Crusade are not well documented, but certainly such agreements existed as early as the year 1000. When such treaties were in force, Venetian merchants in Egypt could freely buy and sell, come and go. They probably did not settle permanently in Egypt. They sent their vessels to Egypt at irregular intervals, depending on the political situation, the safety of the seas, and the availability of other markets.

We may now turn from the privileges which Venetians enjoyed to the manner in which they profited from trade in the Near East. The city of Constantinople was the most frequently recorded destination of Venetian voyages. For the period 1150 to 1183, there survive sixty-seven contracts to go to Constantinople, forty-three to go to Romania. In contrast there are only twenty-five for the crusader states, of which eighteen specify Acre. There also survive twenty contracts for voyages to Egypt, nineteen for Alexandria and one for Damietta.

As the political situation in the eastern Mediterranean became m
creasingly muddled after 1183, these proportions changed. Constantinople remained the destination in forty-two of the surviving contracts dated between 1184 and 1205. Other parts of Romania are mentioned in eighteen. In contrast, Venetian trade with the crusader states during the same period slackened; we have records of only twenty-two contracts. Trade with Egypt also diminished, with only ten contracts surviving, none of these to Alexandria. As the above numbers suggest, Venice carried on more trade with areas under Byzantine control than with other distant ports in the half century before the fall of Constantinople.

The Genoese trade with the Levant, at least during the period 1154–1164, was divided differently, to judge from the cartularies of the notary John Scriba. During this decade, he records fifty-eight commercial agreements concerning Alexandria, thirty-four Syria, and twenty Byzantium. The Genoese sent 9,031 Genoese pounds to Alexandria, 10,075 to Syria, but only 2,007 to Byzantium. Later in the century, Genoa’s major trading interest lay in the crusading states; when comparisons can be made, only one-fourth of the annual Genoese investments in Levantine trade had to do with Byzantium. Pisan commercial interests centered on Egypt.

The strength of the Venetian commercial interests in the Byzantine empire in the twelfth century was the result of political ties. Venice had been subject to Byzantium since its founding. Even though the Venetians considered themselves an independent and autonomous state, the emperor Alexius I Comnenus treated them as his own subjects in the chrysobull of 1082. This helps explain why they received such extraordinary commercial privileges in Constantinople and certain other ports, assuring them of the largest share of the carrying trade in the Aegean. Genoa and Pisa, not being subject to Constantinople, received no such commercial privileges at that time. It is significant that most of the surviving Venetian commercial contracts specify Constantinople as a destination. Few documents bear witness to Venetian trade between one Aegean port and another, excluding the capital, or between Venice and an Aegean port only.

51. Other sources and letters to the Byzantine empire named in commercial contracts from 1150 to 1224 include Abydos, Amalja (Asculum), Aranzaro (Halmyros) Arta, Catadicza Corfu, Corinth, Crete, Creus, Kato (Karam), Lefkada (Aedemynia), Siphna, Sparta, Thasos, and Thessalonica.
52. Foss, The Crusades’ Kingdom, p. 399
53. Cassi, Le Conflit méditerranéen, II, 62–64. The author is indebted to the late Vincent Strozier for precise information on Genoese trade.
54. For example, Venice to Thasos, Monemvasia della Renga and Lombardia, Documenti, I, no. 419; Venice to Corinth, ibid., no. 378; Venice to Thasos, Catadicza, and the Monastery.
evidence of commerce between the Aegean ports results from the accident that many of the surviving documents were drawn up in Venice rather than in the Aegean ports. Later thirteenth-century documents from Crete suggest that Venetians engaged in a flourishing Aegean carrying trade. The Genoese also pursued the carrying trade between various points in the Greek empire, as revealed by lists of Genoese losses in Byzantine waters.

The monies used by the Venetians in the Byzantine east were the gold hyperperom of the old weight (perpetri aurei veteres pensantes or the perpetri aurei palaeokenorogam bonus pensantes) and occasionally the good gold hyperperom of the new weight (perpetri aurei boni novi pensantes). After 1184 the Venetians also found their own pounds of Venetian penna (libra alenariae venetialium) increasingly acceptable in Byzantine ports. 11

During the fifty years before the Fourth Crusade Venetian commercial interest in the crusader states remained at a constant level. They regularly sent trading expeditions to Acre and to Tyre, and less frequently to Aintab, Beirut, and Jaffa. Often investments in voyages to the crusader states specified that the business should be carried on in more than one Syrian port, and several contracts mention as a destination Tyre or Acre and Constantiopolis, or a Syrian port and Alexandria. The money in circulation in Acre and Tyre was called, by the Venetians, gold Saracen bezants (bicuni aurei saracenarum) or Saracen bezants of the new weight (bicuni saracenarum novi pensantes). Occasionally the documents added the identifying clause "of the coins of the king of Jerusalem" (de moneta regis Jerusalem) 12.

Venetian trade with Egypt took third place among distant areas specified in destinations for overseas investment in the twelfth century. As the century drew to a close, the Venetian contracts for commercial investment in Alexandria stipulated that business investments were to be made not only in Egypt but also in Romania or in the ports of Messina, Acre, Constantinople, or Crete. The money in circulation in Alexandria was called old Saracen gold bezants (bicuni aurei saracenarum veteres).

To these markets on the eastern shores of the Mediterranean Venetian ships brought western goods, including copper, lumber, iron, inexpensive textiles, and songold. Slaves had also been an important commodity for the Venetian economy for centuries. In the eighth cen-

---

12 Ibid., p. 82
tury pope Zacharias (741-752), pope Hadrian I (772-795), and Charlemagne prohibited Venetian or other Italian slavers from going to Muslim lands and placed severe penalties upon such traffic. Several ninth- and tenth-century Venetian doges prohibited, under severe penalties, the sale of Christian slaves, yet Venice continued to be a market for slaves in these pre-crusading centuries. In the ninth century slaves from Bulgaria were sold in Venice by Jewish merchants. Venetian merchants during the twelfth and thirteenth century owned and traded in pagan slaves. For example, in Tyre in 1192-1194, three Venetians and a citizen of Acre shared in the profit from owning a Saracen slave named Cibole, whom they had obtained through a loan from Conrad of Montferrat. In 1299 a slave from Slavonia was sold in Venice to bishop Dominic of Chioggia, a fishing village near Venice.

Household slaves were often freed by their Venetian owners in their wills. In two of these, freedom was conditioned on serving the testator’s children until they reached maturity. A Croatian slave named Dobramuro took his master’s surname Stec (Stagnario) and traveled as a merchant for over a decade from Venice to Sparta, Corinthus, Constantinople, and Alexandria. His sons Pancrazio and grandsons Giovanni, Domenico, and Zaccaria followed in his footsteps with increasing profit. Zaccaria held office as councillor of the Venetian podestà in Constantinople in 1307. Five household slaves of the chaplain-priest of the basilica of St. Mark in Venice were freed and given personal possessions by his will, dated 1151. The trade in human merchandise thus must have continued during the crusading centuries, but recent studies of the Venetian slave trade have concerned the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, beyond the scope of this chapter.
second half of the twelfth century, the exports "from Genoa to Con-
stantinople... consisted mainly of textiles, hauberks, and occasion-
ally of quicksilver and slaves." In the thirteenth century, cargoes from
Genoa "consisted mostly of manufactured goods made locally or trans-
shipped from France, the Low Countries, or Lombardy. Textiles of
various kinds were most prominent; also, gold thread, silver vases,
wooden bowls, and goblets. Iron implemnts and armor made up
the rest of the cargoes; only rarely do the documents mention pre-
cious metals. Virtually every branch of Genoa's artisan class took
the opportunity to export its wares to Syria. To give but one example,
a surprising number of swords, shields, hauberks, daggers, and cross-
bows found their way to the land of almost perpetual war."

In Syria and Romania, the Venetians and Genoese merchants pur-
chased precious goods and grain. Certain of these purchases were pro-
duced locally and others came to Levantine ports from collecting points
further east. Arab sailors on the Indian Ocean brought galangal, nut-
meg, camphor, and cloves to Aiden. From there, these goods were
sent by camel caravans through Arabia to the seaports of Syria. By
another route, the silks from China reached the Levant by way of
the Indian Ocean and the Persian Gulf. Baghdad, one of the prin-
cipal inland markets of western Asia, collected merchandise coming
overland from the Far East, as well as musk and rhubarb from Cen-
tral Asia and muslin from Mosul. Baghdad was also a principal mar-
ket for pearls from the Persian Gulf. Aleppo was the great silk mar-
ket, Damascus, another terminus of caravan routes from Asia, itself
produced silks, gold brocades, fine tight cloths, and lambé. The goods
purchased in these inland markets were brought by camel and donkey
caravans routes directly to the Syrian seaports controlled by the Chris-
tians of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem. Italian merchants did not
go to the interior until the next century. In the twelfth century, Genoa
imported silk garments, dyestuffs, and grain from Constantinople.
In the next century, return shipments to Genoa from the Levant did
not consist exclusively of spices and colorants, but included such raw
products as cotton and wood.

The crusader states were not oblivious to the profits to be gained
from taxing the caravans which criss-crossed their lands. Linen car-
rried from Egypt to Damascus and Baghdad was among the products
taxed. The Assises of Jerusalem reveal that an Ace a merchant
could buy rhubarb from the Far East, musk from Tibet, pepper, cin-
nammon, nutmeg, cloves, aloes, camphor, and other eastern products.
There he might also find ivory from India and Africa, or incense and
dates from Arabia. Beirut, another port along the Syrian coast fre-
sented by the Genoese but not by Venetians, contained shops selling
incense, indigo, braziland, and pearls, all from Central Asia.

In addition to purchasing luxury items such as drugs, spices, dyes,
and silk in the port of Syria, Italian merchants also acquired local
foods and textiles for export. The land of Syria-Palestine was extremely
fertile and produced lemons, oranges, figs, almonds, grapes to be
made into fine wine, and olives from which oil could be extracted.
The country estates held by the Venetians around the city of Tyre
in 1243 included fields, orchards, and vineyards. These were cul-
tivated by native agricultural workers, organized under their own
leaders. But a portion of their crops went to dues Venetian landlords,
including also rents or manorial dues paid in chickens, eggs, and cheese.
Of these local products, sugarcane, unknown to Europeans until the
First Crusade, was both cultivated and refined for export from Syria
during the years of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem. In addition to
the linen and silk products brought to the Syrian ports from Egypt
and from the Moslem cities inland, Syria itself also produced cotton
and silk for sale to western merchants either as raw fiber, as unstuf-
fished cloth, or as fine fabric. Another fine-finished textile produced
in Syria was camels'-hair cloth. Syrian fabrics received special acclaim
in western Europe because they were fabulously dyed in shades of
indigo, Tyrian purple, and red. All these dyestuffs likewise were pro-
duced in Syria. Very fine, transparent glass from Tyre was also in
great demand.

From the lands under Byzantine control the Venetians exported many
products. They bought grain at Rhodes on the Sea of Marmara, a
port where they had special privileges, and furs and salt fish in Thess-
alonica. They purchased much fine silk at Thebes, other fine woven
goods in Boeotia, and silks from Negroponte. Cheese and cotton came
from Thebes and Corinth. From Chios they acquired resin from the
mastic tree that was used in tanning and in varnishes. Halmynos,
the port of Thessaly, exported grain. In the market of Sparin and
Modon in the Morea (Peloponnesus) the Venetians purchased oil.65

To organize these business ventures, Venetian merchants employed
several types of business contracts: loans, the colleganza, the unilat-
eral commendam, and the fraternal company.67 The loan contract had

65 Brand, Dizionario Geografico della Misto, p. 304, Bartolino, "Commenda veneziana," p. 396
67 See Lussi, "Capitale e lavoro nel commercio veneziano dai secoli XI e XII" in Storia
di storia, pp. 99-108; also, "La Commena nella vita commerciale dei secoli XI e XIV con
particolare riguardo a Venezia," Stud. pp. 99-79; see also Azedin, Orsore e smantelmento sociale
del commercio fino al secolo XIII (Documenti vari e studi per la storia del commercio e del diritto
two variations—the sea loan and the simple loan. The sea loan (nauticum foenum), the most common twelfth-century commercial contract in Venice, would be initiated by a man who was departing on a trading voyage. He borrowed from another more affluent merchant, agreeing to repay a specified sum (which included fixed interest) only after returning to the home port or some other specified destination, and only twenty or thirty days after docking. The traveling business man assumed all the expenses of his voyage. This contract did not limit the borrower to his commercial ventures in any way except to specify the place and time of repayment. In these contracts, the risk of the sea voyage and of piracy was born by the lender. Because the risk was stated, these interest-bearing contracts could avoid the charge of usury. For extremely dangerous voyages, the borrower paid high interest rates, sometimes up to fifty percent.49

A second type of sea loan (cambio marittimo) connected the loan with the exchange of one money for another. It was drawn up in one city and repayable in another, after the voyage, in another type of city. The amount of interest was disguised in the exchange rate. A variation of this sea-loan-exchange contract, called “dry” exchange, contained another clause in which the borrower was allowed to repay in the city of origin at a designated exchange rate. It was a “dry” exchange, because when the borrower exercised this option no sea voyage took place. The contract was a fiction used to avoid the charge of usury.

Simple business loans (mutuo) were repayable in the city of origin. Sometimes these loans were repaid in the same money at which borrowed, sometimes the loan involved an exchange rate. In either case the customary Venetian interest rate was twenty percent (de quinque sex per annum).

The second category of business contract used by the medieval Venetian merchant was the partnership or commenda. The subject of much scholarly controversy,60 it appeared in two forms in twelfth- and thirteenth-century Venice. Essentially the partnership agreement was a legal contract between two parties, and their investment is de-

49 Marco della Rocca and Lombardo, Documenti, I, nos. 213, 221, 234, etc.

fined as an enterprise or business venture. One of the parties was the sedentary investor (commendator) and the other was the travelling partner (tractator) whose voyage and destination were sometimes stated. The profits were divided at the termination of the voyage. In the earliest form of Venetian partnership, known in Venice as colleganza, in Genoa as the societas maris, and termed the bilateral commenda in modern scholarship, both parties invested capital. The investor contributed twice as much capital to the travelling partner. At the safe and successful completion of the business venture, usually a voyage, the two agreed to divide the profits in half. With three exceptions, it is the only variety of partnership known to have been used by the Venetians before the Fourth Crusade.

Beginning in 1205, however, the Venetians, like other Italian merchants, began using another type of partnership known as the unilateral commenda. According to its terms, the sedentary investor contributed all the capital and assumed all the risk, while the other partners did the traveling for the business venture. They agreed that, at the conclusion of the voyage, three fourths of the profits should accrue to the sedentary investor and one fourth to the travelling partner. In these Venetian unilateral commenda contracts (with the exception of two quittance given by Odenco Belli on 1243 and 1253) the notary did not identify the type of contract, as he commonly did in the first form of partnership, the bilateral commenda. The feature which distinguishes the colleganza (bilateral commenda) from the unilateral commenda is the shared risk; only the sedentary investor assumed the risk in the unilateral commenda. It has been observed that the sedentary investor received the same return on his investment in the unilateral commenda as he received when he contributed two thirds of the capital and received one half of the profit. The unilateral commenda appeared for the first time among Venetian commercial documents in August 1199, and then not again until 1205. After 1205 it completely replaced the older bilateral commenda, becoming even more common than the sea loan. A useful, flexible business agreement, it continued to be used by Venetian merchants as late as the four-

70 The Venetian spelling is colleganza or colleganza. For examples see Morando della Rocca and Lombardo Documenti I, nos. 141, 234, 334, 337; 424. For the bilateral commenda see Pryor, "The Origins of the Commenda-Contrat," pp. 7-13.
71 Morando della Rocca and Lombardo Documenti I, nos. 343, 344, 444.
72 Ibid., El, nos. 757, 846. The document revealed interest in the partnership, but the term was the term colleganza. Compare Odenco Belli's earlier unilateral commenda with different partners in which he does not use the term colleganza, ibid., nos. 740, 750.
73 The disappearance of the colleganza (bilateral commenda) in 1205 resulted from a legal battle against it, found in the statute named by Romano Dandalo, one-ship for his father, Ranieri...
teenth century for trading ventures where the risk was great and where
the Venetians did not regularly use their agents as resident employees
in foreign ports. 74

Venetians in the twelfth century also used a third type of contract,
called the compagnia (the fraternal company contract). Originally used
for apportioning the expense of ship construction between brothers,
It developed into a widely used and very flexible type of business agree-
ment. The partners, related by blood ties, combined their resources,
of which each partner stated his share, then agreed to work for their
common interest, to travel together to named or unnamed destinations,
and to divide the profits in proportion to their respective investments.
Liability of all partners was joint and unlimited. This agree-
ment, originally made for a single voyage, could be prolonged with
the consent of both parties and was used primarily where the in-
vestments of a deceased partner were continued jointly by his heirs. 75

These types of business contracts, the loans (especially the sea
loan), the colleganza or bilateral commenda, the unilateral commenda,
and the fraternal company, formed the bases for profitable invest-
ment by the Venetians in the Levant. A Venetian investor in foreign
commerce, to minimize the risks, usually concluded several contract
in a single shipping season.

The often-discussed career of Romano Marrano demonstrates these
elements of Venetian commerce. 74 Marrano actively participated first
in commercial voyages to Haimyras in Thrace and to Cinerary (Kitro)
next Thebainonika, but later and more often to Constantinople, to
Alexandria, and in Acre. One year he went to Ceuta and Bugia in
North Africa. Not only did his credibility and reliability as well as
his good fortune rise, but the sums entrusted to him also increased
steadily in value from an average of slightly over 30 perperi per con-
tract before 1159 until 1167 when he took 1,806 perperi mort in eight
sea loans to Alexandria. He usually sailed in his own ships, whose
construction in Venice he had supervised and whose raw materials
he had bought. He financed the shipbuilding by selling shares in the
ships. Marrano, who frequently was made (moveurato) of his own ship,
not only purchased pepper and alum from Alexandria for his Venetian partners, but also sold tin, copper, and lumber at distant ports for other partners. His success was so phenomenal that the wealthy citizen of Venice, Sebastian Ziani, even before he became doge in 1172, entrusted smns to Mariano for commercial voyages. The patriarch of Grado, Enrico Dandolo (uncle of the doge of the same name) appointed Mariano as his agent to collect the revenues from all the patriarchal possessions in Constantinople and granted him the privilege of enjoying there the special rights of the patriarchate. In return for these business opportunities, Mariano was to bring back to the patriarch each year 50 pounds of Venetian pennies in the last ship of the first annual convoy. For this responsibility in 1171 he carried a cargo of copper and a number of sea lions (including two from Sebastian Ziani) to Constantinople in a large new ship. This time he did not have his usual good fortune. A quarrel between the Venetians and the Greeks in Constantinople led to a major Byzantine raid upon the Venetian quarter. Greek hatred for the Venetians had been building up ever since the Venetians had disturbed the peace of the capital city in 1162 by ravaging the Genoese quarter. Aggravated by commercial jealousy and religious rivalry, and not in the least calmed by a succession of embassies between Venice and Constantinople, this hatred led the imperial government in 1171 to imprison the Venetians and confiscate all Venetian assets in Constantinople.

At the time of the said Romano Mariano succeeded in carrying a number of Venetians to safety in Acre. His own losses, however, were so considerable that twelve years later he had still not repaid all his debts. In June 1175 doge Sebastian Ziani directed the procurator of St. Mark to pay Mariano 600 Venetian pounds from the revenues of the Venetian quarter in Tyre (which Mariano mortgaged to the procurator) because he had expended money amounting to 1,500 bezants in negotiating the escape of Venetian citizens. A month later, doge Sebastian Ziani, judge Peter Foscari, and Romano Mariano’s brother Samuel declared that Marano had repaid the investments they had placed in his hands in 1170. In August of that year, the Murrano brothers, Romano and Samuel, had formed a fraternal company to build a ship for a voyage to Acre. According to its terms, Samuel was to pay off his indebtedness for the ship in Acre with 1,500 Saracen bezants and after one year whatever profit they made was to be divided between them.

Even before being repaid through the revenues of the Venetian quar-
ter in Tyre, Murrano made a considerable profit from a voyage to Alexandria in 1173. Another of his business ventures was a voyage in 1177–1178 to the Barbary coast of Africa, the only recorded Venetian thirteenth-century voyage into these Genoese and Pisan waters of the western Mediterranean. Although the expedition was profitable, Venetian commercial voyages to the west were not repeated until 1245. 11 Maimmo continued his commercial activity for many years, traveling as muto on his own ships to Alexandria, Romania, and Tyre, with stops in Abydos and Chirn. Later, in 1192 and again in 1199, when Maimmo must have been over sixty, his son carried the business investments for him to Apulia and Alexandria.

During the last quarter of the twelfth century, events occurred in the Byzantine empire, in the crusader states, and in Venice itself which anticipated the Fourth Crusade and the changing Venetian commercial interests in the Levant. The Byzantine empire declined in the second half of the twelfth century. Hatred and jealousy had been growing between the Greeks and the Latin merchants for a century or more, and this resulted in several outbreaks of violence in Constantinople. 12 In 1162 the Pisans, assisted by the Venetians and the Greeks, attacked and sacked the Genoese merchant colony in Constantinople, causing the Genoese to flee the city. The Byzantines then expelled the Pisans from the capital city, leaving only the Venetians undisturbed. But Venetian relations with Constantinople soon deteriorated. The emperor Manuel, who wished to strengthen his hold on the Dalmatian provinces against king Stephen III of Hungary and against the Norman king William of Sicily, induced the Dalmatian cities of Spalato, Traù, and Ragnia to recognize Byzantine sovereignty once again. The pro-Greek sentiments of Ancona, the principal twelfth-century port on the Adriatic coast of Apulia, were encouraged when Byzantium, in 1167, gave commercial privileges to the Anconitans. The Venetian doge, Vitale II Michiel, in retaliation for these Byzantine acts, resumed his title of dux Dalmatiae and refused to furnish military assistance to Byzantium against the Normans. The Greeks might have considered both the assumption of the title and the refusal of naval aid as acts of war by the Venetians. Possibly the Venetian doge placed an embargo on Venetian shipping to Constantinople about 1167–1170.

71 Morena della Rocca and Lambardo, Diamantini, 1, cap. 284, 285, 293, 294, 297, 31, 774, 777
but commercial documents continue to stipulate Venetian voyages into Greek waters.

Byzantine leaders, however, needed the commerce of the Italian cities. Late in 1169 Genoa began negotiations for renewal of its privileges in Constantinople, which were reestablished by a treaty of May 1170. Similarly, the Pisan quarter in Constantinople was reestablished by July 1170. Later that year a Venetian raid on the Genoese colony in Constantinople threatened the emperor Manuel. To alleviate relations with the emperor, Venice sent a strong embassy composed of two of its richest citizens, Sebastiano Ziani and Orso Mastrogiorgio, both of whom would later be doges. A promise of renewal of Venetian privileges seems to have been made, and Venetian merchants again began to send their merchant fleets to Constantinople, among them the ship of Romano Maiorano. More than twenty thousand Venetians arrived in Constantinople carrying cash for purchases—arms and other merchandise. Hearing rumors of the emperor's bad faith, the doge sent Orso Mastrogiorgio again and Enrico Dandolo, the future doge, to the Byzantine court to产业园 assurances that no harm was intended. Although the Venetians saw with alarm the concentration of Greek troops pointing into Constantinople, the emperor Manuel assured them of his good intentions. Then, suddenly, on March 12, 1171, the Greeks struck. Ten thousand Venetians in Constantinople were arrested and held in prisons or monasteries and their goods confiscated. Some were fortunate enough to escape, including those who boarded the great ship of Romano Maiorano. Possibly this was the Totus Mundus, the largest ship ever seen by the Greeks, protected from their blazing projectiles by hides soaked in vinegar. "This was the greatest disaster to the city and so universal that there was not a single family in Venice that did not suffer some loss."

The Venetian colony in Constantinople did not recover from this attack for more than a decade. In contrast, the Genoese and the Pisan colonies there began to prosper until the death of the pro-Latin emperor Manuel in 1180. His youthful son Alexius II Comnenus was deposed three years later by a distant relative, Andronicus Comnenus, whose partisans hated the Latin supporters of the unfortunate young emperor. Just before Andronicus entered Constantinople, he permitted the city mob to attack the Latin colonies. The bloody outrages, known as the Latin massacre, were directed mainly against the Pisans and the Genoese. As a result these colonies became extinct, and Pisan

----

and Genoese corsairs plagued the eastern seas until after the Fourth Crusade. Venetian sources make no mention of anti-Latin violence in 1182 because the Venetians had not yet returned to the city after the violence of 1171. Similarly, the Genoese sources do not mention the anti-Venetian actions in Constantinople of 1171 because in that year no Genoese were there.

While the new emperor Andronicus was completing his assumption of power, he perceived his need for maritime allies. Hopes began to rise in Venice where, as early as February 1182, peace with the new emperor was expected. After Andronicus's coronation in September 1183 a peace treaty was signed in which he promised to release the remaining Venetian captives and to reimburse the Venetians for some of their losses of 1171. By 1184 the Venetians again were sending merchant ships to Constantinople. Enrico Dandolo and other prominent Venetians represented the Venetian state in Constantinople in 1184 and 1185, during the brief reign of Andronicus Comnenus, when property lines were redrawn and correct titles to real estate were established in the Venetian quarter.

After the Normans of Sicily in 1185 attacked and sacked Thessalonica, the second city of the Byzantine empire, the Greeks in Constantinople rose up and killed Andronicus, the last Comnenus emperor. The new emperor, Isaac II Angelus, did not at first readmit the Genoese and Italians to Constantinople, but did restore the full Venetian rights and privileges in return for their naval support. After receiving the three Venetian legates of doge Orso Mastropiero, Isaac in February 1187 granted three chrysobulls to the Venetians, who were formerly his subjects, but whom he now called his allies and friends. By releasing the chrysobulls of 1126 and 1148, he restored to the Venetians their old quarter, their exemptions from tolls, and freedom of trade. In addition, the Greeks concluded a defensive alliance with Venice, whereby Venice promised on six months' notice in wartime to furnish between forty and one hundred war galleys under Venetian commanders. The Venetians were exempted from fighting Venice's allies, the German emperor or the Normans in Sicily.

Byzantium needed naval assistance because of the Turkish advances after the decisive Byzantin-
time defeat at Myriokephalon in 1176, because of the threats from the Norman kings of Sicily and their Hohenstaufen heirs, and became of the menace of the newly formed Second Bulgarian kingdom. In addition to the three chrysobulls of 1187, the Venetians also demanded restitution of damages from the raid of 1171. Finally, after two years of negotiations, and threatened by Frederick Barbarossa’s preparations for the Third Crusade, Isaac promised Venice an annual subsidy and a token remuneration of about one and one-half percent. 86

These newly reconfirmed Venetian privileges and possessions in Constantinople were again jeopardized after 1195 when Alexius Angelus deposed and blinded his brother Isaac and assumed the imperial title as Alexius III. The new emperor at first distrusted the Venetians and favored their rivals, Genoa and Pisa, who and returned to Constantinople with privileges granted them by Isaac II in 1192. After Alexius III was threatened in 1196 by a Venetian fleet in Abydos, he renewed the Venetian commercial privileges in a chrysobull of November 1198, regnating the Venetian quarter in Constantinople, confirming Venetian commercial privileges, and renewing the naval alliance with Venice 87 However, he granted no subsidies and no reimbursement to Venice during his reign (1195-1203), and in addition taxed Venetian property.

In summary, Venetian-Byzantine relations during the first century of the crusades reflected two needs. First, Venetian merchants needed legal confirmation from the Greeks of their right to trade and reside in the Byzantine empire. Whenever these privileges were jeopardized the Venetians made haste to negotiate a new agreement, as in 1148, in 1187, and in 1198. When peaceful negotiations had no result, Venice attacked Byzantine lands (1119-1126) or threatened to do so (1196). Second, the Byzantines needed Italian naval power and commercial experience. The Venetians provided these in a satisfactory manner until about 1150, when the Greek emperor Manuel began to play Genoa, Pisa, and Venice against each other. When one Italian state was privileged, the others were excluded. For example, in 1162 the Greeks exiled the Pisans and the Genoese. The Venetians remained until the destruction of their quarter in 1171. In 1169 the Greeks began negotiations with the Pisans and the Genoese, who shortly returned. Ten years later rioting and revolution destroyed the Genoese and Pisan

87 Taddei and Thomas, 1:246-260. See also Archivio di Stato di Venezia, Arch. Proc. di S. Marco di Sera Sul Daniele B. V. E. r. 7 1198, Sept. Ramo. The author is indebted to Prof. Luigi Lanfranchi for correcting the date of the published document.
The Latin kingdom of Jerusalem experienced dramatic reverses in the last quarter of the twelfth century. As these developments have received extended treatment elsewhere in these volumes, only brief mention will be made here.

The fall of Jerusalem to Saladin in 1187 shocked Western Europe, where Richard the Lionhearted, Philip Augustus of France, and Frederick Barbarossa started to prepare the Third Crusade. With crusading fervor, the Venetian doge, Ozzo Mauropiero, in November 1188 organized a Venetian fleet to provision the crusaders and to transport the crusading army, among whom was a contingent from Bologna. Leaving Venice immediately after Easter 1189, this fleet sailed first to Tyre and then, in September 1189, to the siege of Acre. Through intrigue, battle, and negotiation, the crusaders did reconquer Acre from Saladin, while Richard arranged privileges for the Christians in the principalities of Saladin. The churches and other real estate held by Venice in Acre since 1124 were reconfirmed to it by Conrad of Montferrat, king-elect of Jerusalem. From April to July 1190 the Venetian fleet sailed from Tyre via Abydus to Constantinople. Some Venetians remained in Tyre, however, as two documents of November 1192 attest.

Later in the decade, the Venetian state organised another fleet to go to Syria. In 1197 one large sailing ship was constructed in the northern lagoons near Aquileia and its knighthood, non-Venetian shareholders contracted with the great men of Venice, doge Enrico Dandolo and Sebastian Ziani of Carole, son of the late doge. In April 1198 it was agreed that this ship and other Venetian vessels would go to Syria. Perhaps this fleet should be identified with the ships which, one chroni-
ricer records, carried French crusaders inspired by Fulk of Neufilly from Venice to an ineffective military venture in the Holy Land.\textsuperscript{42}

Between the Third and the Fourth Crusades piracy increased on the Mediterranean. Not only did the Venetians prey on the ships of Ancona and of Pisa, but the Genoese, Moslems, Normans, and Byzantines joined in corsair activity. The most formidable Venetian rivals were the Pisans.\textsuperscript{43} Perhaps the general maritime insecurity in March 1196 persuaded the noblesmen of a large Venetian fleet in Abydos to agree to remain on the Sea of Marmara notwithstanding the fatigue of the men.\textsuperscript{44} Everyone contributed to pay for the continuation of the expedition. At least two other Venetian fleets are recorded for the decade; both set out to fight the Pisans. In 1195 Venice defeated its Pisan commercial rivals at Modon and in 1199 destroyed the Pisan naval base of Brindisi.\textsuperscript{45}

After the Third Crusade crusaders still held several seaports on the Palestinian coast, the city and environs of Antioch, and the island of Cyprus. Pisa had the greatest privileges in the remaining cities of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem; Genoa profited most in the northern Antiochene principalties. Because Venetian privileges remained in Tyre, Acre, Antioch, and Tripoli, Venetians continued to trade there. They dealt with local merchants, content to leave to others the transport and collection of goods from the interior.

These changes in the last quarter of the century in the Byzantine empire and the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem stimulated political change in Venice itself. The great loss of Venetian business and prestige in the 1171 raid on the Venetian quarter in Constantinople aroused the Venetians to send a punitive expedition under doge Vital II Michiel. When this unsuccessful fleet, wasted by pestilence and storms in the Aegean Sea, returned home in 1172, the maddened starving mob murdered the doge near the ducal palace. Venetians of the old families and those enriched by business took steps to pacify the city and to institute political changes which would prevent a repetition of such domestic violence. They created a new electoral college to name the doge, no longer would the assembled citzens elect their doge in pub-

\textsuperscript{42} State of Venice, Consularia Venetorum, B.E. Notae pot stantutis diversis (1190, April 5, Aquila).\textsuperscript{43} See also Morando da Romano, Documenti, II, no. 406, and their Moorish documents, IV 45
\textsuperscript{44} Andrea Dandolo, Chronica, p. 275.
\textsuperscript{45} Andrea Dandolo, Chronica, pp. 273-276; Chali, Le Coloniae medieoevalis, I, 61-85
\textsuperscript{46} Tafel and Thomas, I, 287-329.
lie meeting. Because the newly elected doge, Sebastian Ziani, was the wealthiest man in Venice and thus a member of the oligarchy, he ruled Venice as a leader cooperating with other leaders, rather than in absolute and solitary splendor. Ziani administered Venice with the assistance of ducal councillors and a larger council whose members were drawn from the Venetian aristocracy. He established a system of price controls and market regulations to ameliorate the problem of food shortages, and encouraged a convoy system for Venetian merchant fleets. He also stabilized the currency by issuing a new penny designed to be exactly equal to 1/240 of the Venetian pound. In 1177 he helped to negotiate peace between the warring factions of Guelphs and Ghibellines in Italy. This Peace of Venice reconciled the German emperor, Frederic Barbarossa, and pope Alexander III and was sealed with the traditional kiss of peace on the marble of the basilica of St. Mark.

Ziani's immediate successor, Orso Mastropero (1178–1192), also possessed great personal wealth. He and the next doge, Enrico Dandolo (1192–1205), governed Venice with the assistance of the Venetian oligarchy and with the intent to increase Venetian commercial and political strength. They made treaties to extend Venetian maritime control on the upper Adriatic, and to restore Venetian commercial privileges and reimbursement in Constantinople. Each of these last three doges of the twelfth century, Sebastian Ziani, Orso Mastropero, and Enrico Dandolo, had represented Venice as a special envoy to Constantinople at least once between 1169 and 1185.

These changes in the Venetian government and its strong, dynamic solutions to its problems prepared the city for the challenges of the Fourth Crusade. The capture of Constantinople during the Fourth Crusade was the culmination of Venetian commercial interests there, it was also the apex of Venetian participation in the crusading movement.

The Fourth Crusade provided a unique opportunity for Venice to expand its commerce and colonial establishments in the eastern Mediterranean. The details of the Latin conquest of Constantinople have been given elsewhere in these volumes; others have studied its political, religious, diplomatic, and social aspects, as well as the long-argued question of the diversion of the Crusade.86 Here it will be sufficient to point out that the businessmen of Venice organized the

affair as carefully as possible. They prepared the enterprise—its ships, its provisions, its route, its contractual safeguards, and its men—so that it might achieve the greatest possible measure of success given the known risks and the unknown opportunities. Since the magnitude of the enterprise surpassed any previous Venetian venture, it was fortunate for Venice that it was a success.

In the spring of 1201 the Venetians received a proposal from envoys of the north French crusaders, that Venice provide sea transportation, warships, and provisions for the crusaders. Doge Enrico Dandolo offered a typical Venetian partnership for the crusading enterprise. The Frankish crusaders would furnish the land forces, and the Venetians, fifty war galleys. The contract was drawn up for one year, to begin in June 1202, and, at its conclusion, any profits were to be divided in half. In addition, the crusader land forces would be transported and provisioned by the Venetians for a fee of $4,000 marks. Although the precise destination was not stated, as in many Venetian commercial partnership contracts of this era, it was decided to direct the crusade to Egypt. The Frankish envoys accepted the contract after bargaining to reduce the transportation bill from $4,000 to $5,000 marks. The Venetian ratification was accomplished by the doge, who confirmed it with his Council of Forty, with his Great Council, and finally with the Venetian citizens as a whole, 10,000 strong, before the basilica of St. Mark. These agreements of 1201 were respected, renewed, and amplified in later contracts between the Venetians and the Frankish crusaders until, after the conquest of Constantinople in 1204, the transportation bill was paid from the spoils, and the remaining profits were divided in half.

The Frankish crusaders in the summer of 1202 could not fulfill their promise to repay part of the transportation bill, although the Venetians scrupulously carried out their part of the agreement. The latter, not wishing to jeopardize the enterprise with such an unhappy beginning, suggested that the crusaders might postpone payment and meanwhile assist them to subdue the upper Dalmatian coast. After

97 Only the clause assigning the risk, which was legally necessary to identify a moneta, was absent from the proposal reported by Villhardouin; otherwise this would be a model bilateral commercial contract.


99 Baldwin of Flanders, one of the French leaders, borrowed 120 marks and 3 gourdes from Venetians in October 1202, promising to repay at the Fonte of Cistacagia Monte Carlo della Reno and Lombardia, Data venetiana, 1, 113, 462.

100 For 200 years Venice had attempted to control the upper Dalmatian coast. Zara, its principal supporter, had rebelled against Venice five times since 1045. If the latest rebellion began
considerable controversy, the crusaders agreed. At this point, and not before, doge Enrico Dandolo and many Venetians also took the cross. 161 The fleet sailed October 1, 1202.

After the north Adriatic coast near Venice was subdued by a demonstration of the fleet near Pola and Muggia in the Istrian peninsula, and by the capture of Zara, the crusading host and the Venetians wintered in Zara.

During the winter a new opportunity was placed before the crusaders by envoys from the young Alexius, pretender to the Byzantine throne, and from Philip of Swabia, his brother-in-law. If the Frankish crusaders and the Venetians would proceed to Constantinople to enthrone Alexius, the Greek claimant offered to pay them 200,000 silver marks and assist their crusading expedition to Egypt for one year by provisioning the entire host and increasing its size, by his own expense, by an additional 10,000 men. This sudden offer to strengthen the expedition was hotly argued by the Frankish crusaders and the Venetians. Finally, a new contract was made whereby Alexius's offer was accepted. The text has not survived, but narrative sources report its contents. 177 New business opportunities had required that the original compact signed in Venice be thus renegotiated.

The expedition left Zara early in April 1203, the time of the annual Venetian spring voyages to Constantinople. They traveled the usual Venetian route, via Durazzo and Corfu, around the Morea, past Negroponte, Andros, and finally Abydos on the Asiatic shore of the Dardanelles. They arrived before Constantinople on June 24, and took the city of Constantinople, anathematized the usurper, and named Alexius IV and his imprisoned father Isaac Angelus, coemperors. 182 However, when Greek hatred for Latins excluded the crusaders from the city, rapped a civil war, and toppled Isaac Angelus and Alexius from the throne, the enterprise seemed on the verge of collapse.

By March 1204 the entire crusading venture had to be re-evaluated. The original contract for Frankish and Venetian cooperation for one year had expired. Its renewal with the additional participation of the

---

161 See McNeal and Wolff, in volume 11 of the present work, pp. 178-179
pretender Alexius had been mollified with his death. Now the Venetians and the Franks put into writing a third contract to govern their venture. They agreed to cooperate for one year to recapture the city of Constantinople and to establish their rule over it. The Franks' debt for transportation would be considered paid when the Venetians received three quarters of the spoils, while the remaining booty was to be divided equally. A new emperor would be chosen by six Venetian and six Frankish electors, and he was to possess the imperial palaces of Blachernae and Boukoleon and one fourth of the empire. The patriarchate of Constantinople, with the great church of Hagia Sophia, would be awarded to that party, Frankish or Venetian, which lost the imperial election. All rights which either party had possessed previously under the Byzantines would be respected, which meant earlier Venetian commercial property and both Venetian and Monteferratine privileges in the Byzantine empire. The remaining three fourths of the empire was to be divided equally between Franks and Venetians by a twenty-four-man commission, twelve from each party. Thus, one fourth of the empire was allotted to the new emperor, three eighths to the Franks, and three eighths to the Venetians. Everyone holding a fief or honor in the empire, except the doge of Venice, was to do feudal homage to the new emperor. This contract ratified by the Franks and Venetians in 1204 before the second capture of Constantinople repeated the original terms of the agreement of 1201. The Venetians would be reimbursed for transporting the Frankish crusaders and the remainder of their conquests would be divided in half—movable property as well as real estate, civil as well as ecclesiastical power. This contract continued to be couched in the form of a Venetian partnership agreement for a commercial enterprise.

Following this agreement, the Latin forces besieged and took the city on April 13, 1204, and put it to sack for three days. The horrors of the sack, its barbarity and cruelty to the Greeks, and the enormous theft and destruction of property have been described elsewhere. The vengeful Venetian chronicler comments, “the wretched sinful deeds of the emperor Manuel against the Venetians were now punished in full.”

The victors then divided their conquests. First, the booty was col-

105 Or in the language of 1204 one fourth and one half to each party.
106 See McNamara and Wilmshurst, in volume III of the present work, pp. 184-185.
107 Andron Denisko, Chronica, p. 279.
lected and, as agreed, three fourths was given to the Venetians. In the city of Constantinople, marquis Boniface of Montfort, the leader of the crusade, occupied the royal palace of Boukoleon; Henry of Flanders, the future Latin emperor, took the palace of Blachernae, and doge Enrico Dandolo, another palace. The rank and file of Franks took lodging in the conquered city, and the Venetians returned to their quarter.

Twelve electors proceeded, according to the third contract of March 1204, to elect a Latin emperor for Constantinople. They met in Dandolo's palace and, on the second ballot, chose Baldwin, count of Flanders and Hannu, who began his difficult reign May 16, 1204. According to contract, the Venetians then nominated the clergy for the cathedral chapter of Hagia Sophia, who chose the Venetian Thomas Morosini as Latin patriarch of Constantinople. When he heard of this, pope Innocent III criticized their uncanonical act, nevertheless, he confirmed Morosini. Notwithstanding papal interference in succeeding patriarchal elections, Venetians continued to occupy the office and thus dominate the Latin church to 1261. 108

The division of the spoils of the sack, of the urban real estate, and of political and religious titles between Franks and Venetians was thus accomplished. Considerably more difficult was the division of the Byzantine lands outside Constantinople. As stipulated in the third contract, a commission of twelve Venetians and twelve Franks began to allocate those vast Byzantine territories according to the agreed formula: one fourth to the emperor Baldwin I, three eighths to the Franks, and three eighths to the Venetians. The commission divided up all the territory in the former Byzantine empire excepting Thessalonica and Crete, claimed as her rightful property by Boniface of Montfort, and Constantinople, divided previously. During the commission's deliberations, most of the lands to be divided were still in the hands of the Greeks (or the Bulgarians). Having their conclusions on Byzantine tax returns, the commission reached agreement in September and issued the Treaty of Partition in October 1204. 109 It must

108. See Wolff, "The Latin Emperors of Constantinople," in volume II of the present work, pp 231-233. A fourteenth-century Venetian chronicler, Nicolo da Contareno, states that Enrico Dandolo did not win the election because certain Venetian clerics, among them Giovanni Querini, believed that if Dandolo were elected emperor, the Fatimids would have returned to Constanti nople and the Latin empire would collapse: Thron, "Les Chroniques venitiennes de la Mar cine," p. 263.


110. Yedid and Thoren, 1, 457-500; volume III of the present work, pp 190-195, 235-238.
be emphasized that the Treaty of Parition only named the territories promised to each party—the emperor, the Venetians, or the Franks. The lands remained to be conquered. Never did the Latin conquer all the former Byzantine territory from the Greeks. Nor did the Venetians or the Franks ever establish themselves over all the lands awarded them by the commissioners. The Treaty of Parition was a working list, and many localities in the Aegean experienced a developmental different from that proposed in the Treaty of Parition.

Although the details of the Treaty of Parition are given in earlier chapter, the list of lands promised Venice will be repeated here. Most of the areas promised Venice were coastal, such as would give them control of the sea routes. Close to Constantinople, Venice was promised the Thracian coast, including the seaports of Rodosto and Heraclea near Gallipoli. Also it was to receive land Thrace as far as Adrianople. Among the Aegean islands, Venice was promised Andros, Aegina, Salamis, and the two extremities of Negroponte (Euboea). On the Greek mainland, the Treaty of Parition awarded Venice the entire Morea except the Argolid and Corinth. To give Venice domination over the Aegean and Ionian seas, the commissioners promised it the Dalmatian coast and its islands, the Ionian islands, and interior territories of central Greece in Epirus and Albania. Of these vast paper grants, the Republic ultimately conquered and ruled only a few. On the other hand, the island of Crete and the port city of Negroponte were not granted to Venice by the Treaty of Parition, and yet these became two key points of the thirteenth-century Venetian empire.

Venice and Venetian citizens acquired control over parts of the Greek coast after the Fourth Crusade in several different ways. In some cases, territory was acquired when official expeditions of conquest were sent out by the government. Other acquisitions were made when the Venetian state purchased rights to lands. In other cases, wealthy Venetians outfitted their own private expeditions to acquire personal real estate. For these latter the Venetian rulers, while remaining citizens of Venice on the lagoons, became feudal vassals of the Latin empire of Constantinople for their Aegean lands. In still other cases, private Venetian citizens acquired former Greek territory through marriage to a Frankish heir. The definition of ultimate sovereignty over...


111 More scholarly debate has centered on which Aegean islands were promised the Venetians than on any other clause in the Treaty of Parition, see Michaud and Wolff, in volume II of the present work pp. 751 fff.

former Greek lands remained fluid and ill-defined, a typically medieval situation. However sovereignty was defined, the Venetian control of Greek lands endured longer than any other result of the Fourth Crusade.

In the first of these acquisitions, Venice purchased a free hand in Crete and rights in Thessalonica and Negroponte from Boniface of Montferrat, who was paid 1,000 marks of silver, by the Treaty of Adrianople, August 12, 1204. They concluded the treaty two months before the Treaty of Lutetia because Boniface claimed that he and his family had held these lands before the fall of Constantinople. He claimed that the emperor Manuel had granted Thessalonica in fief to his father, William III of Montferrat, and that he, Boniface, had inherited it. Boniface also claimed that the young Alexius had granted him Crete in 1202. When Boniface of Montferrat needed cash and Venetian support in the summer of 1204, he sold them Crete and all other Montferratine holdings in the empire; the Treaty of Adrianople records this sale. Thus meant that Boniface would hold Thessalonica and its dependency Negroponte in fief from the Venetians. In addition, he would protect all Venetian rights on the mainland of the empire, while Venice would protect the Montferrat holdings with its sea power. The agreements concerning Thessalonica were never implemented, but this treaty gave Venice the legal right to intervene in Negroponte and to occupy Crete.

The Treaty of Partitio signed in October promised Venice control over the northernmost and the southernmost cities of Negroponte, Otrun and Carystrus. Since II assigned the principal and central city of Negroponte to Boniface of Montferrat, he occupied the island in the spring of 1205, by alleged right of inheritance and of the treaty. He established his vassal James II of Averna on Negroponte until his disappearance in August. Then Boniface divided the island into three fiefs, giving them to the “terciers,” the three gentlemen of Verona, Ravano dalle Carceri, Gilberto of Verona, and Pacorato da Mercantino. Boniface of Montferrat died in 1207, and of the terciers only Ravano dalle Carceri, who had represented Venice at the Treaty of Adrianople in 1204, remained as sole lord in Negroponte.

113 Teitel and Thomas, I, 912-913; Bury, Crete, pp. 11-13, 21, Pashinagh, Maria Sanudo, pp. 33-34, 48. See also Michal and Wulff in volume II of the present work, pp. 190-191.

In 1211 he gained the protection of Venice for himself and his heirs by swearing homage to the doge and by granting Venice certain rights and privileges. It gained a church and fondeaco in the capital city of Negroponte and in the other episcopal cities, and its citizens were granted certain territorial rights in Negroponte. Venetians received the promise of security and the right of free trade on the island. Both Latin and Greek magnates on Negroponte, under Ravano dalla Carceri, would continue to have the legal status they held previously and would also be loyal to Venice. Ravano would pay to Venice an annual tribute of 2,100 gold pieces and two pieces of cloth of gold. By these terms the Venetians gained economic and judicial privileges from which they profited. A Venetian bailiff represented its interests in Negroponte.

But while Venice and the dalle Carceri were negotiating this treaty, Henry, now the Latin emperor of Constantinople, was taking steps to strengthen his authority over the Latin lords of former Greek territory. He held a parliament at Ravenaika in Thessaly, and received homage from many Latin lords. Ravano dalle Carceri did not swear homage to him until the emperor Henry demonstrated his military power at the siege of Thessal in May 1209. The lord of Negroponte thenceforth owed allegiance both to the Latin emperor and to the doge of Venice, which provoked no trouble as long as the interests of emperor and doge were parallel. Liage homage was given to the emperor. Notwithstanding the claims of the Latin emperor and his successors, the Venetian position on Negroponte continued to grow stronger.

At the death of both Ravano dalle Carceri and the Latin emperor Henry in 1216, the heirs of the terciors turned to the Venetian bailie Peter Barbo to adjudicate between their conflicting claims. Venice, as feudal overlords, awarded the three parts of the island to the several heirs of the terciors. In so doing, the Venetian bailie extended his jurisdiction from the city of Negroponte to the entire island, and also guaranteed to Venice its property in Negroponte—houses and churches, fields, a wine cell and land. The 1216 agreement also stated that Venetian weights and measures should prevail on the island.

The Venetian influence over the terciors on Negroponte appears


more understandable when one considers the increasing Venetian influence over Verona, homeland of the dalle Carceri. This family played a leading role in Venetian affairs. Rodolfo dalle Carceri was podestà of Verona in 1210, Pescarolo de' Pescaroli da Mercanovo was podestà in 1215 and 1223. Leon dalle Carceri, podestà, capitano del popolo, and head of the Guelf party, led the city in 1225 against the Venetian Cibellines, whose champion was Ezzelino III of Romano. The Venetian Remar Zeno, a future doge, was Veronese podestà in 1229 and 1230. Later in the century, three other Venetian held office as podestà in Verona. Andrew Zeno in 1261, Marco Zeno in 1262, and Philip Belegho in 1263. Ezzelino da Romano executed the Venetian Peter Gallo in Verona in 1246. 117

The Venetian fortress on Negroponte began to experience difficulty when their legal lord, the emperor Baldwin II of Constantinople, transferred his sovereignty over the islands of the Archipelago (including Negroponte) to William II of Villehardouin, prince of Achaea, who in the next decade attempted to enforce his authority as feudal sovereign over the fortress. This brought war to Negroponte. Venice assisted the defenders against Villehardouin, and the defenders now occupied Venetian sovereignty in an agreement of 1256, renewed in 1259. All the earlier Venetian privileges were repeated, the extraterritoriality, the cloth of gold, the weights and measures, the Venetian real estate. This agreement, in addition, granted the Venetians two quarters in the capital city of Negroponte and all the revenue from the import and export taxes (commencium maris) instead of the amounts fixed previously. These augmented privileges for the Venetians on Negroponte were confirmed by Villehardouin himself in 1262, after the war on Negroponte had come to an end. 118

By that time the political power of the Latin crusader principalities had so declined that the entire balance of power in the Aegean shifted. In July 1259 the combined Latin forces under William of Villehardouin, deserted by their Greek ally, despot Michael II of Epirus, had been decisively defeated on the plain of Pelagonia by John Palaeologus, brother of emperor Michael of Nicæa. William of Villehardouin himself was taken prisoner and, in return for his release, granted the Greeks a foothold in the Morea. In 1261 Michael Palaeologus, assisted by the Genoese, took Constantinople. The Latin empire, through which Venetian commerce had flourished, was ended.

117 Piet Zagano, Cronica della città di Verona, ed. Giambattista Bissolini (Verona, 1745), I, 22, 26, 50, 52-60.
With the Greeks triumphant over William of Villehardoun and once again dominant in Constantinople, the war of Negroponte came to an end. Venice, the terceiros, and Villehardoun drew up a peace treaty at Thebes in May 1261. It guaranteed continued Venetian economic domination on Euboea through recognition of Venetian weights and measures on the island and through the payment of all customs revenues to Venice. It restored to the Venetians all property and business rights held earlier and enlarged the Venetian quarter in the capital city of Negroponte. On the other hand, the terceiros recognized William of Villehardoun, not Venice, as their feudal overlord, and continued to live in the capital city. The castle of Negroponte, ceded to the Venetians in 1256, was demolished.

The peace did not last long. Lucano of Carysia attempted by force of arms to control the island from 1264 to 1280, encouraged by the Greek emperor, Michael VIII Palaeologus. The Greeks wished that to extend their holdings, huge wines and Negroponte become an arena for Greek and Latin combat. The Venetians assisted the terceiros very little in their struggle with Lucano.

During the century after Lucano's death, Venetian political influence and economic penetration of Negroponte gradually increased. The Villehardoun rights weakened and were inherited by the Angevins of Naples. By 1390 Venice gained full possession of the island, which became its most important commercial and maritime possession in the Aegean. It was not until 1470 that Venice lost Negroponte to the Ottoman Turks.

In addition to rights in Negroponte, Venice purchased the entire island of Crete from Dominc of Moreferrir by the Treaty of Adrianople, in August 1204. The geographical position of Crete, the largest of the Greek islands, made its possession extremely important for Venetian commerce. Fleets from Venice stopped at Candia on the north coast. From there they sailed to Egypt, Syria, the upper Aegean, or Constantinople. Winds, currents, and the need for supplies made this stop an essential one. The inhabitants of Crete eagerly purchased from the Venetians the products of their workshops and lumber from the Adriatic. They sold to the Venetians merchandise from the eastern Mediterranean; pepper and slaves, for example, in addition to the products of local agriculture: wheat, cheese, wool.

129 Ives and Thwaites, III, 46–51
suns, horn from wild Cretan goats, wane, firewood, barley, and salt.\textsuperscript{121} A flourishing market in grain futures existed in Crete, providing Venetian merchants, Venetian colonists on Crete, and native merchants with a source for speculative gain. Cretan grain fed not only Venice and other Aegean islands, but also the great Greek monasteries of St. Catherine on Mount Sinai and St. John on Patmos, with dependent monasteries on Crete.

After purchasing title to Crete, Venice gained possession by driving out the Genoese under Henry Pescatore, count of Malta, and by subduing the Greek land-owning noblemen, known as archontes. During these campaigns the Venetian general and vice-doge, Renier Dandolo, was captured and died in a Genoese prison on Crete. Jacopo Tiepolo, the first Venetian duke of Crete, finally subdued Pescatore, and effectively Venetian control of the island dates from 1211.

The problem of gaining the allegiance and cooperation of the Greek nobility, clergy, and commoners on Crete remained. The Greeks on Crete, organized for centuries under their archontes, rebelled against the Venetian government as they had opposed the Byzantine emperor. The Venetian military occupation force on Crete was led by a Venetian duke (or “rector”) who was sent from Venice every two years. From his special responsibilities in the capital city, he was often known as the duke of Candia.\textsuperscript{122} Venice also systematically organized its own citizens to go to Crete as military colonists. The island was divided into six areas, corresponding to the Byzantine administrative subdivisions and also corresponding to the six sectors of Venice itself. Each sector of the four cities was expected to send Venetian nobles and other colonists to the corresponding area in Crete. The first group of colonists from Venice set out in 1211. Other Venetian military colonists were added during the succeeding centuries of Venetian domination of Crete. Exempted from this military partition of Cretan lands was the capital city of Candia, ruled by the Venetian dukedom of Crete. Also exempt were the lands held by the church. With the assistance of this force, Venice kept control over the island, fought the numerous Cretan revolts, and protected the island from invasions by other Greeks, other Italians, and Moslems.\textsuperscript{123}

Yet Venice could not hold the island without the cooperation of

\textsuperscript{121} Liber Magistratus, ed. Coma, p. 117; Bonomi, Crete, pp. 70-72, 94-95, Simon, "The Latins in Greece," p. 438.

\textsuperscript{122} These governors are listed for the thirteenth century in Bonomi, Crete, appendix 1, pp. 127-131

\textsuperscript{123} Trabal and Thomas, II, 129-142; see also Miller, Crete, pp. 270-290, and Bonomi, Crete, pp. 26-29
at least some of the native leaders who held the allegiance of the mass of free and semi-free Greeks. Major revolts against Venetian authority broke out in 1219–1222 and 1282–1299. Some Venetian colonists with knight's fiefs turned native, joined the Orthodox church, and, pushed by the same economic and social interests as were the Greeks, joined the Greeks in revolt against Venice itself. Some freemen owed allegiance to the feudal lords on Crete, and a small group of free merchants lived in Cretan cities, but the mass of the Cretans were serfs. A large majority of the residents of Crete were engaged in agriculture. Even the Venetian military colonists, for the most part, gave up their interest in trade and became more concerned with the products of the soil and life on a country estate.

The crusading effort did profit from the Venetian possession of Crete because Crete was a stopping place for military forces en route to the Holy Land. Before the Venetian occupation, Richard the Lion-hearted had stopped on Crete in 1191. The Frisian crusaders in 1211 rested in Candia on the way to Acre. The emperor Frederick II sailed by Crete in 1228 on his way to Cyprus; and King Louis IX considered stopping in Crete in 1248 en route to Egypt.

Venice would eventually lose the island to the Turks in the war of Candia, 1645–1669. The last Venetian strongholds fell to the Turks in 1691, after which the Treaty of Passarowitz of 1718 confirmed Turkish sovereignty over the island. For five centuries Crete was the most important Venetian acquisition from the Fourth Crusade, because its material resources and its location contributed so greatly to the strength of the maritime republic.

While gaining rights on Negroponte and Crete from Boniface of Montferrat and establishing a long-lived hegemony over these islands, the government of Venice after the Fourth Crusade also sent embassies and organized expeditions to establish control over the eastern coast of the Adriatic and the Ionian seas. These coastal areas formed part of the Venetian grant in the Treaty of Partition in October 1204. The Republic had fought since the tenth century to make these waters safe for its shipping, and so 1202 the crusading fleet had confirmed Venetian possession of the Istran coast and Zara. The treaty allowed a continuation of that domination which the Byzantine empire had permitted earlier.

The first official Venetian expedition of conquest after the Fourth Crusade took Ragusa and Durazzo on the Dalmatian coast, and the strategic island fortress of Corfu in the Ionian Sea. The same fleet
continued east and brought Thomas Morosini, the Latin patriarch elect, to Constantinople in the summer of 1205. When they arrived in Constantinople, they learned that doge Enrico Dandolo had died and that the Venetians in Constantinople had chosen Marino Zeno as their podesta. The question briefly remained open whether Ragusa, Durazzo, and Corfu would fall under his jurisdiction, but the Venetian doge Peter Ziani, elected in August 1205, soon forced the Venetians in Constantinople to recognize that Durazzo and Avlona, former Byzantine territories in the Adriatic, would come under the home government. Thus with the aid of the Venetian crusader fleet of 1202 and the Venetian patriarchal fleet of 1205, Venice reasserted its control over several important seaports on the Adriatic: the Istrian peninsula, Zara, Ragusa, Avlona, and Durazzo, and over the Ionian Sea island of Corfu.

The most important of these acquisitions was Ragusa. Even before the Fourth Crusade, the Ragusans had often accepted a Venetian as count; from 1205 to 1358 the count was named biennially as the doge's representative. Venetian citizens received preferential treatment in Ragusa and its hinterland, but Ragusan merchants in Venice were subjected to restrictions imposed by treaties in 1232, 1236, and 1252. The Ragusans promised Venice annual tribute, ships and sailors for its war fleets, and cooperation against its maritime rivals. They also agreed to accept from the Venetians an archbishop who would be subject to the patriarch of Grado. In return the Venetians protected the sea lanes outside Ragusa from pirates, and encouraged the growth of Ragusa as an entrepôt of trade and center of communication between Italy and the Balkans.

Ragusa provided an outlet for products from the Balkan hinterland such as skins, wood, flax, wax, honey, forest products, rough textiles, and slaves. Silver also became an important export from Ragusa to Venice, especially from 1250 to 1350. About 1300 output from the Serbian silver mines increased greatly. The Ragusans possessed the right to exploit these mines in the Serbian kingdom, but kept only a small part of the silver for these own coinage. Venetian merchants took the rest to Venice, where Serbian silver became an increasingly

124. Telet and Thomas, 1, 349–351
important source of silver for the Venetian mints. Serbian mines also produced some gold, lead, copper, iron, and cinnabar. 127 Venice monopolized the shipping between the Rialto and Ragusa, except for four Ragusan ships each year. Venetian ships sailing down the Adriatic usually stopped at Ragusa for food and water, for final outfitting, and often to recruit ships' crews. From Ragusa south, both Venetian and Ragusan ships carried merchandise back and forth across the Adriatic, in the Aegean Sea area, Constantinople, Syria, and Egypt. 128 Ragusans developed their own merchant marine during the century and a half of Venetian protection and, aided by the Venetians, maintained their freedom from the kings of Serbia, from Dalmatian pirates, and from the Genoese war fleets. In 1358 the Angevin king Louis I of Hungary, after a two-year war with Venice, succeeded in wresting Ragusa and the entire Dalmatian coast from Venetian control. With this event Ragusa, unhampered by its nominal ties in Balkan sovereigns, began two centuries of independent commercial growth, now in competition with Venice.

Durazzo, also conquered in 1205, had been an important Greek city on the Adriatic. Venetian fleets had helped protect the city against Robert Guiscard in 1082. Now the Venetians appointed a strong resident duke of Durazzo, the Venetian nobleman Marin Valieraesso. A Latin bishop of Durazzo presided over the Latin church there after 1205 and inherited certain possessions and revenues from his Greek predecessor. But the Venetian hold on Durazzo lasted only until 1213, when Michael I Ducas, ruler of Epirus, conquered the city. With the Epirite conquest Durazzo lost its importance as a seaport and Ragusa served the Venetian fleets instead as a depot for trade with the Balkans. 129

The island of Corfu guarded the mouth of the Adriatic, and the Venetian state sent expeditions immediately after the Fourth Crusade to establish its power there also. During that crusade Corfu had been conquered by a Genoese pirate, Leone Vetrano. In response the Venetian patricianal fleet that had taken Ragusa in the spring of 1205 also occupied Corfu briefly, but the Genoese pirate returned. Venice sent

129 Bonsai, Studi, pp. 36, 39, 44, 45, 48–50, 94, 102–103, 124 The first known Latin bishop of Durazzo was Manfred in 1209
a second expedition of thirty-one galleys in 1206 and another expedition in 1207 led by two noble Venetians, who brought their own military force and the right to conquer Corfu and hold it and its castle for Venice. They were to protect the church and the state as it had existed under the Byzantines, allow Venetians freedom of commerce, and pay annual tribute to Venice.130 This 1207 expedition successfully conquered and held Corfu until 1214, when the despot of Epirus seized it too.

To protect Venetian interests in the southern Adriatic and the Ionian Sea after the Fourth Crusade, the Republic needed to make agreements with the new rulers of the bordering lands. Both Michael I Ducas, Greek despot of Epirus, and the count palatine of Cephalonia, Mauro Orsini, acknowledged Venetian superiority. Michael of Epirus did homage to Venice in 1210 as had the count of Cephalonia in 1209.131 Each lord swore to hold his lands from Venice, to be its vassal, to pay it feudal dues, to support and protect Venetian commerce in his domains, and to treat the enemies of Venice as its enemies. On parchment, at least, these agreements guaranteed Venetian sovereignty over much former Byzantine territory in the west. But in reality, each vassal of Venice honored these promises only so long as it was personally advantageous. Michael of Epirus demonstrated his independence in 1213 and 1214 by taking both Durazzo and Corfu. Orsini disregarded his oath to Venice when he placed himself directly under pope Innocent III in 1213. Venice had no authority over either the island of Cephalonia or the coast of the despotate of Epirus during the remainder of the thirteenth century. This meant that Venice did not control any Dalmatian seaports south of Ragusa during these years, although it did dominate the northern Adriatic and did influence the commercial and naval operations of Italian ports on the Adriatic.

Venetian shipping around Greece should have benefitted from the Treaty of Partition, which promised Venice the Morea, excepting the fortress of Corinth and the Argolid. But in 1204 William of Champlitte and Geoffrey of Villehardouin, nephew of the chronicler-marshal of Champagne, landed at the protected harbor of Modon on the southwest corner of the Morea. They took the entire Morea with the


131 For Michael Ducas see Tufel and Thomson, I, 119–123; Borromeo, Scritti, pp 43–45. The text of the treaty with the count of Cephalonia has not survived. See, however, Andrea Dandolo, Chronica, p 284.
assistance of Frankish land forces and the encouragement of Boniface of Montferrat. Notwithstanding this Frankish occupation, pirates seem to have returned to Modon and the nearby seaport of Coron. The Venetian expedition under Renier Dandolo which conquered Corfu from Genoese pirates in 1207 went on to besiege and take Modon and Coron. Shortly after, in 1209, Venice made peace with Geoffrey of Villehardouin, who succeeded William of Champlitte as prince of Achaea. Venice secured its authority over Modon and Coron by means of the Treaty of Sapientza, by which Villehardouin, like the despot of Epirus and the count of Cephalonia, swore feudal homage to Venice, promising to be its vassal, to recognize its rights in the Morea, to protect Venetian commerce, and to treat Venetian enemies as his own. He also agreed that Venice should retain complete possession of the Morean seaports Modon and Coron. He and his heirs respected Venetian control over these two seaports, as did their successors, the Angevins of Naples. Venice did not control any other part of mainland Greece in the thirteenth century.

Venice held Modon and Coron for almost three hundred years. Renier Dandolo personally governed them until his death on Crete. Thereafter the Venetian doge sent two castellans biennially to Modon and Coron to administer the ports. In the later thirteenth century, the administrators appointed from Venice increased in number, Venice strengthened the fortifications of Coron from 1269 and of Modon from 1293. These two harbors, naturally protected from the interior by rocky hills, also marketed the agricultural products of southern Greece, especially grain, wax, and silk, and provisioned the Venetian fleets which sailed between the Adriatic and the Aegean.

Venetian territorial gains following the Fourth Crusade confirmed the Republic's control over the strategic seaports on the sea-lanes from Venice to Constantinople. To control the Aegean Sea, Venice needed more ports on the Aegean islands. Instead of sending out more expeditions of conquest, it encouraged its citizens to organize private forces at their own expense to conquer additional Greek islands. These private Venetian conquerors retained their Venetian citizenship and

132. See volume II of the present work, p. 236.
133. Tzetze and Thomas, v, 96-100; Borziari, Stati, p. 46, Andrea Dandolo, Chronica, p. 284 Only once, during the war of Negroponte, did a Villehardouin attempt to take Coron, but his siege was unsuccessful.
loyalty, even when they became vassals of the Latin emperor for their new lands.  

The most spectacular such private conquest was made by Marco Sanudo, nephew of doge Enrico Dandolo. He had already distinguished himself as a member of the Venetian crusading expedition of 1202-1204, as Dandolo's private envoy to Boniface of Montferrat for the negotiations leading to the Treaty of Adrianople, and as a judge in the Venetian quarter of Constantinople. Marco Sanudo set out from Constantinople in 1207 to conquer the Cyclades with a privately financed expedition of eight galleys manned by Venetian and Italian adventurers. After landing at Potamos in southwest Naxos, Sanudo burnt his galleys behind him to encourage his followers to victory. He had to face Genoese corsairs under Henry Pescatore, count of Malta, who surrendered after a five-week siege. With a second expedition equipped in Venice, he completed the conquest of the other islands in the Cyclades: Paros, Antiparos, Cimolos, Melos, Amorgos, Ios, Kythnos, Sikinos, Siphnos, Syros, and Pholegandros. He awarded Andros as a fief to Marino Dandolo, his cousin, another nephew of the late doge.

By whose authority did Marco Sanudo hold these islands? According to a Venetian decree, any Venetian citizen at his own expense was encouraged to conquer lands promised to Venice in the Treaty of Partition, on condition that the conquests should be bequeathed or sold only to other Venetians. On the other hand, the Treaty of Partition awarded the Cyclades to the Frankish crusaders as fiefs of the Latin emperor. Marco Sanudo, a Venetian nobleman, apparently did homage to the Latin emperor for these islands. He ruled his duchy of Naxos (sometimes called the duchy of the Archipelago) as a powerful, independent feudal lord who cooperated with the doge of Venice only when it suited him. If the Venetians in Crete needed his military assistance, he might sometimes provide it. He built a harbor on Naxos and a unique castle where he lived and under the walls of which he installed the Latin clergy and encouraged a colony of Venetians.

136 Fortheningham, *Marco Sanudo*, ch. 5; Borsari, *Studii*, pp. 38-40. These authors have organized the confusing evidence given in the sources.  
138 Marco Sanudo helped in the conquest of Crete, but he fell out with the Venetian duke of Crete, Jacopo Tiepolo, and withdrew Fortheningham, *Marco Sanudo*, ch. 5  
139 Ibid, pp. 70-75
His dynasty brought peace and prosperity to the island, and removed the danger of piracy. Greeks and Latins lived amicably side by side under the Sanudo dukes. Marco's heirs gravitated closer to Venice, as its naval protection was essential to the peace of the islands. The Sanudo dynasty died out in 1371 and was succeeded by another Italian family of the Latin east, the Crispi, who ruled Naxos until 1566. Venice continued to influence and protect the islands until 1718 when the last of them, Tenos, was ceded to the Turks in the Treaty of Passarowitz.

Marino Dandolo, residing in Constantinople, held Andros, the second largest of the Cyclades, in lieu from his cousin Marco Sanudo, having accompanied him on the expedition of 1207. Marino established the Latin church on the island and built a castle there for his personal residence. He also carried on a long conflict with John, the Latin bishop of Andros, who was forced into exile, appealed to pope Gregory IX, and obtained Marino's excommunication in 1233, all without any result. Between 1239 and 1243 Jeremiah Ghisi and his brother Andrew, Venetian rulers of other Aegean islands, took Andros from Marino Dandolo and sent him into exile, where he died. Dandolo's sister Maria Doro and his widow Felissa, who married Jacopo Querini, appealed to Venice for justice against the Ghisi usurpation. Doge Jacopo Tiepolo upheld their rights, declared confiscated the goods of the Ghisi in Venice, and threatened Jeremiah Ghisi with exile if he would not comply. Nevertheless, the Ghisi held the island for decades. In 1282 doge John Dandolo and the council of Venice, upon the petition of the heirs of Marino Dandolo, declared that Andros should revert back to the possession of its feudal overlord, Marco II Sanudo, duke of Naxos.

The Ghisi of Venice also made independent conquests. The brothers Andrew and Jeremiah Ghisi organized an expedition in 1207; Andrew occupied and held Tenos and Mykonos in the Cyclades, and Jeremiah became lord of Skyros, Skiathos, and Skopelos in the northern Sporades. In addition to creating their principality in the Cy-
clades and northern Sporades, the Ghisi made numerous commercial
investments and international loans. Another brother, John, and
his son Natalus lent a huge sum to king Andrew II of Hungary. In
1224 Andrew sent 201 silver marks to Venice, where doge Peter Ziani
and his councillors accepted this pledge for the Ghisi. Andrew Ghisi,
lord of Tenos and Myconos, in 1239 lent 400 gold perperi to Angelo
Sanudo, duke of Naxos, and was repaid in 1245. The brothers Jere-
miah, Marinn, and Andrew Ghisi had a fraternal company, which
indicates that the family resources existed, in part, as an indissoluble
common fund. Their investments were placed in colleganza contracts,
and three such Ghisi contracts for the decade 1251–1261 have survived.
Not all their affairs prospered; in 1252 they were placed under the
ban of Venice for having seized Andros. Another misfortune occurred
when Andrew Ghisi was victimized by pirates in 1259. He appealed
to the doge for relief and the doge lifted the ban against him. Before
1261 members of the family participated in the Great Council of Ven-
ie and held office as ducal councillors and as inspector of public
works. These details suggest that the Ghisi held their islands, not only
by political acquiescence and by right of conquest, but also by means of
financial strength and business ability. They were related by marriage
to other Venetian and Frankish lords of the Aegean, and the Ghisi
line continued to hold Aegean islands until 1390, when the family
became extinct.

Lemnos (called Stalimene by the Latins), where a Latin church de-
pendent upon the Venetian monastery of San Giorgio Maggiore ex-
isted in the twelfth century, was assigned to the Latin emperor by
the Treaty of Parthion. However Filocalo Navigaio, a Venetian and
a member of the Constantinopolitan community, took possession of
Lemnos at least as early as 1206, holding it as a fief of the Latin em-
peror. He held the Byzantine title megaduke, which customarily
conferred high naval command. The Navigaio family held this island
for generations.

The tiny islands of Cerigo (Cythera) and Cerigotto (Anticythera),
which lie like stepping stones between the Morea and Crete, also be-
came the property of Venetian families. Marco Venier set out from
Crete to conquer Cerigo, and James Viaro to conquer Cerigotto. They
also assisted the Venetian military effort to subdue Crete. Viaro had

144 Locnerz, "Généalogie des Ghisi," pp. 144–148, Liber Magnorum, ed. Cosi, pp. 70–71,
Moreno della Rocca and Lombardo, Nuovi documenti, nos. 95, 96, and their Documentari,
II, no. 774

145 Moreno della Rocca and Lombardo, Documentari, II, no. 519; Andrea Dandolo,
Chronica, p. 282, Fetheringham, Marco Sanudo, p. 59
assisted Marco Dandolo previously in the Venetian conquest of Gallipoli. When their families were abruptly dislodged by Licario about 1278, Venetian rule on Cerigo and Cerigotto ended until the fourteenth century.148

Another Venetian nobleman, Lorenzo Tiepolo, held territory in the Aegean. He was the son of doge Jacopo Tiepolo, who had been the first Venetian duke of Crete, and he too would rule Venice as doge from 1268 to 1275. Possibly through his second wife, Agnes Ghisi, he became lord of the islands of Skyros and Skopelos. Lorenzo Tiepolo also held a fief from the Vilhardouin princes of Achaia.149

The sources do not record who held these islands in the last part of the century; possibly they reverted back to the Ghisi.

Among the Aegean islands conquered and held privately by Venetians, only the above-noted principalities of the Navigatosis, Marco Sanudo, Lorenzo Tiepolo, the Ghisi brothers, Marino Dandolo, the Venetians, and the Viani were established in the early thirteenth century. Recent scholarship has refuted the claims of nineteenth-century historians that many other Venetians established feudal principalities on the Aegean islands at the same time. Not until the end of the thirteenth century did other Venetian families gain possession of Aegean islands. The evidence144 suggests that only in the fifteenth century did the Querini come to Astypalaea (Stampalia); and in the fourteenth century the Barozzi came to Thera (Santorini) and Thasos, the Foscari to Anaphi (Nemfio), and the Ghisi to Chios and Seriphos. These acquisitions belong to the Venetian holdings of the Renaissance rather than the crusading epoch.

Of all the islands and the seaports of the Near East, the most important for Venetian commerce had always been Constantinople. The Venetian quarter in Constantinople had formed the principal center for its foreign commerce since 1082, and Venetian efforts to maintain this position against Italian and Byzantine competition had preceded the Fourth Crusade by over a generation. The establishment of the

146 Bernari, Studi, p. 38; Miller, Letters in the Levant, pp. 138-139; Fotheringham, Marco Sanudo, p. 58
147 Jacoby, La Fondation, p. 195; Lentzert, "Marco Dandolo," Byzantins et Franco-Grecs, p. 409 note 5. Lorenzo Tiepolo's first wife, Agnes, was either a Brunswick or the daughter of a Balkan prince.
148 Bernari, Studi, pp. 38-43; Fotheringham, Marco Sanudo, pp. 56-70; Lentzert, "Les Querini comtes d'Astypalae, 1413-1537," Byzantins et Franco-Grecs, pp. 503-536. Lentzert, 'De Quelques des grecques et de leurs souvenirs venitiens du XVe et XVIe siècle,' Studi veneziani, XIV (1973), 99, suggests the possibility of a Venetian lord over Astypalaea in the thirteenth century, but states that no surviving source documents this possibility.
Latin empire in Constantinople in 1204 jointly by the Venetians and the Frankish crusaders gave the citizens of Venice a greater security in Constantinople than they had ever known.

When the Latin empire was established, the Venetians acted as a unit under their doge to gain economic and ecclesiastical supremacy in Romania. The Fourth Crusade returned all previously held commercial privileges and monopolies to Venice. The well-disciplined coherence of the Venetians in Constantinople is attested by the continuance of their corporate activity in the summer of 1205, after the death of Enrico Dandolo. They elected Marino Zeno to be their podestà in Constantinople, and he surrounded himself with a group of magistrates bearing the same titles as ducal councilors at home—judges of the commune, councilors, treasurers, and advocates. The military and commercial responsibilities of the Venetians in Constantinople necessitated a continuity of leadership. Zeno at first used Enrico Dandolo's title, dominator quartae partis et dimidie Imperii Romanie. He remained in office until 1207 but had to acknowledge the leadership of the doge in Venice. In September 1205 he notified doge Peter Ziani of his election as podestà, and promised that the Venetians in Constantinople would in the future accept as their podestà only a man sent from Venice and that the fiefs gained by the Venetians in Romania would not be sold or bequeathed to foreigners. One month later, he acknowledged the doge's sovereignty over all former Byzantine possessions in the Adriatic and Ionian seas granted to Venice by the Treaty of Partition. He also confirmed the obligations and the treaties made in 1204 between the French crusaders and the Venetians under doge Enrico Dandolo. This confirmation was signed in the Imperial red ink by Henry, brother of the captured emperor Baldwin I, and by Zeno. According to this confirmation, the Latin emperor could act only with the advice and consent of his council, composed half of Venetians and half of Franks. In addition, the defense of the empire depended during the campaign season upon military contingents from both Franks and Venetians. The Venetians were confirmed in all rights and privileges they had ever held in Constantinople under the Greeks. Venetian strength in Romania also rested on control of its Latin church, whose head, the patriarch of Constantinople, according to arrangements in 1204, was always a Venetian.

The Venetian Civil Law promulgated in 1242 by doge Jacopo Tiepolo testifies to the position of Constantinople as the second city in

149. See chapter VI of volume I of the present work.
150. Taft and Thomas, I, 566-574; Wolff, "The Oath of the Venetian Podestà," pp. 544-551
151. See McNeal and Wolff, in volume II of the present work, pp. 195-199
the Venetian dominions. This law restricted the drawing up of breviera, notarized documents, to Venice and Constantinople only. Furthermore, documents notarized in Constantinople had to be drawn up in the presence of the podestà, his agent, or one of the councillors of the doge.\footnote{\textit{Gli Statuti veneziani di Jacopo Tiepolo del 1242}, vol. \textit{Cenni}, 1, xxxv, 62. Breviera meant any documents drawn up by a notary. \textit{Ibid.}, 1, xxxv, 67, supra gloss 203. Another Venetian gloss from the second half of the thirteenth century \textit{ibid.}, 1, xxxv, 62 extended the right to authenticate such brevieria to any Venetian governor or be be bale, podestà rector, the duke of Crete, or one of their agents. The date of this extenuum, after 1261, demonstrates that other legal provisions had to be made for authenticating such breviera after the fall of the Latin empire.} The law code further states that private contracts for loans could not be paid off in any city other than that specified, except Venice itself or Constantinople.\footnote{\textit{Ibid.}, V, viii, 22.} These laws further demonstrate that the Venetian colony in Constantinople, led by the podestà, had more independent authority and more power than any other Venetian colony.

The colony's strength is further attested by the story, which appears only in the Renaissance chronicle of Daniele Barbaro, that the Venetians debated at length whether or not they ought to transfer the seat of their government to Constantinople. The conservatives won, and the doge remained in Italy. Every Venetian podestà in Constantinople except the first was nominated by the home government, not by the Venetian community in Constantinople. All Marino Zeno's successors took an oath to follow the directives of the home government, and to administer justice for the profit and honor of Venice and for the safety of Romania. They also swore that they would not act in fiscal or financial matters or in foreign affairs without the consent of their councillors.\footnote{Wolff, \textit{"The Oath,"} pp. 552-557; Lombardo and Morozzo della Rocca, \textit{Nuovi documenti}, no. 52, Lazzarini, \textit{Storia economica di Venezia}, p 42} Each was assisted by two councillors, six judges, and a treasurer.

Venice chose some of its most outstanding men to be podestà in Constantinople.\footnote{Wolff, \textit{"The Oath,"} pp. 559-564.} Marino Dandolo, probably related to doge Enrico Dandolo, held office as podestà sometime between 1209 and 1221. Later, in Venice, he served as ducale councillor in 1223, and as vice-doge in 1224. Still later, in 1229, he tied with Jacopo Tiepolo for election to the ducale office itself. He never held the office, but became podestà of the nearby city of Treviso and was assassinated in 1233.\footnote{See above, note 140.} The noble Venetian family of Michiel, which contributed three doges to Venice in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, gave two podestà to
Constantinople, Marino Michiel in March 1221 and John Michiel in 1240-1241. Marino Storlato, podestà in 1222 and 1223, served the Venetian state at home as judge in 1195, as examiner in 1210, and as councillor in 1219, and represented Venice in Rome as witness to the oath of John of Brienne in April 1231. Teofilo Zeno, one of the wealthiest Venetians, was podestà of Constantinople sometime between 1224 and 1228, and again about 1235-1238. He also served Venice as judge in 1219, and as ducal councillor in 1228 and 1229. Jacob Dolfin, podestà in 1256, also served Venice at home as judge of the commune in 1241. Marco Gradengo, the last Venetian podestà before the fall of Constantinople to the Greeks in 1261, also served Venice as captain of the Venetian army in Romania before 1256, and as bailie in Negroponte.

The most important podestà of Constantinople was Jacopo Tiepolo. As a young man before the Fourth Crusade he was active in commercial voyages, going to Messina and to Constantinople in 1190. Before becoming podestà he had held the offices of bailie of Negroponte and duke of Crete; he held the chief office in Constantinople in 1219-1221, and again about 1224. In Constantinople Tiepolo carried out a policy designed to bring more commercial advantages to Venice, despite the weakening of the Latin empire. In 1219 he reaffirmed the Venetian responsibilities to the Latin empire in a convention signed with the regent, Conon of Bethune. In the same year he increased Venetian business opportunities by making treaties, on his own authority as podestà, with foreign sovereigns in Anatolia. According to his commercial agreement with Theodore I Lascaris, Greek emperor of Nicaea, Venetians could trade in the empire of Nicaea without paying customs dues. In 1220 Tiepolo made a commercial treaty with Kai-Kobad I, the Turkish sultan of Konya. In 1224, acting as agent for the doge, he settled a dispute with the Latin emperor Robert of Courtenay whereby three eighths of certain fields near Constantinople would be assigned to the Venetians, according to the earlier Franco-Venetian treaties. A document also survives from the years of Tiepolo’s leadership wherein the Venetians controlling the seaport of Lampsacus on the Dardanelles agreed to pay annually 1,000 gold perperi to the Venetian podestà in Constantinople. He brought his extensive commercial, political, and administrative experience back to Venice in 1229 upon his election as doge.

157 Morozzo della Rocca and Lombardo, Documenti, i, nos. 377, 388, 389
158 See Wolff, “The Latin Empire of Constantinople, 1204-1261,” in volume II of the present work, pp. 220-233
159 Tafel and Thomas, III, 205-210, 214-225, 255.
During his twenty years in that office, Jacopo Tiepolo continued his policy of protecting Venetian commercial advantages in the Near East.\textsuperscript{160} His amicable relations with the Greeks at Nicaea ceased when John III (Ducas) Vatatzes ruled Nicaea from 1222 to 1254. On the other hand, as doge he concluded commercial treaties with the Ayyūbid lord of Aleppo, with king Béla IV of Hungary, with king Heōtom I of Cilician Armenia at Ayas (Lajazzo), with the Ayyūbid sultans al-Ādil I and as-Sāliḥ of Egypt, and with the Ḥāfiṣid lord of Tunis, Yahyā I. His commercial agreement with and support of Leo Gabalas, Greek ruler of Rhodes, came to nothing when John Vatatzes of Nicaea took Rhodes. He also carried out the first complete surviving codification of the Venetian civil and maritime laws. His policy, like that of other doges of this era, was economic domination in Romania.

The power of the Venetian podestà continued to be only as strong as Venetian influence in Constantinople and surrounding territories. Of the lands near Constantinople promised to Venice in the Treaty of Partition, not all came under Venetian jurisdiction. Although the Venetians were granted Thrace as far as Adrianople by the Treaty, the Bulgarian king Ioannitza conquered most of it in 1204-1205. Ioannitza captured the Latin emperor Baldwin I in April 1205, when he attempted to retake Adrianople. After the siege, doge Enrico Dandolo moved south with his forces to Rodosto on the Sea of Marmara, where he left a Venetian garrison.\textsuperscript{161} Rodosto had seen resident Venetian churchmen and traveling Venetian merchants often in the twelfth century. But the Venetians did not hold Rodosto long in 1205. Ioannitza led the Bulgars south after taking Adrianople, and, after his victory at Rusino in January 31, 1206, took Arcadiopolis, Rodosto, Heraclea, and other places on the Thracian coast. Rodosto must have been regained by the Venetians because they sent a castellan there in 1224. West of Rodosto, at the mouth of the Dardanelles, the seaport of Gallipoli became firmly Venetian when Marco Dandolo and Jacob Viadro conquered it in 1205. Gallipoli too received a Venetian castellan in 1224. Venice held Gallipoli until 1235, when it was taken and sacked by the Greek ruler John Vatatzes.\textsuperscript{162} The Venetians also held Lampsacus on the Aegean shore of the Dardanelles.

Control of seaports was more important to Venice than ephemeral sovereignty over the inland regions of Thrace. At Adrianople the Greeks

\textsuperscript{160} Ibid., II, 274-307

\textsuperscript{161} Ivan Dujić, "Rapponti fra Veneziani e Bulgari nel Medioevo," Venezia e il levante, ed. Perutin, 1-4, 246.

\textsuperscript{162} Andrea Dandolo, Chronicae, pp. 282, 285, Wolff, in volume II of the present work p. 219; Fosteringham, Marco Sanudo, pp. 50-51, Thwait, La Romanie venitienne, pp. 85, 92.
soon despaired of Ioannitsa’s leadership and secretly arranged to surrender the city to the Greek leader Theodore Branas in Constantinople. By an agreement in 1206, the Venetians in Constantinople gave up their rights in Adrianople to Branas. He entered into actual possession only after the second Latin emperor, Henry, and his army retook the area from the Bulgars in late August 1206. Through these seaports on the Dardanelles and the Sea of Marmara, the Venetian colony in Constantinople not only controlled the approaches to Constantinople but also profited from the renewal of the ancient Venetian commercial privileges there. In return, Venice contributed to the defense of the European possessions of the Latin empire.

Italians, who had not been welcome in the Black Sea until 1204, soon afterward began their eastward voyages in search of markets and grain. Venetian voyages into the Black Sea are known as early as 1206, when one was made to Soldaia in the Crimea. By mid-century Venetian merchants had explored the Black Sea and established commercial contacts, like the Polo agency in Soldaia, which dated from 1250. The Black Sea trade must have yielded mainly grain, timber, and salt fish to the Venetian merchants before the Mongol conquests in the second quarter of the thirteenth century. The unstable and fragmented pre-Mongol governments of the Black Sea littoral would not have attracted the long-distance Asiatic caravans which later, during the Pax Mongolica, were to bring precious goods from the Far East.

Venetians were to learn more about the conquests of Genghis Khan and his successors than most Europeans. Mongol horsemen had invaded western Europe, in the 1240’s reaching Udine, only about eighty miles from Venice. The Mongols pushed the Hungarians and the central Balkan peoples, who, in turn, put pressure on the Venetian-dominated Dalmatian coast. Renier Zeno, a future doge, represented Venice in 1245 at the First Council of Lyons, where pope Innocent IV discussed the defense of Europe against the Mongols. Before the Greeks returned to Constantinople in 1261 and temporarily prohib-

164 Marie Nystazopoulou Fröhlich, “Venise et la Mer Noire,” Venise e il Levante, ed Partisi, I-2, 343–548, believes that the Genoese were allowed to trade in the Black Sea by the Byzantines, in 1169 and 1192, when the Byzantines granted privileges to the Genoese to counteract Venetian preeminence; cf. Morozzo della Roca and Lombardo, Documenti, II, nos. 478–479.
ted Venetians from going to the Black Sea, Venetian merchants had already established themselves in Mongol lands. Jacob Venier and Nicholas Pisani, two Venetian merchants resident in Kiev, which was controlled by the Golden Horde, met John of Pian del Carpine, the official ambassador of pope Innocent IV, about 1244, on his return from the Mongol empire.

The father and uncle of Marco Polo set out from their agency inSoldai, io 1260, on their first long journey into Mongol lands. They traveled much farther into Mongol domains than other known Venetians. On their first journey they visited the Ukraine, Bukhara in Turkestan, and also China, and returned by land in 1269–1270 to Ayas in Cilician Armenia, and thence by sea to Acre, Negroponte, and home. The Polo brothers did not return via the Black Sea because, while in Asia, they must have received information that the Greeks had reconquered Constantinople and had closed the Black Sea to all but their allies, the Genoese and the Pisans. The Venetians, however, negotiated a treaty in 1268 with the Greek emperor, Michael VIII Palaeologus, whereby they could resume trade within the empire and in the Black Sea. Consequently the Venetians sent a consul to Soldai in 1287 with authority over all the Crimea area. They could now take advantage of the opportunity to purchase precious stones, metals, luxury textiles from the Far East, furs, pelts, wax, and honey from Russia, and timber, salt, and salt fish from the regions near the Crimea. Matthew and Nicholas Polo began their second journey in 1271, the year after a Venetian truce with Genoa, and took seventeen-year-old Marco with them. Marco Polo's famous book recounts his overland journey to the court of Kublai Khan in Cathay, his long service under Kublai Khan, and his return, mainly by sea, reaching Constantinople and finally Venice in 1295. His travels have become the best-known Venetian venture of the thirteenth century and demonstrate the unlimited opportunity opened up to Venice by commercial colonization during the crusades.

Syria and Palestine continued to attract Venetian commerce after 1204, despite the beginning of armed conflict between the Italian communes there in the second quarter of the thirteenth century. When Frederick II became king of Jerusalem, fortified the coastal cities, and regained Jerusalem on his bloodless crusade, the Venetian position seemed strong. Following Frederick's departure, however, open

166 See Thomas C. Van Cleve, "The Crusade of Frederick II," in volume II of the present work, chapter XII.
warfare broke out among the Latins in the kingdom of Jerusalem. The Hohenstaufen or imperial party, led by the imperial bailie Richard Filangieri and his brothers, included the Teutonic Knights, some local barons, and the Pisans. The Lombard party, led by the Ibelins, included many barons of Jerusalem and the Genoese. At first the Templars, the Hospitalers, and the Venetians held aloof, but later the Venetians joined the Lombard party against the Ghibellines. The fighting attempted to settle whether the local Christian barons or the absent Hohenstaufen king of Jerusalem should rule, and also which Italian sea power should be supreme on the Palestinian and Syrian coast. Until 1243 the Pisans enjoyed the strength which came from their support of the imperial cause. The Pisan strength declined with the decline of the imperial power and their loss of Tyre in July 1243. From this date to the fall of Acre in 1291, the kingdom of Jerusalem was governed loosely by the barons.

The Italian communes formed the strongest and richest elements in the port cities of Antioch, Tripoli, Tyre, Acre, and Jaffa. No harmony existed between them after the common enemy, the Hohenstaufen party, was gone. Every irritation erupted into armed conflict, interrupted only briefly by Louis IX's visit to the Latin kingdom during his first crusade. First Genoa sided with Pisa against Venice. From 1257 on Venice and Genoa fought a long series of wars which lasted over a century. Pisa, gradually weakened through conflict with Genoa at home, sided with Venice in the first war, known as the War of the Communes or the War of St. Sabas because conflict broke out over possession of a house belonging to the abbey of St. Sabas in Acre. After several bloody land and sea battles, the Venetians decisively defeated the Genoese in June 1258 at sea off Acre. Lorenzo Tiepolo, son of doge Jacopo Tiepolo and a future doge himself, commanded the Venetians. After the naval victory the Venetians razed the Genoese quarter in Acre, and Tiepolo carried some of the stones of Acre home in triumph to Venice. Genoa then left Acre, which had formerly been its strongest point, for other coastal cities. The Venetian power appeared in 1258 to be at its height in the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem.

The Venetians in thirteenth-century Tyre retained their commercial privileges, which had first been granted them in the pactum Warmundi of 1123. Tyre continued to be their chief center. According to the pactum Warmundi the Venetians were to receive one third of the city, and the Latin kingdom two thirds. As they were recorded in the inventory of Venetian holdings in Tyre made in 1243 by the Venetian bailie, Marsiglio Zorzi, Venetian holdings included land and streets
along the eastern shore of the harbor, bordering on the holdings of the Genoese, the order of the Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem, and others. The largest structure there, the grand palace of the Venetian fondaco, provided substantial rents to Venice. The church of St. Demetrius and the chapel of St. Mark, the arsenal, and many other structures in the area belonged to the Venetians. Venetian law prevailed there. Venetian noblemen resided in this section for years at a time while retaining their property and privileges at home. Other Venetian noblemen and commoners lived in Tyre only for a few months, between the arrival of the fall fleet from Venice and its spring departure. Apparently native Syrians and other Latins also lived in the Venetian section.

One third of the countryside surrounding Tyre also belonged to Venice, and two thirds to the kingdom of Jerusalem. The Venetian share included, according to a recent study, about twenty-one small villages and their surrounding cultivated land. Wheat and barley fields, crops of legumes, and orchards planted on these lands supplied the Tyrians with their food. In other irrigated areas, the Venetians maintained sugar plantations, and sugar presses near Tyre produced a local product for export. Near the Venetian agricultural villages there were 2,000 olive groves worked by compulsory labor. The famous glass-blowers of Tyre also produced exports for Venetian merchants. Some of them emigrated to Venice in the mid-twelfth century to found the Venetian glass industry. In addition to these local products, the Venetians also exported from Tyre other products of the region. Most important were the textiles: cotton cloth and cotton thread, linen, camel's-hair cloth, buckram or canvas, and wool for caps. Other thirteenth-century Venetian exports from the Holy Land included spices, pigments, medicines, and lead.

While the Genoese colonies in Syria and Palestine continued to be exploited mainly by independent Genoese citizens, some of them feudal lords like the Embriachi in Jubail and others on Aegean islands, the Venetian colonies in Palestine were more closely controlled by

169 Ibid., pp 655, 638-642.
170 Ch Statutis maritini venezianis fines a D 7255, ed. Fradelli and Sacerdott, p 73, see also above, pp 257-259
171 Bordax, buxariae filium, filium, zambulnitz, baccarum, bume de berretis, Ch Statutis maritini, p 73
172 Piner, locoventum, orientem, canidae, cuivula, myrthen, lacca, bomarbochis, aloes, rosae muscae, gynafoli, ganhlovotnum, anlage, canform, morum, sundalo, mirobalani, gelenga, simonaxum, cuivule, piper longum, morum pagentum, armimonaxum, cera alumen, vitresum, victrolum, merita, reparsum, spigum, camelle, carneum, mus, amni, tambellloris, ibid Prawer has given a translation of this last, Crusaders' Kingdom, p 400.
the Venetian state. The home city regularly sent out its representatives, known as bailies, to the chief colonial city in Palestine. The first known bailie was Teofilo Zeno in 1117. In the thirteenth century the bailie held office for one year and was chosen by the doge of Venice from among those Venetians familiar with conditions in the Latin kingdom. Venetians residing in Palestine, among them the chronicler Martín de Canal, contributed greatly to Venetian life when they returned home. The coastal city of Tyre served as the headquarters for Venice in Palestine throughout most of the thirteenth century, except from 1262 to 1270 when the Genoese forced them to concentrate in Acre. After the conquest of the remainder of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem by the Mamluks in 1291, the Venetians had to make their peace with the new rulers.

Although Venice had traded with Egypt at least since the tenth century, only thirteenth-century sources present many details. Sometime between 1205 and 1217 Venice stabilized its position in Egypt by negotiating a series of six commercial agreements with the Ayyubid sultan, al-Ádil. These agreements outlined the position of Christian merchants in Moslem Egypt and probably reflect the terms of earlier arrangements. The sultan agreed to honor and protect all Venetians and their Christian agents in his domains. He also promised to protect the pilgrims whom they might transport to the Holy Sepulcher. Venetian merchants were to pay no more than the regular customs duties in Egypt. They were granted a fondaco in the chicken market in Alexandria where they might live, and the right to come and go freely in Egypt. They were also given freedom to buy and sell any merchandise anywhere in Egypt without restraint. They were to be judged in their own courts. The sultan agreed to respect their customs provided that they were observed within the Venetian fondaco, such as the drinking of wine with meals and the taking of usury, both of which were prohibited in Moslems. The Venetians agreed on their part to follow the regulations of the Egyptian customs officers.

These arrangements must have broken down in 1217–1218 during the Fifth Crusade. King Andrew II of Hungary had assumed leadership of the crusading army in 1216, and secured the assistance of Venetian shipping by granting Venice perpetual sovereignty over Zara and various commercial privileges in his realm. Venice was to provide ten

173. Although the treaty used to be dated 1202 and given as a cause for the diversion of the Fourth Crusade, the treaty now is dated later, Gabriel Hanotaux, “Les Venetiens ont-ils cru la Chrétienté en 1202?” Revue historique, IV (1877), 87–100; The Latin Conquest of Constantinople, ed. Queller, pp. 24–43; Kreuschmayr, Geschichte, 1, 482. For the text, see Tafel and Thomas, II, 184-193.
large ships, at a rental of 550 Venetian silver marks each, and numerous smaller vessels. The crusaders assembled in Spalato the following summer in such numbers that not enough ships were ready. Eventually transportation for all was secured; and the crusaders proceeded to Acre. There is no evidence of Venetian participation in the Palestinian military phase of the Fifth Crusade, and the Venetians did not assist the Hungarian crusaders to return home. Sick and weakened, King Andrew returned home by land, leading his army through Syria, Cilician Armenia, the Latin empire of Constantinople, and Bulgaria. The Fifth Crusade proceeded without him during 1218, departing from Acre to attack Damietta in Egypt. Possibly Venetian ships transported the crusaders to Egypt, since Venetian troops and ships were present at Damietta at the time of the military disaster at Mansurah. The Fifth Crusade was the last such venture for the commune of Venice. Except to further its quarrel with Genoa, Venice did not participate in any other thirteenth-century crusade. Some Venetians resided in Acre and assisted in the defense of the city until its fall in April 1291 to the Mamluks. Of all the crusading expeditions before 1291, Venice had participated most fully and gained most from the Fourth Crusade.

After the Fifth Crusade Venice, like the papacy, prohibited any of its citizens or ships from trading with Egypt. Trade in lumber, iron, and ship tackle was specifically prohibited. Evidence of these prohibitions exists for the years 1224 to 1228. Doge Peter Ziani sent a decree to the duke of Crete in 1226 prohibiting Venetian ships from trading with Egypt. Bonds were to be posted to insure compliance and violators of the decree were to suffer confiscation of their goods and fines. But the ships did not stop sailing to Venice from Alexandria. In 1226 the doge fined certain Lombard merchants and confiscated their cargo of dates and seven great elephant tusks brought from Egypt. Venetians were also issued permits for organized piracy against Egyptian shipping in 1226. Venetian trade with Egypt seems to have continued from Constantinople, where the Venetian patriarch had the right to absolve the sins of those who carried on illicit trade with Moslems contrary to papal decree.

Venice resumed its regular trade with Egypt when Jacopo Tiepolo

175 Liber Floronium, ed. Cass., pp. 17, 19, 28, 29, 31, 33, 94, 95, 96
176 Tafel and Thomas, II, 260-264. The duke of 1226 was Manuio Sforza
177 Liber Floronium, ed. Cass., pp. 96, 140-142, 144.
178 Wolff, “Patrica in the Latin Patriarchate,” p. 277
was doge. The sultan of Egypt, al-Kāmil, in 1238 gave the doge's agents, Romeo Querini and Jacopo Barozzi, knights, a renewal of Venetian privileges. In addition, he promised Venice an additional fondaco where its laws might prevail and money, gold, and silver might be exchanged under supervision. The treaty also stated that neither Egyptians nor Venetians should commit acts of piracy against each other. Six years later the Egyptian sultan as-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb again guaranteed the safety of Venetians and their goods in his domains.

The crusade of Louis IX to Egypt and the end of the Ayyūbid line must have ended the effectiveness of these treaties, for in 1254 Venice negotiated a new pact with the first Mamluk sultan of Egypt, Aybeg, shortly after he assumed power. This pact detailed the customary rights and privileges of the Venetians in Egypt much more clearly and precisely than any earlier pact had. It is not known whether these Venetian privileges in Egypt continued after 1257 when Aybeg was murdered, but Venetian trade continued with Egypt during the remainder of the century.

Tunisia was another area where Venetian merchant diplomats negotiated treaties before the end of the Latin empire. With Pisan merchants already firmly established, the Venetian doge Jacopo Tiepolo in 1231 made a formal compact with the rulers of Tunis to ensure the safety of Venetians, their merchandise, and their shipping. Although the treaty was to run for forty years, the Venetians and the Hafsīd rulers of Tunisia renewed it in 1251, probably because Louis's crusading expedition to Egypt had disrupted trade along the North African coast. The treaty of 1251 repeated the usual safeguards to Venetian commerce, and added that, when famine threatened Venice, the Venetians were permitted to export grain from Tunisia if its price did not exceed a certain figure. These arrangements to purchase grain in Tunisia were particularly significant because they were made the same year Venice went to war with Genoa.

The crusades provided Venice with many opportunities for overseas expansion. Not only did the Fourth Crusade give Venice a monopoly of trade in Constantinople, but Venetian merchants enjoyed unusual commercial advantages and protection in the Frankish states of the former Byzantine empire. Pirate nests in Ragusa, Corfu, Mo-

179 Tafel and Thomas, II, 336–341.
180 Ibid., 416-418.
181 Ibid., 483-492.
182 Ibid., 303-347.
183 Ibid., 450-456.
don and Coron, Crete, and Naxos were destroyed by Venetian ships before 1212, and Venetian colonies in Romania served as bases from which later Venetian squadrons policed the seas.

Emboldened by greater commercial security, thirteenth-century Venetian merchants sought new markets. They explored the Black Sea and established commercial colonies from Soldais on the Crimean eastward to the Sea of Azov and Tana on the river Don, and southward to Greek Trebizond. From these distant stations Venetians regularly did business with the Mongols and met the caravans from the Far East. In the next century Venetians penetrated deeply into Mongol lands. Similarly, in the western Mediterranean Venetians frequented the ports of Moslem Tunisia and the rival Christian ports: Pisa, Genoa, Marseille, Barcelona, and Palma di Mallorca. Shortly after 1300 Venetian ships would sail past the Strait of Gibraltar north to England and Flanders.

Certain established markets became more precarious for Venetian merchants during the thirteenth century. Palestine was convulsed with wars between the Franks, and by mid-century the hinterland felt the pressure of the advancing Mongols.

The Genoese and the Greeks repeatedly challenged the Venetian commercial monopoly of the eastern seas. Open warfare commenced with the devastating War of St. Sabas in Palestine, which ended in 1258 with the Genoese expulsion from Acre. Then Genoa turned to Michael VIII Palaeologus, who was consolidating his holdings in Europe and Asia. This Greek emperor of Nicaea allied with Genoa in the Treaty of Nymphacum, took Constantinople from the Latins in 1261, and expelled the Venetians. Genoa, replacing Venice in Constantinople, established a permanent commercial colony at Pera, across the Golden Horn. Although Michael VIII restored Venetian commercial privileges in 1268 and restored the Venetian quarter in Constantinople in 1277, his reconquest had effectively destroyed the Venetian trade monopoly in Constantinople.

Greeks and Genoese also challenged the large and strategic Venetian islands of Negroponte and Crete. War was endemic on Negroponte in the last half of the century when Licario, supported by the Palaeologoi and the Genoese, led uprisings against the Lombard terriers supported by the Venetians.184 On Crete, Alexius Callerges, similarly, led revolts against Venice. On both islands, however, the Venetians finally prevailed.

The century closed with Venice’s Second Genoese War, although the two cities had been encouraged to make a truce in 1270 by the French king, Louis IX, in preparation for his last crusade. Hostilities between Venice and Genoa began again in 1294 and involved the Palaeologoi the next year, when the Venetian-Byzantine treaties expired. Venice made peace with Genoa in 1299 only after suffering defeat at the disastrous battle of Curzola. Peace was not renewed with Byzantium until the winter of 1302–1303.

In response to these challenges, Venice sought alternate markets in Anatolia, in Greek, Moslem, and Armenian lands. By 1300 Ayas in Cilician Armenia and Alexandria in Egypt had become the foreign ports most often frequented by Venetian merchants.

Despite the failure of Venetian attempts at commercial monopoly of the eastern Mediterranean and Aegean after the fall of the Latin empire, Venetian commercial power and wealth probably grew throughout the century, though precise documentation is not possible. There are, however, a number of Genoese notarial cartularies, largely unpublished, from which Vsevolod Slesarev has drawn figures illustrating the growth of Genoese overseas trade in the thirteenth century.

"The minutes of a single notary out of some twenty-nine active in Genoa... indicate a flurry of investment to Ultramar (Syria and Palestine) between August 21 and September 24, 1191. The value of goods and cash destined for the Levant amounted to 8,370 Genoese pounds, which suggests [an annual] total of perhaps 80,000 pounds, a staggering sum for that time, partly explainable by the complete absence of investments [in trade with] Alexandria. Seven years later, according to a very fragmentary source, two ships left Genoa for Ultramar and four for Alexandria, indicating thus a return to peacetime commerce." After the Fourth Crusade and the growth of Venetian colonies in Romania, the Genoese trade continued to increase. "Occasional references to customs dues ad valorem and the amounts for which they were farmed permit us to calculate the overall growth of the trade. In 1214 the minimum of anticipated turnover, [both] export from and import to Genoa, amounts to 350,520 Genoese pounds; in 1274 to 720,000; and in 1341 to 1,403,400. The share of Ultramar in these sums cannot be ascertained. If a routine survey of many unpublished notarial cartularies can be regarded as evidence, one would

---

185 Luzzatto, Storia economica di Venezia, pp. 45–47.
186 Unable to bring his study of Genoa to completion, the late Vsevolod Slesarev urged me to add his conclusions to this chapter. The following comments on Genoese commerce during the crusades are taken from his unfinished study.
have to concede that of all areas to which the Genoese ships sailed, Syria was able to draw the biggest clusters of investments. For example, between September 17 and 27, 1227, a single notary registered commercial ventures to Ultramare to the impressive total of 21,347 Genoese pounds. Such figures, however, should be viewed with caution, for, as it seems, the preceding year was singularly unfavorable to overseas trade. Another factor... was the repeated prohibitions of trade with Alexandria. Judging by the... notaries Giovanni di Guilberto and Lanfranco, the Genoese refrained from trading with Egypt in 1205, 1216, and 1226.90

In the case of Venice, evidence for the extension and growth of Venetian commerce in the thirteenth century can be found in the wider circulation of Venetian coinage. Venice embarked upon the Fourth Crusade with a monetary system based on silver, which endured until 1282. The grosso, its strongest and most widely recognized coin, appeared in 1194 early in the reign of doge Enrico Dandolo. It maintained the same weight and fineness until 1379. Merchants used these coins for payments of large sums at home and abroad. The coin for petty transactions was the denaro or piccolo, smaller in size and much less pure silver than the grosso. A quarter denaro (first struck to pay shipyard workers for the Fourth Crusade) and a half denaro also circulated. The grosso and piccolo circulated at a ratio of 1:26, but by 1290 the ratio had increased to 1:32. For the measurement of sums and the calculation of accounts, Venetian merchants used two monies of account, the lira di piccoli, which equaled 240 piccoli, and the lira di grossi, which equaled 240 grossi. Because gold coins were often demanded in the Levantine trade, the Byzantine gold coin, the hyperperon, continued in use, although it no longer was issued in quantity by the mints of Constantinople and rival hyperperi were struck by the Greek and Latin successor states in the Aegean. Venetian grossi and silver bullion were exported to the east because the Venetians seem to have needed to supplement their export of western commodities with an export of coinage and bullion. The value of Levantine products brought west to Venice seems to have exceeded that of the European commodities shipped east. 188 Probably the good Venetian silver grosso was more in demand in the eastern Mediterranean because men recognized its constant silver content and the commercial strength of Venice behind it. Historians have long assumed that the Venetian grosso became the principal silver coin of the eastern Medi-

tinean in the thirteenth century, which presupposes a tremendous production and export of Venetian silver coin in this century.

The Venetians did not need a gold coin yet, but by 1252 Genoa and Florence began to mint gold coins. The genovino and the florin were struck at the same weight and fineness as the old good standard full-weight Byzantine hyperperon. Probably the growing scarcity of good hyperperon and the increased availability of gold bullion brought about this action. Venice did not take this step for another generation. Apparently its output of silver grossi, fueled by increasing imports of silver bullion from Germany and Hungary, and the use of Levantine gold hyperperon, satisfied its needs. The restored Palaeologi in Constantinople struck a silver coin to rival the grosso but containing less silver. At this challenge Venice in 1282 struck its first gold ducat, later known as zecchino. It had the same weight and fineness as the florin, the genovino, and the old good full-weight hyperperon.

Venice minted this gold coin for five hundred years, with only two tiny debasements in the sixteenth century. Venice did not strike as many gold ducats in the thirteenth century as in later centuries. It was not recognized or used nearly so extensively in the eastern trade at this time as were the Venetian silver grosso or the Florentine gold florin, both of which were accepted from one end of the Mediterranean to the other in 1300.

In addition to the spread and acceptance of Venetian coin throughout the Mediterranean, the thirteenth century also gives evidence of Venice’s position as chief creditor of the Latin east. Already, in 1124, Venice had financed the patriarch of Jerusalem and the Latin knights at the siege of Tyre, and Venetian credit, of course, also financed the Fourth Crusade. The division of the spoils in Constantinople as well as the Treaty of Partition were repayment to Venice for its financial and naval assistance. Individual Venetians during the Latin empire financed impecunious rulers. For example, the Ghisi lent money both to the king of Hungary and to the Venetian duke of Naxos. Only the Venetians could assemble the vast sums necessary to finance the later Latin emperors in Constantinople. In 1238 they advanced 13,134 gold hyperperon to the Frankish barons in Constantinople in return for the pledge of the Crown of Thorns, which was later redeemed by Louis IX of France. Again, between 1248 and 1258, the Ferro brothers, Venetian merchants in Constantinople, advanced a huge sum of money to the last Latin emperor, Baldwin II, in security for which he gave the Venetians the custody of his only son and heir, Philip.

189 For example, see Morezzo della Rocca and Lombardo, Document, 1, no 462
Philip's mother, the empress Mary of Brienne, finally received the money to redeem her son from Alfonso X of Castile, and the young man was free by 1261.\footnote{Wolff, "Mortgage and Redemption of an Emperor's Son," pp. 45-84} These examples suggest that the Venetians in these decades possessed the greatest financial resources in the eastern Mediterranean.

Money is one Venetian commodity which circulated more widely and in greater quantities in the thirteenth century, and documents suggest other commodities which similarly increased in thirteenth-century Venetian commerce. More references appear to the production and export of agricultural products from Venetian colonies in this century than survive from earlier centuries. Grain, olive oil, wine, and cheese came from Crete, wine from the Moreote ports of Corfu and Modon, grain and olive oil from Negroponte. Tyre sent cotton, sugar, dyestuffs, and glass. At the end of the century the Crimea sent wheat, as well as furs and slaves. Venetian shipping seems to have completely supplanted the earlier Greek intercoastal trade in the Aegean. The peoples in the eastern Mediterranean demanded more Italian and Flemish textiles, and European merchants brought them to Venice by way of the river systems of north Italy or the Alpine passes. The Venetians then exported more of these textiles to the east. These commodities and probably others added to the volume of earlier Venetian trade and supplemented the luxury goods from the east and the raw materials from Europe which had been the basis of twelfth-century trade and which were discussed earlier.

Technological changes in shipping also gave the Venetians greater ability to expand their seaborne commerce in the thirteenth century. These changes have been called the nautical and commercial revolution.\footnote{Lane, Venice, a Maritime Republic, pp. 188-152} Portolani, early marine charts with drawings of land forms, became more common and the compass came into regular use. New types of vessels appeared. Triremes began to replace biremes, heralding the fourteenth-century development of the great galleys with their greater capacity and crews. Soon after 1300 the great round sailing ships of the Mediterranean were also transformed. During the thirteenth century trading voyages from Italy to the Levant took on a regular rhythm. Previously the Venetian voyages to Syria had probably not been regularly scheduled, although armed convoys regularly sailed the Adriatic in the twelfth century. The Venetian muda system seems to have been organized about 1230. Then Venetian convoys
began to travel from Venice to Constantinople, to Cyprus-Armenia-
Syria, and to Alexandria. According to the Venetian maritime stat-
utes of 1233, Venetian vessels in the spring *muda*, which had carried
pilgrims to the Levant, were advised to leave Syria for the return voy-
age on May 8; vessels in the fall *muda* had to depart for Venice on
October 8. Venetian vessels setting out from Venice for voyages on
the summer *muda* to Cape Malea on the Morea had to prepare to
leave Venice by mid-August.\textsuperscript{192}

Similarly, in the early thirteenth century the Genoese changed their
sailing schedule. Earlier the Genoese dispatched their fleets to the
Levant in late September and early October. In 1205, however, the
vessels left Genoa shortly after May 20. This was probably dictated
by the severe losses of ships in their home port on October 11, 1204,
just before their departure for Ultramar, Ceuta, and other markets.
“A spring *muda* was certainly foreshadowed, and the Genoese were
about to bring their overseas and overland trade with the fairs of
Champagne into better harmony.”\textsuperscript{193}

The growth of Venetian commerce and wealth was paralleled by the
growth of Venetian population.\textsuperscript{194} The city of Venice itself welcomed
newcomers. In the thirteenth century they arrived from the Italian
mainland nearby, from Treviso, Padua, Ferrara, Verona, Vicenza, and
Istria. Men also immigrated to Venice from other regions of northern
Italy, especially from Milan, Florence, and Lucca and their environs.
The men whom the Venetians called Germans came from Austria,
Germany, Bohemia, and Hungary. In the thirteenth century they were
organized as a German colony in Venice in the *Fondaco dei Tedeschi*.
Seafaring men also came to Venice from the Adriatic coasts of Apulia
and Dalmatia. Jews, Greeks, and Franks also appear as permanent
residents. This varying multitude, drawn to Venice by the economic
opportunity of the great port city, was assimilated into the Venetian
population. Some even gained Venetian citizenship. The thirteenth-
century records show no attempt to limit immigration into Venice,
nor to deny these men the rights of Venetian citizenship after a certain
term of residence.

Not only did foreigners come into Venice, but the Venetians them-
selves left Venice to take up residence in the east. Every Venetian col-

“Navigazione di linee e navigazione libera,” *Studi di storia*, p. 54, Luce, “Flotte e Fiere,”
*Venice and History*, pp. 128–129; *Collezione marittima veneziana*, ed. Prodel and Saccorotti,
pp. 69–70, 74–75.

\textsuperscript{193} Messare, see above, note 126.

\textsuperscript{194} Luazzato, *Storia economica di Venezia*, pp. 38–48, 58–61
ony records the presence of resident Italians who maintained their Venetian citizenship and yet lived with wives and children in one of the far-flung outposts of the Venetian colonial empire. After years or even generations in residence in an overseas colony, these citizens could return to the home city and be accepted as Venetians. Some indigenous inhabitants of the Venetian overseas colonies also could claim Venetian citizenship in certain cases. To be a Venetian entitled one to the protection of the Republic at home and abroad, and also to the special commercial privileges of Venice.

It has been suggested that the number of inhabitants in the city of Venice in 1300 was about 100,000, which would place Venice among the three largest cities of western Europe, the others being Paris and Naples. The total number of people who called themselves Venetians must have been much greater, if one includes the Venetian residents of all the seaports and islands of the Mediterranean. The Venetians could also draw from an even greater manpower pool to fill their war fleets, since subject and allied cities were expected to contribute ships and men.

Alongside the Venetian growth in numbers and wealth during the years of colonial expansion after the Fourth Crusade, the rich merchant princes of Venice continued to strengthen the Venetian government. These wealthy old noble families had controlled the Venetian state since they had put down the insurrection in 1171 and chosen the business men doges of the late twelfth century. The thirteenth-century Venetian governmental regulations were not nearly so restrictive as the rules of later centuries. Since only Venetians could engage in the profitable overseas trade, and since Venice, unlike Florence, did not organize guilds for overseas commerce, navigation, and banking, these occupations were scarcely restricted until the end of the thirteenth century. Foreign businessmen in Venice were much more closely regulated. The artisans of Venice, the small shopkeepers, and the service professions were organized into guilds with written statutes, corporate identity, and ceremonial distinction. The reign of doge Lorenzo Tiepolo (1268–1275) produced the first significant number of these guild statutes. The councils and chief magistrates of the city bad their functions and membership more narrowly defined, while the number of public offices proliferated.

The oligarchy further limited the doge with the rewriting of each ducale oath of office. They attempted to limit factional strife by de-

veloping a complex system for ducal elections and by defining the membership in the Great Council. The Great Council in this century became the chief Venetian legislative body and also the body which elected men to the growing number of public offices. The Great Council defined and enlarged itself in 1297; this was the "closing of the Great Council" (Serrata del Maggior Consiglio). These domestic responses to external change were recorded in the laws of Venice, and in the records of its councils and magistrates. These public records survive from the thirteenth century, after the fire in the Venetian public archives of 1223. Written laws and governmental regulations assisted the oligarchy to maintain its control of Venice.

Throughout these centuries Venice had vigorously expanded its trade, its colonies, its population, and its wealth. In the twelfth century Venetian businessmen had exercised their privileges in the Byzantine empire, lived under their own laws in the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem, and sent trading voyages to Moslem Egypt. After the Fourth Crusade, Venetians had greater rights in Romania and ruled many islands of the Aegean. In the thirteenth century Venice obtained commercial privileges in Egypt, Tunis, Cilician Armenia, Konya, and the Black Sea coasts. During these crusading centuries, Venice became in fact the "queen of the Adriatic" and the ruler of the richest commercial empire in the Mediterranean.
The organized movement to evangelize oriental peoples which had its origins in the early thirteenth century opened a new period in the missionary history of the church. In earlier centuries missionaries had penetrated the northern and eastern areas of Europe. More recently Peter the Venerable had suggested a missionary approach to the Moslems of Spain, and the establishment of the crusader states early in the twelfth century had made possible occasional rapprochements with oriental Christians. But there had been no sustained effort to convert to Christianity Moslems or other non-Christians of the Near or Far East.

This chapter is concerned with western missions to the Orient during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. Papal relations with the Byzantine church have been excluded as have missions to North Africa.

There are a few important collections of sources for mission history. BOE is a compilation of selections with biographical comment by the editor. It also contains considerable material relevant to Dominicus Johannes. The standard Latin editor of the sources for the Central Asia and China journeys and missions of the Franciscans is Augustinus van den Wyngaert, O.F.M., Sineque franciscana, I, sermones et relationses Fratrum Johannem sacros XIII et XIV (Quaracchi, 1829). English translations of some of these can also be found in the publications of the Hakluyt Society, especially Henry Yule, Cathay and the Way Thither, revised by Henri Cordier (4 vols., London, 1925-1930), and the editor of John of Plano Carpini and William of Rubruck by Charles R. Beasley and William W. Rockhill (1908-1903). Arthur C. Minde, Christians in China before 1390 (London, 1930), includes translations of a number of significant selections. See also Manuel Komroff, ed., Contemporaries of Marco Polo (New York, 1928), and Christopher Dawson, ed., The Mongol Mission (New York, 1953), each containing extensive translations of sources.

Other primary sources for the history of medieval missions are widely scattered throughout the chronicles, letters, tracts, and documents of the mendicant orders, a few of which have been individually edited or translated, the chronicles and other literature of the crusade period, western and oriental, and the registry of papal correspondence. Relevant papal documents can be found in Bullarium Franciscanum, ed. Johannes H. Scharfen (Rome, 1739 ff., cited.
Effective promotion of oriental missions had to await the appearance of that *ver catholiceus et totius apostoliceus*, Francis of Assisi, and his contemporary Dominic Guzmán. The impact of these two men and their followers on the civilization of Europe is too well known to require elaboration here, but no discussion of thirteenth-century missions can fail to emphasize two points. First, the type of organization adopted by the Franciscans and Dominicans was admirably suited to the furthering of distant ventures. Second, as the friars injected into the religious life of western Europe a new spirit and vitality, so they gave to a movement as old as Christianity, though languishing in the central Middle Ages, a new élan and direction.

This chapter is not, however, merely an account of missionaries traveling to distant lands, for the history of medieval missions to the Orient must be viewed in relation to a number of contemporary developments. One favorable factor was the remarkable growth of European-Asian commerce. In many instances the *fondachi* of the Italian merchants whose spiritual needs the friars served were the bases for missions either in the immediate area or beyond. Paradoxically, the merchants could also be a hindrance to religious propaganda, for there were Italians who engaged in the slave trade and continually flouted papal prohibitions against trade with Moslems.

In certain other respects the period was not propitious for missionary undertakings. European conditions throughout the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries were far from stable, and the western church faced a series of crises. The popes who were to give important direc-
tion to the missions were deeply involved in European political struggles. Heresy too was a major preoccupation.

Asiatic developments were equally disturbing. As previous chapters have indicated, the Moslems of Egypt, Syria, and Persia were divided politically in the mid-thirteenth century and hence not disposed to wage a jihad against the crusader states. Yet Islam as a faith retained considerable vitality. Moreover, the temporary Christian occupation of Jerusalem (1229–1244), made possible by Frederick II’s treaty with al-Kamil, was followed later in the century by the northward advance of the Mamluks and the eventual loss of the missionary bases in the crusader states.

After their first terrifying incursions into eastern Europe in the first half of the thirteenth century and their subsequent withdrawal and concentration in the Near and Far East, the Mongols occasionally permitted visits and even residence by the friars. This was especially true of those Mongols who had pushed southward and overrun the Baghdad caliphate in 1258. The il-khanate of Persia which they established was halted in its westward advance and continually thereafter threatened by the Mamluks of Egypt. More often than not the apparently receptive attitude of the Mongols was politically motivated, though this was rarely understood. It is not surprising that the west remained bewildered by Mongol diplomacy.4

The conversion to Catholicism of oriental Christians, both Orthodox and heretical, was one of the major objectives of the missionary friars. These peoples constituted a considerable proportion of the pop-

---


The following general works may also be cited. Azur S. Aitya, _A History of Eastern Christi-


1. On the Mongols and the crusaders see also Claude Cahen, “The Mongols and the Near East,” in volume II of the present work, chapter XXI; and Denis Sauron, “The Mongols and Western Europe,” _ibid.,_ volume III, chapter XV.
ulation of the coastal cities of the Levant, the kingdoms of Georgia and Cilician Armenia, the turbulent areas of greater Armenia, and the vast reaches of the Mongol domains. The Georgians were traditionally Orthodox, as were the Greeks of Antioch and northern Syria and the Melkites farther south. But the Armenians were predominantly Monophysite, as were most of the Christians of Syria, Egypt, and Ethiopia. Nestorians were few in numbers, but often influential in Persia and regions farther east.

Among certain sectors of oriental Christianity there appeared at this period a disposition to some sort of union with the west. The motives, however, were rarely purely religious. Oriental Christians commonly enjoyed reasonable freedom under Moslem rule, and cultural and linguistic ties prompted rapport with their Moslem masters rather than rapprochement with the west. Before the major Mongol incursions into the Near East shortly after the middle of the century, such pro-western leanings as can be discerned seem to have resulted, in part at least, from rivalries among the oriental Christians themselves. Accustomed to seeking support from Moslem rulers, they tended to shift their policies with the diplomatic vicissitudes of the Moslem states. After the middle of the century, as the Mongol menace increased, those earliest endangered often displayed pro-western sympathies, though this was far from being a consistent attitude. Accordingly, although oriental Christians were often in a position to act as intermediaries between the western church and the worlds of Islam and Tartary, they too were caught in the confusion of local politics.

Inevitably, therefore, missions tended to become involved with diplomacy, and official Europe continued to think, however vainly, in terms of the crusade or of the conversion of important rulers and dignitaries. Most missionaries, particularly at the outset, shared the hopes, fears, and illusions of their time. But they were to learn much and to add significantly to western Europe's knowledge of Asian peoples, this is by no means the least important of their achievements.

EARLY MISSIONARY ORGANIZATION

Francis of Assisi was the first to state clearly the ideal of missions to Moslems, and it is a striking coincidence that this occurred precisely at the time of the ill-fated Fifth Crusade. As early as 1217 it had been decided at the first general chapter of the order, held at

---

2 On oriental Christianity during this period see Azny, *A History of Eastern Christianity*
Assisi, that Elias of Cortona should be sent to Syria, where in 1218 he laid the foundations for a Franciscan overseas province ("Ultramarine"). After earlier failures to reach the Holy Land and Spain Francis himself journeyed to the Orient in 1219 accompanied by Peter de' Cattani, and was accorded an interview with the Egyptian sultan al-Kāmil. Under a safe conduct granted by the sultan he later visited Syria, and presumably the holy places in Palestine, and returned to Italy with Elias.³

In 1221 the so-called "First" Franciscan rule specifically included as an objective the conversion of "Saracens and other unbelievers." To enter upon this task the prospective missionary had to seek the permission of the provincial minister, who was strictly enjoined to grant this only to those he deemed suitable. A much shorter version of the mission chapter, shorn of the scriptural citations which had characterized the first, was included in the official Regula secunda of 1223.

During the course of the thirteenth century Franciscan ministers-general, Bonaventura and others, elaborated on the nature of the mission undertaking and the qualities a missionary should possess. Such statements, though by no means uniform in emphasis, form a sort of commentary on the mission chapters in the rule. The missionary's life is viewed, especially in the earlier writings, as one of sacrifice as a witness for Christ by word and example, with martyrdom, the crowning achievement and supreme evidence of religious devotion, always a possibility. In short, the early Franciscan missionary effort was highly idealistic. There was as yet no systematic preparation and no adequate knowledge of the areas to be evangelized.⁴

To some extent such inadequacies were remedied by the establishment of permanent convents in the east. Doubtless profiting from such favorable political factors as the temporary truce (1229-1244) which permitted Latin occupation of Jerusalem, the overseas province of the Franciscans prospered, with convents at Acre, Antioch, and Tripoli. It is possible that a cloister was founded early at Jerusalem. In the course of time, probably before 1263, the province of "Terra Sancta" came to be separate from another early establishment, the province of Greece ("Romania"). With the founding of these convents the first phase of Franciscan missions with its naive fervor came to an end. Convents served the needs of resident Latin Christians,

³ For a discussion of Francis's mission purposes and his journey to Egypt see Koncaglia, I Francescani in Oriente, pp 13-17, 23-26; van der Vat, Der Aufstieg, pp 1-25, 39-59, 244-253, and volume II of the present work, pp 370 (bibliographical notes), 415-416
⁴ On Franciscan missionary policies and ideals see Simone, Il Metodo, pp 15-38
but they also made possible a more systematic approach to missions. Very possibly, too, the influence of contemporary Dominican establishments was an important factor, especially in the greater emphasis on training preachers.

Dominicans had from their foundation been dedicated to preaching, and Dominic, despite his preoccupation with Albigensian heretics in Languedoc, had given much thought to the possibility of missions to the east. Successive Dominican masters-general, notably Jordan of Saxony, Raymond of Peñafort, and Humbert of Romans, were also concerned about promoting missions, and their efforts were seconded by general and provincial chapters. These efforts, however, seem to have been largely designed to serve the areas of Spain and North Africa; preparation directed specifically toward the east is less easily traced. But like the Minontes, the Friars-Preachers established convents in the east. A Dominican province of the Holy Land was independent some time after 1228 and included cloisters at Acre and Tripoli.3 There was a Dominican community in Jerusalem during the period of truce with the Moslems of Egypt.

During the early decades of the thirteenth century there was also noticeable a more formal direction of missionary activity by Rome. Papal interest is most clearly manifest in the many letters sent to the authorities of the two orders and to prospective missionaries. Such letters are general in nature, but they echo the policies stated in the Franciscan rule that only suitable candidates he accepted and that permission be given by the provincial ministers. As time went on there is more emphasis on adequate religious training. Further, the popes also sent messages to oriental rulers requesting protection for the friars or urging that the recipient embrace the Christian faith.

The first papal letters to missionaries were little more than lists of instructions. Gradually such documents were expanded into detailed directives in which all peoples the missionaries might be expected to encounter and all faculties necessary in any possible missionary situation were specifically enumerated. Toward the middle of the thirteenth century a formula was evolved which combined the faculties for work among Moslems, other non-Christians, and oriental Christians. This new formula first appeared in Gregory IX’s bull Cum hora undecima, on February 15, 1235, as instructions to the Dominican William of Montferrat. It appeared again in the bulls issued by Innocent IV in 1245 to the first envoys to the Mongols. By about

3 The establishments of the mendicant foundations in Syria are discussed in van der Vat, Die Anfänge, pp 60-87, Roncaglia, I Francescani in Oriente, pp 29 ff., Altmann, Die Dominikanermissionen, pp 1-9, chap 26.
1253 it had become a stereotyped formula of mission instructions. Though not the only form of mission letter used, the Cum hora undecima was often repeated in subsequent decades.6

The bull first enumerates the peoples whom the friars were expected to visit. Since the curia was not yet well informed regarding orientals, these are lumped together in a list which is comprehensive religiously, ethnically, and geographically, but is otherwise rather indiscriminate and fails to distinguish clearly between the diverse eastern religious groups. The ecclesiastical directives are much clearer. The friars were permitted to baptize converts, confer minor orders, absolve from excommunication, and reinstall separated clergy who desired to return to the Catholic church. They were also permitted to dispense the latter from certain irregularities (defect of birth, age, jurisdiction, and so forth) in the reception of orders, salva disciplina ordinis. Even those who contracted matrimony after the reception of orders were not to be disturbed. All who returned to the unity of the Catholic faith were to be permitted to live among their own people and enjoy clerical privileges provided they publicly proclaimed their obedience to the Apostolic See. The friars were also permitted to judge matrimonial cases and testify situations with ecclesiastical censure if necessary. There were also various instructions regarding the proper celebration of all offices and sacraments, the reception of Holy Orders and similar matters. Portable altars were allowed, and priests among the friars might bless them in cases where Catholic bishops were unavailable. Finally, the friars were to do whatever seemed necessary to the successful furtherance of their mission.

The phraseology of the bull indicates that considerable care was taken in formulating the faculties necessary for reconciling separated Christians. This complicated problem was being squarely faced by the western church for the first time. Until then oriental Christians had, with one or two exceptions, been in direct contact with Byzantium, not Rome. Therefore, though the curia was not well informed about Asiatic peoples, it was evidently attempting in systematic fashion to foresee all contingencies of order, jurisdiction, and ecclesiastical discipline which the missionary friars might face. Moreover, as the contents of Cum hora undecima indicate and as further examina-

6 Examples of these early mission bulls are cited and discussed fully in van der Vat, Die Anfänge, pp. 137–146, 186–189. See also Altner, Die Dalmatikermissionen, pp. 44–49, 73–74, Troll, "Die China mission," pp. 22–24. The bull of February 15, 1235, can be found in BOP 1, 73. For the bull of 1245 see below, notes 27–29. An example of a typical later bull (1253) is in BOP 1, 237. For a discussion of papal mission policies see Simonut, H Metoda, pp. 39–67.
tion of papal policy will reveal, Rome in the mid-thirteenth century was gradually acquiring some flexibility in its attitude toward oriental liturgies and usages. Nevertheless, although the lawyer-popes of that age were willing to tolerate differences in language and rite, they required strict adherence to precise formulas in the administration of sacraments and full acceptance of Roman primacy. Moreover, occasional letters urging adherence to Roman usages indicate that the curial attitude was not without hesitations and inconsistencies. Missionaries and missionary theorists were less hesitant.

Since the baptizing of non-Christians raised few questions of jurisdiction or order, the apostolate among Moslems is less emphasized in these papal letters. And although we must beware of judging policies merely by the number of words allotted in papal bulls to each subject, one complicated, the other comparatively simple, it does appear that the interest of the Holy See in the separated Christians predominated over its solicitude for the Moslem missions. The reasons for this will appear when we examine the missions themselves.

**THIRTEENTH-CENTURY MISSIONS TO MOSLEMS**

The story of missions to Moslems in the thirteenth century includes examples of dedication and heroism, but is otherwise one of frustration and disappointment. In the first place, the information available to westerners about Islam was insufficient and often inaccurate, and much of it came from Spain. Various mistaken notions persisted into the thirteenth century. It was generally held, for example, that Islam was a heresy, and it was also believed to be on the point of collapse. Towards the end of the century such optimistic views and at least some of the ignorance had been dispelled. But though the attitude of the adherents of each faith to the followers of the other did not preclude many demonstrations of mutual respect, no real understanding of the opposing religious beliefs was reached by either side.

The missionary experiences of the first friars, in North Africa as well as in the east, reveal the inadequacies of their preparation and the extreme difficulties they faced. Presumably they spoke through interpreters, since few if any knew the native tongues at that period. Audiences were apparently not unsympathetic at first and the rel-

---

gious dedication evident in the friars’ lives made a deep impression. But the friars seem all too often to have spoiled the favorable atmosphere by proceeding immediately to a denunciation of the Islamic religion. Thus they soon discovered that an initial obstacle confronting every Christian missionary to Moslem lands was the legal prohibition of any anti-Moslem propaganda. This was widely supported by public opinion, and any disparagement of Mohammed would invariably place the speaker in danger. Moreover, apostasy from Islam was legally punishable by death. In short, conditions which made Christian instruction feasible could rarely be found except in areas such as the crusaders’ states where Moslems lived under Christian rule.

It is not, therefore, surprising that while few missionaries or missionary theorists would have defended the propriety of forcing individuals to accept the Christian faith, almost without exception all agreed that the conquest of a territory was justifiable as a means of promoting missions or, at least, of preventing “infidels” from injuring the faith of Christians. In short, toward the end of the thirteenth century the earlier optimism was turned by actual missionary experience, as well as by Islam’s advances in the whole Near East, into a general attitude of pessimism. To most men the crusade still seemed a more effective way of dealing with the Moslem problem than missions. Neither point of view was conducive to that sympathetic understanding requisite to true missionary undertaking.

Records of actual missionary efforts on the part of Franciscan or Dominican friars during the first half of the thirteenth century are extremely scanty. James of Vitry, bishop of Acre, describes how Moslems cordially received the Franciscans, even giving them provisions, and willingly listened to them until they began to deconsecrate Mohammed. At that point, he adds, they were set upon and driven out of town, and doubtless would have been killed but for the “miraculous protection of God.” Where these incidents took place the bishop does not say; perhaps in the crusaders’ territory and possibly even before Francis’s own visit to the Levant.

Somewhat later, papal letters add some, though still very limited, information. Moreover, it must be remembered that papal policy had manifold objectives. In fact, certain missionary undertakings were launched by the Holy See in connection with letters to oriental rulers which not only bespoke conversion to Christianity and a favorable reception for the friars who were being sent, but also attempted to

---

9 Van der Valle, Der Anfänge, pp. 56-57; Roncallia, I Francescani in Oriente, p. 84, Simotut, H Metodio, pp. 87-103
promote political relations. Such, for example, appears to have been the purpose of Gregory IX's letters of 1233. At a time when the oriental world, Moslem and Christian alike, was facing new dangers resulting from the depredations of the Khwarizmian Turks and especially from the early southward drives of the Mongols, the pope addressed the rulers of Damascus, Aleppo, and Konya and the caliph at Baghdad. In the same months the pope also directed several bulls to Franciscan friars traveling or resident in the Orient, conceding faculties not only for the care of the souls of Latin Christians, but also for baptizing non-Christians and for reconciling separated Christians. Existing good relations with Moslem rulers evidently permitted the friars to enter and live in Moslem territory. Accordingly, although precise information is lacking, the possibility of missionary activity cannot be ruled out.

Papal bulls similar to those directed to Franciscans seem to indicate that Dominican friars were also working among Moslems at this time. Somewhat more specific, but still indefinite as to place, is a statement in the report of the Dominican provincial of the Holy Land, friar Philip, in 1237 that several of his brethren had studied Arabic and were preaching in that tongue. These friars could, of course, have been preaching to Arabic-speaking Christians. Indeed, the context so implies. But again there is at least the possibility of an apostolate among Moslems. Moreover, in a bull of March 4, 1238, Gregory IX insisted that the conversion of the Infidel was no less acceptable to God than opposing him with arms—a striking illustration of the contemporary attitude—and granted both Dominican and Franciscan friars the customary crusaders' indulgence. Subsequent papal bulls which conceded faculties for the reception of Moslems (1238, 1239, 1244) also indicate at least the possibility of missionary activity.

In 1245, the year following the Khwarizmian sack of Jerusalem which ended the peace of 1229, and in the same months in which he was inaugurating the Mongol missions, Innocent IV also dispatched letters to various Moslem rulers in Syria and Egypt. Although in this case the original papal letters are not extant, some indication of the pope's purposes can be ascertained from the replies dated 1245-1246, which found their way into the papal registers. Communications were received from as-Sâliḥ Ismā'īl, formerly of Damascus, then ruling Baalbek and the Hauran, from al-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm of Homs, who answered in the name of the sultan of Egypt as well as for himself.
from as-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, the sultan of Egypt, and from an-Nāṣir Dā'ūd, the prince of Kerak, or possibly an Egyptian military commander in southern Palestine.11

These replies reveal little regarding missionary activity. The Moslem rulers were courteous and disposed to grant safe conduct to friars, presumably for the religious needs of resident Latin Christians. As before, therefore, although the possibility of missions cannot be ruled out, there is no positive evidence thereof. Moreover, one letter which complained that the friars’ ignorance of Arabic precluded fruitful conversations indicates that, despite friar Philip’s report of progress in language study, much remained to be done in the way of missionary preparation.

Among the missionaries to Moslems in the late thirteenth century two stand out, William of Tripoli and Ricoldo of Monte Croce, both Dominicans. William of Tripoli was born in the east of Christian parents. He had acquired some familiarity with Arabic and an unusually extensive knowledge of the Moslem religion. According to his own account he baptized more than a thousand Saracens. It seems likely that he carried on his work within the crusader states, for only there could he have been able to preach without hindrance. Doubtless many of his converts were captives or slaves. He was, however, at one time an emissary to al-Manṣūr Muḥammad, the ruler of Hamah, and in 1271 he accompanied the Polo brothers as far as Cilicia.

In the same year he dedicated a treatise which he later reedited (1273), the De statu Saracenorum et de Mahometae pseudopropheta

11 There are six documents in all, a letter from the former ruler of Damascus, dated at Damascus (November 30, 1245), a letter from the ruler of Homs (December 30, 1245), two safe-conducts given at Homs (December 1245), a letter from the prince of Kerak (August 6-35, 1246), and one of the same date from Egypt (or from a military commander in Palestine). Perhaps because they all had to be translated by a cardinal, according to Mathew Paris, Chronicus majus., ed. Henry B. Lea (Rolls Series, 57), IV, 566 ff., they were all filed together with five letters from oriental priests under the third and fourth years of Innocent IV’s pontificate (June 1245–June 1247). SOF, II, 327 ff. There has been considerable discussion of these letters, the following are now the most important studies: Alxand, Die Dominikanermissionen, pp. 74–81; Peliot, “Les Mongoles et la papauté,” ROC, XXIV (1924), 225 ff.; XXVIII (1931–1932), 6 ff.; Eugène Tisserant, “La Légation en Orient du Franciscain, Dominique d’Aragon (1245–47),” ROC, XXIV (1924), 346–350, and correspondence with Peliot, ibid., XXVIII (1931–1932), 3, van der Vat, Die Anfänge, pp. 155–157, 180–194. See also Rennhold Rohricht, “Zur Korespondenz der Päpste mit dem Sultanen und Mongolenkaiser des Morgenländes im Zeitalter des Kreuzzuges,” Theologische Studien und Kritiken, LXXIX (1891), 357–369.

In view of their previous activities there is a strong presumption in favor of the Minorites as the papal envoys. But the phrase “Fratres Franciscanus” in two of the letters indicates that Dominicans were also sent. It is probable that one of the letter, perhaps the principal one, was Andrew of Longmann.

et eorum lege et fide, to the papal legate in the east, Tebaido Visconti, the future Gregory X. This work, which he tells us he based on Arabic texts, contains an account of the career of Mohammed and the expansion of Islam and an analysis of the Islamic religion. In its general tone it differs markedly from most Christian writing on Islam of the period. Probably because his contacts with Moslems were within the protected areas of the Latin east he remained optimistic. He did not compose a crusade tract; rather his purpose was to understand and explain. For William seems to have felt that many Moslems were not far from Christian fundamentals and that more converts might be made once they understood that "the whole and perfect faith is contained in the teaching of Christ. . . . And so through the pure word of God, without philosophical arguments, without the arms of soldiers, as simple sheep they seek the baptism of Christ and cross over into the sheepfold of God." 12

Some years later Ricoldo of Monte Croce, already an accomplished missionary with some knowledge of Greek, Hebrew, and Syriac, commenced what proved to be a remarkable journey into the Asiatic hinterland. 13 As will be clear later, his most successful work was with oriental Christians. He also, however, made some significant contacts with Moslems. He left Acre, probably in March 1289, and traveled through Cilician Armenia and Konya. Not far from Sivas (Sebastia), where Genoese had established themselves and both Dominicans and Franciscans maintained missions, he entered country under Mongol rule. At Tabriz, then the capital of the Persian il-khanate and an important Jacobite center, he spent six months preaching through an interpreter since he had not yet mastered Arabic. Venetians and Genoese had established themselves there, and Franciscans and Dominicans were using a church in common. From Tabriz Ricoldo journeyed

12. On William of Tripoli, in addition to Southern, Western Views of Islam, pp 62-63, and Daniel, Islam and the West, passim, see Allmann, Domineuterrnmissionen, pp 85-86; and Palmier A. Throop, Criticism of the Crusade (Amsterdam, 1940), chap. v. For the text of William's treatise, see Hans Frank, Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzzüge (Berlin, 1883; repr. Hildesheim, 1964), pp 575-590. Monza de Villard, La Storia dell'Islam, pp 70-73, has noted the inadequacy of this edition, which is based on three Farman manuscripts, and raises the question whether the errors in Arabic terms are the result of William's imperfect knowledge or the faulty transcriptions of later copies.

13. The most important works on Ricoldo of Monte Croce are those of Monnet de Villard, "La Vita, la opinione, a un'opera di Frate Ricoldo de Montecroce, O.P.," Cristiana Christina periodica X (1944), 227-274; Il Libro della pergamennazione nelle parti d'Oriente di Frate Ricoldo di Montecroce (Dissertationes historicae, fasc. iii), Lugdunum, Historiæ Fratrum praedicatorum; Rome, 1946; see also Allmann, Domineuterrnmissionen, pp 82-84, Pierre P. Manuente, O.F., "Pla Ricoldo de Montecroce," Revue biblique, 11 (1893), 44-61, 182-202, 584-607; Riedericht, "Le texte de Ricoldo de Montecroce," A.O.L., 2 (1884), 255-296; Southern, Western Views of Islam, pp 68-70; and Daniel, Islam and the West, passim.
via Maragha, an important Nestorian and Jacobite center, through
Kurdish country to Mosul, where he found a thriving Jewish com-
munity and was able to hold public disputations in their synagogue.
Finally he reached Baghdad, where the brethren of his own order joy-
ously received him and where also he was greeted by the Nestorian
patriarch, Mar Yabhallaha III, who himself had recently been in com-
munication with the west.

Although Ricoldo spoke of preaching in Arabic at Mosul, it was
at Baghdad that he began the serious study of the language as well
as of Moslem religion and law. His relations with Moslem scholars
were extremely cordial. He attended their schools and was received
in their homes. He found them interested in what he said “concerning
God and Christ,” but he reported no conversions. Apparently he com-
menced work on a translation of the Koran but later abandoned it.

While he was at Baghdad Ricoldo heard the news of the fall of
Acre (1291) and witnessed the miserable plight of Christian prisoners,
among whom were a number of Dominicans. He saw more at Mosul,
where he took refuge for a time. He may have come back to Baghdad
before returning to Europe in the early years of the fourteenth century.

In his *Itinerarium* Ricoldo not only left a detailed account of his
journey, but he added many observations about the various peoples
he encountered—Mongols, Buddhists, Kurds, and others. His com-
ments on Moslem religious customs are especially important. For,
although he was not always well informed and it can scarcely be said
that he acquired a profound understanding, he was the first western
European to penetrate deeply into eastern Islamic territory and bring
back first-hand information. Formerly most of what had been known
had come from Spain. Evidently he was favorably impressed and admitt-
ed that in many respects, in religious devotion, in regularity of prayer,
in almsgiving and charity, Moslems sometimes excelled Christians.

Ricoldo had a high regard for the work of William of Tripoli and
after his return to Europe, probably at Florence, he elaborated fur-
ther some of the material of the *Itinerarium* in a treatise, the *Impro-
batio Alchorum* or *Tractatus contra legem Saracenorum*. It has been
demonstrated that Ricoldo worked entirely from Arabic texts and ap-
parently did not know of the translation of the Koran by Robert of
Chester. Indeed, he would have found in early fourteenth-century
Florence no such tradition of oriental scholarship as existed in Spain.
Moreover, Ricoldo’s purpose was different; he remained the mission-

work also appears as *Confutatio Alchorum, Tractatus contra legem Mahometi* and *Propugna-
culum fidel*.
ary propagandist rather than the detached scholar. Moslem legal precepts he found confused, dark, and irrational. If, as we have mentioned, he respected the religious devotion of Moslems, he expressed surprise that "such works of perfection could exist in such a perfidious law." Perhaps because of his experiences following the fall of Acre he, unlike William of Tripoli, shared the growing pessimism about the future relations of Christendom and Islam.

It is evident that, with the exception of William of Tripoli, medieval missionaries to the Moslems of the east were rarely successful. Many, perhaps most, were insufficiently prepared. But the persistent opposition of Moslem authorities everywhere was unquestionably a major factor. And this opposition, usually backed by popular opinion, was doubtless strengthened later as Rome attempted to win Tatar support against Islam and anti-Moslem crusade propaganda became the order of the day. Gregory X, who received William of Tripoli's treatise, desperately tried to promote a new crusade, and the Council of Lyons in 1274 solicited from Fidenzio of Padua, the Franciscan provincial of the Holy Land, who was exceptionally well informed concerning Islam, a crusade plan, the De recuperatione Terrae Sanctae, which, however, he did not complete until 1291. The loss of the last crusaders' states in the same year added to Europe's discouragement and increased its fears. Even so ardent a missionary and missionary propagandist as Raymond Lull composed a crusade tract.

Under such circumstances any exchange of views which might lead to mutual understanding was all but impossible. Attempts to convert Moslems were not abandoned, but were regularly included in reissues of the mission bull, Cum hora undecima. But missions to Moslems were in fact feasible only in areas which fell under Mongol control, where the authorities permitted Christian propaganda. After 1291 the friars who resided in the Levantine lands under Moslem rule were concerned principally with the spiritual care of resident Latin Christians, the winning over of separated oriental Christians, or with such special tasks as the care of the holy places in Palestine. 15

CONTACTS WITH ORIENTAL CHRISTIANS
IN THE FIRST HALF OF THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY

The establishment of the crusaders' states brought western authorities, ecclesiastical and lay, into regular contact with oriental Chris-
tainty for the first time in centuries. By the early decades of the thirteenth century considerable progress had been made in understanding the different native communities. This is evident in the Assises de Jerusalem and in the writings of contemporary chroniclers, notably James of Vitry, who are able to distinguish the diverse groups and no longer—as was formerly the case—lump them all together under the single category of “Syrians.” Misinformation, and especially optimistic illusions regarding the possibility of large-scale conversions, persisted. Nevertheless, the early friars were able to make use of a respectable fund of valid information.

The naming of a Latin patriarch of Jerusalem following the First Crusade had placed the Orthodox Christians in the kingdom in an ambiguous position of divided loyalties. Most of these in the south were Arabic in culture and were known as Melkites. As is evident in the papal bulls, Melkites became a concern of the popes in the middle years of the thirteenth century. In 1246 a distinguished Franciscan, Lawrence of Portugal, papal penitentiary and originally destined for the Mongol mission, was sent instead to various places in Anatolia and Syria with instructions to visit, among others, Jacobites, Maronites, and Nestorians. His principal dealings, however, were with the Latin and Greek (or Melkite) hierarchies of Syria, concerning which he and they received letters from Innocent IV.

After the final retreat of the Latins from Jerusalem in 1244 the Syrian Melkite clergy seem for the most part to have turned to patriarch Athanasius II of Jerusalem, who in 1247 was negotiating with Rome through friar Lawrence. Innocent IV supported Athanasius against Robert, the Latin patriarch of Jerusalem, now not resident there, and reserved to Rome the immediate obedience of all bishops.


Apparently some conversions were made as a consequence of the visit of Louis IX mostly, it would seem, from some renounced slaves. On an attempt by friars to refute Islamic doctrines by public argumentation in 1392 which resulted in their death, see Simonett, Il Mondo, p. 97.

18. Cf. Enrico Cerulli, Etiope in Palestina (Collezione scientifica e documentaria a cura del Ministero dell’ Africa italiana, XII, vol 11; Rome, 1943), 82 ff., and docs. 3, 7.


who, or whose predecessors, had not actually submitted to Latin authorities. Somewhat later, Athanasius III of Alexandria was also in communion with Rome at the time of his death in 1308 at the hands of the Moslems. He had, it seems, accepted the provisions of union enunciated at the Council of Lyons in 1274. Thus the Palestinian branch of eastern Christianity, presumably largely Melkite, was in those years in communion with Rome.

The situation in Antioch was somewhat different. There the Orthodox church was ethnically Greek and constituted a strong element in the population. Although less evidently so in the thirteenth century with the decline of Byzantine power, the problem of the patriarchate had always been confused with political issues. Toward 1245 the Greek patriarch, David, seems to have accepted Rome's jurisdiction and been permitted to install himself alongside the Latin patriarch Albert Rezzato, but his successor Euthymius was excommunicated by his Latin colleague Oplzo Fieschi, only to be reinstated in 1260 by Bohemond VI acting under extreme pressure from Hulagu. Thereafter most of the Latin patriarchs remained in absentia and administered their provinces through vicars.

Innocent IV was most anxious to protect the unite Melkites and Greeks of Jerusalem and Antioch against opposition on the part of the Latin patriarchs. In addition to the obvious motives of ecclesiastical policy, the pope was deeply concerned to preserve the unity of eastern Christianity against the Mongol menace. At the same time, he and his legates were aware that the newly reunited Greek clergy, particularly of Antioch, occasionally presumed on papal protection, thereby giving just grievance to the Latins. Apparently Lawrence of Portugal carried out a delicate mission with considerable success. But the union with Rome remained tenuous and presumably was largely lost with the destruction of the crusaders' states at the end of the century.

In 1237 the Jacobite patriarch of Antioch, Ignatius II (1222-1252), made an official visit to Jerusalem, where according to an old tradition the Jacobites had been given a section in the city and where they maintained the convent of St. Mary Magdalen. Jacobites, Monophysite in faith and fairly numerous, were divided into several ethnic or national communities in Syria, Egypt, Nubia, and Ethiopia, under the jurisdiction of patriarchs at Antioch and Alexandria. James of Vitry had distinguished the Jacobites from the Syrian Melkites, and the Latins had become aware that Nubia and Ethiopia lay beyond

the confines of Moslem Egypt. They seem also to have understood something of the difficulties between the two Jacobite patriarchates.

Ignatius, in retaliation for the naming of a metropolitan for Jerusalem by the Coptic patriarch of Alexandria, Cyril III, proceeded to appoint a metropolitan for Ethiopia. This was done against the advice of the Dominicans of Jerusalem, who immediately protested strongly and were joined by the Templars and Hospitallers. Presumably they were afraid of offending the Egyptian government and thereby endangering the truce which permitted the Latin occupation of Jerusalem. Ultimately the matter was smoothed over, partly through the good offices of the friars.

More significant to the present discussion is the report of Ignatius's 1237 visit by friar Philip, Dominican provincial of the Holy Land. On Palm Sunday, Philip reported, Ignatius made a profession of faith in Chaldean (Syriac) and Arabic, proclaiming his allegiance to Rome, and put on the habit of the Friars-Preachers. Similar declarations were made by two archbishops, one a Jacobite from Egypt, probably the Copt recently named metropolitan of Jerusalem, and the other a Nestorian whose jurisdiction included Syria. Philip then mentioned that letters received from William of Montferrat, for whom, it will be recalled, the papal bull of 1235 had been issued, indicated that he and two other Dominicans conversant with the language had spent some time with the Nestorian catholics ("lakelinus"). Sabarjeanus V, whose jurisdiction extended eastward to include the domains of Prester John, and found him disposed to return to the Catholic church.

To the Coptic patriarch of Alexandria, who had also, according to Philip, expressed a desire to return to ecclesiastical unity, he sent friars. Among the Egyptians, Philip went on to explain, Saracen influences apparently cause more deviations in custom than among other oriental Christians. But he adds significantly that Libya (presumably Nubia) and Ethiopia were not subject to Moslem rule. There is no further information about the friars Philip sent. But if perchance

they went beyond Egypt into Nubia or Ethiopia they would have been the first known to have done so.

Philip also mentioned that the Maronites of the Lebanon, long since returned to obedience, were persevering in their faith, and added that oriental Christians in general were listening to the friars. Only the Greeks remained hostile. Philip concluded his report with the information about language study, particularly Arabic, by himself and his fellow friars which was discussed above in connection with the possibility of missions to Moslems.

It seems clear that Philip's report was overly optimistic. As he remarked, Ignatius's jurisdiction included lands already devastated by Mongol incursions. The same would have been true of the Nestorian catholicus farther east, and both may have been concerned about possible western aid. Nevertheless, the report made an impression in Rome, and pope Gregory IX immediately sent a cordial letter to Ignatius and the other prelates.21

As has already been mentioned, a majority of Armenians were Monophysite. But the relations between the Cilician kingdom of Armenia and the crusader states had been close, and successive rulers and catholicos had sought to bring the Armenian church out of what seemed to them a position of isolation. As a consequence, the king, the catholicus, and at least a part of the church of Cilician Armenia might be said to have been in formal union with Rome in the first decades of the thirteenth century.22

Such moves apparently made possible some western missionary activity. In his report Philip mentioned that at the urging of king and nobles he had sent four friars to Cilicia to learn the Armenian language. Some further indications of western contacts appear as a consequence of the expeditions and letters sent by Innocent IV in 1245 which will be discussed presently. The papal envoy, Dominic of Aragon, traveled extensively in the Levant and visited Cilicia, and it was perhaps owing to his efforts that the catholicus Constantine I, then

21. Aloysius L. Tischler, ed., Acta Fratrum Bessarabum (PC, Fontes, ser. 9, 111; Vatican City, 1950), pp. 303–305 (no. 227). In the following year the pope granted permission to Templars captured by Saracens to receive absolution from Jacobite priests (ibid., p. 318, no. 239)
residing at Sis, presented an exposition of the Armenian faith. Later in the thirteenth century Franciscans were active in Cilicia, and some time after 1270 mission stations were established at Tarsus and Sis, and at Sivas in northeastern Anatolia.

Despite these evidences of rapport, it seems clear that many Armenians in the kingdom and probably most in the diaspora, then under Moslem rule, were still unwilling to recognize either the decrees of the Council of Chalcedon or Roman primacy. Moreover, even for those who did, primacy usually meant a vague, distant suzerainty, not an active jurisdiction.

The kingdom of Georgia, during this period, was Orthodox and perhaps in a technical sense still in union with Rome. Although the kingdom’s exposed position vis-à-vis the Mongols may have prompted the rulers to regard the west favorably, remoteness and a clergy not particularly well disposed toward Rome made the union scarcely a reality. In 1233 Gregory IX sent a cordial letter to the ruler. This was to be delivered by Jacob of Russano, who with other Franciscans had been in Georgia. Moreover, general instructions to friars traveling to the Orient now included Georgians among the peoples named. Nothing is known of Jacob’s mission except that he reached Constantinople.

The mission letters of the next few years (1233–1240) do not mention Georgians, but some time in the third decade of the century a Dominican convent was established at Tiflis. In 1240 the pope again wrote to the queen-regent Rusudan and her son David IV requesting her to receive a deputation of Friars-Priesters. In 1254 Innocent IV wrote to the Georgian bishops and clergy bespeaking a favorable reception for the Dominican friars en route eastward and in a tone implying normal ecclesiastical relations with the Holy See. 23

THE MONGOL INVASIONS AND THE MISSIONS

The course of the mission effort in the thirteenth century was profoundly affected by the incursions of the Mongols into eastern Europe and the Levant. Europeans were terrified, and Innocent IV placed

23 Van der Va, Die Anfänge, pp. 142–143; Aktmier, Die Dominikanermissionen, pp. 68–70; Cahen, La Syrie du nord, p. 686. The papal letters are in DOF, I, 165, II, 299–301. It is not clear why in 1233 the pope addressed the king and not the queen-regent, Rusudan, who was then ruling for her son David. In the bull Cum mensa splendens (ibid., II, 301), to friars “in terris Georgicis suis et ab horum pagam etiam propter persecutus,” the pope included faculties for dealing with Latins and mentioned friars who were preach. Presumably this letter was directed to friars then established as the Orient (April 8, 1233).
The Mongol problem on the agenda of the Council of Lyons in 1245. As other chapters have indicated, the first attacks were followed by the stabilization of the Mongol empire, the subsequent reorientation of Mongol expansion eastward toward China and southward into the Levant, and its eventual division into smaller khanates. This, in turn, made possible communication between Europe and Asia and opened the way to diplomatic negotiations and eventually to missions.

A persistent difficulty confronting western authorities throughout this period was the lack of trustworthy information. Various legends, such as those concerning Prester John or a Christian king David, continued to find western acceptance. Moreover, the actual existence of Nestorian Christianity in Asia and the exaggerated, if not deliberately falsified, accounts of the extent of Asian Christianity which occasionally reached the west tended to perpetuate an overly optimistic attitude regarding mission possibilities. And the Mongols, it may be added, seem to have been equally ignorant of the west. Nevertheless, some misunderstandings were cleared up, and among the objects of papal diplomacy the acquisition of reliable information held an important place.24

Even before 1245 Innocent IV had received reports from Hungary concerning the first Mongol incursions toward the west. King Béla IV (1235-1270), representative of a people immediately endangered, had already promoted more than one exploratory mission before the Mongols actually attacked his own kingdom. The best known of these early ventures was that of the Dominican friar Julian, who in 1236-1237 traveled via Constantinople, Malta, and the Alan country and thence northward into the region of the Volga or the Don. Julian reported his experiences in a letter to the papal legate in Hungary, bishop Salvins of Persugia. It seems that Béla forwarded this letter to the patriarch of Aquileia, Berthold of Andechs, a prelate later present at Innocent IV's curia and presumably one of the experts on Mongol affairs. A Russian bishop named Peter also appeared at the Council of Lyons with further information.25


25 Simon, "Un Voyageur du troisième siècle: Le Dammuccum, Juhan de Hongrie," London University, School of Oriental and Africa Studies, Bulletin, XIV (1952), 500-602. Simon differs from previous writers in holding that Julian made only one journey and did not reach "greater
Whatever the extent of his information at the time of the Council of Lyons in 1245, Innocent's decision to attempt negotiations with Mongol rulers was a new and bold step and was taken in connection with several important contemporary developments, European, Moslem, and Mongol. The coincidence of such events as the death of khan Ögedei (1242), the ultimatum to prince Bohemond IV of Antioch in 1244, the fall of Jerusalem to the Khwarazmian Turks and the launching of a new crusade by Louis IX of France in the same year should be noted. Moreover, at the time the pope was not undisputed master in his own house, for it was at the same council that he solemnly excommunicated emperor Frederick II and authorized a crusade against him.

In the spring and early summer of 1245 three missions penetrated deeply into Mongol territory. Whether each of these resulted from specific papal commissions given to the friars at Lyons is not always clear, since such commissions do not exist in every case. At any rate, in March, even before the opening of the council (June 28, 1245), the pope had drawn up two letters addressed to the "king and people of the Tatars." The first of these (March 5) was religious in tenor and invited the khan to embrace Christianity. It was originally entrusted to the Franciscan friar Lawrence of Portugal, but this commission, it seems, was subsequently withdrawn, for it was in the following year that Lawrence visited instead the Greek and Melkite clergy of the Levant.

About the same time a commission was given to the Franciscan Dominic of Aragon, possibly that originally intended for Lawrence. Dominic's actual journey, however, was confided to the Levant, with perhaps some penetration of the Moslem hinterland. He visited, as we have mentioned, Cilicia and possibly Moslem Syria and Egypt.

Hungary "The view that the friar traveled eastward twice (1234-1235, 1237) and reached "gratitud Hungaria" on the first trip has again been proposed by Heinrich A. Dörrie, Der Texte zur Geschichte der Ungarn und Mongolen (Akademie der Wissenschaften in Göttingen, Philologisch-historische Klasse, Nachrichten, 1956, no 6), pp 125-202. Dörrie also mentions the appearance at the Lyons council of the Russian bishop Peter.

26 These missions are discussed at length in Alberoni, Die Dominikanermissionen, pp 53-63, 120-130; Peliot, "Les Mongoles et la papauté," ROC, XXXII (1922-1923), 3-30 (on John of Pian del Carpine); XXIV (1924), 225-335 (on Ascoli and Andrew); XXXVIII (1931-1932), 3-44 (on Andrew); van der Vaart, Die Anfänge, pp 150-160; Soranzo, II Papato, pp 92 ff. Peliot's second installment (1924) and Alberoni's study appeared in the same year and were written independently. Peliot, however, was able to procure a copy of Alberoni's work while his own was in press and added a few references in his notes. Probably the same thing occurred with Peliot's third installment (1931-1932) and Soranzo, II Papato. For general discussions see also Sincr, "Les Relations entre les Mongoles et l'Europe jusqu'à la mort d'Angoumois et de Blézy," Cahiers d'Histoire mondiale, III (1956), 39-62; Leonardino Omobini, L'Azim di Marco Polo (Biblioteca storica Sansovina, n.s., XXIX, Florence, 1957), chap. x; Troll, "Die Chinesenmission," pp 118-123.
He returned in the summer of 1247 after a protracted stay at Constantinople, where his good offices in pacifying various dissident factions were gratefully recognized by the authorities. Apparently, therefore, the first papal commission to Franciscan friars directed specifically to the Mongols was not carried out.\textsuperscript{27} The second papal letter to the “king and people of the Tatars” (March 13) was primarily, though not exclusively, diplomatic and was designed among other things to moderate the ravages in eastern Europe. This letter was carried to the court of the great khan by the Franciscan John of Pian del Carpine, who returned to the curia in November 1247 bringing a haughty reply from the newly elected khan Güyük rejecting any cessation of hostilities and demanding total submission of all Christian rulers. Despite its pessimism the record of John’s journey, the \textit{Historia Mongalorum}, is a precious document, Europe’s first real view into inner Asia.\textsuperscript{28}

In addition to these specific commissions to Franciscans the pope added more general instructions and grants of faculties to friars journeying to the Orient in the general bull \textit{Cum hora undecima} (March 21), which included the now customary long list of peoples, Moslem, pagan, and separated Christian. And on March 25 a letter was sent to schismatic prelates inviting them to return \textit{ad unitatem ecclesiae} and recommending the Franciscan friars.\textsuperscript{29}

\textsuperscript{27} Tissot, “\textit{La Légation en Orient du Franciscain, Dominique d’Aragon (1243–47).},” pp 336 ff., Rencaglia, \textit{Les Frères mineurs}, pp. 87–88, 92–99; van der Vat, \textit{Die Anfänge}, pp 154–154, 158–160. Although no papal letter to Dominican mission, the pope wrote on March 10 to the Hospitallers and apparently also the Templars urging them to give the friar and his companions all possible help. On March 21 the Latin mediæval authorities were similarly informed. While the direction of these letters would seem to imply the annulment of the Franciscan friar, the second letter specifically mentions non-Christians. It has, therefore, been suggested that the papal commissary withdrawn from Lawrence of Portugal was later sent to Dominics of Aragon. The papal letters mentioned are cited in \textit{BOF}, U, 322 (\textit{BF}, 1, 354), 324–325 (\textit{BF}, 1, 771 ff.)

\textsuperscript{28} \textit{BF}, 1, 353 ff. A translation of John of Pian del Carpine’s account can be found in Dawson, ed. \textit{Mision a Asia} (London, 1959), pp 3–86 Pelliot, \textit{ROG}, XXIII (1922–1923), 8–9, suggests, on the basis of a passage in Güyük’s reply which seems to indicate an invitation to conversion, that perhaps John took the letter intended for Lawrence of Portugal of van der Vat, \textit{Die Anfänge}, p. 152. It is worth noting that Innocent IV was also in communication with various princes and prelates, Lucien, Greek, and Slavonic, in eastern Europe, cf. Soranzo, \textit{II Papato}, pp 88 ff. The role of Benedict the Pite, John’s companion, in negotiations with the church in Ruthenia is discussed by Bobrowski-Samowul, “Benczúr le Polonán, dít le Vatiskavain, et son rôle dans l’union de la Ruthénie de Halicz avec Rome en 1246,” \textit{Antiquitates}, 1 (1954), 39–50.

\textsuperscript{29} \textit{BOF}, II, 316; \textit{BF}, 1, 357, 360, 362, Thedorekken T. Hałubičynskyj and Miešiūnas M Wagner, eds., \textit{Acta Innocentii papae IV} (Rome, 1962), pp. 36–39 (no. 19), 43–46 (no. 20) van der Vat, \textit{Die Anfänge}, p. 145, thinks that the general papal bulls were directed for John of Pian del Carpine only until Pelliot, \textit{ROG}, XXIV (1924), 329, suggests that one of the prelates interviewed by the Dominicans may have seen the letter addressed to the oriental prelates.
Two expeditions of Dominican friars also set out in 1245. The first was headed by friar Ascelino, probably a Lombarcd, who left Lyons perhaps as early as March and was later joined at the Dominican convent of Acre by three other Dominican friars. Another friar, Gualteri of Cremona, joined them at Tiflis. Although a copy of Ascelino’s commission does not exist, it is possible that it resembled that of John of Pian del Carpini in purpose. Because of a considerable delay in reaching his destination, his journey took a longer time—considerably over three years—than any of the others. Not until May 24, 1247, did Ascelino and his companions reach the camp of the Mongol general Baiju, probably somewhere in the mountains of Transcaucasia east of Lake Sevan. Despite threats against his life, Ascelino persisted in his refusal to prostrate himself before the Mongol dignitaries, even though one of his more experienced companions pointed out that no idolatry was implied. Since he also resisted demands that he travel to the court of the Great Khan Guyuk, the friars’ letters had to be translated and sent on. Finally, toward the end of July 1247, after the arrival of an envoy from the khan, the general Eljigidei, they were permitted to leave, accompanied by two Mongol envoys. They reached Acre in September and the curia sometime early in the following summer (1248). Baiju’s reply, which they delivered to the pope, was strikingly similar in tone to that of Guyuk. On the way home, presumably at Tabriz, they visited a Nestorian prelate named Simeon Rabban Ata, who, as we shall see, had been interviewed by the other Dominican envoy of 1245, the Frenchman Andrew of Longjumeau.

The record of Andrew’s instructions has also been lost, but his journey had considerable religious as well as diplomatic significance. It was he and one companion, it will be remembered, who may have

30 Pelliot has reconstructed Ascelino’s journey; see above, note 26. He feels that Ascelino may have occupied himself for some time with oriental Christians. On the analogy of the two types of commission, one diplomatic, the other missionary, and one each to the great khan and to some lesser dignitary, Altaner, Der Dominikanercmmissione, pp. 122 ff., holds that Ascelino’s commission probably resembled that given to John of Pian del Carpini while that given to Andrew of Longjumeau was similar to the one intended for Lawrence of Portugal. This “symmetrical” interpretation has been rejected by Timurid and van der Ve. Although there has been discussion regarding the validity of the principal source for Ascelino’s journey, Simon of Saint Quentin (e.g., Soranzo, II Papato, pp. 114-119), the matter seems now to have been settled definitively by the new edition of Richard, Simon de Saint-Quentin. Hisdore des Tartares (Documents relatifs a Plustours des croisades, VIII, Paris, 1965), for the passages relevant here see pp. 94-117. Cf. also Outushi, Marco Polo’s Predecess, (Baltimore, 1964), pp. 48 ff.

31 Andrew’s commission and journey have been examined at length by Pelliot and Altaner (see above, note 26). Cf. also Soranzo, II Papato, pp. 119 ff.
been the bearers of one of the pope's letters to and replies from Moslem princes of Syria. More pertinent to the present discussion are his communications with oriental prelates. For it is principally as a consequence of Andrew's achievements and the five letters from oriental prelates which he brought back that we have some insight into papal dealings with oriental Christianity during this period.

Andrew traveled from Syria to Mosul, where the Jacobite maphrian John XV (1232–1253) made an Orthodox profession of faith. Some seventeen days journey beyond Mosul, presumably near Tabriz, Andrew met a detachment of Mongol troops. To the commanders of this contingent, which was very likely an advance guard of Bajul's army, he delivered the pope's letters. It is probable that it was also at Tabriz that he talked with Simeon Rabban Ata, a representative of the Nestorian catholicus, who styled himself vicarius orientis. Probably a Syrian, he was, it seems, patriarchal visitor to the Nestorian communities of central and eastern Asia, and apparently had won the respect of the Mongols. Expressing himself as extremely grateful for the pope's embassy, Simeon urged the pope to make peace with emperor Frederick II, and apparently he wrote the emperor in the same vein. To Andrew he presented to be delivered to the pope a libellus on matters of faith which he had brought from China. This has not been preserved, but the papal archives do contain professions from the archbishop of Nisibis, Isayahb bar Malkhon, and five other prelates including Simeon. He requested the pope to insure proper treatment of Nestorians in the crusader states, especially at Antioch, Tripoli, and Acre, and he made intercession for his friend the archbishop of Jerusalem. The friars remained with Simeon for twenty days and were given a costly ivory staff for the pope.

It is worth noting that these contacts were made with a representative of the Nestorian hierarchy of upper Mesopotamia, Persia, and greater Armenia, by envoys sent expressly to Mongols. Although there is no reason to suppose that the catholicus was hostile to what Simeon was doing, it is true that he then resided at Scienia (near Ctesiphon) in the territory of the Baghdad caliphate, not yet occupied by the Mongols. Presumably he feared them. For some unexplained reason Simeon did not remain well disposed toward the western church. When Ascelino and his associates stayed with him on their return

32. BIOF, II, 356, cites the documents, but, following Tournaubre, *Histoire de l'Arménie*, p 289, wrongly identifies Simeon Rabban Ata as Armenian and Andrew as Franciscan. Pelliot *ROC*, XXIV (1924), 230–233, points out that the use of the word "catholicus" here as applied to Simeon is probably the result of an *error* on the part of a papal scribe.
trip from Bajju’s headquarters they found him in an entirely different mood. While they were awaiting a reply to a papal letter, possibly one delivered by Andrew, he died.\textsuperscript{33}

Meanwhile, on his return journey Andrew met at Antioch the Jacobite patriarch Ignatius II, who, it will be recalled, had made a profession of faith in Jerusalem some years earlier.\textsuperscript{34} He had subsequently received letters from Gregory IX and now, it would appear, Innocent IV was following up his predecessor’s moves and perhaps requiring a more precise definition of the terms of union. At any rate, Ignatius presented another profession to Andrew and added a number of significant requests which reveal something of the often difficult relations between eastern and western Christians. He asked that there be free election of the patriarch by the archbishops, independence of the Jacobite hierarchy from the jurisdiction of Latin bishops, and freedom of all Jacobites and of their establishments in Latin territory from any financial exactions. Finally, baptized Jacobites should not be required when marrying Latins to be rebaptized. The patriarch assured the pope of his cooperation, especially in the freeing of slaves and prisoners. Andrew returned to the curia in the spring or early summer of 1247 and delivered the replies to the pope’s communications of 1245 to oriental prelates and perhaps also replies from Moslem princes. His own report was overly optimistic about the position and future of Christianity in Asia.

Andrew of Longjumeau is next encountered at Cyprus, where Louis IX was completing preparations for his attack on Egypt and where on December 19, 1248, there arrived two envoys sent by the Mongol general Eljigidei, then in command of armies in northern Mesopotamia, probably near Tabriz. Very possibly he was already mediating an attack on Baghdad. The envoys were Nestorians and the principal one, David, was known to Andrew, whom he had probably met in 1246. It was Andrew who translated Eljigidei’s letter to the king from the original Persian into Latin. Although the letter was far more cordial in tone than the earlier reply of Gûyük, it is possible that it was designed to create a deceptively favorable impression. This would enable the Mongols to avoid a confrontation with Louis’s crusading armies if they moved against Baghdad.\textsuperscript{35}

\textsuperscript{31} It is not clear whether Ascélio promised to Sinoua a new letter or whether this refers to a previous communication delivered by Andrew. Pellet suggests that it was probably the latter sent by the pope to Syrian prelates on March 25, 1245 (ibid., p. 329); cf. above, note 29.


\textsuperscript{35} Pellet, \textit{ROC}, XXVIII (1931–1932), 19–20, 26, 31, 66–67, contradicts, against certain older
At any rate Eljigidei’s communication seems to have strengthened the impression already created by Andrew, at least as far as mission possibilities were concerned. For after discussing the matter in council and with the papal legate, cardinal Odo of Tuscuelam, the king decided to respond by sending a legation of which certain members would return after delivering letters to Eljigidei while others would proceed further to the court of the great khan Gûyûk, the news of whose death in the spring of 1248 had evidently not yet reached the west. Andrew of Longjumeau was chosen to head the embassy and was accompanied by two other Dominicans, one of them being his brother, William, who also spoke Arabic, two seculars, two royal officers, and the two Mongol envoys. Another cleric of Acre, named Theodulf, accompanied them in a private capacity into Persia. He eventually left the group and was found later by William of Rubruck in Karakorum.

The details of the journey are of no concern here. Suffice it to say that the entire party, including perhaps even the Mongols’ envoy David, after reporting from some point on route, continued on to the Mongol imperial court, then presided over by the queen-mother and regent, Oghui Kaimish, and probably situated in the valley of the river Imlil east of Lake Balkhash. The ambassadors were courteously received, and returned to report to the king at Caesarea in the spring or early summer of 1251. But neither was the cause of Christianity furthered nor were closer diplomatic ties promoted.

Thus Andrew of Longjumeau returned once again from Asia. Although perhaps too much influenced by oriental propaganda after his first trip, he was nevertheless an accomplished missionary and ambassador. Moreover, in the course of his travels he had mastered Arabic and Persian and perhaps understood Greek. He had also seen Christians in lands under Mongol and Moslem dominion. As a consequence, his experience was recognized and his advice sought. When, for example, he urged that some missionary friars be raised to the episcopate, king Louis wrote to the pope in this vein. By the bull of February 20, 1253, Innocent gave his legate in the Orient, Odo of Tuscuelam, powers to proceed with the consecrations. Although not then carried out, this plan, inspired by the advice of Andrew,
f reshadowed the establishment of a Latin hierarchy in the Orient in the following century. Andrew's influence may also perhaps be observed in the preparations made by William of Rubruck, the Franciscan missionary, whom he met in Syria in 1252. 36

Meanwhile the kingdom of Cilician Armenia had also established contact with the Mongols, whom they found to be a welcome counterpoise to the Turks of Konya. The constable Sempad, brother of Hetoum I, journeyed into Mongol territory and from Samarkand wrote in 1248 to his brother-in-law, Henry I of Cyprus. From these varied sources came further indications of Christianity in Asia, among them the report that Sartak, son of Batu, khan of the Kipchak Golden Horde and ruler of a territory west of the Volga, was a Christian. It was this especially which prompted King Louis, then at Acre, to authorize the journey of William of Rubruck. 37

William, a Franciscan friar at the convent at Acre, set out with the original purpose of establishing a mission center in Sartak's kingdom. He did, it is true, carry letters of recommendation from King Louis to Sartak, to his father, Batu, and to the great khan Mongke. As a consequence, he occasionally had to protest his unofficial capacity. But he also took with him religious books, vestments, and articles suitable to his evangelical intentions, and insisted that he desired only to fulfill the missionary ideals of his order. Thus, unlike John of Plano Carpini and the Dominicans, and despite some misunderstanding among the Mongols, William was exclusively a missionary.

Frier William set out from Acre early in 1253 with friar Bartholomew and two others and an interpreter. He first stopped at Constantinople and then traveled north and east and reached Sartak's camp at the end of July 1253. About Sartak's Christianity William expressed some doubts. Moreover, he and his companions were told that it was necessary for them to proceed to Batu's camp. Accordingly, they left

36 The definitive account of Andrew's journey can be found in Pallotin, ROC, XXVIII (1931-1932), 37-82. Cf. anche Altman, Die Deraunmensaummemmen, pp. 134-137, Soranzo, Il Papato, pp. 128 ff. For Inammar IV's bull see Acta Innocentii papae IV, p. 148 (no. 86).

with Sartak their books and vestments, save a Bible and book of Sentences which William managed to keep with him, and journeyed to Batu's headquarters on the east bank of the Volga, only to find that he in turn insisted that they travel to the court of the great khan Möngke at Karakorum. They reached the court on December 27, 1253.

At the imperial court William lost no opportunity to exercise his ministry. He was especially welcome to the many European Christians, mostly captives or technicians resident at the khan's headquarters. He was able to establish friendly relations with Nestorians although he was highly critical of their practices, and he participated with them and with Moslems and ruins, a term he used to describe Asiatic pagans in general, in a public debate before the great khan. According to King Hetoum of Armenia, who visited the Mongol court shortly afterward, William offended the khan by the impiety of his preaching, but to judge from his own straightforward account he seems to have acquitted himself well. His evident skill in debate impressed the Moslems. As might be expected of a man who was appointed lector at the convent at Acre on his return, he had a thorough knowledge of scripture and a capacity to organize and present an argument. Of his success as a missionary it is difficult to judge. He mentions only a few converts of his own and describes the baptism of some sixty persons by Nestorians.

In August 1254 William took his leave, parting with great sadness from his colleague Bartholomew, whose illness prevented any such journey at that time. It was not until May 1255 that William again saw the Mediterranean. Since he was ordered to remain at Acre, he was not able to report to King Louis in person, for the king had returned to France. Somewhat later, through the influence of the king, he did return to Paris; there he met Roger Bacon, who was greatly impressed by what he had to say. Meanwhile he composed a written account of his journey (Itinerarium) which still stands as one of the most significant travel reports of the Middle Ages. As far as missions are concerned, William's experiences prompted him to suggest that instead of humble friars the pope should send a bishop in order to make a suitable impression. Significantly, too, he emphasized the necessity of adequate interpreters.

Thus all the early politico-missionary expeditions to the Mongols failed to achieve fruitful results, and attempts to establish diplomatic

35 Van der Vat, Die Anfänge, p. 80, note 80; Sarastri, It Itinerario, p. 155, note 2; de Senneville, Histoire générale de l'Empire des Saints, p. 622. Southern (Western Views of Islam, pp. 47-52) identifies William's pagan opponents as Buddhists; he also comments on William's influence on Roger Bacon. See also Simonneau, R. Levada, pp. 135-137.
relations ceased for some years as Europe awaited or feared renewed Mongol attacks. The few contacts with oriental prelates seemed more promising, but it must be observed that although such dignitaries as made professions of faith gave evidence of a desire to live in harmony with Rome, there was no assurance that they fully understood the primacy of jurisdiction. This may, for example, explain Innocent IV's seeking through Andrew of Longjumeau a second profession from Ignatius II. Further, there is little doubt that hope of western aid was a powerful motive in certain cases, and the conversion of individual prelates was usually not followed by corporate movements of the faithful. It has been pointed out that Ignatius II spoke for only a section of the Jacobite church. After his death in 1252, his successor John VI (the maphrian John XV) maintained a precarious union for a short time, but the majority of Jacobites followed a rival, Dnunysius VII, who was traditionally Monophysite and anti-Latin.39

THE SECOND HALF OF THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY

During the 1260's changes in the political balance of the Levantine world opened up new opportunities for missionaries. In 1261 the Byzantine empire was restored with the assistance of the Genoese, who subsequently established themselves in the Black Sea area. The northern coast of the Black Sea lay within the jurisdiction of the khanate of the Kipchak Golden Horde, which also comprised the territory stretching from southern Russia to the Caspian. A variety of peoples inhabited the region, Goths, Alans, Circassians, Akhhasians, Georgians, as well as Russians and Greeks, all in the main Christian, in addition to Khazars, Turks, Kumans, and Mongols. A large Armenian colony had settled in Kaffa, the principal city and port of the Crimea.

Although Islam steadily gained adherents in the Kipchak khanate, diplomatic and commercial interests, especially rivalry with the Mongol rulers of Persia and a long frontier with western Christendom in Poland and Hungary, prompted the khans to grant protection to merchants and missionaries and to maintain formally cordial rela-

39 Bunciman, A History of the Crusades (3 vol., Cambridge, Eng, 1951-1954), III, 232; Cahen, La Syrie du nord, pp. 681-684. Chabot, "Échos des croisades," p. 433, has pointed out that some professions of faith made by oriental prelates are extant only in the Latin form and may have been drawn up under summary direction, they may not represent the real views of the signers. See also Altmann, "Sprachkonstantin und Dolmetscherwesen im missionarischen und diplomatischen Verkehr zwischen Abendland (papstliche Kunde) und Osten im 13. und 14. Jahrhundert," Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte, LV (1936), 83-126
tions with Rome. Thus the Genoese obtained from the Mongol authorities the right to establish a colony at Kaffa. Their rivals, the Venetians, at first excluded, came on the scene somewhat later with a consul at Soldaia, and the Pisans began to exploit the Azov region.

Meanwhile the Byzantine emperor Michael VIII Palaeologus and his son Andronicus, while attempting to maintain correct relations with Rome after accepting a formula of reunion at the Council of Lyons in 1274, but menaced from the west by Charles of Anjou and from the north by the Bulgars, were disposed to remain on terms of virtual alliance with the Kipchak khanate. In such a situation, and especially in view of the growing predominance of Islam in the entire region, missions depended on a policy of toleration dictated by diplomacy which could easily change. Nevertheless, it was in this area that both mendicant orders established missionary organizations and bases which were also important to their work farther east and south.

In the thirteenth century the Franciscans took the lead. The minister-general Bonagratia (1279–1283) was especially active in promoting missions and dispatching friars to what chroniclers began to call the vicariate of the north (vicaria aquilonis). A somewhat overly optimistic report of friar Ladislas (1287), custos of Gazzaria (the Crimea), indicates that within the vicariate of the north there were two custodiae, one in the Crimea with its principal center at Kaffa, the other centering at Sarai (old Sarai on the Akhtuba), the Kipchak capital.40

Meanwhile the Dominicans were also entering this area. The preaching friars had been in Constantinople during the thirteenth century, but with the Byzantine recovery in 1261 and the Venetian sack of Pera in 1296 their residences had been lost. In the last years of the thirteenth century, however, new convents were established at Pera and at Kaffa. The missionaries who set out from these stations to more distant residences came to be known as peregrinantes, religious outside the established convents. It was evidently to regularize their position and to maintain discipline that the Dominican authorities between 1300 and 1304 appointed a vicar, probably Franco of Perugia, over the friars in the Black Sea region. This proved to be the first move in the formation of a new missionary organization, the Societas fratrum peregrinantium propter Christum, which was to play a major mission role during the fourteenth century.

Equally significant for the missionary effort farther south was the halting of the Mongol southwestward advance by the Moslems of

40 BOF, II, 266, 443 On the origin of the Franciscan vicaratus see van der Vat, Die Anfänge, pp. 111 ff.
Egypt. After encompassing the fall of the Baghdad caliphate in 1258, the Mongols were stopped at 'Ain Jâlût in Syria (1260). Thereafter, a resurgent Islam, led by the Egyptian Mamluks, increased the danger to the kingdom of Christian Armenia and the crusader states. The new balance of power did, however, offer certain advantages. The il-khanate of Persia, also menaced from Egypt and insecure in its relations with other Mongol khanates, was disposed to solicit western aid. As the situation in the Latin Levant steadily worsened the attitude of Rome and the Latin Christians, previously hostile to the Mongols, underwent a change. Beginning around 1264, when the curia was informed that the il-khan Hulagu was disposed to become a Christian, there was considerable diplomatic activity designed to establish some sort of Christian-Mongol cooperation against Islam.41

Commercial relations also improved during this period. Italians maintained stations in several places within the il-khanate as well as farther north. Tabriz, the Mongol capital, was an important depot. Trebizond on the Black Sea prospered as a port of entry, especially after the loss of the crusader states in 1291. The Genoese were established in Sivas on the routes which linked Persia with the Black Sea and the Mediterranean. As in other areas, the presence of western Christians was often the initial reason for the establishment by the friars of a station which might also serve the missions.

Late thirteenth-century Franciscan lists of stations mention Tabriz, "Salamasum" (Salmas), Sivas, and Arzeng (Erzinjan).42 At Tabriz the friars maintained a second station at the principal church in the city, which they served alternately with the Dominicans. Within this territory, which was included in the Franciscan vicariate of the east, the Minorites continued, at least occasionally, their efforts to convert Moslems. Two friars were martyred in Persia about 1284, and other martyrdoms were reported early in the fourteenth century. But to judge from subsequent developments native Christians were the principal objects of missionary attention.

Dominicans were also moving into Persia in the later years of the thirteenth century. Ricoldo of Monte Croce, whose contacts with the Moslems have already been described, was equally active among on-

41 Richard, "Le Début des relations entre la papauté et les Mongoles de Persie," Journal asiatique, CCXXXVII (1949), 281-287, in discussing the papal reply to Hulagu, formerly dated 1260 (Alexander IV), places this shortly before October 2, 1264, the death of Urban IV. The change in attitude may, therefore, be placed at this time. For further discussion on this and the contrast in papal policy as recently as 1260 see the same author's "The Mongols and the Franks," Journal of Asian History, III (1949), 55 ff
42, 80, f., 265
ental Christians. At Tabriz, it will be recalled, he preached first through an interpreter. But in Mosul he preached openly in Arabic to the Jacobite clergy and people. At the convent of St. Matthew outside Mosul, the seat of the Jacobite marphian, he held public conversations and the maphrian Gregory III was one of the converts. Later, at Tikrit, he received a profession of faith from an archbishop and a number of formerly Monothelite Maronites. In the account of his travels Ricoldo also mentions meeting other Dominican friars whom he found residing at Sivas and Maragha. Finally, he recalls the warm welcome he received from his confreres at Baghdad, where he first heard the news of the disasters of 1291.

At Baghdad Ricoldo was at first cordially treated by the Nestorians. Then when he attacked their beliefs he was driven from the church they had granted him. The catholicus Mār Yabhallāḥ III, who had been sent a profession of faith in 1288 by pope Nicholas IV, intervened and directed, against the will of many of his clergy, that Ricoldo be allowed to preach freely. He also received the friar at his pontifical throne. Apparently many converts were made.

Mār Yabhallāḥ III had been involved in one of the most important missions sent to the west by the Mongol government of Persia. In 1287–1288 his chief deputy, Rabban (Mār) Șāumā, a remarkable Nestorian bishop of Uighur parentage and a native of Peking (Khanbaliq), visited Rome and the west bearing letters from the patriarch and the Il-khan Arghun. When he and his associates arrived at Rome, probably in April 1287, pope Honorius IV had just died. During the ten-month interval before the election of a new pope the envoys traveled through Italy to the court of Philip IV at Paris, thence to an interview with Edward I of England in Gascony. Finally, on their return to Rome they presented to the newly elected Nicholas IV (1288–1292), the former Jerome Masci of Ascoli, minister-general of the Franciscans, the gifts and letters of Arghun.

The cordial, even enthusiastic welcome everywhere accorded the en-

---

voys seemed evidence that a formidable crusade was to be launched. Such, of course, was not to be the case, even though the pope, despite involvement in Italian and Sicilian diplomatic problems, attempted to organize military assistance to the beleaguered east both before and after the fall of Acre in 1291.

More relevant to the progress of missions are the religious discussions with Rabban Śaumā at the curia. Possibly owing to mistakes made by roexpert interpreters, Nicholas IV and the cardinals apparently either misunderstood or overlooked the envoy’s Nestorianism and confused his faith with that of the Greek schismatics. At any rate he was questioned about the procession of the Holy Spirit. He received communion at the hands of the pope and among the letters entrusted to him on his return was one to Mār Yabhatāhā which exhorted him to persevere and which contained the profession mentioned above, identical to that sent by Clement IV to Michael Palæologus in 1267. To Arghun the pope wrote expressing his gratitude for his favors and protection to Christians. But he rejected the idea that the khan, who had apparently expressed a desire to become a Christian, should await the capture of Jerusalem before receiving the sacrament of baptism. The papal letters to the queen-mother Maria (Palæologina, called Despoina Mugubon) and other Mongol dignitaries also remained on the same purely religious plane. 45

Other letters consigned to Rabban Śaumā on his return journey give the same impression. These included a communication to nine Latin Christian interpreters of the Mongol ruler praising their zeal and urging them to aid even more the work of the missionaries. Since their names all appear to be Italian, it is probable that they were resident merchants who had perhaps offered their services. A letter to all the Franciscan friars confirming and enlarging their faculties for the missionary apostolate was also included, as was also a gracious letter to the Jacobite bishop Dionysius of Tabriz, who had apparently been won over by the Minorites. He was sent a profession of faith and urged to further the work of the missionaries.

In the following summer (1289) another important batch of letters was entrusted to the Franciscan John of Monte Corvino. 46 John, who

45. For a discussion of Nicholas IV’s correspondence and his religious and diplomatic aims, including citations from his principal letters, see Soranzo, N Pugnet, pp. 266 ff.; BOF, II, 437-442. For a summary of thirteenth-century papal mission policy with special emphasis on Nicholas IV see Mintz, The Lives of the Popes in the Middle Ages, XVII, 14-141. According to the History of Yabaihalā, p. 72, Yabaihalā was given patriarchal authority over all oriental Christians and Rabban Šaumā power of visitation. No such concessions appear in papal documents. Cf. Soranzo, N Pugnet, pp. 265-266.

46 BOF, II, 440-442; Soranzo, N Pugnet, pp. 273 ff. How many of these letters were de-
was to become perhaps the most celebrated of medieval missionaries to the east, was already a friar of considerable oriental experience and something of a linguist. He had been in Persia and had brought to the pope letters from Arghun and from Hetoum II of Armenia, whose envoy he was. Cilician Armenia was then hard pressed by the Egyptian advance northward. Moreover, Hetoum was personally well disposed toward the western church. What is important here is that Nicholas IV was evidently much impressed by friar John's reports and disposed to place considerable confidence in his experience.

Among the persons to whom John was directly to carry papal letters were Arghun, king Hetoum II of Armenia, and various dignitaries, lay and ecclesiastical, including a number of distinguished Jacobite, Nestorian, Armenian, and Georgian prelates whose "good works" he had reported and who were urged either to profess or to continue in conformity with the faith of the Roman church. Finally, John was given missionary commissions well beyond the area of the Persiao khanate. He was directed to send a communication to the emperor (Solomon I, 1285–1294), archbishops, bishops, and people of Ethiopia bespeaking observance of Catholic teaching, and to Khan Kaidu of Turkestan urging his conversion and requesting liberty for missionaries. Then John was to continue on to the court of the great khan Kubilai at Khambaliq.

While these communications show Nicholas's energy in promoting missions, it also seems clear that hopes for cooperation against Islam were not far from his mind and reflect the attitude of many in the curia. Moreover, in August 1290 and again a year later, following receipt of news of the fall of Acre, the pope addressed a large number of letters to eastern rulers and prelates. Many of these were religious in content and urged perseverance in the faith or, as in the case of the letter to Arghun's third son, who had been baptized and taken the name of Nicholas, included a profession of faith. Yet to Arghun the pope addressed two letters, one religious in character, the other political, as though the two subjects, being of a different order of importance, were to be treated separately.47

Nicholas IV's pontificate was critical in the history of papal dealings with the Orient, much as that of Innocent IV had been. Though

47 Ernest Langlais, ed., Los Registros de Nicolás IV (2 vols., Paris, 1886–1905), pp. 894–895 (no. 6722), 904 (no. 6814); NOF, U, 473 ff., where Grubner points out that the envoys could have learned of Arghun's death (July 22, 1291) at Trebizond or Constantinople, but would nevertheless have fulfilled their mission. Cf. also Serafini, Il Papa, pp. 290–291.
missions were inevitably involved with diplomacy both before and after the events of 1291, the pope, a former Franciscan minister-general, tried to keep the two distinct, and it is possible to discern the greater emphasis on religious matters. Most of the pope’s letters, it is true, were sent to lay or ecclesiastical dignitaries, for Rome still attached great importance to the conversion of such persons. But such a tactic did not exclude missions to peoples. Nicholas issued mission bulls, sent out friars, solicited from rulers protection for missionaries, and called for reports of the entire eastern situation.

Nicholas’s hopes were not to be fulfilled. Arghun died in March 1291 without having formally embraced the Christian faith, and no coalition against Egypt materialized. In fact Ghazan, who came to the throne of the il-khanate in 1295, renounced the religious policies of earlier Mongol rulers and became a Moslem. Nicholas himself died in April 1292. A two-year interregnum was followed first by the pontificate of Celestine V and then by that of Boniface VIII and by continuing European diplomatic crises. In the east the Egyptian advance which overran the crusader states subjected Cilician Armenia to repeated marauding and threatened its very existence. A number of residences maintained by the friars were destroyed or abandoned, and an entirely new orientation had to be found in the succeeding decades. Oriental prelates who persevered in union with Rome did so increasingly at their peril. Mār Yabhalāhā, for example, remained well disposed toward the western church, and in 1304 the Dominican friar James of Aries translated and brought to Rome a second profession of faith from the patriarch which, it should be noted, clarified those points, particularly concerning the Virgin Mary as the mother of God, which had not been emphasized in the document originally sent in 1288. But it has also been noted that Mār Yabhalāhā’s letter, though exclusively religions in content, was sent at a critical moment in east and west. Benedict XI had just succeeded Boniface VIII. Ghazan’s successor was Arghun’s third son, “Nicholas,” now called Ōhentu, or Khodābanda Muhammad, who had renounced his Christian religion and, it was feared, might be even less disposed than his predecessor to seek rapport with the west.48

Mission methods and policies will be discussed more fully at the end of this chapter, but it may be well to summarize briefly what had been done during the thirteenth century.49 Rome, much preoccu-

48 Soranne, Il Papa, pp. 341–344; Chabot, Histoire de Mar Yabhalaha III, pp. 250–256. In this case the original text in Turko-Uighur is extant; Moule, Christians in China, pp. 132–134, doubts Yabhalāhā’s submission to Rome.

49 The most important recent work on this subject is Sossowiz, Il Metodo. An excellent
plied with European crises and deeply concerned with the protection of Christendom's frontiers, had given its sanction and support to an entirely new mission venture. Curial policy remained closely associated with diplomacy and the promotion of the crusade, but with the pontificate of Nicholas IV religious and political objectives tended to become more distinct. The curia had acquired considerable information about the Orient, but its knowledge of actual conditions still left much to be desired.

Organization of the mission effort was the responsibility of the two mendicant orders, and while the almost naive fervor of the early Franciscan days had not entirely disappeared, experience had pointed the way to somewhat more rational procedures. For example, Franciscan general chapters in 1263 and 1292 addressed themselves to the problem of recruiting. Evidently, therefore, the eastern missions were regarded as a responsibility of the entire order and not merely of the provinces immediately concerned. Toward the end of the century each order had laid the foundations for a mission organization: the Franciscan vicariate and the Dominican Societatum fratum peregrinantium.

Consideration had been given to the problem of missionary preparation. Later commentaries on the Franciscan rule add practical suggestions regarding training and conduct. No one was to be constrained to undertake a mission against his will nor was any friar to enter upon the task lightly or simply to escape discipline. Martyrdom was not to be sought for its own sake; indeed, under certain circumstances it was to be avoided. Significantly, too, in addition to Mos-

---


See also Martin Grabmann, O. P., "Die Missionsidee bei den Dominikanern und die Prozessionen des 13. Jahrhunderts." ZMR, I (1931), 13-146; Fritz Heinke, Historien von Romen (Historische Studien, no. 122, Berlin, 1933); Thoos, Criticism of the Crusade (Amsterdam, 1940); Cahen, chapter XXI in volume II of the present work, van der Van, Die Anfänge, pp. 11-17, 29-36, 206; du Senechal, Histoire générale de l'Ordre de Saint François, II, 60D-612; Monnier de Villard, Le Studio de l'Islam, pp. 35-31, and Joshua Freutel, Histoire du royaume latin de Jérusalem, II (Paris, 1970), ed. in
lems and infidels specifically mentioned in the rule, schismatics and heretics were also included. There is also greater emphasis on preaching and training for it. Indeed, in both orders the thirteenth-century missionary approach was the sermon. Doubtless intimate individual work followed, but the accent seems always to have been on public disputation.

Among Dominican writers Humbert of Romans and Ricoldo of Monte Croce stand out, and both urged a tolerant and flexible attitude toward eastern ecclesiastical usages. Ricoldo, of enure, spoke from personal experience. In dealing with oriental Christians, he maintained, the missionary should distinguish the fundamental matters of faith from those of ecclesiastical discipline or liturgy. He should be conversant with the culture and speech of the country. A solid knowledge of scripture was indispensable, and in discussion the missionary should commence with the less complicated problems. Above all, he should avoid overbearing and impolite behavior and always strive to conduct himself humbly and respectfully. Like most men of his day Ricoldo felt that it was important to win over the leaders of a given community first. Others would then be more likely to follow.

A conspicuous weakness in thirteenth-century missionary preparation was the absence of adequate language preparation. Successive Dominican masters-general attacked this problem, and their efforts were seconded by the acts of general and provincial chapters. But these efforts seem to have been largely designed to serve the area of Spain and North Africa, and linguistic preparation directed specifically toward the east is less easily traced. Humbert of Romans in a circular letter of 1256 urged the study of Arabic, Hebrew, Greek and the language of the "barbarians," and directed that instruction be provided by convents in the east. Nothing, however, is known of the results. Information regarding similar action by the Franciscans is lacking, despite the fact that Roger Bacon, who spoke with William of Rubruck on his return from Asia, publicized the necessity for better language preparation.

The principal effort of Rome to promote language study came in 1311 at the Council of Vienne and was inspired by the Franciscan tertiary Raymond Lull. Lull, who met his death while preaching to Moors in North Africa (1315/6) spent most of his life promoting missions. He learned Arabic and in his voluminous writings repeatedly harped on the importance of training not only in that language but also in other oriental languages. He understood the diplomatic significance of the Mongol conquests and the importance of knowing their speech and also the languages spoken by the separated Christians within their
domains. His efforts to enlist the support of the curia were rewarded when the Council of Vienne in Canon II decreed the establishment of schools for the teaching of Arabic, Hebrew, Syriac, and Greek at the curia and at the universities of Bologna, Paris, Oxford, and Salamanca.

This ambitious program was not, however, destined to be realized, and scattered references indicate language teachers only temporarily at Paris. It would seem, therefore, that the medieval academic community—not unlike its twentieth-century counterpart—was interested in procuring translations of essential scientific and philosophical material, not in oriental languages as a means of communication. Presumably, therefore, those friars who mastered oriental speech did so in the mission field, and there is at least one record of formal training in the Orient. The report of the Dominican provincial of the Holy Land, friar Philip, in 1237, which was mentioned above, states that four friars had been sent to Armenia to study the language. More important, Philip indicates that he had directed that native languages be studied in each convent. No further reference to any such schools can be found and apparently only a few friars became adept.

Popes were also aware of the advisability of training a native clergy. This appears to have been the purpose of Innocent IV's attempt to establish an oriental study center at Paris. References from the chancery of Alexander IV and Honorius IV indicate its continued existence for a time, but give no further details.

In an age still convinced of the necessity for the crusade it is significant that some ecclesiastical writers were becoming more aware of the antithesis between war and peaceful persuasion. The Franciscan Adam Marsh, in a memorandum to the pope (about 1250), while not repudiating the crusade, urged most eloquently the promotion of propaganda by preaching. As we have seen, the Dominican William of Tripoli pleaded for a contact "without arms." Thirteenth-century theology would have condemned attempts to convert unbelievers by force, force being justified only to avert danger to the Christian faith. But there is no evidence of any tendency toward the modern concept of the "salus infidelium."

Despite all these shortcomings and the frustrations and disappointments it would be incorrect to characterize thirteenth-century missions as a failure. If nothing else, a great deal of experience had been gained which was of incalculable importance to any future planning. Above all, the vast size of the world and the relative insignificance of the Christian population as compared with the adherents of other faiths was beginning to dawn on the consciousness of western Christendom.
B. Missions in the Fourteenth Century

NEW ORGANIZATION

The pontificate of Clement V and the subsequent papal residence at Avignon did not materially change the diplomacy of the Holy See with regard to the Orient. Clement and his successors were as eager to promote new expeditions to recover the Holy Land as their predecessors and they were aware of the precarious position of the kingdom of Cilician Armenia. European politics precluded any major crusade effort, however, especially when the outbreak of the Hundred Years' War removed the possibility of French or English participation. Finally, whatever hopes remained were dashed by the ravages of the Black Death in the middle of the century.

The various Mongol khanates, particularly after the death of Kubilai Khan (1294), generally pursued diverse and often opposing diplomatic policies. The Persian il-khanate, though its rulers were Moslem, was still concerned about the power of Egypt and continued for a time to seek accord with the papacy and the west. But when it became evident that no western military expedition was to be expected, the rulers, beginning with Abū Saif (d. 1335), perforce turned to a modus vivendi with Egypt. The death of Abū Saif was followed by the political disintegration of both Persia and formerly Selçukid Anatolia. Cilician Armenia continued to be a prey to Egyptian attacks and was finally overrun in 1375.

Fourteenth-century missions in the Kipchak khanate were, as in earlier years, dependent partly on the goodwill of the Mongol rulers and partly on the assistance of Italian merchants. A few Tatar princes and princesses were Christian, but the khan himself remained cold to papal entreaties. For as Islam gained ground in the Kipchak khanate and in Central Asia Moslem influence at the court increased. Some, it is true, have held that Tokuai (1291–1312) became a Christian, but this remains doubtful. Certainly he was outraged by the slave trade, which victimized Tatars among others; he expelled the Genoese from Sarai in 1307 and took over Kaffa in the following year.

50 For the politics of the Near East in this period see Mustafa M. Zaada, "The Mamluk Sultans, 1291–1355," volume III of the present work, chapter XIV, ibid., chapter XV, and Sivaran, Il Papa nel, chap. ii, xxxi.
Uzbek (1312-1342), his successor, permitted the restoration of the Genoese colony in Kaffa. Though Moslem influence remained strong and relations with Egypt close, Uzbek seems to have limited his opposition to Christians to forbidding them to ring their church bells. Moreover, he maintained a cordial correspondence with both John XXII and Benedict XI.

Under Janibeg (1342-1356) sporadic violence again endangered Christian settlements. But, following an accord with Venice which assured the independence of their colony at Tana from the control of Genoa, Janibeg too returned, doubtless for political and economic reasons, to a general policy of toleration.

The presence and support of Italian merchants remained essential to the friars. But they could also be a hindrance and embarrassment. The Dominican William Adam, among others, scathingly denounced the Genoese slave traffic, although he was careful to point out that many opposed it. All in all, no less than in the thirteenth century, missions were beset with persistent difficulties.

The missionary organizations which the mendicant orders launched in the later years of the thirteenth century were carried further in the early years of the fourteenth. The Franciscan vicariate of the north included, it will be recalled, two custodiae, Gazaria (the Crimea) and Sarai. An important document dating probably somewhat before 1318, the De locis fratrurn minorum et predicaturn in Tartaria, lists the stations maintained by the friars around that date. In addition to a large establishment at Sarai, the capital of the Kipchak khanate, there were two convents at Kaffa and fourteen other residences of which Soldaia, Cembalo (Balalava), Tana (Azov), and Kherson were probably convents, the rest smaller stations. Most of these, it will be observed, were in the Black Sea region, an important area of Italian trade.

The Franciscan vicariate of the east by the early fourteenth century was divided into three custodiae; Trebizond, comprising all but the extreme western part of Anatolia; Tabriz, which included greater Armenia, Azerbaijan, southern Georgia, and Mesopotamia; and Constantinople, which included western Anatolia. Despite losses, by around 1318 the number of stations had grown to eleven. Not all were of equal importance, but at least Constantinople, Trebizond, and Tabriz supported convents.

While the Franciscans were establishing the vicariate as a basis for

51. Golubovich (BOF, II, 143) dates the De locis around 1320. Lacemuz (Freres peregrinantis, p. 3, and AIPF, II [1932], 72-74) dates it sometime before 1318.

52. Golubovich (BOF, II, 265 ff) designates practically all western stations as convents De Sesvevalie, Histoire générale de l'Ordre de Saints François, II, 527-528. It follows Golubovich
missionary organization, the Dominicans were developing their own characteristic missionary society. In the first years of the fourteenth century, as has been noted, the *peregrinantes*, or friars not connected with regular convents, were placed under the obedience of a vicar, Franco of Perugia. By the year 1312 the term *fratres peregrinantes inter gentes* was used.

Since this new congregation, the *Societas fraternorum peregrinantium propter Christum* as it came to be called, had no geographical unity, it was not organized into a province. It was, in fact, a "society," a word whose meaning excluded territorial limitations. Although it did possess the right to bestow the habit if vocations were forthcoming, it was, like its missionary predecessor the province of the Holy Land, composed largely of religious from other provinces. Gradually the office of vicar-general developed from a simple delegation of authority by the master-general into a position of considerable importance resembling that of a provincial. \(^3\) The society flourished in the first half of the fourteenth century, but suffered grievously as a consequence of the Black Death. In 1363 the convents of Pera, Kaffa, and Trebizond were incorporated into the province of Greece. The society, restored in 1375, was suppressed after the capture of Constantinople in 1453 and again restored in 1464.

The missionary jurisdiction of the *fratres peregrinantes* included parts of Greece, Egypt, and Nubia, and all Asia except Palestine, Syria, and Cilician Armenia. This vast area was divided into sections

---

\(^3\) The *De locis* used the terms "monasteria inimissibles" or "loca," as do most of the Franciscan documents. Cf., e.g., *BOF*, I, 301-355, II, 265 ff. It seems advisable to designate as convents only those stations where there is record of a "guardian" (custos) or where there is evidence of a considerable number of friars. For the vicariate of the east only Trebizond and Tabriz, the residences of the custodes, satisfy these requirements. Goldobric (BOF, II, 131, 368, III 437) repeatedly refers to two convents at Tabriz, but since the second station, or at least its church was served alternately by Franciscans and Dominicans, and since the latter claimed no convent at Tabriz, it seems unlikely that there were two "large convents" of Minorites there. Presumably most of the other stations were occupied by only a few friars, although comparable evidence is lacking. They were Sultan Shah, Sultan Ismāʿīl (Salmas), Karsaḵon (Karabata), between Erzerum and Mė Amaç, Erivan, and Tiflis, all in the canton of Tabriz, Porsuk, Samoruo (Samson), and Carpi (Kere), on the southern shore of the Black Sea, were in the canton of Trebizond. Lemerz, *Frères pèlerins de l'orient*, pp. 189-190, notes 46-50, places both Carpi and Porsuk (identified with Pinosani) in the region of Erzerum and Tiflis, but identifies Karakon with the Armenian monastery of St. Theodore of Karabata, or Shatias, not with Karakon in the province of Erzerum.

\(^3\) The standard work on the *Societas fraternorum peregrinantium* is Lamerz, *La Société des Frères pèlerins de l'orient* alleup Alsatens, "Zur Geschichte der Societas fraternorum peregrinantium propter Christum," *ZMR*, XII (1922), 116-118. Lamerz has pointed out that the society included principally Italians, a number of French, a few English, and occasional Spanish, German, Hungarian, and Polish friars. Novices from alien territory included Latins from the Orient, Greeks, and Armenians.
In the Black Sea region the De locis lists two Dominican residences, Kaffa and Tana, and three in "Tartaria orientalis," Tabriz, Maraghe, and Dekharegan. Apparently a convent was also founded at Trebizond not long after 1315. In addition, the report of the Franciscan bishop of Kaffa, Jerome Catalani, in 1323, and the presence of Dominican bishops later would seem to indicate the possibility of perhaps temporary Dominican stations in Vasporo (Kerch), Kherson, Soldanu, Cembalo, and Sebastopolis. Tana, it seems, was abandoned in 1343.54

The next step in the organization of missionary activity in the early fourteenth century was taken by the papal curia when the suggestion made by mid-thirteenth-century missionaries that missionary bishops be provided was finally carried out. The immediate cause of this important move was the receipt of letters from the Franciscan John of Monte Corvino, perhaps the most celebrated of all medieval missionaries. It will be recalled that among the letters which Nicholas IV entrusted to friar John in 1289 was one addressed to the great khan Kubilai.

Doubtless the pope, as had his predecessors, sought contact with the chief Mongol ruler for the usual diplomatic reasons. But this, the most distant of medieval missions, was the least involved with diplomacy. In fact, the domains of the great khan contained at that time considerable numbers of Christians. Most of the Turkic peoples who had inhabited the border lands of the Chinese kingdom and who had in large numbers moved west with the Mongol conquests were Nestorians, as were many non-Chinese inhabitants of large cities. In addition, a large body of Greek Orthodox Alans from the Black Sea region had been brought to China by the Mongol conquerors.

Before he left Tabriz in 1291, friar John had already had considerable experience as a missionary and ambassador. He was familiar with Armenian and Persian and, either then or soon thereafter, learned the speech, probably Uighur Turkish, common in Tartary. Accompanied by a Dominican friar, Nicholas of Pistoia, and Peter Lucalongo, an Italian merchant, he took the sea journey to India, where Nicholas died and where John remained a year preaching and baptizing.

54. For the statement of Jerome Catalani see BOF, III, 48 ff
some hundred converts. Sometime in 1294 John reached Khanbalagh and was courteously received by Kubilai's successor, Temür Öljeiöl (Chêng Tsung).

The full story of John of Monte Corvino’s extraordinary mission lies beyond the scope of this chapter. What does concern us is the impact on papal mission policy. In 1305 and 1306 John was able to dispatch two letters to the west. The first, dated January 8, 1305, was entrusted to Venetian merchants who handed it on, along with a tablet from the great khan, to a Dominican missionary. He, in turn, gave it in some Dominican and Franciscan friars farther west and added the interesting information that a number of Dominicans, acquainted with the Mongol speech, had set out for China, but were forced to turn back after reaching the Crimea. The second letter, dated February 13, 1306, was brought to the curia, then at Poitiers, in the early summer of 1307 by Thomas of Tolentino, a Franciscan missionary in Tartary. It was addressed, moreover, to the vicars-general and friars of both mendicant orders then in Persia. Apparently friar John, who had originally set out with a Dominican friar, hoped for a collaboration of the two orders in the Asia mission. Together, the letters constitute one of the most remarkable of missionary reports and it is not difficult to understand why they made such a profound impression on the curia and the pope.

Clement V, despite poor health and persistent difficulties with King Philip IV, did not neglect the east. Naturally overjoyed by friar John’s communications, he issued the bull of July 23, 1307, in which the intrepid missionary was named archbishop and primate of the church in Tartary and patriarch of the Orient with jurisdiction from the Pacific to the borders of eastern Europe. Suffragan bishops chosen by the minister general of the Franciscans were consecrated by the pope and instructed to consecrate John. These suffragans, it should be added, were not assigned sees by the pope; clearly the new metropolitan was to exercise his own judgement in this matter. The suffragans also car-


57 BOF, 10, 93–95
ried letters to the great khan announcing Monte Corvino's promotion and bespeaking favors for Christians and missionaries.

Of the seven bishops named only three survived the dangers and hardships of the long journey. With a number of other friars they arrived in Khanbaliq, probably sometime in 1308, and there consecrated John archbishop. Two of them, Andrew of Perugia and Peregrine of Castello, were retained at the capital while other friars were sent to found new missions elsewhere. Later reports would indicate that these were at Yangiu (Yangchow), Quinsai (Hangchow), and possibly Nanking. Bishop Gerard Alhuini took up residence at Zaitun (Chüanchow, Tsinkiang) where a wealthy Armenian woman built what became the cathedral church. Thus Zaitun, one of the great ports of the Far East, became the second see of China. In 1311 Clement V named three more suffragans for the China mission, doubtless to replace those who had died, but only one, Peter of Florence, actually completed the journey.

A further step in the formation of an oriental hierarchy was taken by John XXII in April 1318 when he withdrew a large section from the original Franciscan province of Khanbaliq and created for the Dominicans a second Asiatic province with its archiepiscopal seat at Sultanlyeh (Kangurlan) in Persia, then the residence of the il-khan Abú-Sa'îd. The pope was probably influenced by the Dominican William Adam, a celebrated and much-traveled missionary, who had been in Persia in the years preceding and who was then at Avignon, where he composed his crusade treatise, De modo Saracenis extirpandi. 58

Since Franciscans not unnaturally protested the proposed infringement on their original jurisdiction, the boundaries between the two were the result of an agreement between the two orders. It is likely that the Franciscan Jerome Catalani, a distinguished missionary, one of the suffragans named in 1311, and in February 1318 named bishop of Kaffa, was active in the negotiations. At any rate, he was present at Avignon in 1318.

Thus it seems clear that the pope's move was, at least in part, a consequence of rivalries between the two orders and that he was seeking to rectify the imbalance in oriental missions by bringing the Dominicans more prominently into the picture. Most rivalries resulted

from a rather natural desire of one order to maintain exclusive operations in a given area. But in the early and middle years of the fourteenth century they were accentuated by the fact that among the Franciscan missionaries were a number of adherents of a controversial doctrine concerning the poverty of Jesus and his apostles which John XIXI condemned in 1323.

It is difficult to determine precisely the dividing line between the two provinces. It may have run along the northern and eastern shores of the Black Sea to a point not far from the Crimea, or have passed south of the coast to Mount Ararat. Thence it extended east to the Caspian coast and followed the line of demarcation between the Kipchak khanate and the Mongol dominions east of the Caspian. Owing to the difficulty of determining the exact boundaries of the central Asian kingdoms of "Doba and Chaydo" mentioned in the bull, the eastern limits of the province of Sultaniyeh are not clear. But apparently the northern jurisdiction consigned to the Franciscans included the Kipchak khanate, the eastern part of the Central Asian khanate of Chagatai, and the eastern empire of the great khan. The Dominican jurisdiction comprised Anamolla, the Perman khanate, including Tiflis in Georgia, and Transoxiana with the diocese of Samarkand, India, and "Ethiopia."

The curia was also at some pains to regularize the relations between the missionary bishops of the new dioceses and the superiors of their respective orders. The friars, or their native affiliates, were normally the clergy of the missionary dioceses, and each order had stations in the province of the other. Accordingly, while it was provided that the province of Khanbaliq should in general be the responsibility of the Franciscans and Sultaniyeh that of the Dominicans, it was also stipulated that the archbishops and their successors should obey their

---

59 According to Serrone, H. P. Pope, p. 513, note 4, the "Mons Barran" mentioned in the bull was probably somewhere in the western chain of the Caucasus near the Black Sea and was not Mount Ararat, as Gagibovitch and others have suggested. This would explain the inclusion of Sebastopolis on the eastern shore of the Black Sea in the province of Sultaniyeh, as well as all (and part) of Anamolla. The problem of the northeastern boundary of the province of Sultaniyeh is complicated by the fact that the boundaries of "Chaydo and Doba" have been identified (e.g., by William Adams) as equivalent to the modern Ilkhanate. Evidently, however, eastern Turkestan and the diocese of Amuq were included in the province of Khanbaliq Serrone also mentions, against Gagibovitch, the fact that the Ethiopians mentioned in the bull signify the kingdom of Ethiopia, not Lower India.

Lecomte, Frères pèlerins, pp. 137-140, follows Gagibovitch in placing the southern boundary of the Khanbaliq province south of the Black Sea shore and so drawn as to exclude Smyrna, Siven, and Sebastopolis from the province of Sultaniyeh. It is worth noting that the see of Smyrna, then in Turkish hands, was transferred to Tiflis (Dominicans) in 1329. It was revived after 1358 for the Franciscans. Cf. JNO, V. 10 ff.; de Sonnevile, Histoire générale de l'Ordre de Saint François, II, 533-555, Trill, "Die Entstehung," pp. 34-36.
respective masters-general (or their vicars) as vicars of the Holy See in missionary areas; the power of removal, however, was specifically excluded. Further, suffragans were to be subject to their respective provincials saving the authority of the Holy See in all things. On the death of a provincial the Dominican (or Franciscan) prior was to administer the archdiocese, and the friars of the archiepiscopal see were to convene the suffragans as electors.

Thus, although Franciscan suffragans who might be chosen in Dominican territory were to remain and be subject to the Dominican archbishop and vice versa, the masters-general of the two orders were given considerable authority. As in the case of Khanbalq in 1307, the archbishop of Sultaniyeh might designate sees and provide them with incumbents.

The dioceses of the Orient bore only a slight resemblance to those of Europe. Bishops had no regular revenues from their sees and no cathedrals. Their pastorate consisted of the small commercial communities of Latin Christians, the resident friars, and converts, and strict adherence to the rule of residence was neither practicable nor desirable. Jurisdictional lines were not always observed, and as conditions changed new sees were instituted and old ones transferred or suppressed. In certain areas where considerable numbers of oriental Christians were brought into contact with the western church bishops were a necessity. It was the policy of the Holy See to ordain conditionally all formerly dissident clerics about whose ordinations there was any doubt.

In addition to providing missionary bishops the curia demonstrated its solicitude for the missions in other ways. Letters were sent frequently to Latin and uniate clergy and to oriental rulers, for the Avignon papacy attempted, insofar as it was possible, to impose on eastern clergeries the same authority it was so efficiently implementing in the west. Papal correspondence reveals repeated efforts to enforce the Roman primacy of jurisdiction. Eastern liturgies were, it is true, not forbidden, but a Latinizing tendency persisted, for the papacy, fearful that doctrinal error might be associated with divergence of rite, held to the ideal of uniformity in all matters. Thus the impression was conveyed that oriental liturgies were tolerated only by papal concession. Such policies inevitably met resistance from eastern churches accustomed to a centuries-old tradition of autonomy, and could scarcely have reassured prospective converts.60

All these procedures were especially evident during the pontificate

---

60 On the mission policies of the Avignon papas see Wilhelm de Vrós, S.J., "Die Pápe
of John XXII (1316–1334). His mission bulls followed a form similar to those already described. Certain additional clauses reflect the controversy over poverty within the Franciscan order; others, particularly the reservation to Rome of absolution from the sin of shipping contraband to Moslems, has hopes, however vain, for the crusade. In the provision of prospective missionaries John urged the selection of well-trained experienced men, and he was concerned over their material support. In one or two instances he provided a subvention. Letters were written to oriental rulers and prelates bespeaking protection for missionaries, and under his auspices several departures took place. Certain letters, such as instructions given Dominican missionaries in 1333 concerning conditional rebaptism and reordination in cases of doubt, reveal that solicitude for uniformity so characteristic of the Avignon popes.  

John XXII stands out as a pope concerned over missions, but his predecessors had pointed the way and his successors continued his policies. Furthermore, what was done was accomplished in the face of mounting obstacles at home. The difficulties which had become apparent during the pontificate of John XXII grew worse. The war between France and England became a reality. The situation in the papal states and Italy remained unstable. The Black Death was a disaster which affected everybody, and, finally, the papal schism which began in 1378 enormously complicated all ecclesiastical activities.

MISSIONS IN THE PROVINCE OF KHANBALIQ

The Franciscan China mission continued well past the middle of the century and was in some respects the most flourishing of the medieval missions, perhaps embracing as many as 30,000 souls. Sometime around 1322 Odoric Mattiuzzi of Pordenone, one of the best-known Franciscan travelers, visited China after extensive journeys in Asia. He brought the remains of four Minorites martyred at Thana


in India to Zaitun where he deposited them in one of the two Franciscan residences he found there. Odoric also described the mission at Quinsai and added to our knowledge of the mission in the Mongol capital. 62

There are, however, a number of indications that after John of Monte Corvino’s death (about 1328) regular communication between the China mission and the Holy See was not successfully maintained. There was, for example, considerable delay in naming John’s successor. Not until 1333 was Nicholas of Botras, professor of theology at Paris, designated, and he appears not to have reached his post. In 1336 khan Toghan Temüü sent an embassy, guided by a Genoese merchant, Andalo of Savignone, to Benedict XII urging more regular contacts and conveying a significant request from five Alan chieftains. These men asked for the pope’s blessing and, recalling the ministrations of John of Monte Corvino, complained that they had been long without a shepherd. Apparently it was not known at Avignon that bishops Peter and Andrew, the last of the suffragans, had died. John de’ Marignoli, a Franciscan who set out in 1339 as papal nuncio accompanied by some fifty friars, made an impressive appearance before the khan (1342), and remained four years, was sent back with a similar request. The khan asked that he or some higher representative of the pope, preferably a cardinal and a bishop, should return as soon as possible. Marignoli’s account of his visit pictured an otherwise flourishing Christian community. 63

Although Marignoli’s report prompted pope Innocent VI to urge renewed efforts on the Franciscans, there appears to have been little or no response. And, so far as is known, no episcopal nominees reached their posts in China. Meanwhile the Black Death had taken its toll of active and prospective missionaries, and the spread of Islam throughout the Near East and Central Asia added to the difficulties of communication. And when in 1368 the tolerant Mongol Yuan dynasty was replaced by the Mings the mission experienced added difficulties. No doubt, too, the popes’ return to Rome from Avignon and the subsequent schism hampered papal initiative. It would seem, therefore, that the final decline can be attributed largely to the breakdown of regular contact combined with the failure of what had apparently

62 BOF, III, 375–393, de Sanoville, Histoire générale de l’ordre de Saint François, II, 575–578

been the pope's plan for a relatively autonomous province capable of existing on its own resources.64

John de' Marignoli's name is also associated with a kind of by-product of the China mission which lasted for a short time in the Central Asian khanate of Chagatai. As we have seen, Nicholas of Botra, named in 1333 to succeed John of Monte Corvino, apparently never reached Khanbaliq, but he did find a cordial reception at Almalyk in 1334. Some of the twenty-six friars who had accompanied him remained there with Richard of Burgundy as bishop. Two Christian courtiers of khan Buzan, probably Alan, donated a place in the city and built a church for one of the friars. Friar Francis of Alexandria, who had cured the khan of illness, became the tutor of his son, whom he later baptized. During a brief period of Moslem ascendancy the bishop, several friars, two lay brothers, a tertiary who acted as interpreter, and a Genoese merchant suffered martyrdom (1340). Among them was Friar Paschal of Vittoria, a remarkable missionary who had come alone to Almalyk and had foreseen the danger consequent on the accession in 1339 of a new khan, Yosun Temü.

When John de' Marignoli stopped at Almalyk in the following year on the way to China, he was able to preach freely. In fact, he built a new church and baptized a number of converts. These conditions were, however, destined to be of short duration. The latest report from the region dates from 1362 when James of Florence, named bishop of Zaitun, was put to death by Saracens. Two other friars were imprisoned and starved by Nestorians. These events presumably took place in Almalyk.65

What were the actual accomplishments of the Franciscan mission

64. The problem of a hierarchy is discussed by Richard, "Étude et diction du pégase catholique du Chine au XIVe siécle". There were requests for the appointment of an archbishop, notably from the Alans. Nicholas of Botra, professor of theology at Paris, was designated in 1333 and apparently reached Almalyk in Central Asia. News of this had reached the curia by 1336, and one of the letters entrusted to John de' Marignoli was addressed to Nicholas as archbishop. Although there is no evidence that Nicholas reached Khanbaliq, the curia evidently so assured Marignoli, as recorded, returned with another request for an archbishop. Apparently the news of the fall of the Mongol dynasty had not reached Avignon by 1370, for in that year Urban V sent out friar William of Prato as archbishop. (BOF, V, 149-154). De Senevalle, Histoire générale, 11, 645, maintains that Nicholas reached Khanbaliq and lived until 1389. Loewertz, AFF, 11 (1932), 58, notes that Dominicans were recommended to the emperor in 1333 along with archbishop Richomme, the curia may have supposed that there were Dominicans in China. A letter of King John I of Aragon, dated 1391, mentions a Franciscan who had just returned from a mission of many years at the court of "Proter John" (BOF, V, 281). This might indicate that some Franciscans were still in the Far East, possibly in Timurid. Cf. also Troll, "Der Chinasammler," pp. 145-150.

to the Far East? John of Monte Corvino mentions figures of around six thousand converts. The Alans were said to number fifteen thousand. Perhaps the total number reached thirty thousand. Apparently the friars were free to preach to anyone. Peregrine even mentions preaching in Moslem mosques and John de Marignoli speaks of disputations with Jews and adherents of other faiths. There remains the difficult question whether many of the converts were Chinese. None of the missionaries mentions learning Chinese. In fact, Monte Corvino tells how he "had six pictures made of the Old and New Testaments for the instruction of the ignorant, and they have inscriptions in Latin, Turkish, and Persian." Of course, the friars may have used interpreters, and a Latin gravestone recently discovered at Yangchow shows unmistakable evidence of having been done by a Chinese artist. On the other hand the presence of numerous non-Chinese in the cities is well known. The Nestorian communities, for example, were probably largely non-Chinese. Moreover, after 1318 Monte Corvino devoted his labors to a church of the Armenian rite.

John did, however, report that he "had an adequate knowledge of the Tatar language and script," and in a temporarily successful mission established in the domains of the Ongut prince George of Tenduk along the frontier of the Chinese empire, he tells how he "had translated into that language and script the whole of the New Testament and the Psalter," and says that while the prince lived, "mass was celebrated . . . according to the Latin rite in their own script and language, both the words of the canon and the preface."66

On the whole, therefore, it would seem correct to conclude that Chinese converts were few in number and that the medieval Chinese mission, oriental though it certainly was, ministered principally to foreigners living among the Chinese.

Meanwhile the Franciscans were continuing their work in the vicariate of the north, which lay largely within the domains of the khanate of the Kipchak Golden Horde. The episcopal sees of this area had formally been under the jurisdiction of the metropolitan of Khabalik, but the distances involved, combined with the fact that after

66 See especially Richard, "Essor et déclin," and Troll, "Die Chinamission," pp. 68-69. See also the discussion by Pasquale M. d’Elsa in Fonti Riccianesi, I, Storia dell’introduzione del Cristianesimo in Cina (Rome, 1942), pp. 155-156. D’Elsa accepts the view of Moule, Christianity in China, p. 150, note 7, and “The Primative Failure of Christianity in China,” International Review of Missions, XX (1913), 459, that the bulk of the converts were non-Chinese. Van den Wyngaert, Sonico franciscano, I, can 13 fl., contends, however, that the non-Nestorian converts were Chinese. The quotations are from the translation of John’s letters in Dawson, Mission to Asia, pp. 227-228.
John of Monte Corvino's death no replacement seems to have reached the Mongol capital, meant that any effective direction was impossible.

The most important see of the Black Sea region was Kaffa, which, it will be recalled, had been established in February of 1318 by John XXII with the Franciscan Jerome Catalani named as the first incumbent. Since Kaffa was a center of Dominican as well as of Franciscan missions, there were occasional Dominican bishops. The same was true of other sees – Sebastopolis, Soldaia (Sudak), Tana (Azov), Cembalo (Balaclava), Surgat (Solgot), and a short-lived archdiocese of Vespore (Kerch), with a suffragan see at Kherson.

Sarai, the Mongol capital and the seat of a bishop from around 1319, was raised to an archdiocese sometime after the middle of the century, and a papal document of 1363 mentions an archdiocese of Matrega with suffragan sees of Mappa (Anapa), Syba, and Lucuk. Apparently these archdioceses were also ephemeral and presumably reflect the practical acceptance of the nonexistence of any effective jurisdiction from Khanbaliq. They are also, however, evidence of Franciscan mission expansion north and east of the Black Sea.

The continued expansion of Franciscan missions is evident in other ways. Among the letters sent back to the authorities in the west two are especially significant: one addressed by friar Iohanca, a Hungarian, and his associates to Michael of Cesena, the Franciscan minister-general, and dated 1320 at Bashkir (Bascardia) in “greatest Hungary,” and the second sent from the friars at Kaffa to the general chapter of the order at Toulouse in 1323. Both letters report considerable success in conversions and in ministering to the many Christian captives among the Tatars despite constant harassment by Moslems. In fact, they estimate that a large proportion (one-third to one-half) of the population was Christian. Each letter appeals urgently for more friars to assist in this important work and, since those who do not know the language give instruction through interpreters, it is suggested that English, German, or Hungarian friars be sent because they seem to learn the language of the area more easily than others.

Frier Iohanca reported that he had been at Bashkir for six years,

67. For the episcopal sees see SDF. III, 205; IV, 310; V, 40-47, 92-94, 109-110, 233. Aksarai (Zarew New Sarai) was founded sometime around 1331 (ibid., II, 341); according to Golubovich, this became the seat of the bishop, but the evidence does not seem clear (ibid., II, 584, III, 205, 223-224, IV, 233, 232, V, 69, 92-94). In 1396 Surgat was raised to an archdiocese (ibid., V, 314). 

but he was constantly on the move following the camps of the Mongol armies. Friars in the convents in the towns could not leave to assist him without neglecting their own charges. Saracens, about whose doctrines he seems singularly well informed, strove to subvert the converts. When he tried to demonstrate the falsity of their belief's "in every way possible," they threw him into prison and tortured him. Only their fear of the Mongol authorities prevented his death. While he was in Bashkir Iobanca received a request from Shur (Siberia) for four Latin priests. A Ruthenian "schismatic," he tells us, had made many converts. Once again, the scarcity of missionaries available prevented any response to the request.

The friars at Kaffa described how they were able to redeem a number of captives with the sums given them and how they had trained some of the young boys to be friars. Since they were fluent in the native speech they could teach others and made excellent missionaries. Although the Kaffa letter refers to Pope John XXII's having received joyfully some news of their work, there seems to have been no effective response from the west at that time. Perhaps the contentions within the Franciscan order were partly responsible for the failure, for it was in the same year 1323 that John XXII condemned the teachings of the Franciscan extremists.

Missions in the Kipchak khanate did, however, continue through with increasing difficulty after the death of Uzbeg (1342). Friar Elias of Hungary seems to have been persona grata at Uzbeg's court and useful as an envoy both to and from the curia. A letter of friar Paschal of Vittoria (1338) reports that Sarai had remained a center for language study, for he stopped there to study the lingua Cumanica et lettera Vungarica. Thence he traveled to Urgench, a remote Franciscan station south of the Aral Sea, and finally on to the Franciscan residence at Almalyk, where, as we have seen, he was martyred in the Muslim reaction of 1340. On route he had preaching the Christian faith to Saracens and was severely maltreated as a consequence 69.

The Black Death took its toll of actual and prospective missionaries, but in later years the Minorites continued to push eastward and northward. Although the lists of stations for the years up to 1390 show some losses near the Black Sea, there were gains farther afield. Uzbeg permitted an establishment in New Sarai (Aksara), the new capital on the Akhtuba some miles south of the old. Apparently even after the Black Death reinforcements kept coming from Europe, though probably not in sufficient numbers. In 1370 Urban V sent a Fran-

69 On Paschal of Vittoria see SOP, 10, 16, IV, 244 ff.
ciscan bishop and twenty-five friars to "Georgia and other parts." More friars were commissioned the following year after a visit to Avignon by Francis of Podio (Le Puy), the vicar of the north, and, along with Dominicans, again in 1375.

Some time before 1389 a diocese was established at Kumukh in the Caspian region, and in 1392 two Franciscans whom the northern vicar sent to Avignon for recruiting purposes spoke of the urgent need for more missionaries in this remote area. With what seems some exaggeration, readily understandable under the circumstances, they maintained that "more than ten thousand converts there . . . and many multitudes elsewhere" stood in dire need of priests to prevent them from falling back into schism or embracing Islam. A letter of Boniface IX which mentions the mission stations along or near the Caspian coast is additionally significant because it mentions a Franciscan Societas peregrinantium. This is one of the earliest references to the Franciscan counterpart of the Dominican frater peregrinantes.70

Dominican missions in the Black Sea region were, as has been pointed out, less extensive, and with the exception of Kaffa little is known about them. Franco of Perugia could preach in the Tatar language and translate documents. It will be recalled that the Dominican missionaries bound for China in 1308, but forced to remain in the Crimea, apparently knew the language. There are other such references, and in 1333 the Dominican general chapter at Dijon directed that a language school be set up in Kaffa.

Meanwhile Armenian communities in the Crimea and elsewhere were proving to be an important factor in the missions. Around 1335 a young Armenian named Nicholas was converted at Kaffa, journeyed to Florence, and returned as a Dominican missionary. The Armenian Dominican Thaddaeus, who translated part of the Dominican breviary into Armenian, was Latin bishop of Kaffa from 1334 to about 1357. Especially after the middle of the fourteenth century, when western missions suffered irreparable losses as a consequence of the Black Death, Armenian communities remained important points of contact with western Christianity.

Another community with which the preaching friars seem to have made fruitful contacts was the Alan element in the city of Vosporo (Kerch). They were active there around 1333 when John XXII designated the city a metropolitan see.71

---

70 For the missions of the later years of the century see BDF, 8, 144 ff., 149 ff., 159-160, 213, 301, 314, 320, 330-333, and 11, 266, 272. For the Franciscan Societas fratum peregrinantium see Anselm Grotenkem, "Eine mittelalterliche Missionsgenossenschaft," ZMR, 11 (1912), 1-13.

71. Loemertz, Frères pèlerins, pp. 89-134.
Evidence concerning the actual accomplishments of the missionaries is, as is so often the case, not clear. Papal letters and missionary reports indicating "numerous" or "thousands" of converts from "schismatics and unbelievers" reveal progress but little specific information. Presumably, separated Christians constituted the bulk of the conversions, though one or two reports specify Mongol magnates and their families. Presumably too, the peak of missionary achievement was reached by the mid-fourteenth century before the ravages of the plague. Certainly by the end of the century on the eve of the invasions of Timur (Tamerlane), the mission situation had deteriorated. By the early years of the fifteenth century the Franciscan vicariate of the north had shrunk to the custodia of the Crimea, then called the vicariate of the Crimea. Dominican missions in the Black Sea area were by that time largely the responsibility of the Armenian frater

MISSIONS IN THE PROVINCE OF SULTANAPIYEH

When John XXII created the province of Sultanapiyeh for the preaching friars, he provided that six suffragan sees should be designated and their incumbents installed by the new metropolitan. Since both pastoral and missionary work was the responsibility of the frater

The first three of these sees were situated at some distance north and west of the centers of Dominican activity in Azerbaijan, and they proved to be of short duration. Smyrna was taken by the Turks and no successor was named for William Adam when he was transferred to Sultanapiyeh as Franco's successor in 1322. When the city was recovered in 1344 there began a new series of bishops, none of whom was a Dominican. Meanwhile in 1329 the pope had transferred the Dominican see to Tiflis; its designation as an episcopal see indicates at least the possibility of renewed mission activity in Georgia. The original Dominican residence there, abandoned toward the end of

72. Ibid., pp. 137-141, Loewy notes that three sees were outside the frontiers of the province. But see above, note 59, for a discussion of the boundaries between the two Asiatic provinces.
the thirteenth century, had been restored by the *peregrinantes*, but little else is known.\textsuperscript{33}

Apparently Sivas too had been abandoned toward the end of the thirteenth century. But since a suffragan, Bernard of Piacenza, was named in 1318 it can be assumed that the friars had returned. Bernard is, however, the only incumbent who is known to have taken up residence. It is clear, therefore, that soon after the bull of 1318 the problem of staffing the missionary dioceses had become extremely difficult. In fact, it was necessary in 1329 to appoint new bishops for Sultanlyeh, Tabriz, and Dehkaregan.

Sebastopolis, in ancient Colchis, on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, was in a part of Georgia not then under Mongol domination. The inhabitants were largely Abkhasians, related to the Circassians, who like the Georgians followed the Byzantine rite. The ruler at the time was favorably disposed to missionaries. The city was, however, a prominent slave mart, and in 1330 the second bishop, Peter Geraldus, sent to the bishops of England a remarkable letter in which he described his ineffectual efforts to curtail the shameful traffic as well as many other difficulties which confronted a missionary bishop living among separated Christians, not all of whom were well disposed, and hostile Moslems. Doubtless it was such frustrations which prompted him to plead for military aid from the west. There are no records of any successors.

There was, however, a growing awareness that the principal Dominican sphere of activity was to be in greater Armenia. Whether this area ever constituted an official *contrato* of the *peregrinantes* is doubtful. Nevertheless, it is here that the Dominicans achieved their greatest successes, and it is significant that some time between 1333 and 1356 Nadjivan (Nakhichevan) was added as a suffragan see of Sultanlyeh.\textsuperscript{74}

In this same Armenian region the Franciscans had already labored with considerable success. Since this proved to be one of the rare instances where a natural rivalry between the two orders degenerated into serious tension, it will be wise to describe the Franciscan activities first.

Traditionally, the “dispersed” churches of greater Armenia were dependent on the metropolitan see of Sis in the kingdom of Cilician Armenia, long in close political and religious association with the west.

\textsuperscript{33} Ibid., pp 172-175

\textsuperscript{74} Ibid., pp 135-172, for a discussion of all the suffragan sees of Sultanlyeh. Loenertz doubts that Persia can with any certainty be considered as a *contrato* under a vicar. A French translation of Peter Geraldus’ letter is given ibid., pp 133-134.
and where formal union had been ratified by synods at Sis (1307) and Adana (1316). Union with the Western church was, however, never popular with the bulk of the clergy and faithful, especially in the areas of greater Armenia not under the political dominion of the Cilician kingdom. Accordingly, the Holy See, and notably John XXII, gave the entire Armenian problem considerable attention. This meant diplomatic communications with rulers and attempts to launch a crusade as well as frequent letters to bishops in both the Cilician kingdom and the wider area to the north and west.

This region lay within the Franciscan custodia of Tabriz, where fourteenth-century lists mention two establishments in the city of Tabriz, one shared with the Dominicans, and stations at Sultamyeh, Salmas, and Erzerum. The most successful mission was maintained at the monastery of St. Thaddeus at Karakalissa near Maku. Around 1321 bishop Zachanias, who made his headquarters at St. Thaddeus, accepted union with the Holy See and speedily became a bulwark of the native Armeno-Catholic community and protector of both mendicant orders. 75

Prominent among a group of Franciscans who left Europe for the east and greater Armenia was William Saurati, a man of considerable learning. Saurati finally established himself at the monastery of St. Thaddeus, where he mastered Armenian and translated books from Latin into the native tongue. He then proceeded to give public lectures on holy scripture in Armenian, and his discourses were attended by native monks as well as by archbishop Zacharias. Another Minorite associated with St. Thaddeus was frat Ponzo, who also mastered the Armenian tongue and while at Avignon in 1344 completed an Armenian version of the Roman missal. In 1345, after Clement VI had named him titular archbishop of Seleucia in Cilicia, he returned to his charges in Persia. 76

During these years Dominican missions had also been growing in the same area. In 1323 William Adam, whom John XXII had named to succeed Franco of Perugia, was especially urged to promote missions among the Armenians of Persia. The pope also wrote to the catholica Constantine IV, in union with Rome, informing him of this mission and asking for his assistance. William was metropolitan of Sultamyeh only two years, and we know nothing of his missionary accomplishments there. But some information comes from the re-


76. MOF, III, 407-413, IV, 381-386; de Sasseville, Histoire générale de l'ordre de Saint François, II 536 ff.
ports of Jordan Catalani of Séverac, a Dominican who had acquired considerable experience and a thorough command of the native tongue in Persia. In 1328 he returned to Europe after several years in India. Jordan reported that the church of Sultanih in had a congregation of some five hundred and that a thousand converts had been made from dissident Christians at both Tabriz and Maragha.  

It can readily be understood that the appearance of Dominicans in a region where Franciscans had already been successful might occasion some resentment. In Tabriz, for example, where a single church was served, probably in alternate weeks, by both Franciscans and Dominicans, the Dominican bishop had only limited rights over what would normally have been his own church. In 1332 the Franciscans refused to recognize the bishop, William of Cigisiis, and went so far as to celebrate a second mass on Holy Thursday, a procedure contrary to the liturgical usage of that period.  

As the Dominicans apparently had considerable success in promoting the doctrines of Thomas Aquinas, recently canonized (1323), among certain communities of Armenian clergy, this, too, created tension, and Saurati, among other Franciscans, expressed opposition to the intrusion of such teachings.  

Evidently, therefore, the situation had passed beyond the stage of natural rivalry. The root of the matter seems to lie in the rift within the Franciscan order following John XXII's condemnation in 1323 of the extreme doctrine regarding the poverty of Jesus and his apostles. Many adherents of the faction of "Spirituals" had left Europe and a number appeared in the Franciscan community at Tabriz. Finally, faced with rebellion on a doctrinal matter, William of Cigisiis held an inquest in which he was assisted by the local Dominican vicar and the vicar of Persia. Although Saurati was probably not an adherent of extreme Spiritual teachings, apparently he was on good terms with those who were and who eagerly sought his advice. At any rate, his correspondence constituted part of the dossier of evidence along with other letters and the depositions of local Italian merchants. The friars named were not given a hearing. In 1334 the report was forwarded to Avignon, where bishop William appeared in person later in the same year.

The outcome of this matter is not known, but twelve Franciscans, suspected of adherence to the extreme doctrines, were expelled from Persia sometime after the death of John XXII (1334). In 1344–1345

77. Loenert, Frères pèlerins, pp. 153, 162, 165
78. ibid., pp. 154–155.
Clement VI published a bull against the Spirituals in Asia and instructed the archbishop of Sultaniyeh to investigate rumors that friar Ponzio had embraced this heresy. No record of any inquest has survived. Undoubtedly this whole affair seriously damaged the Franciscan missions in Persia, and most of the evidence of continued effort comes from Dominican sources.

Sometime around 1328 Bartholomew, Dominican bishop of Maragha, was visited by a Basilian monk, John of Qrma, superior of the convent of St. Mary, mother of God. Completely won over to the cause of union with the western church, he asked Bartholomew to accompany him northward to Qrma. This the bishop did in 1329, and before his death in 1330 he and John had laid the foundation for a new Armeno-Catholic community.

John had originally hoped to transfer his community bodily into the Dominican order, but finding this impracticable, he set out to reform his monks along Dominican lines. Assisted by the Friars-Priesters, they studied Latin and western theology. The Dominicans, in turn, applied themselves to the Armenian language. From this combined effort came translations of theological works, principally those of Aquinas, the constitutions of the Dominican order, and the Dominican breviary and missal.

Meanwhile John of Qrma had visited Avignon and returned to organize what was in effect a new religious congregation where several houses were grouped under one “governor.” Sometime after 1333 John of Florence, recently instituted bishop of Tiflis (1330) and Bartholomew’s successor in the direction of the enterprise, formally received the vows of John of Qrma and his associates. Thus was established what became known as the frater uniitores (of St. Gregory the Illuminator), an Armenian branch of the Dominican order. In 1356 Innocent VI gave his official approbation and decreed that the Dominican master-general should have the right of visitation, a measure which resulted in occasional friction between the uniitores and the peregrinantes.

It has been pointed out that the popes repeatedly gave instructions regarding conditional rebaptism and reordination, and that the “repe-
tition of sacraments, as the Armenians viewed it, continued to arouse hostility. Apparently the unitores were inclined to be over-zealous in such matters. Some of them, including it seems John of Qrma, in a desire to promote uniformity, overemphasized minor matters of usage rather than significant differences of doctrines. An extreme example was the list of 117 errors presented to the curia by the unitor Neises Balientz. It was an Armenian Franciscan, Daniel of Tabriz, who took it upon himself to defend his Armenian coreligionists. In 1341 he presented at Avignon a detailed refutation of the charges. After the Council of Sis in 1345, where the matter was further discussed, Daniel visited the curia once again and returned after Clement VI had named him bishop of Bosra in Syria. The ultimate effect of such controversies on Armenian Christianity is not clear, but it does seem evident that the unitores were commonly regarded as “Latinizers” and were far from popular, especially in the areas where Monophysitism remained strong.

When the Black Death took its toll of the fratres peregrinantes after 1348, the unitores proved to be the bulwark of Catholicism in the Near East. At one time there were no bishops in Persia and only three friars. Finally the curia and the Dominican authorities in Europe heeded the pleas of the Armenians and in 1356 named Thomas of Tabriz to the see of Nadirvan. Thomas was an Armenian bishop and probably a member of the unitores.

By 1363 the situation had so deteriorated that what was left of the fratres peregrinantes was temporarily placed under the jurisdiction of the Dominican province of Greece. In 1365 the unitores were accorded the same privileges formerly enjoyed by the peregrinantes. A decade later, largely owing to the pleadings of the unitores, the Holy See revoked the earlier decisions of the Dominican authorities and reestablished the fratres peregrinantes. Constitutionally, it was much the same as the congregation founded by Franco of Perugia, but times had changed. Islam was advancing rapidly, and virtually the only surviving Catholic communities were in the Crimea and in greater Armenia. In fact, the friars who went out in the later years of the fourteenth century formed a sort of mission of assistance to their Armenian brethren and, as a rule, resided in their houses.

During the fifteenth century, after Cilician Armenia had been conquered by Egypt, and then, along with greater Armenia, had been overrun by Timur in 1394, the Crimean communitie of the unitores

31. BOF, IV, 333–362. Cf. also the chronicle hostile to Armenians written around 1322 and presented to King Philip V of France by a Dominican (ibid., II, 404–407).
took on added importance. But after the fall of Kaffa in 1475 contacts between the peregrinantes and the unitores were broken once again. The latter, however, persisted in regarding themselves as Dominicans. Finally, in the sixteenth century, the Dominican authorities legalized what had already transpired by designating Nadjivan a province of the order.83

The tradition of the residence and martyrdom of St. Thomas the Apostle in India had remained strong during the Middle Ages, though much confused with legend. Moreover, although scholars have debated the exact locations, Christian communities existed in India from early times.84 The evangelization of India in the Middle Ages first developed as an outgrowth of journeys to China. As we have mentioned, John of Monte Corvino visited the east and west coasts and baptized some one hundred persons. He reported that he had spent thirteen months "in the church of St. Thomas the Apostle." Somewhat later William Adam traveled as far as Thana, Cambay, and Quilon, and preached in various places.

The most important missionary to India in the fourteenth century was the Dominican Jordan Catalani of Sévéroc.85 Friar Jordan had acquired considerable experience and a thorough command of the native tongue in Persia. In 1320 he and two Genoese merchants joined Thomas of Tolentino and three other Franciscans bound for China. Thomas was a missionary of some standing who, it will be recalled, had delivered John of Monte Corvino's letter to the curia. The party took the sea route, intending to stop first at Quilon on the southern Malabar coast in order to visit the church of St. Thomas the Apostle. They were forced to disembark on the island of Saizette near the modern site of Bombay. At the nearby town of Thana they were received by some Nestorians (March 1231). Jordan was then persuaded to visit the community of Sofale some miles up the coast, where he found a church built on the ruins of an older edifice attributed to St. Thomas and where he baptized some twenty persons.

Meanwhile Thomas of Tolentino and his companions had been ar-

---

82 Loemertz, Pères pèlerins, p. 130.
rested by the Moslem governor at Thana. As Jordan returned to assist them he learned news of their martyrdom. Apparently the death of the Franciscans made such a profound impression that even several Moslems requested baptism. But the vigilance of the authorities forced Jordan to abstain from all propaganda. He did, however, after a long delay obtain permission to bury the martyrs.

Returning to Sofale with some of the relics of the martyrs Jordan resumed his mission among the Christians of the region. At length (October 12, 1321), while he was at Ghogah on the Kathiawar peninsula, he was able to entrust a report to one of the Genoese, who took it to the Dominican and Franciscan headquarters at Tabriz. By this time Jordan had baptized some one hundred and twenty converts.

Although the Dominican Nicholas of Rome left Tabriz shortly after the receipt of Jordan's letter, the latter was again at Thana in 1323, for in January of that year he wrote another letter far less hopeful in tone. Difficulties were mounting and only ten more converts had been made. Two other letters and relics of the Thana martyrs were sent to Dominicans in Persia. Jordan also spoke of Ethiopia, which he hoped to visit, and pleaded that ships be equipped in the Indian Ocean for a new crusade against Egypt. Not for some years did other friars arrive and enable Jordan to return to Europe. The precise date is not known, but he was in Avignon in 1329.

In Avignon Jordan was named bishop of Quilon (Colun) in southern India and entrusted with letters from the pope to various Christian communities in India, to a number of Indian princes, and to the king of Ethiopia, 'Amda Seyon. Apparently Jordan was still in Avignon in 1330, but that is the last that is heard of him and virtually the last of the medieval Indian mission. Sixteen years later the Franciscan John de* Marignoli, who spent a year in Quilon on his return from China, mentioned a Latin church of St. George and some "friars," but told practically nothing of the western Christian community in India.

While at Avignon Jordan met Thomas Mancasola, who had brought to the curia a report of Dominican activities in the western section of the khana of Chagatai, which according to the demarcation of 1318 was included in the province of Sultaniyeh. Mancasola, it seems, had been sent to Avignon by khan Eljigidet, and his favorable report prompted the pope to reply and to appoint the Dominican friar the first bishop of Samarkand. He was to have left for the Orient with Jordan, which raises the question whether in fact he departed. If he

did, he had returned to Avignon by 1342, and no other bishops of Samarkand are mentioned.66

Although the Egyptian government permitted the friars to maintain a caretaker establishment in Jerusalem and to serve the spiritual needs of Latin Christians resident in their domains, they were hostile to missionary effort and suspicious of any dealings between westerners and the Christians of Ethiopia and Nubia. Nevertheless, there is some evidence which indicates the possibility of contacts with the Christians of Ethiopia during the thirteenth century. It was mentioned above that the friars sent about 1237 to “the Jacobite patriarch of the Egyptians” by Philip, the Dominican provincial of the Holy Land, might have gone beyond the Egyptian frontier. Moreover, from the time of Innocent IV the rulers and people of Ethiopia and Nubia were regularly included in the papal missionary letters. A letter of Clement IV asking the master general of the Dominicans to send friars to various lands including Ethiopia is somewhat more specific in that it mentions that they were to be accompanied by a certain friar Varinace who had been there. And it will also be recalled that among the commissions entrusted to John of Monte Corvino was a letter to the archbishop of Ethiopia. Moreover, John later mentioned that he had received a delegation from Ethiopia requesting missionaries. Evidently, therefore, the curia was aware of the existence of an Ethiopian hierarchy. Further evidence of missionary journeys is lacking.67

William Adam, the Dominican whose activities in Persia and India have been mentioned, stayed some time on the island of Socotra awaiting a chance to enter Abyssinia. Not only did he desire to evangelize the Ethiopians, but he considered Socotra a possible base for crusaders. As we have seen, Jordan Catalani had similar ideas. Such references may have contributed to the growing belief that Prester John’s empire was to be located in the southern continent.

There are reports of considerable missionary activity on the part of the Dominicans in the fourteenth century, but they appear to be of late origin and not substantiated by contemporary documents. It must, therefore, be concluded that the possibility, even the probability, of missions in east Africa during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries may be admitted, but that conclusive evidence of actual journeys or accomplishments is lacking.

MISSIONARY METHODS
IN THE FOURTEENTH CENTURY: CONCLUSION

The principal innovation in the policy of the western church toward the east during the fourteenth century was the establishment of an oriental hierarchy. This, together with the formation of the *fratres peregrinantes* and the expansion of the Franciscan vicariates, enabled the popes and the mendicant orders to proceed in a somewhat more systematic fashion. This is evident in a number of ways, Papal letters and the official pronouncements of the orders indicate, for example, an insistence that the missions be served by adequately trained men and that those unfit be removed. With regard to such matters as religious training and theological competence there is evidence that friars, even on the longest journeys, carried books. Books are mentioned in mission reports, in instructions to missionaries, and in financial provisions by the curia. Primarily, as might be expected, these are liturgical books. But Dominicans, it will be recalled, taught Aquinas in Armenia and translated some of his works into the native language. Friar Ioanca cited Peter Lombard, albeit incorrectly, in refuting the doctrines of the Ruthenian “schismatics.” Since Ioanca seems in other ways to have been a well-educated person, his mistake may well have resulted from the lack of books in his remote station.11

Scarcity of material precludes any detailed analysis of the methods of the missionaries themselves, but some tentative conclusions can be drawn. In order to facilitate the friars' adjustment to varied surroundings—“accommodation” as it is called in modern times—the curia granted privileges regarding dress, beards, and such matters not enjoyed by their confrères in Europe. Although results are difficult to estimate, some modest attempts were made to train native clergies, a policy suggested, it will be remembered, as early as the pontificate of Innocent IV. We have already referred to the ruler of Tenduk on whom John of Monte Corvino conferred minor orders and his report that he was training forty native boys and had taught them to chant in Latin, as well as to the 1323 report of the Franciscans of the Klipchak khanate that they were training converts to become friars. A later notice of the year 1364 emphasized the teaching of Latin, and

88 In addition to the works cited above in note 49 see the following studies by van den Oudenaarden on the Armenian missions. *Das Officium der Innen des Bischofs im Bistum der "Fratres Unicius" von Otagan (BedeNe, 1953); Eine armenische Übersetzung der Summa Theologica des H. Thomas am 14. Jahrhundert,* *Dirus Thomas, VIII* (1930), 245-271. "Oriantucia 3 Thomas Aquinas in Armerica Inguh," *Angelica, VI* (1929), 77-82.

in 1370 Franciscan official instructions to missionary vicars directed that no new members be received without careful testing of their orthodoxy. From such scattered references as these it can be assumed that at last a beginning had been made and that the problem was being faced. Further, these same sources indicate that, despite the emphasis on preaching and disputations which persisted into the fourteenth century, some progress was made toward promoting more intimate work with individuals.

One intensely practical concern of the missionary friars was that of material support. In China, and perhaps in other Mongol countries, the khan provided a special subsidy for the Franciscan friars. Apparently it was the custom for the Mongol rulers thus to provide for ambassadors and envoys of foreign rulers. On certain occasions the papacy furnished travel expenses and money for books. Both Dominicans and Franciscans were permitted to make use of ill-gotten goods which might be turned over to them provided those to whom restitution was due could not be found. The Dominican authorities allowed the missionary friars to use money and permitted solicitation everywhere regardless of conventual or provincial regulations. At least one master-general, Berengar of Landotte, recommended the fratres peregrinantes to the good offices of all priors and ordered that when in Europe they be given hospitality and provided with liturgical books. The expenses of the vicar of the peregrinantes were defrayed by a subvention levied on all convents of the order.

The principal means of support were the merchants whose spiritual needs the missionaries served. In fact, it must be evident from the preceding pages that many friars were chaplains to merchant establishments first and missionaries second. Apparently a certain amount of papal pressure was sometimes necessary. Gregory IX, for example, specifically requested merchants to defray certain expenses for the first installations of the Dominicans. Moreover, there were occasions, as for example when they opposed the slave traffic or trade with the Moslems, when friars incurred the enmity of merchants.

Although accurate figures are not available, it seems clear that the

90. Altaner, "Zur Geschichte des Unterrichts," p. 167. For the report of 1323 see above, pp. 502-503, and note 68. Van der Vat cites the 1370 directive in his review of Simonsen, H. Melo, in Neue Ztschrift für Missionswissenschaft, IV (1944), 134. He also points out the difficulty of determining the ethnic origin of converts and the possibility that some may have been repurchased slaves, see his "Expenses camerarum apostolicarum pro missionibus Fratrum Minorum inter Tartaros ann. 1318-53," AJP, X (1930), 538-540.

91. On expenses, concessions regarding drums, and so on see de Senevalle, Histoire générale de l'ordre de Saint François, II, 610-612; van der Vat, Die Anfänge, note 57, BOF, V, 112-113.

148 Gregory's bull is cited in Potthast, Regesta, no. 9846, cf. Tantum, Acta Honoris III et
Franciscans, the larger of the two mendicant orders, sent out more missionaries and maintained a larger number of permanent stations. Doubtless there was rivalry, for even after the delimitation of the two oriental provinces in 1318 members of each order could be found in most of the territories of the other. But the most spectacular cases of friction were a byproduct of the controversy within the Franciscan order over poverty. Certainly in Persia this must have interfered seriously with the work both orders were promoting.

There is also, however, ample evidence of coöperation. The houses of both orders were open to missionaries en route. John of Monte Corvino set out for China in company with a Dominican, addressed one of his letters to the authorities of both orders, and apparently hoped that both might be established in China. The Dominican Jordan Catalani traveled with Franciscans to India, cared for the relics of the Franciscan martyrs, and reported to the authorities of both orders in Persia. Other examples could be cited.

If such developments may be regarded as positive achievements, it must also be added that in the entire mission picture there remained many inadequacies. The overall impression left by the scanty sources is one of experiment, of trial and error, of a beginning only in the confrontation of an enormous task. It has already been pointed out, for example, that the projected plans for systematic language training in Europe did not materialize. Only Paris, apparently, and only for a short time, carried out the directives of the Council of Vienne. Something of the discouragement as well as the strangely provincial attitude prevailing in the west, even at the curia, may be seen in John XXII’s suggestion to the king of Cilician Armenia that to facilitate the work of the friars his subjects should devote themselves to the study of Latin. Thus, while it is true that a considerable number of missionaries learned one or more oriental languages—an impressive achievement, and an improvement over the preceding decades—the use of interpreters continued. Further, it has been pointed out that the curia was less well equipped with interpreters than were the courts of eastern magnates.

Somewhat similar observations can be made about the west’s knowledge of oriental civilization and religion. Something has already been said of the lack of any real understanding of Islam. Understanding of oriental Christianity, though it did improve in the fourteenth century, was still insufficient. The Holy See continued to be overly optimistic.

---


about the possibility of large-scale conversions, and it still attached
too much importance to the conversion of magnates, ecclesiastical
or secular. Moreover, though the plan for an oriental hierarchy may
have been bold and imaginative, it proved difficult to implement.
Viewed in retrospect, it seems too ambitious, perhaps revealing more
zeal and energy than comprehension of Asiatic conditions.

In a work dedicated to the history of the crusades, it would seem
appropriate to add some observations about the relation between mis-
sion and crusade. What has been presented here points inescapably
to the conclusion that missions were more often than not associated
with diplomacy. While the appearance of the Mongols first posed a
new danger and then raised hopes of cooperation, Europe's constant
concern remained Islam. This was, after all, still the age of the cru-
sades, though becoming increasingly theoretical in the fourteenth cen-
tury. The twentieth-century west has only to consult its own feats
of communism to understand how deeply the expansion of Islam must
have affected the mentality of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.
There is no doubt that many, perhaps most, of the missionaries shared
the feelings of their contemporaries and accepted the war with Islam
as an unavoidable necessity. Moreover, in an age when religious and
political affairs were not so compartmentalized as they are today it
could scarcely have been otherwise.

From the standpoint of numbers converted the medieval mission-
ary achievement in the Orient was not brilliant. Moreover, as is evi-
dent in so many mission reports, the total number of missionaries
sent out was hardly sufficient. Such observations must not, however,
be permitted to obscure certain very real accomplishments. Mission
stations in widely separated and distant lands had been maintained
for decades. Contacts had been renewed with oriental Christians, some
of which, at least, proved to be permanent. Europeans had finally
gained some first-hand knowledge of Asia and its peoples.

It must again be emphasized that European conditions were ad-
verse, while after the middle of the thirteenth century in the east the
triumph of Islam in Central Asia and the overthrow of the Mongol
dynasty in China were followed by the rise of the Ottoman Turks
in Anatolia. Meanwhile the Black Death took its toll of active and
prospective missionaries. As a consequence of all these things, much
that had been started could not be carried forward.

In short, medieval missions to the Orient were in a real sense
only a beginning. In many areas, where centuries were to pass before
missionaries were able to take up again the work begun by the
friars of the high Middle Ages, they represent a beginning without a sequel.

The most impressive feature of the entire mission story is the extraordinary dedication of the friars themselves. Many of them faced incredible obstacles. Oriental Christians were often jealous and Moslems hostile. Martyrdoms were not infrequent. Travel in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries was always difficult and usually dangerous. The trip to the Levant had become fairly routine, but the overland journey into central and eastern Asia commonly required many months to complete, and the endurance of hunger, thirst, intense heat, and severe cold. Food was scarce and often unpalatable to westerners. Moreover, the ships which plied the Indian Ocean were not designed to reassure the faint-hearted. A considerable number of friars never reached their destinations. Those men who braved all the hazards which confronted the medieval missionary to the Orient deserve to be numbered among the great pioneers of history.
This gazetteer has been prepared to fill a variety of functions. Every relevant place-name found in the text or on the maps is here alphabetized and identified, variant spellings and equivalent names in other languages are supplied, and the map location is indicated. Thus it not only serves as an index to the maps and a supplement to them, but is itself a source for reference on matters of historical geography and changing nomenclature.

In the gazetteer, alphabetization is by the first capital letter of the form used in maps and text, disregarding such lower-case prefixes as al- and such geographical words as Cape, Gulf, Lake, Mount, and the like. The designation "classical" may mean Greek, Latin, biblical, or other ancient usage, and the designation "medieval" generally means that the name in question was in common use among speakers of various languages during the crusades, or appears in contemporary sources.

On the maps may be found nearly every place name occurring in the text of this volume or of volume VI, since the same maps appear in both volumes. Exceptions include a few places whose exact locations are unknown, a few outside the regions mapped, several in areas overcrowded with names, and some of minimal importance or common knowledge. Maps 1-8 are revised versions of those appearing in earlier volumes of this work; maps 9 and 12 are completely revised from maps in volume III, and maps 10, 11, and 13 are new.

All maps for this volume have been designed and prepared in the University of Wisconsin Cartographic Laboratory under the direction of Onno Brouwer, assisted by Kenneth Parsons. Base information was compiled from U.S.A.F. Jet Navigation Charts at a scale of 1:2,000,000. Historical data have been supplied by Dr. Harry W. Hazard (who also compiled the gazetteer) from such standard works as Spruner-Menke, Stieler, Andree, and Baedeker for Europe, Lévi-Provençal for Moslem Spain, Rubió i Lluch and Bon for Frankish Greece, and Honigmann, Dussaud, Deschamps, Cahen, and LeStrange for the Near East. Additional information was found in The Encyclopaedia of Islam (old and new editions) and İslam Ansiklopedisi, in Yâqût and other Arabic
sources, in *The Columbia Lippincott Gazetteer of the World*, on Michelin and Hallweg road maps, and of course in the text of this volume.

Aachen (German), Aix-la-Chapelle (French): city —F2bS: 2, 3.
Ablaṣta, town — see Albistan.
Abydos (Latin), Abydos (Greek): town, now abandoned —J2d5: 3, 5.
Abyzynthia, region —see Ethiopia.
Aceruta (Italian): town 8 miles west of Naples (G5d5: 3).
Achaea (Latin), Achaia (classical Greek), Akhaia (modern Greek): district of northern Greece —D2e, 4.
Acre; Ptolemais (classical), Sault Jean d'Acce (medieval), Akka (Arabic), Akko (Israeli): city, port —L1f3: 1, 7.
Adana or Sairat (medieval), Arzata (classical), Antalys (Turkish): port —K3d4: 1, 3.
Adam (classical, Armenian, Turkish): city —L1f3: 1, 6.
Aden; Adum (Arabic): port —N1f3: 12, 13.
Adrianople; Hadrianopolis (classical), Edirne (Turkish): city —J2d4: 1, 3, 5.
Adriatic Sea; Hadria or Marcus Rhodanus (Latin) —GIHd: 2, 3, 4.
Aegean Sea; Aegina Pelagos (Greek), Mare Aegeanum (Latin), Ege Denuz (Turkish) —D1e: 1, 3, 4, 5.
Aegina (Latin), Enula (medieval Italian), Evia (Turkish), Alyfna (modern Greek): island —L1d3: 4.
Aenos or Aenous (Latin), Enos or Menos (medieval), Enex (Turkish): town —J2d5: 3, 5.
Aenolia (Latin), Alonissos (classical Greek), Astolia (modern Greek): district of central Greece —E2e: 2.
Afghanistan: region, now a nation, east of northern Persia —Q5f5: 12, 13.
Agamgam (Turkish), battlefiel.d —see Darb Sermada.
Agios (Greek): Greek Orthodox monastery —K3f1: 3.
Aguilera (medieval), Alguife: Aiguilhe (French): village just north of La Puy (E4d4: 2).
Aguilere (medival): marks near Acre (L1f3: 7).
Aiglione Pelagos —see Aegean Sea.
Aix-la-Chapelle: city —see Aachen.
Akakia (Greek): village —K4e5: 3.
Akamas (Greek): district on Cape Arama —K3d5: 8.
Akchihou (Greek): village —K4e5: 3.
Akkia (Greek), village —K3f1: 8.
Akhuba (Russian): river —N3c3: 1.
'Akkâ, Akko: city, port —see Acre.
Akkerma (medieval), Belgrad Dnestrovi (Russian): port —K1e4: 1.
Akko or Salai-Berke (Tanz): town, now unimportant —N2c2: 13.
Akshehir; Akshehe (Turkish: white city), Philomelion (Latin), Philomelion (medieval Greek): town —K2c2: 1, 3.
Alamut; Alamut (Persian, Arabic): fortress —O1c6: 12.
Alanya (Turkish), Scandicce or Candiloro (medieval), ‘Alyah or ‘Aliyy (Arabic): port—K268. 1, 3.
Alba Iulia (Latin), Wismenburg (German), Gyalaföldvér (Hungarian), Alba Iulia (Romanian): town—14c4: 3.
Albana (medieval), Shqipia or Shqiperi (Albanian): region sw of Epirus, now a nation—Hid: 3, 4.
Albeno Laziale (Italian), town 14 miles sw of Rome (G3d4: 2, 3).
Albara (medieval), al-Ilahah (Arabic): village—L2c5 6.
Albstan (medieval), Arasazas (Latin), Abtschut (Armenian), Elbistan (Turkish): town—L1J6: 1.
Aleman (medieval), castral near Câmpaure (K5F3: 7).
Alexpo (Italian), Berocea or Chalybos (classical), Ḥalab (Arabic), Haleb (Turkish): city—L3d4: 1, 6.
Alexandria (Italian), town 17 miles sw of Montecavallo (F4c5: 3).
Alexandretta (medieval), Iskenderun (Turkish): port—L2a4: 6.
Alexandretta, Gulf of, Sinai lascas (Latin), Iskenderun Körfezi (Turkish): L1c4: 6.
Alexandria (classical), al-Iksandaryah (Arabic): city, port—J5l4: 1, 3.
Allgnaa-du-Vest (French): village 25 miles west of Mompeller (E4d2: 2).
Almeyd (Turkish), Amlaç (medieval): town—R5d5: 13.
Alpheus (Latin), Alpheios (classical Greek), Charbas (medieval), Alfe (modern Greek): river—L2c3: 4.
Alps: mountain range—FGe: 2, 3.
Alsace (French), Alsace (Latin), Elzas (German): region west of the upper Rhine—Fe: 2, 3.
Altologos: town—see Ephesus.
Amalfi (Italian): port—G5d5: 3.
Amasea (Latin), Gevui, Alma, or Elasa Dagi (Turkish): mountain range—L2a6: 6.
Amasia (Turkish), Amastus (classical): port—K1d4: 1, 3.
Amasya (Turkish), Amasia (classical): town—L1d5: 1.
Amida (classical): Amid or Deyr-e Blak (Arabic), Diyarbekir or Diyarbekir (Turkish): town—M1e3: 1.
Amiens (French): city—E3c1: 2.
Amida or La Mandelée (medieval): village, probably Amendolone, 83 miles sw of Thasos (H3d3: 3).
Amorgos, Murgio (medieval Italian), Yamurgi (Turkish), Amorgos (modern Greek): island—J3J5: 5.
Amshu (Arabic): village 2 miles nw of Jembel (L1f1: 6).
Anadolu-Hisar (Turkish, castle of Anadolu): fortresses—J5d4: 5.
Anagni (Italian): town—G4d4: 3.
Anaphi; Anaphé (classical Greek), Namfei (medieval Italian), Amsfi (modern Greek): island—J3e4: 5.
Anatolia, Asia Minor (Latin), Romania or Rûm (medieval), Anadolu (Turkish): region south of the Black Sea—J1K3: 1, 3, 5.
Anchialus (Latin), Axillo (medieval), Akhyle (Turkish), Pomoruye (Bulgarian): port—J5d3: 5.
Ancona (Italian): port—G4d2: 2, 3.
Andalusia, al-Andalus (Arabic), Andalucía (Spanish): region of southern Spain—CDe: 2.
Andechs (German), priory on Ammersee, 30 miles sw of Augsburg (Glc2: 3).
Andris, Cape, or Cape Saint Andrew; Le Chef (medieval): 28 mi of Cyprus—K5e5: 8.
Andros (classical), Andro (medieval Italian), Anakia (Turkish), Andros (modern Greek): island—J5e5: 3.
Angoulême (French): town—L5c5: 2.
Ampo (island)—see Aysakos.
Amou (French): region of NE France—DSc: 2.
Ankara (Turkish), Ankara (classical), Angora (medieval): town, now city—K3el: 1, 3.
Anopolis (Greek), village—L5c5: 3.
Antalya, see Antakya.
Antillies, see Antilles.
Antioch, Antiochia (classical), Antakya (Arabic), Antakya (Turkish): city—L2e4: 1, 6.
Antiparos (classical), Andiparos (modern Greek): island just SW of Paros—J1c3: 5.
Antilya (Italian), Antivalina (Latin), Bar (Serbian): port—H5d3: 3.
Anydro (classical), Amdo (medieval Italian), Andhiros (modern Greek): island—J1c4: 5.
Apamea (classical), Alamiyeh or Qafiz al-Ashiq (Arabic): town, now unimportant—L2e5: 6.
Apres (medieval): unidentified port, probably between Kavalla and Rodosto (Jd: 5).
Apulia (classical), Puglia or Puglie (Italian): region of SE Italy—Hd: 3.
Aquileia (Italian): town—G4c5: 3.
Arabia (classical), Jazirat al-Arab (Arabic): peninsular region surt of the Red Sea—L5Mgh: 1, 6, 7.
Aragon, Aragón (Spanish), Arakcham (Arabic): region of NE Spain—DEd: 2.
Arato (Greek): town—K3el: 5.
Arcadia (classical), Mezara (medieval), Arkadia (modern Greek): district of northern Morea—J1e3: 3, 4.
Arcadiopolis (medieval), Bergale (Latin), Bergamlu (classical Greek), Littleburgaz (Turkish): town—J3d4: 5.
Ararat, town—see Arpajah.
Archipelago (from Greek Agaion Pelagos): islands of the Aegean Sea (J1c: 5).
Aidish—region—see Transylvania.
Arga, city—Arget (Romanian): town—15c5: 3.
Argolid or Argois (classical), Argolis (modern Greek): district of eastern Morea—J1e3: 3, 4.
Argos (classical), Argos (modern Greek): town—J1e3: 3, 4.
Arroyo (Greek): town—J1d: 4.
Armens—see Armenia.
Armisia (classical), Hayasan (Armenian), Ermenistan (Turkish): region north of Lake Van—Md: 1.
Armenia, Cilician kingdom—K5e: 9.
Artashat—see Halmyros.
Arzans, Capo: western tip of Cyprus—K3e5: 8.
'Arqa: or 'Irqa (Arabic), Arca or Irqata (classical), Villejargosa (medieval): town—L2f1: 6.
Arslan, Apollonia Sozusa (classical), Arsal (medieval), Tsal (Arabic), Tell Arslan (Israeli): town, now abandoned for Herszilaya—K3f: 7.
Arta (medieval), Ambraia (classical), Nantia (Turkish), Arta (modern Greek): town—Jel: 3, 4.
Artos (French): district of northern France—E3h5: 2.
Arzengu: see Erzincan.
Ascalon, Ashkelon (biblical), Asqalun (Arabic), Tel Ashqelon (Israeli): port, now abandoned for modern Ashqelon—K514: 1, 7.
Ascoli Piceno (Italian): town 52 miles south of Ascoli (G4d2: 3).
Asura Minor (classical): region equivalent to western Anatolia.
Asur (Italian): town—G3c2: 2, 3.
Asu (Italian), Hasta (classical): town—F4d1: 2, 3.
Astypalaias (Latin), Stampsia (medieval), Ustrapalaios (Turkish): Astypalaios (modern Greek): island—J2d4: 5.
Athens, Athêne (classical Greek), Athens or Saturn (medieval), Athina (modern Greek): city—I4e3: 3, 4.
Athlone, Athl. castle—see Clonmel Fêlesria.
Athos, Mount: Aydon Oros (modern Greek): Greek Orthodox monastery—I5d5: 4, 5.
Atlantic Ocean: B4c: 2.
Attice (Latin), Attîkô (classical Greek), Attiki (modern Greek): district of eastern Greece—I4e3: 4, 5.
Aue (German): village 67 miles SE of Neumunster (G2b4: 3).
Augsburg (German): city—G1c2: 2, 3.
Aups or Oups (French): village 50 miles NW of Marsailles (F4d2: 2).
Aure (German): village 85 miles NW of Neumunster (G2c1: 3).
Austria; Osterreich (German): region east of Bavaria, smaller than modern nation—O4c: 2, 3.
Auxerre (French): town—E4c3: 2.
Avana-sur-Helpe (French): town 40 miles S of Tours (E4h5: 2).
Avignon (French), Avenio (classical): city—E5d2: 2.
Avila, Avila (classical), Avila de los Caballeres (Spanish): town—D1d5: 2.
Avion (medieval), Avion (classical), Atina (Italian), Vioni or Viorê (Aïbalian): port—J1f4d5: 3, 4.
Ayas (medieval), Lajazze (Italian), Yasmurtalik (Turkish): port—L1e4: 6.
Ayasoluk: town—see Ephesus.
Ayazmend (Turkish): port—L4d2: 1.
Aydin (Turkish): district of western Anatolia, equivalent to classical Lydia—J3e: 3.
Aydinlik (Turkish): port—J3d5: 3.
Azerbaijan, Adharbaydjan or Azerbaidjan (Persian): region of NW Persia and in Transcaucasia—N4: 1.
Azov: port—see Tana.
Azov, Sea of; Azovskoe More (Russian)—Ic: 1.
Balbek, Heliopolis (classical), Balkabakh (Arabic): town—L2f1: 6, 7.
Babilon, town—see Bussara.
Bafra (Arabic): castle—see Sigouir.
Baghrais (Arabic), Baghrais (classical), Basamt (medieval), Bagra (Turkish): town—L2e4: 6.
Balkhaq (medieval), Sabzvar (ancient Persia), Sabzvar or Sabzavvar (modern Persia): town—P3e4: 12.
Bausan town—see Bethsan.
Bait Jibrin (or Jibril): town—see Beth Gubelin.
Balaklava, port—see Cembalo.
Balearic (Spanish): island group—Ecc 2.
Balkans, mountain range—Idd 3, 5.
Balkans, peninsular region east of the Adriatic Sea.
Balkhash, Lake—STC 9, 10 (name not shown on maps).
Baltic Sea—H12b 2, 3.
Bamberg (German): city—Gicl 2, 3.
Banyas, Paneas or Cæsarea-Philippa (classical), Bethmas (medieval), Banyás (Arabic): town—L1f2 7.
Bay, port—see Antvran.
Bar Samma (Syriac): Jacobite monastery 50 miles SSW of Melsauc (L4c2 1).
al-Bárah, village—see Alburn.
Barbary: the coast of North Africa.
Barbastro (Spanish), Barbusstru (Arabic): town—Eld3 2.
Barcelon (Spanish), Barcino (classical), Barcellunam (Arabic): city, port—B3d4 2.
Barl (Italian), Barlinm (classical): port—H2d4 3.
Baris (Arabic): village—L2c5 6.
Ba‘rir, Bārin, fortress—see Montferrand.
Barletta (Italian): port—H2d4 3.
Barr ar-Sha‘am (Arabic), Syria Magna (Latin): region including Syria proper and adjoining territory.
Bartus, Mount: midentrised mountains in the Caucasus.
Baruth: port—see Beirut.
Basse (German), Basie or Bāle (French): city—F3c3 2, 3.
Bashkent or Kara Hisar (Turkish): battlefield—L5c1 1.
Bashkir; Bashkard (medieval): district of eastern Russia—OPab 13.
Bera, al-Bayrah (Arabic): city, port—N1f3 1.
Bath city—D3b4 2.
al-Batrùn, town—see Botron.
Bayarik, Bayern (German): region of southern Germany—Gc 2, 3.
Beauvais (French): town—E3c1 2.
Bedford town—D5b3 2.
Berruti; Barytur (classical), Barúz (Arabic), Baruth (medieval): port—L1f2 1, 6, 7.
Bela Palanka (Serbian): town—B3d3 2.
Belfort or Beaufort (medieval), Shagif Arzm or Qa‘at ash-Shaqif (Arabic: fort of the rock): crusader castle—L1f2 7.
Belgrade, Beograd (Serbian: white town): city—B1h1 3.
Belhaceem (medieval), Qa‘at Abi-l-Hasan (Arabic): village—L1f2 7.
Belmas, town—see Banyas.
Bellapais or Bella Pase (medieval): monastery—K4e5 8.
Belmont (French), Darî al-Balanamd (Arabic): abbey and castle—L1l3 6.
Benevento (Italian), Beneventum (Latin): town—G3d4 3.
Berat (Albanian), Pulcheriopolis (classical), Bellagadra (medieval): town—H5d5 3, 4.
Bergulac, Bergoulé: town—see Arcadiopolis.
Berry (French): district of central France—Ecc 2.
Bethash, town—L1f1 7.
Besharri Mountains, range 20 miles east of Botron (L1f1 7).
Beth Gubelin (medieval), Betogabas or Eleutheropolis (classical), Bait Jibrin or Bait Jibril (Arabic), Bet Guvrn (Israel): town, new village—K1f4 7.
Bethlehem (biblical), Ephraim (classical), Bet Lajm (Arabic: house of flesh): town—L1d4 7.
Bethsan or Bessan (medieval), Scythopolis or Bethshan (classical), Baissan (Arabic), Beth She'an (Israeli) town — L113: 7.
Bethune (French) town 20 miles ssw of Lille (E4b5: 2).
Beayqin, port — see Berytus.
Beyshehir, Bayshehir (Turkish) town — K3d2: 1, 3.
Bezières (French) town — E4d2: 2.
Bika or Bikaa (Turkish), Pagau (Latin), Pâgal (medieval Greek) town — J3d5: 3, 5.
Bilbas or Bilbas (Arabic) town — K2f5: 1.
Ale-Biqâ (Arabic: the hollow), Cilicie-Syria (classical), Bekaa (modern) district of central Lebanon — L1f2: 6, 7.
Al-Birah (Arabic), Mahmuia or La Grande Malomere (medieval), Bura (Israeli): fortress, now town — L114: 7.
Besignano (Italian) village — H1e2: 2.
Bethynia (classical): district of sw Anatolia — 3de: 10.
Black Sea, Mare Euxinum (Latin), Kara Deniz (Turkish), Chernoe More (Russian) — J1k4: 1, 3, 5.
Malis (French) town — E2e3: 2.
Banghan (modern Arabic): probably Benhurain, village 12 miles south of Tripoli (Lifi: 6, 7).
Bologna: districts north of Grosuarder — 1c: 3.
Bodrum or Bodrum (Turkish), Halicarnassus (classical), Psedonion (modern Greek): town — J3d2: 5.
Bocezia (Latin), Boloia (classical Greek), Voiciats (modern Greek): district of eastern Greece — L4e2: 4.
Bohemia, Čechy (Czech): region north of Austria — G1c: 2, 3.
Bokhara: city — see Bukhara.
Bolanden (German) castle near Kirchheim, 27 miles sw of Mainz (F4b5: 3).
Bolgar: town — see Bulgar.
Bologna (Italian) city — G2d1: 2, 3.
Bomboy: city and port — 33c2: 12, 13.
Bonditz: town — see Venilosa.
Bonn (German) town, now city, 15 miles ne of Cologne (F3b5: 3).
Bordeaux (French), Burdigala (classical): city, port — D5d1: 2.
Bosnia, Bosnia (Serbian, Turkish): region west of Serbia — H1e: 3.
Besoros (classical), Karnazim Bogazzi (Turkish Black Sea strait) — J3d4: 1, 3, 5.
Bosra, Boothra (classical), Busra (Arabic) town — L1f2: 1, 7.
Bottes: unidentified locality, probably in France.
Botroun (medieval), Botrys (classical), al-Harram (Arabic): town — L1f2: 6, 7.
Bougie: port — see Binga.
Bouillon (French) town — F3c1: 2, 3.
Boulogne-sur-Mer (French) port — E2b5: 2.
Bourcq castle — see Le Bourg.
Bourges (French) town — E3c3: 2.
Boulogne: region — see Boulogne.
Brabant (French, Flemish) district east of Flanders — EFb: 2, 5.
Brandenburg (German) district of northern Germany — Gb: 2, 3.
Brașov: district — see Buzău-Romania.
Bratislava (Slovakian), Pressburg (German), Pozsony (Hungarian) city — H3c2: 3.
Braunschweig: city — see Brunswick.
Bremer (German) city, port — F4b3: 2, 3.
Brescia (Italian) city — Gic3: 3.
Breslau (German), Wrocław (Polish) city — H3b4: 3.
Brenne-la-Vieste (French): village 20 miles est of Troyes (E5c2: 2).

Brindisi (Italian), Brindisium (Latin): port—H3e5: 3.

British Isles: England, Wales, Scotland, Ireland, and smaller islands.


Bruges (French), Brugge (Flemish): port, now city—E4b4: 2.

Brunsweck, Braunschweig (German): city—Glb3: 2, 3.

Buda (Hungarian), Osten (German): city, now part of Budapest—Hsc3: 2.


Ingul, Saldac (classical), Al-Budayh (Arabic), Bouge (French): port—F1e4: 2.

Bukhara, Bokhara (Persian), Bukhara (Arabic): city—Q5e1, 12, 13.

Bulgaria: Moesia (classical), Mogyorod (Bulgarian): region south of the Danube, larger than modern nation—L1e 1, 3, 5.

al Buqbat (Arabic; the little hollow), La Bouque (medieval French): valley—1.1f1: 6

Burgundy, Bourgogne (French): region of eastern France, extending farther south than now—E2c: 2.

Bursa (Turkish), Brousse (classical), Brusa (medieval): city—15d5: 1, 5, 8

Burzenland or Unrza (German), Burzov (Romanian): district of S Transylvania—L1e: 3.


Byblos town—see Nebiha.

Byzantium city—see Constantinople.

Caca: fortress—see Qaqun.


Cassarina ad Argasum or Alaraca (classical), Kayseri (Turkish), city—L1e2: 1.
Cassara Mariluna or Palanacumae (classical), Cassare (medieval), Qasrariyah (Arabic), Qasari (Italian): port, now abandoned for Sedei Yam—K5f3: 7.

Caffa: port—see Kaffa.

Cafra: town—see Kaffa.

Cafra (medieval): manor near Acre (L1f3: 7).

Cahors (French): town—E2d1: 2.

Caffa: port—see Kaffa.

Cairo: Al-Qahirah (Arabic; the victorious): city—K2f3: 1, 3.

Catalhia (Italian): region of SW Italy—Hc: 3.

Calamara (medieval), Matulah (Arabic): Greek Orthodox monastery—1.2f2: 7.

Calanske village—see Qalansuwa.

Cambaluc city—see Khambaliq.

Cambay or Khambayat: port—S3h3: 13.

Cambrai (French): town—E4b5: 2.

Camposanto (Italian): battlefield sur of Rome—G3d4: 3.

Candia, island—see Crete.

Candia (medieval), Herakleia (Latin), Iraklion (modern Greek): port—JIe5: 3.

Cania (classical), Khana (modern Greek): port—15e3: 3.

Canina (medieval), Sillia or Bibli (classical), Kanose (Albanian): town, now unimportant—H5d4: 4.


Canton, Kwangchow or Kwang-chou (Chinese): city, port—AA4g2: 13

Caotti (Italian): town 29 miles NE of Venice (G3c5: 3).

Capparmark (medieval), Khamin al-Kamash (Arabic): Shqamona (Israeli): village 5 miles ssw of Hafia (L1f3: 7).

Capua (Italian): town—G5d4: 3.

Caransebeș, Caransebes (Romanian): town—15e3: 3.

Carinthia, Kärnten (German): region south of medieval Austria—Occ. 2, 3
Carmel, Mount; Jabal Miṣr Ḫarāb (Arabic: Mount Saint Elias), Karmel (Israel)—K513: 7
Carpas, district—see Karpaš.
Carpathians; Carpathes (classical), Karpaty (Czech, Polish), Szeklerland (Rumanian): mountain range—Mac 1, 3
Carpi (medieval), Kepe (Turkish): port—K644: 5.
Carystus (classical), Karystos (modern Greek): town—L5e2: 4, 5.
Casal tumbris (medieval), az-Zib (Arabic), Tel Akhziv (Israel): castle—L1f2: 7.
Casina, Monنت (medieval), Jabal al-Aqra’ (Arabic)—L2e5: 6.
Castan, Sen—N0de. 1.
Cassandra; Pallene (classical), Kassandra (modern Greek): peninsula—N1e1: 4.
Castello di Olevolo (Italian): district on the lagoon of Venice (G3a5: 3).
Castellorizzo; Megisti (classical), Mesi (Turkish), Castelrosso (Italian), Kastelliórizo (modern Greek): island—L5e4: 1, 5.
Castellammare di Stabia, village—see Barano.
Castellnou Regis (Latino), Castellnou d’O Celi (medieval), Miḥāyah (Arabic): fortress 2 miles east of Montfort (L1f2: 7).
Castile, Castilla (Spanish), Qasbitulak (Arabic): region of north central Spain—Dec. 2
Catallona; Cataluna (Spanish), Catallonia (Catalan): region of NE Spain—Ed. 2.
Cathay: region—see China.
Cătulcea (medieval Italian): unidentified port, probably in Albania or Epirus.
Čačka (Serbo-Croat): port—H4d3: 3.
Čausás, Kavkaz (Russian): mountain range—MNdb: 1.
Caymont (medieval), Tall Quimín (Arabic): castle—L1f3: 7.
Cyphus: port—see Halos.
Czempelen (medieval), Balaklav (Russian): port—K6d1: 1.
Central Asia: region extending (from the Aral Sea to Mongolia)
Cec., Keš (classical Greek, Tekê (medieval), Zaa (Italian), Morted (Turkish), Kêa (modern Greek): island—N3e3, 4, 5.
Cephalonía (Latin), Kepháleḯn (classical Greek), Kephalíona (medieval Greek), Kefallína (modern Greek): island—N1e2: 3, 4.
Cērigo (Italian), Cythera (Latin), Kythira (classical Greek), Kithira (modern Greek): island—N3e4: 3, 4.
Celigotto (Italian), Argilia or Anticythera (Latin), Andikífrína (modern Greek): island—N4a5: 3.
Cerne abbey at town of Cerne Abbas—D3d5: 2.
Cesaire: port—see Caesarea.
César (Italian): town 17 miles west of Rimini (G3d1: 3).
Cesarna: fortress—see Cesarea.
Cetines, city—see Athens.
Centa (Spanish), Septa (classical), Sābīlah (Arabic): port—C5e2 5.
Chaldōn (Latin), Kalkheion (classical Greek), Khalkidion (medieval Greek), Kadi köy (Turkish): town—L5d5: 3, 4.
Chaldos (Latin), Khalkidikê (classical Greek), Khalidiâ nikî (modern Greek): peninsula—H4d3: 4.
Chalck: port—see Negroponte.
Chalon-sur-Saône (French): town—E5e2: 2.
Champagne (French): region of NE France—EFC: 2.
Champigny (French): town, now part of Chantilly-et-le-Priant, 30 miles NE of Dijon (F3e2: 2).
Charbon, river—see Alpes.
Chartres (French): town—E2c2: 2.
Chastel-Neuf (French); Hulala (Arabic); Qaryat Shermona (Israeli); crusader castle—L12. 7
Chastelou duc Rei: fortress—see Castellum Regis.
Château Pélerin (French); Atlit (medieval); Aššir (Arabic); Atlantis (Israeli); crusader castle—K52. 7
Châteauenné (French); unidentified castle.
Châlillon-sur-Loing (French): town, now part of Châlillon-Coligny, 32 miles west of Auxerre (E3c: 2).
Chaydor: unidentified realm, possibly mythical.
Chernomes, Çerit (Bulgarian); Çarman, Çerman, or Sef Sündül (Turkish, destruction of the Serbs); Chnorimion (modern Greek): battlefield—J2d4: 3, 5
Cherson: port—see Kherson.
Chersones: Çesme (Turkish): town—J3e2: 5.
Chester: city—D3h2: 2.
Chirenza: town—see Glaranta.
China; Cathay (medieval): region of eastern Asia—W/CCE/k. 12, 13
Chioggia (Italian): port—C3c5. 3.
China (classical); Sia (Italian), Sakîz (Turkish), Khion (modern Greek): island—J3e. 5.
Chocques (French): suburb just west of Béthune.
Cholm, Çorlu (Turkish); Xurumum (Latin); town—J3d4. 5.
Cilillis: unidentified locality, possibly Chioggia.
Cilicia (classical); region of southern Anatolia—K16: 6.
Colly; Celje (Slovene): town—H1c4: 3.
Clmoli: Klmoli (modern Greek): island—J4d4: 5.
Circassia; region north of western Caucasus—L4d: 1.
Citëxas (French): abbey—P3c. 2.
Cluny (Latin); Le Kêro (medieval), Kitros (modern Greek): port—J3d5: 3, 4.
Civetot (medieval); Ciborius (classical): port, now abandoned—J5d5: 3, 5.
Clainvanx (French): abbey—E5c2: 2.
Clarenc: town—see Glaranta.
Clermont (French): town, now part of Clermont-Ferrand—E4c5: 2.
Cluny (French): abbey—E5c4. 2.
Cologne (French), Colonna Agrippinensis (Latin), Köln (German): city—F2b3: 2, 3.
Cornebolli (Italian): town 29 miles NE of Ferrara (G2d1: 3).
Comana or Placentia (medieval): town, now abandoned—L2e2: 1.
Compostela or Santiago de Compostela (Spanish), Campus Stellar (Latin), Shant Arqib (Arabic): town and shrine—C2d3: 2.
Conches-en-Ouche (French): town, formerly Donville, 33 miles south of Rouen (E2c1: 2).
Constantin (French), Konstanz (German): town—F5c3: 2, 3.
Constantinople, Byzantium or Constantinopola (classical), Istanboul (Turkish): city—J4d4: 1, 3, 5.
Corbola, Córdoba (Spanish), Qaribah (Arabic): city—D1e3: 2.
Corfu: Corcyras (Latin), Kyrisk (classical Greek), Korfu (Italian): Kérkira (modern Greek): island—H5e1: 3, 4.
Coraic; town—see Cyrrhus.
Corinth, Gulf of: Korinthíakos Kólpós (modern Greek):—J3e2 4.
Corno; region of SW England—C6b: 2.
Coron (medieval), Korónë (medieval Greek), Korónai (modern Greek): port—12e4: 3, 4.
Dilmán: town—see Salmas.

Dimashq city—see Damascus.

Dumlû [Arabic]: village north of Jubail [Lit. 6, 7].

Di: port—Sihb 13

Dryár-Bakr [Arabic]: region of the upper Tigris—Le: 1.

Dryár-Bakr, Diyabekir, town—see Amida.

Dnepor, Boryshten [classical], Dnieper [Rumanian]: river—K3c4. 1.

Dniester: Yuras [classical], Dnestor [Russsian], Nistru [Rumanian]: river—J5c 4 1

Dobrudja: region east of lower Danube—Jd: 1, 3.

Doha: unidentified realm, possibly mythological.

Dos-de-Bretagne (French): town 75 miles sw of Caen (D5c1: 2)

Domažlice [Czech], Taus [German]: town—G3c: 3

Domfront [French], town 42 miles sw of Caen (D5c1: 2).

Don, Tanaí [classical]: river—L5c3: 1.

Donjon: town—see Le Donjon.

Dorylæum [classical]: town, now abandoned in favor of Eski Shehr [K1c1: 3]

Douro [Portuguese], Duero [Spanish], Dwirun [Arabic]: river—C3d4. 2, 3.

Drasna [Greek], Drostarum [classical], Selântim [Turkish], Stâlstrum [Rumanian], Stalstrîa [Bulgarian]: town—J3c3: 3.

Dubrovnik: port—see Ragusa.

Dulegin [Slavonic], Uclini [Serbo-Croat]: port—H3d4. 3

Dulnik: Doliče [classical], Dulik [Arabic], Dülük [Turkish]: town—L3c3 6

Durnako [Italian], Epidamnus or Dyrrachium [classical], Draj [Turkish], Durre [Albanian]: port—H5c4: 3, 4.

Dniñam city—D4b: 2.

Dnsburg [medieval], Duisburg [modern German]: town, now city, 36 miles nw of Cologne (F2b5: 3)

Abro [Spanish], Ishih [Arabic]: river—D4d3: 2

Edessa; Rochais or Rochais [medieval], ar Runhâ' [Arabic], Ursa [Turkish]: city—L4e3 1, 6.

Edfrûn: city—see Adilcanople

Edremit: town—see Adramytium.

Eigmund [Dutch]: monastery, now town—E5b3 2

Egypt: Mâr [Arabic]: region of upper Africa—J5k 1, 3

Elbasan [medieval, Albanian]: town—H4d: 3, 4.

Elbe [German], Labe [Czecheslovak]: river—C2b2: 2

Elbistan town—see Albistan

Eleutheropoli: town—see Beth Gabelin

Elinth: Ellia or Elea [classical Greek], Elia [modern Greek]: district of ssw Morca—J2e3: 4.

Elymaion [classical]: spring at unidentified location in Syria

Embâs [Greek]: village—K3f1 3.

Emel: river—see 1ma

Emmus, Nicopolis [classical], Anemus [Arabic], Iruran [Israelî]: village (not biblical Eummus) 9 miles wsw of Jerusalem (L114 7).

Engedi or En Gedi [Israelî], Engeddi [medieval], 'Am Jidi [Arabic]: village—L114 7.

Enguri: island—see Aegina.


English Channel, La Manche [French]: C'Dbd: 2.

Ephesus [classical], Altino [medieval], Ayasoluk [Turkish]: city, now unimportant—J3c3. 3, 5.

Epirus [Latin], Epeinos [classical Greek], Ipooris [modern Greek]: region west of Thessaly—Le: 3, 4.
Eretria (Turkish): district east of Ahtara—Kc: 1.
Erlan (German), Eger (Hungarian): city—K3c3: 3.
Erzerum, Theodosiopolis (classical), Garin (Armenian), Erzurum (Turkish): city—K21f: 1.
Erzinjan (Turkish), Arrinjan (classical), Araien (medieval): town—L5c1 1.
Estamor-Port: see Pera.
Estives, city—see Thèbes.
Ethiopia or Abyssinia; Iwyopis (Arabic): region of east central Africa—not in region mapped.
Euboea (classical), Evvoia (medieval Greek), Neo Propontis (Italian), Euboea (Turkish), Evvoia (modern Greek): island—L4c2: 3, 4, 5.
Euphrates (classical), al-Furat (Arabic), Firda Butuk (Turkish): river—N11h: 1, L4c4 6.
Bisutinas (classical), Býutina (modern Greek): river—L3c4: 4.

Farangusta, Ammokhatara (classical Greek), Pamagoon (medieval Italian): port—K4a5: 1, 8.
Fano (Italian): port 29 miles NW of Ancona (G4d2: 3).
Far East: region including China, Japan, and Indo-China.
Fars or Pharan: Greek Orthodox bishopric at Mount Sinai (K4g2: 1).
Ferrara (Italian): city—G2a2: 2, 3.
Fertile Crescent: region comprising Palestine, Syria, and Mesopotamia.
Feuchtwangen (German): town 40 miles WSW of Nuremberg (G3c1: 3).
Flanders, Vlaanderen (Flemish): region of northern France and Belgium—EFb: 2.
Florence; Firenzu (Italian): city—G3d2: 2, 3.
Florencio (Bulgarian): town—L3d1: 3.
Foggia, Foa: port—see Pescara.
Fontanella (Italian): village 29 miles east of Milan (F3c3: 3).
Forez (French): district east of Clermont (E4c5: 2).
France: region—smaller than modern nation.
Franche-Comté (French): village in Picardy, about 25 miles NNE of Amiens (E3c1: 2).
Frankfurt am Main (German): city—F4b5: 2, 3.
Frank-Yazam (Turkish): battlefield—K3c3: 1.
Frioul: Frioul (Italian): region of northern Netherlands and SW Germany—Fb: 2, 3.
Friuli (Italian): district of NE Italy—Gc: 2, 3.
Fustat; al-Fustat (Arabic), Babylon (medieval): town—K2f5: 1.

Gadera: town—see Gaza.
Gaza (Italian): port—G4d4: 3.
Galilee; Ha’alil (Arabic): region of northern Palestine—L1h2: 7.
Galilee, Sea of, or Lake Tiberias, Bulunus Tabariyah (Arabic), Yar Kinneret (Israel)—L1h3: 7.
Galilopolis (medieval), Galilopolis (classical), Galilbolus (Turkish): town—L3d5: 3, 5.
Gascony; Gasconia (French): region of SW France—Dde: 2.
Gaston: town—see Baghras.
Gata, Cape: southeast tip of Cyprus—K4f1: 8.
Gaul; Gallia (Latin): classical region roughly equivalent to France.
Gaza (classical), Gaderes (medieval), Ghazzah (Arabic), town—L5f4: 7.
Gazara, peninsular—see Crimea.
Gelnth: village—see 'Ain Jalut.
Genoa, Genoa (Latin), Genova (Italian): city, port—F4d1: 2, 3.
Georgia or Gruasia (medieval), Sakartvelo (Georgian): region east of the Black Sea and south of the Caucasus—MN: 1.

Germany; Alamania or Allemannia (medieval), Deutschland (German) region of north central Europe—FGbc: 9.

Germiyani (Turkish): district of west central Anatolia—JIke: 5

Gesar: hill—see Muni Gisar.

al-Ghārīb (Arabic: the west): district of western Lebanon—LIJf 6, 7.

Ghāzah or Gogha: town on Kathirun peninsula 50 miles sww of Cambay (S3b3: 13)


Gibelet: town—see Jabal.

Cebtājūr, Shībūt ol, az-Zuqāq (Arabic)—CSLF: 2.

Ginārū (Rumanian), San Giorgio (Italian), Szamosgyorgy (Hungarian) town—JIDd: 3.

Glarentsa, Charenze or Clarezze (medieval), Cyllene (Latin), Kyllénē (classical Greek), Kilīnš (moderna Greek): town—L12c: 4.

Golden Horn; Chrysoceras (classical), Haliç (Turkish): bay between Constantinople and Pera (JIDd: 3).

Golubats; Golubac (Serbian): town—L12d: 3.

Good Hope. Cape of: southern tip of Africa—not in area mapped.

Gorīta: town—see Demetressa.

Göynük (Turkish): town—KIDd: 5.

Grado (Italian): town: 26 miles wsw of Udine (G4c4: 3).

Granada (Spanish), Ġhranūnlah or Ghurānah (Arabic): city—D2e2: 3.

Greco, Cape: K5f1: 8.

Greece; Hellas (Greek), Graecia (Latin): region west of the Aegean Sea, smaller than modern nation.

Grosswarden (German), Nagyvárás (Hungarian), Orades (Romanian), city—L12c: 3.

Gruasia, region—see Georgia.


Guadiana (Spanish, Portuguese), Wādī ’Amāh (Arabic): river—C4c2: 2.

Gujerat or Gujarāt: district of western India—Sh: 13.

Gurjān: city—see Urgench.

Gyi (Hungarian), Asarb (German): town—H3c3: 3.

Cyprus (medieval): village near Sidon (LIJf: 7).

Habīl (Arabic): village 3 miles wsw of Jabal (LIJf: 6, 7).


Habsburg: castle—see Hapsburg.


Hāfil, Caypha or Cailla (medieval), Havāf (Arabic), Havā (Arabic), Hāfla (Israel): port—LIJf: 1, 7.

Hainault; Hainaut (French), Henegouwen (Flemish), district east of Artois—EFb: 2, 3.

Hajir or Hadshīh (Arabic): village 1 mile west of Besharri (LIJf: 6).

Halab, Haleb: city—see Aleppo.

Hulat (Arabic): village 3 miles sww of Inbail (LIJf: 6, 7).

Halberstadt (German): city—G2b4: 2, 3.

Halicarnassus: town—see Bodrum.

Halmersos (classical Greek), Armirio (medieval Italian), Almiron (modern Greek): town—L13e1: 3, 4.

Hamah, Ephippus or Hamath (classical), Hamah (Arabic): city—L2e5: 1, 6.

Hamid (Turkish): district of west central Anatolia—KE: 5

Hangchow or Hang-chow (Chinese), Quanzai (medieval), city, port—CC1f5: 13

Hapsburg, Habsburg (German): castle sw of Brugg, 29 miles east of Basel (F3c3: 3).

Hardin (Arabic): town 11 miles east of Rosota (LIJf: 6, 7).
HAIR, Well of—see ‘Ain Jābīn.
Harran or Haran (Turkish), Carrhae (classical), Harrām (Arabic): town—L564: 1
Hattin, Horns of, Madon (classical), Hājīn or Hajīn (Arabic): battlefield, hill—
LI37 7.
Hautvville (French): village 55 miles wsw of Caen (D3c2: 2).
Hayas (medieval): field near Caesarea (K5F3: 7).
Hebron (classical, Israeli), Ḥabrān or Khalil (Arabic), Saint Abraham (medieval)
town—LIF4 7.
Heidrunchen (German): village 73 miles sw of Halberstadt (G2b4: 3).
Heliopolis, town—see Basbeh.
Hellenpress (us): strain—see Dardanelles.
Henneberg (German): village 53 miles sw of Würzburg (F5c1: 3).
Heraclea of Petraiakos (classical), Ergk or Marmaranegli (Turkish): port—J3d5 5.
Heracleum pont—see Candia.
Hermannstadt (German), Szécsen or Nagyszevern (Hungarian), Siliva (Romanian),
town—15c5: 3.
Hermon, Mount: al-Jabal as-Shābaib or Jabal al-Thal (Arabic: the hoary, or snow-
covered, mountain)—LIF3: 7.
Herzegovina: Herzegovina (Serbian), Herz (Turkish): district sw of Montenegro—
Hd3 3.
Herapolis: town—see Mabāj.
al-Ḥijāz region—see Hejaz.
Himara or Himarë (Albanian), Chimaera (classical), Chimara (Italian): town—
H3d5 4.
Hashash (Arabic): region east of Sinai, in sw Arabia—KLg: 1.
Hijān al-Ahmad: fortress—see Krak des Chevaliers.
Hijān al-Ziyād or Zaki: fortress—see Kharabat.
Hohenlohe (German): district 14 miles sw of Würzburg (F5c): 3.
Holland (Dutch): region north of Brabant—Ed: 2, 3.
Holy Land—see Palestine.
Hom, Emesa (classical), Homs (Arabic): city—L2fl: 1, 6.
Horbat, Mount—see Mount Sinai.
Horneck (German): castle at Grabstein, 52 miles sw of Würzburg (F5c: 3).
Hulda or Huldre (medieval): village—K5F4: 7.
Humarah (Arabic), Homara (medieval): village—LIF2: 7.
Hungary; Magyarország (Hungarian): region of central Europe—HIC: 3.
Humm: castle—see Chastel-Nau.
Hyères (French): town—F2d2: 2.
Iamna or Iamnna (medieval), Yanja (Turkish), Iasmanina (modern Greek): town—Ilc:
3, 4.
Ibelin (medieval), Jaboeel or Jammun (classical), Yabin (Arabic), Yavne (Israeli):
village—K5F4: 7.
Iberia peninsular region comprising Spain and Portugal.
Icumen city—see Konya.
Imbro, Lembru (medieval Italian), İmber (Turkish): island—J3d5: 5.
Imil, Emel, or Æmel (Russian): river east of Lake Balkhash—12, 13 (name not shown
on map).
India, region of southern Asia—K/VME/1: 12, 13.
Indian Ocean—M/XHJR: 12, 13 (name not shown on map).
Indo-China: peninsular region of sw Asia—YZ1m: 12, 13.
Ionian Sea—Hle: 3.

Ios; Nisos (medieval); Ios (modern Greek): island—J1a4 5

Iraq, al 'Iraq (Arabic): modern nation, approximately equivalent to Mesopotamia.

Irland, Hibernia (Latin); Erin (Gaelic): island—Ch: 2.

Iskau or Iskâl (Bulgarian) river flowing past Sofia to the Dâmbe—15a2 3

Istvendun port—see Alexandria.

Isonzo (Italian); Soča (Croatian): river east of Aquileia—G5e5 3.

Istanbul: city—see Constantinople.

Istria (classical); Istra (Croatian, Slovene): peninsula—Qc: 3.

Italy, Italia (Latin, Italian): peninsular region, now a nation.

Ithaca (Latin), Ithakê (classical Greek); Ithaki (modern Greek): island—I1c2: 4.

Izmir; city, port—see Smyrna.

Izulik, town—see Nicea.

Jabal 'Akkâr (Arabic), Gibelcar (medieval): mountain near 'Akkâr (L2f1: 6).


Jabal as-Summaq (Arabic): mountain of the summaq—L2e5 6

Jabalâ; Gibelin (classical), Jabalâh (Arabic): port—L1e5, 6.

Jaffa or Joppa; Yâfâ (Arabic), Yafa (Israeli); port, now joined to Tel Aviv—K5f3: 1, 7.

al-Jaft (Arabic): oasis in Sinai desert (Kg).

Japan; Nippon (Japanese): island nation—not in area mapped.

Jehoshaphat or Josaphat: valley, possibly Kidron, but probably north of Jerusalem (L1f4: 7).

Jéricho; Aîlah or al-Rihâ (Arabic): town—L1f4: 7.

Jeroschin (German): probably Jericho, 3 miles west of Posen (H2b3: 2).

Jerusalem, Hierosolyma (classical), al-Quds ash-Sharif (Arabic), Yerushalayim (Jewish): city—L114 1, 7.


Jolâville (French): town 77 miles west of Toul (F1c2: 2).

Joppa; port—see Jaffa.

Jordan; al-Unûnî (Arabic): river—L1f3: 1, 7.

Josaphat valley—see Jehoshaphat.

Jshubû (Arabic): small mountain.

Jybasa (classical); Gibelot (medieval): town—L1f7: 1, 6, 7.


Juder (medieval); Qafât Jiddân (Arabic): fortress—L1f2: 7.


Kadikut: town—see Chalcidion.

Kalar (Arabic): village near Jabul (L1f1: 6, 7).

Kafafu' (Arabic): village near Botron (L1f1 6, 7).

Kafû or Cafa (medieval), Theodosia (classical), Fedosiya (Russian): port—L1e5: 1.

Kaftûn (Arabic): village 5 miles east of Botron (L1f1: 6, 7).


Kaded (German): castle at Pappenheim, 40 miles north of Augsburg (G1c2: 3).

Kalocsa (Hungarian): town—H4c4: 3.

Kamschisya (Ungarian): river—J2a3: 5.

Kanakaria (Greek): village—K4e5: 8.

Kanghulac: town—see Sutamych.

Kantara, al-Qanjarâb (Arabic): the bridge). Kantâra (modern Greek): town—K4e5 8

al Karak: fortress—see Kerak.

Karakulsâ (medieval Turkish), Karachau (Armenian), Sa'ân (Russian): town—N2c1 1.

Karakorm (Tatar), Holin (Chinese): city, now abandoned—Y3c3: 12, 13.
Karahan (Turkish): region of south central Anatolia—Ksa. 1.
Karath, Karath or Karasa (Turkish): district of SW Anamur—"Ksa. 5.
Karpenes (Greek), Carpas (medieval): peninsular district—KSe5. 8.
Kasrawan or Kusrawan (Arabic): district around Jabal (L111 6, 7).
Kastamonu (Turkish), Castora Constanion or Kastamuni (medieval): town—K4d4 1, 3.
Kathikar or Saunakhra: peninsula on which Duu is located (Sk. 13)
Kafula; Neapolis Daresou (classical), Christopolis (medieval); Kafula (mod. Greek).
port—15d5. 3, 4, 5
Kavirn, city—see Czarren.
Kemer or Kemah (medieval), Burnhane (Turkish): port—J2d5. 5.
Kerek; Kir-hareseth (classical), Krak des Moabites or Krak of Moab (medieval), alt-
Karak (Arabic): fortress, now town—L114d. 1, 7.
Kerch, port—see Vapenno.
Kermanakîsh; Kermanakish (Persian), Sarmaana (medieval): city—N2f 1
Ketpe port—see Cepel.
Kepen (German): village 12 miles WSW of Cologne (F2b4. 3).
Kesum; Kesun (Armenian), Cessen (medieval), Kasun (Arabic), Keyun (Turkish)
fortress, now town—L3e3 6.
Khambat (Mongolian), Chie, Yenking, or Champu (classical Chinese), Caoba (medieval), Peking, Pe-chang, Beijing, or Peiping (mod. Chinese): city—B1d1 12, 13
Kharpoot or Harput (Turkish), Kasaq (Armenian), Hani Ziyad or Zand (Arabic): fortress, now town—L3e2. 1.
Khermen or Cherno (medieval Russian), Chornomorska Horadoscia (classical), Kora-
rus (Slavic): port, now ruined (not modern Kherman on the Dnepro)—K4d7. 1.
Khairya Janbash Adarik, Jeyzul (Israel): caesal in Palestine.
Khirokitia; Kirokitia or Khirokitia (modern Greek): battle-field—K4f 6
Khryosokou (Greek): district east of Akamas—K4e5 8.
Khurram; Khorram (Persian): region of in Persia—PQu. 12, 13.
Kiev (Russian): city—Kth5. 3.
Kifnes (Greek): village—K3f 8.
Killa (medieval), Killia (Russian): town—J5c9. 1, 3.
Kittigau (German): fort—J3d5. 5.
Kirchheim unter Teck (German): town 30 miles east of Strasbourg (F3c2. 3).
Kili, Kiti (modern Greek): village—K4f. 8
Kili, Cape—K4f. 8.
Kili Ahmad (Turkish): tribal region in northern Anatolia—Kd1 10, 11
Knochura (Greek): village—K4e5. 8.
Kofl-I (Turkish): district around Nicosia—Jd 5.
Kolina: city—see Cologne.
Kolossi (medieval), Kolossi (modern Greek): fortress—K3f 8.
Konya (Turkish), Iconium (classical, medieval): city—K3c3. 1, 3
Korcula Island—see Curzola.
Kormakiti, Cape—K3e5. 8.
Kosovo; Kosovo (Serbian): town—L2d3. 3.
Koubila (Greek): village—K3f 8.
Kours (Greek): river—K3f 8.
Kozan town—see Sam.
Kozlu Dere (Turkish): port—J2d5. 5.
Kragujevats, Kragujevac (Serbian): town—L111 3.
Krajk de Montferrat (medieval), Naib-Shambak (Arabic): fortress, now village—L115 1.
Krajk des Chevaliers (medieval), Hana al-Akrari (Arabic: stronghold of the Khuras).
four fortress—L2f 1. 6.
Krak of Moab, or des Mobsiens: fortress—see Krak.

Kraków: city—see Krakow.

Kreuzburg (German), Slavskoye (Russian): town—H3d1. 3.

Kronstadt (German), Bragov (Russian): town (recently called Stalin)—J1e5 3

Krushevitsa; Kruevitsa (Serbian), Ahýa-Han (Turkish): town—E2d2: 3

Kuln (German); Chelmúd (Polish): town—H4b2: 3.


Kurdistan, Kurdistan (Persian, Armenian): region between Armenia and Persia—MNe: 1

Kustendil, Konstantin-Ill (Turkish), Kuzunodol (Bulgarian): town—H3d3: 3.

Kutna Hora (Czech), Kuttenberg (German): town—H3c1: 3.

Kwangheo, city, port—see Canton

Kythkou (Greek): Greek Orthodox monastery—K3e5: 8.

Kyrozya, Ceriteia (medieval), Keryna (modern Greek): town—K4e5 8.

Kythera (Greek): spring and town 8 miles NE of Nicoria (K4e5 9)

La Serrie (medieval): desert west of southern Dead Sea—K1f: 7

La Buisse: valley—see al Buzairah.

La Broquière or La Broquière (French): village 65 miles S of Poitou (E2d2: 2).

La Castrina (medieval), Castrin (modern Greek): castle—K4e5: 8.

La Ferriére (French): village 27 miles south of Paris (E3c2: 2).

La Grande Mahomedia: fortress—see al-Dirah.

La Mandelbe: city, port—see Amidaia.

Laconia (Latin), Lakónía or Lakóniké (modern Greek): Lakónia (modern Greek): district of as Morea—E3c4: 4.

Lagosta (Italian), Látsuó (Serbian): island 60 miles west of Ragusa (H4d3: 9).

Lairon or Laron (French): village 16 miles east of Larnaca (E3c5: 2).

Lázaro: port—see Aynas.

Lajún (Arabic), Legio or Meguido (medieval): village—L1f3: 7.

Lampedusa (Italian): island—G3e5: 9.

Lampron (Armenian), Namrun (Turkish): fortress—K3e5: 1.

Lampracuc (classical), Lapoeki (Turkish): village—J2e5: 5.

Lancaster, city—D3b1: 2.

Landoire (French): probably a castle near Rodez, 75 miles W of Toulouse (E2d2: 2).

Landberg (German): town—G3b4: 2, 3.

Langensalza: town—see Saalza.

Langó: island—see Cos.

Langres (French): town—E1c3: 2, 3.


Lannoy (French): town 9 miles SW of Tournai (E4b5: 3).

Laodicene: port—see Latakia.

Laon (French): town—E4c1: 2.


Làzna; Lármaka (modern Greek): town—K4f1: 3.

Lasithi or Lasethi (Greek): district of eastern Crete (Je).

Lasto, island—see Lagosta.

Latakia, Laodicene ad Mare (classical), al-Ladhoqiyah (Arabic): port—L1e5: 1, 6.

Lausanne (French): town—F2c4: 2, 3.

La Bonig or Bourq (French): castle in Vosges canton, Ardennes, near Rehet, near of Rheims (E5c1: 2).

Le Donjon (French): town 50 miles NE of Clermont (E4c5: 2).

La Monestra: fortress—see al-Munstirat.


Lebanon, al-Lubnán (Arabic), Liban (French): region, now a nation (L7).
Lebanon, Mount, Jabal Lubna (Arabic) — L26. 6. 7.
Lefka (Greek) village — K33. 8.
Lefkara (medieval Greek) town — K44. 8.
Lefkamiko; Lefkamikó (modern Greek) town — K45. 8.
Legno village — see Lumio.
Leicester town — D43. 2.
Levantian plain (medieval), Aramthian plain (modern); in central Euboea (14c2: 5).
Lemba (Greek) village — K33. 8.
Lemnos, Lémnos (medieval Greek), Sthlimene (medieval), Limnos (modern Greek) island — Hei: 5.
Lenzini (Italian) town — H35. 3.
Leon, León (Spanish) region of northern Spain — CD6. 2.
Leontes river — see Litani.
Lepanto (Italian), Naupactus (classical), Epaktos (medieval Greek), Navpaktos (modern Greek) port — D22. 3. 4.
Letoon (classical), Myrtíléné (medieval Greek), Masthino (medieval Italian), Midhún (Turkish), Léves (modern Greek) island — J31. 5.
Liri, L è s s e (Albanian), Lívia (classical), Alleman (Italian) town — H5d4: 3. 4.
Lisbon or Lefkas (classical), Lamchba or Santa Maura (medieval), Leuca (modern Greek) island — H32. 3. 4.
Lisbon: the Near East, sometimes also including Greece.
Léva town 43 miles south of London (D3b4: 2).
Liége or (recently) Liége (French), Luik (Flemish) city — F3b5: 2. 3.
Lilhídi or Lahfídi (Arabic) village — L10. 7.
Lille (French), Ryssel (Flemish) city — E4b5: 2.
Limassol, Nazemós (medieval Greek), Lemesós (modern Greek) port — K4f1: 1. 8.
Limburg (Flemish) district east of Liége — F6. 2. 3.
Limoges (French) city — E3c3: 2.
Lisbon, Lisbona (Portuguese), Líbbonah (Arabic) city, port — C6c2: 2.
Livorno (Italian) town 45 miles wsw of Rome (E2c1. 2).
Litani, Léntinas (classical), at Líjâmi (Arabic) river — L12. 7.
Lithuania, Létuvu (Lithuanian) region east of Poland, larger than modern state — J1b. 3.
Livadia, Lebdeia or Lebadeia (classical), Leóvithia (modern Greek) town — D3a2. 5.
Livonia, Livland (German) district su of Riga — L1a. 3.
Lo Dromite town — see Adramyttium.
Lo Kito port — see Citrus.
Locello (Italian) abbey 12 miles wsw of Montierl (F4c5. 2).
Lorhe (French) river — E3c3. 2.
Lombardy; Lombardia (Italian) region of nw Italy — Fcd. 2. 3.
London city, port — D3b4. 2.
Longpont (French) town 10 miles ssw of Paris (E1c2: 2).
Loire (French), Lothringen (German) region of central France — EFc. 2. 3.
Lorraine, Lothringen district of southern Belgium — EFbc.
Low Countries, Netherlands and part of Belgium.
Lübeck (German) city, port — Glb. 2. 3.
Lucena (Italian) town — Gld2. 2. 3.
Lucca (Italian) town — Hld4. 3.
Lucię (medieval) port on coast north of Maxtaga (L2c5: 1).
Lübecka (German) town — see Aramagnopolis.
Lusignan (French) town — E1c. 2.
Lydia (classical), Saint George (medieval), al-Ludaf (Arabic), Lod (Israeli) town — K514. 7.
Lyons, Lyon (French) city — E5c5. 2.
Mabji or Mabji (Arabic): Hierapolis (classical), Memluj (Turkish): town—L3s4 6
Macedonia (classical), Makedonhonia (modern Greek), Makedonija (Serbian): region
west of Thrace—ld. 3. 4, 5.
Machaerus or Makkairas (Greek): Greek Orthodox monastery—K4f1: 8.
Mécon (French): town—E5c4: 2.
Maceda, island group in the Atlantic Ocean—not in area mapped.
Madras, city, port—U3m2: 12, 13.
Macedon (classical), Büyük Menderes (Turkish): river—J4e3: 5.
al Maghrib region—see North Africa.
Mahremia, fortress—see al-Bira.
Maidān (Arabic): plain near Mazārib (L2f3: 7).
Maitūq (Arabic): village—L1f1 7.
Mainz (German), Meunence (French): city—F4b5: 2, 3.
Majdāla, castle—see Mirabel.
Majorca; Mallorca (Spanish), Mayūrah (Arabic): island—E6c: 2.
Makhtesh Ramon, Mounts—north of Larnaca (K4f1: 8).
Makri (medieval), Pethye (Turkish): port—J5e4: 1, 3, 5.
Maku (Persian): town 125 miles NW of Tabriz (N2e2: 1).
Malabar: coastal region of SW India.
Malamocco (Italian): village 5 miles south of Venice (G3c5: 3).
Malaya, Malaya: city—see Melacca.
Malburg (German): town 21 miles north of Trier (F3c1: 3).
Malta, Cape; Ákra Malias (modern Greek)—I4e4: 4.
Mallorca, island—see Majorca.
Malaysia, Malaya: fortress—see Melacca.
Malta, Melita (classical), Māleq (Arabic): island—G5e3 3.
Mamluks (medieval), Mopsuestia (classical), Masis (Armenian), Misis (Turkish): town—
L1e4: 1, 6
Mamonia (Greek): village—K3f1: 8.
Manbij (Arabic): town—see Ma‘rib.
Manṣūrāk or Manṣūrāk (Arabic): town—K2f4 1.
Mantua, Mantova (Italian): city—G4c5: 3.
Mankert, Manzigerd (east) or Mantskerd (East Armenian), Malazgirt (Turkish):
town—M3e3: 1.
Mappa (medieval), Anapa (Russian): port—L3d1: 1.
Maraclea (medieval), Maraqiyat (Arabic): port—L1e5: 6.
Marask (Armenian, Turkish), Germanicia (classical), Marask (Arabic): town—L2e3:
1, 6.
Marbut al-Lākūn (German): city 47 miles north of Frankfurt (F4b5: 3).
Mardin (Turkish), Mardin (Arabic): town—M1e3: 1.
Marebasa: valley east of Tylleria (K3e5: 8).
Marmag (medieval), al Marqaj (Arabic: the watch-tower) fortress—L1e5 6
Marienburg (German), Malbork (Polish): fortress, now town—H5b1: 3
Maritsa, Mebrus (classical), Evros (medieval Greek), Meriç (Turkish): river—J2d4
1, 3, 5.
Marmara, Sea of; Propontis (classical), Marmara Denizi (Turkish)—J4d5 5.
Mārōn (medieval), Maran ar Rās (Arabic): village just SW of Toron (L1f2: 7).
Maius (Hungarian), Maris (classical), Mareaş (Romanian): river flowing by Alba
Julia—L3c: 3.
al-Margab: fortress—see Margat.
Marrakesh; Marrakush (Arabic): city—C2f4: 2.
Marseille, Massalia (classical Greek); Massilia (Latin); Marseille (French); city, port—F.62. 2.
Marton (Italian); village near Carispol, 14 miles NW of Capua (G564. 3).
Marbura (medieval); Marbura (Latin); city—H2c2: 3.
Marv; city—see Merv.
Massowa (medieval); Massowa (Arabic); region of east central Poland—Pl. 3.
Masaya or Masjuda or Majdul (Arabic); fortresses—L2c5: 6.
Matapan, Cape; Thasaron (Latin); Akra Buraon (modern Greek)—L3c6: 4.
Matrég (medieval); port, now unimportant—L2c5: 1.
Maunusel (French); unidentified castle near Tyre (I.1E2: 7).
Mayence; city—see Mann.
Mecca, Makkah (Arabic); city—L3b4: 1.
Medina, al-Madina (Arabic); the city; city—L3a1: 1.
Mediterranean Sea—D/2c1: 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8.
Maghara, Mekara (political); Malatara or Migbal Kuru (Turkish); town—J2d5: 1.
Magura, Mejara (modern Greek); town—L3c6: 4
Megiddo village—see Lajin.
Mersin (German); town—G564: 2, 3.
Melikian (classical), Melikian (Armenian), Malatya (medieval), Malatya (Turkish); city—L4E2: 1.
Melos, Melos (classical Greek), Milos (medieval Italian), Dosar Memlik (Turkish), Milos (modern Greek); island—L3c4: 4, 5.
Menteshe (medieval), Mufla (modern Turkish); region of western Anatolia equivalent to classical Caria—L3c: 5.
Mersincourt (French); unidentified locality in France.
Merv (Persian, Margun (classical); city—Q2a3: 12, 13.
Mesoros; Messara (modern Greek); plain around Lefkakiko—K3c: 8.
Messara; district—see Arcadia.
Mesopotamia (medieval), Mskiri (Turkish), Nesebar (Bulgarian); town—J5d3: 3, 5.
Mesopotamia (classical), al-Iraq (Arabic); region between the Tigris and the Euphrates—L5N1: 1.
Mesnee; Mensa (medieval Greek), Menstris (modern Greek); district of SW Morea—L2d4: 1.
Messina (Italian); port—H1b2: 3.
Messines (French), Mevrot (Flemish); village 12 miles NW of Lille (E4b3: 2).
Metello, Island—see Lefkos.
Midias; town, now associated to Charleville, 30 miles NW of Rheims (E5c: 2).
Miecon; island—see Mykonos.
Milan, Milano (Italian); city—F3c5: 2, 3.
Milly (French); village 30 miles SW of Paris (E3c2: 2).
Milo Island—see Melos.
Munhak (medieval), Majdal (Arabic); castle—K3f3: 1.
Milas; town—see Maniistra.
Mig, region—see Egypt.
Mistra (medieval), Myasthira (medieval Greek), Mistras (modern Greek); town—L3a3: 4.
Moab; biblical region equivalent to Transjordan.
Mocca; Mokha (Arabic); port—H4f2: 13.
Medan (medieval), Methkova (medieval Greek), Methana (modern Greek); port—L2d4: 3, 6.
Mediovac, Bogodan (Kumanian); region west of the Carpathians—J5: 3.
Molyvos (classical), Molivos (modern Greek); port—I2c: 5.
Monastir, Bitolj (Serbian); town—L2d4: 3, 4.

Namásti island—see Azapah.

Namur (French): town—E5b5: 2, 3


Naples, Napoli (Italian): city, port—G5d5: 3.


Narbonne (French): town—F4d2: 2.

Narenta (Italian), Narenta (classical), Neretva (Serbian): river flowing into Adriatic 40 miles NW of Ragusa—H3d2: 3.

Naumburg an der Saale (German): city—G2b4: 2, 3.

Nauplia (classical), Nauplion (modern Greek): port—L3c3: 4.


Navarre (French), Navarra (Spanish): region of northern Spain—Dd: 2.

Naxos, Nicotia (medieval Italian), Naktea (Turkish), Náxos (modern Greek): island—J4e4: 5.


Near East: region from Egypt to Persia and Turkey to Aden.

Negroponte: island—see Euboia.

Negropontes (medieval Italian), black bridge, Chalkis (classical), Khalkis (modern Greek): port—14e2: 3, 4.

Nejd, Najd (Arabic): region of central Arabia—MNg: 1.


Neretva: river—see Narenta.

Nesle (French): village 28 miles SE of Amiens (E3c1: 2).

Nestos (Greek), Nestus (Latin), Kara Su (Turkish), Mesta (Bulgarian): river flowing into the Aegean opposite Thasos—15d4: 5.

Neuvilly-sur-Marne (French): town 10 miles east of Paris (E3c2: 2).

Nevers (French): town—E4c4: 2.

Newburgh: town—D2a4: 2.

Nicea (classical), İznik (Turkish): town—J5d5: 1, 3, 5.

Nice (French), Nizza (Italian): port—F3d2: 2.

Nicomedia (classical), İznik (Turkish): town—J5d5: 1, 3, 5.

Nicomedia (medieval), Nicaea (Turkish), Nikaia (Bulgarian): town—15d2: 1, 3.

Nicolaia; Levkóbin (medieval Greek), Nicollia (modern Greek): city—K4e5: 1, 8.

Nicolaia island—see Naxos.

Nijmegen (Dutch): town—F1b4: 3

Nile: Baḥi an-Nil (Arabic): river—K3g4: 1; K1f4: 3.

Nimes (French): city—E5d2: 2.

Nios island—see Ios.

Nish; Niš (Serbian), Niş (Turkish), Naoussa or Nissa (classical): town—12d2: 3.

Nishava, Nišava (Serbian): river flowing past Pirot into the Morava—13d2: 3.

Nisibis or Nusaybin (Turkish), Nişabir (classical), Nişabir or Nusaybin (Arabic): town—M2e3: 1.

Nogent-sur-Marne (French): town 7 miles east of Paris (E3c2: 2).


North Sea—DEFab: 2, 3.

Novara (Italian): town—F4c5: 3

Novgorod (Russian, new city): city—K2a2: 12.

Novi Pazar or Raška (Serbian), Răsca (Latin): town—1kd2: 3.

Nubia (classical): region south of Egypt, equivalent to northern Sudan.
Nuremberg, Nürnberg (German); city—G2e: 2, 3
Nymphæum (classical); Nif or Keimalpasa (Turkish); town—33e: 5

Ochrida, Lake; Lykovitisk Lacus (classical); Ohridskje Jezero (Serbian)—11d4 4
Osor (German); Osor (Czech, Polish); river—H1b3: 2.
Oldenberg (German); city—F4b2: 2, 3.
Olives, Mount of, or Olivat; Jabal as-Tur (Arabic); hill east of Jerusalem (L1f4 7).
Oresus (Latin); Oriæus (medieval Greek); Oræas (modern Greek); town—14e: 2, 4
Orleans (French); town—E2e: 3.
Orontes (classical); al-'Asil (Arabic); the rebellious; Far (medieval); river—L3e: 1, 6, 7
Oreolum (German); probably Neder and Oberursel, 7 miles south of Frankfurt (F4b5' 2)
Orosbia (Greek); Orosca (Romanian); town—13df: 3.
Ottoman (medieval); village—L1f1: 6.
Overn (medieval); Ostervold (modern German); village 18 miles northwest of Nuremberg (G2e: 3)

Ostia (Italian); port, now village—G3d4: 2, 3.
Otranto (Italian); town—H4d5: 3.
Öttingen (German); village 40 miles south of Nuremberg (G2e: 3)
Ottoman (classical); city—Transjordan.
Outremer (French); overseas; Ulmamare (Latin); the Latin states in Syria and Palestine


Paderborn (German); town—F4b4: 2, 3.
Padua, Padova (Italian); city—G2e: 2, 3.
Palaestina (medieval); Miletos (classical); Balat (Turkish); port, now abandoned—13e: 3, 5.
Palkyistros (Greek); village—K4e: 8.
Palermo (Italian), Badalm (Arabic); city, port—G6e: 2, 3.
Palmest; Palaestina (classical); Filistin (Arabic); region west of the Dead Sea and the Jordan—KL1: 1.
Palma de Mallorca (Spanish); or Majorca; city, port—E3c1: 2.
Palmyra, Palmyra; oasis—see Segov.
Pamyn or Temnor (classical); Temnor, now Temnor (Arabic); caravan town—L4f1: 6.
Pannonia (classical); region including parts of modern Austria, Hungary, and Yugoslavia

Papal States—Gd: 9
Paphos (medieval); Paphos (modern Greek); town—K3f1: 1, 8.
Paris (French); city—E3c2: 2.
Passo (Italian); town 75 miles northeast of Milan (F5f3: 2).
Paros, Paro (medieval Italian), Bora (Turkish), Páros (modern Greek); island—11n3: 5.
Passarowitz (German); Pozarevac (Serbian); town 37 miles southeast of Belgrade (L1d1: 3).
Passau (German); town—Q4c2: 2, 3.
Patmos; Patmos (Italian), Patmos (Turkish), Patmos (modern Greek); island—J2e: 5.
Patras (medieval); Patrai (modern Greek); port—L2e: 2, 3, 4
Pavia (Italian); town—F5c3: 2, 3.
Pehoulas; Pehouls or Pedoulas (modern Greek); town—K3f1: 8.
Pedras or Pedriolos, Pedras (modern Greek); river—K4e: 8.
Peking, city—see Khandhak.
Pelendria or Pelendria, Pelendria (modern Greek); town—K3f1: 8.
Pelloponneseus region—see Morea.
Peñaforta (Spanish); castle near Villafraanca del Panadés, 25 miles west of Barcelona (E3d4: 2).

Pendanda (Greek); village—K3e: 8.
Penne-de-Poupe (French); village 28 miles west of Caen (D3cl': 2).
Pentedaktylos (Greek): monastery -- K4e5: 3.

Peri of Estanor (medieval), Beyoğlu (Turkish): port -- J4d4: 3, 5.

Perche (French): district west of Chartres -- Elc2: 2.

Persamm (classical), Bergama (Turkish): town -- J3e3: 3, 5.

Peritheorion (medieval), Peritheorion (Greek): port -- I8c3: 4.

Persia (classical), Iran (Persian): region of sw Anan -- NOf: 1.

Persian Gulf; Khālij-i-Fars (Persian), Khali al-A'yan (Arabic) -- NOf: 12, 13 (name not shown on maps).

Perugia (Italian): town -- G3d2: 3.


Petrich (Bulgarian), Petřice (medieval Greek): castle -- I5e4: 3, 5.

Petrovaradin (Serbian), Peterwardem (German): town -- H5e5: 3.

Phanian bishopric -- see Faran.

Philadelphia (classical), Allech (Turkish): town -- J4e3: 3, 5.

Philadelphia town -- see Amman.

Philippopolis (classical), Plovdiv (Bulgarian), Filibe (Turkish): town -- I5d3: 1, 3, 5.

Philoca (modern Greek): village -- K3c1: 3.

Phocae (classical), Foglia (Italian), Foça (Turkish): port, now abandoned (or New Phocaia) -- J2e3: 3, 5.

Phoca, New, Yenifoca (Turkish): port -- J2d3: 3, 5.

Pompei (classical): region equivalent to modern Lebanon and part of Israel.

Pholegandros (medieval Greek), Pholegandros (modern Greek): island -- I5e4: 5.


Pian del Carpine or Pian della Magione (Italian), Pian de Carpin (Latin), Pianocurpino (medieval): village 9 miles w of Perugia (G3d2: 3).


Picquigny (French): village 4 miles w of Amiens (E3c1: 2).

Piotrków (Polish): town -- H5i5: 3.

Piot (Bulgarian): town -- J3d2: 3.

Pisa (Italian): port, new city -- G3d2: 2, 3.

Pisana: port -- see Pescia.


Placentia, town -- see Carmaa.

Pianello (French): village, town -- E3c2: 2.

Piacenzi (classical): village -- see Pian del Carpine.

Podio -- see Le Puy.

Podolia region north of Moldavia -- Jc: 3.

Poti (Greek): town -- Elc4: 2.

Poltai (French): region of western France -- D8c: 2.

Pola (Italian), Puja (Croatian): port -- G4d1: 3.

Poland, Polska (Polish): region east of Germany -- H1b: 1, 3.

Pola (medieval), Paralio (classical): town -- K3e5: 8.

Pommern, Pomorzen (German): region of s W Germany -- OHb: 2, 3.

Pomerelia; Pommerellia (German), Pomorze (Polish): district of northern Poland -- Hb: 3.

Pont-de-Fer (French): casal in the county of Tripoli.

Porcheds (medieval), Pursato (Greek): casal -- K4f6: 9.

Portdenone (Italian): town 28 miles w of Udine (G4c4: 3).

Porsico or Pisani (medieval): port on south shore of Black Sea.

Porto (Italian): village 13 miles s of Rome (G3d4: 3).

Portugale: Lusitania (classical): region west of southern and central Spain, now a nation -- Cde: 2.

Posen (German), Poznań (Polish): city -- H2b3: 3.

Potamia (Greek): casal in Cyprus, possibly Potamos.
Potamides [Greek]: port on sw coast of Nazos (J164, 5).
Potamion; Potamios [modern Greek]: village—K3f1: 8.
Prague; Praha [Czech]: city—G5h5: 2, 3.
Prato in Toscana [Italian]: town 12 miles w/w of Florence (GZd2: 3).
Prespa, Lake; Brygios Lacus [classical], Bryges Limmæ [medieval Greek], Prespanisko Jezero [Serbian]—Hld5: 4.
Prot; Proton [Italian]: Barakada [Turkish]: island—I2e3: 4.
Provdohiy (Bulgarian), Provdohia [medieval], Provadi (Turkish): town—J3d2: 5
Provence [French]: region of s/w France—EEd: 2, 3.
Provins [French]: town 40 miles w/w of Troyes (ESc2: 2).
Prussia, Prusse [German], Prusy [Polish]: region of s/w Germany—H1b: 3.
Pudlófo [medieval Greek], Pusmolóphou [modern Greek]: village—K4e5: 8.
Ptiskov [Russian], Pleskau [German]: city—J4a3: 12.
Puglia or Puglie: region—see Apulia.
Pyla, Cape—K4f1: 8.
Pyrampus [classical], Cha'ham [Armenian], Jeyham [Turkish]: river—L1e4: 6.
Pyrenees, Pyrénées [French], Pirineos [Spanish]: mountain range—DEd: 2.

Qalanawâ [Arabic], Qalanou [medieval]: village—L1f3: 7.
Qafat Íab'âi [Arabic]: fortress—L4e5: 6.
Qâquîn [Arabic], Qâsu [medieval]: fortress—L1f3: 7.
al-Qantâl [Arabic]: fortress—L1f4: 7.
Qinnasrin [Arabic], Qalcan ad Besho [classical]: town, now unimportant—L2e4: 6.
Qmâ: unidentified town north of Maragha (NZe3: 1).
Qnîn or Qoilum, port—T2j2: 13
Qnasîl: city—see Hangzhou.
Qnâwar: castle—see Cursat.

Ra'âshin or Rash'în [Arabic], Reshîn [medieval]: village—L1f1: 6.
Rafisâ [Arabic], Raphia [medieval]: village—K5f4: 7.
Ragusa [medieval], Dubrovnik [Serbian]: port—H4d3: 3.
Rahova or Rakhova [medieval], Ruyakho [Rumanian]: town—I4d2: 3.
ar-Raïnah [Arabic], Ramû [medieval], village 9 miles n/nw of Nazareth (L1f3: 7).
Râmîlah [Arabic], Ramelle [medieval]: village 9 miles north of Jerusalem (L1f4: 7).
Ramla; Rama or Raim [medieval], ar-Ramîl [Arabic: the steady]: town—K5f4: 7.
Raphia: village—see Rafisâ.

Ravena [Italian]: town—G3d1: 2, 3.
Ravenhika [medieval]: town, now abandoned—I3e4: 4.
Regensburg [German], Ratibahon [medieval]: town—G3c1: 2, 3.
Reshaya, village—see Rashâshin.
Retaia [medieval]: probably Rethel, 23 miles n/nw of Rheims (ESc1: 2).
Retimo [medieval], Calemouna or Retlhymna [classical], Réthymno [modern Greek]:
town—I5e5: 3.
Rheims; Reims [French]: city—ESc1: 2.
Rhine; Rin [Dutch], Rhein [German], Rhin [French]: river—F3b5: 2; F3c2: 3.
Rhineeland region of the middle Rhine.
Rhodes; Rhodos [classical Greek], Rhodos [Latin], Ródhos [modern Greek]: city,
port—J4a4: 1, 5.
Rhodes, Rhodos [classical Greek], Rhodos [Latin], Rodos [Turkish], Rodi [Italian],
Róðhos [modern Greek]: island—J2: 1, 3, 5.
Rhodope, Rhodope (classical Greek), Rodopi (modern Greek), Rodopi (Bulgarian); mountain range—1544 ft.
Rhöne; Rhône (French); river—E5c5. 2.
Ridefort (French); château, location unknown.
Riga, Riga (Latvian); city—D3d4. 12.
Rimini (Italian); town—G3d4. 2, 3.
Rodost (medieval), Biazebe or Rhodostus (classical), Tekirdağ (Turkish); port—E5d5 5.
Romano d’Ezzelino (Italian); village 36 miles nw of Venice (G3c5. 2, 3).
Romans-sur-l’Isère (French); town 11 miles north of Valence (E5d1. 2).
Rome, Roma (Italian); city—G3d4. 2, 3.
Rosetta; Rashid (Arabic); port—K1d4. 1.
Rothenburg (German); town 40 miles west of Nuremberg (G2c1. 3).
Rouen (French); city—E2c1. 2.
Rosso; town—see Russo.
Rubruk (Flemish); village 33 miles nw of Lille (E4b5. 2).
Rugas (medieval), ar-Rūgās (Arabic); valley—L3e5. 6.
Râm; region—see Anatolia.
Rumeli-Hissar (Turkish); castle of Rumelis; fortress—J3d4. 5.
Rumelis; Rumeli (Turkish); Ottoman territory in Europe—11.
Rusin or Rosina (medieval), Rusçıl (medieval Turkish), Russia (modern Turkish); town 55 miles south of Adrianople (J2d4. 5).
Russino (Italian); probably Rossano, 40 miles nw of Crotone (H3d1. 3).
Rustia, Rustia (medieval), Rusˇka (Russian); region of eastern Europe—JKLMbc: 1, 3.
Ruthenia (medieval); region of eastern Europe; not equivalent to modern (till 1945).
Czechoslovakian province—Lit. 3.
Sabina (Italian); district 35 miles north of Rome (G3d4. 3).
Sakhmet Baradawi (Arabic); new Sakhmet al-Baradawi; lagoon north of Snaïl—K4f4. 1.
Sabran (French); village 24 miles nw of Avignon (E5d2. 3).
Sabzevari or Sabzavir; town—see Bajnaq.
Sachen; region—see Assyry.
Salad, Safbat (medieval), Safad (Arabic), Tefat (Israel); town 13 miles north of Tiberias (L1f3. 7).
Saggiia; port—see Sidon.
Sabata; as-Sabatî (Arabic); desert—DEPGbr. 2, 3.
Sainy (medieval); unidentified place, possibly Saintes, 75 miles sw of Limoges (E2c5. 2).
Saint Abraham; town—see Hebron.
Saint Amand (French); town 25 miles south of Bourges (E3c3. 2).
Saint Bertin (French); abbey 17 miles east of Boulogne (E2b5. 2).
Saint Chariton; Khirbet Kosarit (Arabic); Greek Orthodox monastery—L1f4. 7.
Saint Ephraïm; Khan al Ałam (Arabic); Greek Orthodox monastery—L1f4. 7.
Saint George; town—see Lydda.
Saint George of Khuzra. Greek Orthodox monastery—L1f4. 7.
Saint Gevaltus, Qasr Haj Taher (Arabic); Greek Orthodox monastery 3 miles sw of Jericho (L1f4. 7).
Saint Gilles; village—see Sainjil.
Saint Gilles-du-Gard (French); village 10 miles west of Aries (E5d2. 2).
Saint Hilarion or Deoudamous (French); Ayios Hilarion (modern Greek); castle—K4c5 8.
Saint Jean d’Acre; city; port—see Acre.
Saint John; Qasr el-Yahud (Arabic); Greek Orthodox monastery—L1f4. 7.
Saint Lazarus; village 2 miles sw of Jerusalem (L1f4. 2).
Saint Nicholas (St. Sozomen); Ayias Nikolaos (modern Greek); village—K3f1. 8.
Saint Quentin (French); town 26 miles NW of Laon (E4c: 2).
Saint Sabas, Mār Saba (Syrian); Greek Orthodox monastery — L114: 7.
Saint Simeon (medieval), al-Sawadīyyah (Arabic); village — L1c6: 6.
Saint Theodore; Darb Ramū 'Ubaid (Arabic); Greek Orthodox monastery — L1f4: 7.
Saint Troid (French); town — F1h5: 2.
Sakarya (Turkish), Sangarius (classical); river — K1c1: 1; K1d5: 5.
Salamanca (Spanish), Salamanca (Arabic); city — C5d5: 2.
Salerm (classical), Koudouré (medieval Greek), Koluri (Turkish), Salamis (modern Greek); island — 14c3: 4.
Salerno (Italian); port — G5d5: 3.
Salmas, Selmas, or Salmasar (medieval), Salmas, Dilmān, or Shāhpār (Persian); town — M5e2: 1.
Salone or La Sala (medieval), Amphiaste (classical), Amfissa (modern Greek); town — J3e2: 3, 4.
Salonica or Saloniki; city — see Thessalonica.
Salsette; island SW of Bombay, on which Thana (S3a1: 13) is located
Salza or Langenaltrn (German); town — G1b: 2, 3.
Salzburg (German); city — G4e3: 2, 3.
Samaria (classical); district of northern Palestine — L1f3: 7.
Samarkand; Samarqand (Persian, Arabic); city — R2c1: 2, 15.
Samos (classical), Samos (medieval Italian), Susam (Turkish), Samos (modern Greek); island — J2e2: 5.
Samos Trapezus (classical Greek), Samothraki (modern Greek); island — J1d5: 5.
Samsun (Turkish), Amusia (classical), Summum or Simiis (medieval); port — L2d4: 1.
San Germano Vercellese (Italian); village 32 miles NW of Montefurlo (F4c3: 3).
San Gimignano (Italian); town 10 miles NW of Sienna (G2d2: 3).
Sancerre (French); town 26 miles NE of Bourges (E3c3: 2).
Samerhausen (German); town 31 miles SSW of Halberstadt (G2d4: 3).
Sanok (Polish); town — L3c1: 3.
San Millán; unidentified place, probably in Galicia, Spain.
Santiago de Compostela; shrine — see Compostela.
Santorin; island — see Thera.
Saron (medieval), Şahyin or Şîhyaun (Arabic); crusader castle — L2e5: 6.
Sappho; town see Sefad.
Sapienza; Sapienza (Italian), Sapienza (modern Greek); island — 12d4: 4.
Saragossa; Zaragoza (classical), Zaragoza (Spanish), Saragósah (Arabic); city — D5d3: 2.
Saral or Saral-Has (Turkish), Sarā (Persian, palæa); town, now abandoned — N3a3: 1.
Sarul-Berke; town — see Aksaray.
Sardes (medieval), Sardsiyun (Arabic); village — I2c2: 7.
Sardis (Greek); Sardis (Italian); island — Fdc: 2, 3.
Sarpotra (medieval), Sarabhat (classical), Saroost (Arabic); town — K5f3: 6.
Saracens or Seigneurs (French); village 35 miles west of Troyes (E5c2: 2).
Sarock Castle, Sarokos Kólos (modern Greek) — I4c3: 4.
Sarukhan (Turkish); district of western Anatolia — Jc: 5.
Sarns (classical), Sultan (Armenian), Seyhun (Turkish); river — L1c3: 6.
Savantikov, Saronantikov (Armenian); fortress — L2e3: 6.
Sathua; port — see Adua.
Sathmös city — see Athana.
Sawomosity (French); probably Sauveugny, 15 miles NW of Thol (F1c2: 2).
Sava or Save (Croatian), Sau (German), Szava (Hungarian); river — H4d1: 3.
Savignone (Italian); village 11 miles north of Genoa (F4d3: 3).
SavoY, Savoule (French): region of the France—Fe: 2, 3.

as-Sawad (Arabic): the black land: district east of the Sea of Galilee—LiF3: 7

Saxony, Sachsan (German): region of northern Germany—Ge: 2, 3.

Saxa (German): town—F3b5: 2, 3.

Scandinavia region comprising Denmark, Sweden, and Norway

Seleucid or Seleucia (medieval): Salb (Arabic): district on the Sidon—LiF2: 6

Schwaben: region—see Swabia.

Schwenden (German): village 46 miles south of Constance (F5c5: 3).

Schwarzenberg (German): castle 5 miles n of Aue.

Scio island—see Chios.


Scentari (Italian), Chrystopohos (classical), Uskudar (Turkish): port—J5d4: 5

Scentail (Italian), Scodim (classical), Skhodur (Albanian): port—H5d1: 3.

Scyros: island—see Skyros.

Scythopolis, town—see Bethsaam.

Sebastia: city—see Salamis.

Sbeschla (medieval), Samaria (classical), Sabasaqiah (Arabic): village—LiF3: 2.

Sebestopolis (medieval), Gagny (Russian): port—M1d2: 1.

Sebenisco (Italian), Sibenik (Serbian): port—H1d2: 3

Sedimnem (medieval), Shaqinah (Arabic): minos—LiF2: 7.

Sergi (Italian): town 30 miles nw of Rome (O3d4: 3).

Segor; Zaan (classical), Palmaria or Palmira (medieval): oases—LiF4: 7.

Selene (French): river—E5c2: 2.

Seleucia of Ctesiphon (classical): suburb of Baghdad—M5f2: 7

Seleucia Trachea (classical), Selevkia (Armenian), Sisilke (Turkish): port, now town—K4d1: 1.

Selmas: town—see Salmas.

Selvbrilia (medieval), Silviri (Turkish): port—J4d4: 5.

Selv (Serbian), Sinya (Italian), Zeng (German): port—G5d1: 3

Seville: Sibilia (Serbian) region east of Damascus—H1d: 3.

Seriphos (classical), Sérifos (modern Greek): island—I5e3: 4, 9.

Serres (medieval), Sérmi (modern Greek): town—I4d4: 3, 4, 5.

Seven, Lake (Russian), Gökte Gölé (Turkish): N1d5: 1.

Sévérac-le-Château (French): village 70 miles nw of Nîmes (E5d2: 2).

Sevelin (Rumanian): district north of Orșova—IoI: 3.

Seville: Hispalis (classical), Sevilla (Spanish), Ishbiylia (Arabic): city—C5e3: 2.

Shatlar (medieval Arabic), Larana (classical), Sapp (modern Arabic): fortress, now town—L2e5: 6.

Shaql Arnu castle—see Bethstructured.

ash Shaubak fortress—see Kairouk de Montréal.

Shnmen; Şumen (Bulgarian), Şumen (Turkish): town, now Kolarovgrad—J2d2: 3

Siberia, Sibin (Russian): northern portion of Asia.

Sicily, Sicilia (Italian), Sicilleyah (Arabic), Trimacta (medieval): island—Ge: 2, 3.

Sidon, Sagiwa (medieval), Sa'da' (Arabic): port—LiF3: 7.

Siebenburgen: region—see Transylvania.

Siena (Italian): town—G2d2: 2, 3.

Silento: island—see Sikinos.

Sikyon or Syvou (modern Greek), Bafya (medieval): castle—K4e5: 8.

Sikinos, Sikimnos (modern Greek): island—J1c4: 5.

Silesia, Schlesian (German), Šlesk (Polish), Slezsko (Czech): region north of Moravia—Hb: 3

Silfric: port—see Seleucia.

Silvri: port—see Selvbrilia.

Silves (Portuguese), Salib (Arabic): town—C2c3: 2.
Sinuso port—see Samos.
Sinaí (Arabic): peninsula—K4g2: 1.
Sinai, Mont, or Mount Hor; Jabal Musa (Arabic: mountain of Moses)—K4g2: 1.
Sinar plain around town of Sinjar (M2a2: 1).
Sinjar; Sinjir (Arabic): town—M2a2: 1.
Sinope; Sinóp (medieval Greek), Sinop (Turkish): port—L1f3: 1.
Sion, Mount, or Mount Zion: hill south of Jerusalem (L1f3: 7).
Siphnos (classical), Sifanà (Italian), Sifnos (modern Greek): island—L1f3: 3.
Sin (Armenian, medieval), Keram (Turkish): town—L1f3: 1.
Siria or Sirija (Greek): town—J2c3: 3.
Silas, Sebastian (classical), Selas (Turkish): city—L3c1: 1.
Skiatos, Skiathos (modern Greek): island—H4c1: 4.
Skopelos, Skopelos (modern Greek): island—H4c1: 4.
Skopje (Serbian, Skopje: town—L2d3: 3.
Skyros or Scyros (classical), Skiros (modern Greek): island—L3c2: 4, 5.
Slavonia district east of Croatia—Hc: 3.
Slovsko: town—see Kreuzburg.
Smyrna (classical), Izmir (Turkish): city, port—J2c2: 1, 3, 5.
Socestra; Socestru (Arabic): island—Q4s/5j: 13.
Sofia: unidentified town on coast north of Bombay (S3j2: 13).
Sofia; Sardica (classical), Sardia (medieval Greek), Sredec (Serbian), Sofiya (Bulgarian) city—J2d3: 3, 5.
Solomons (French): town 20 miles southwest of Leão (B4c1: 2).
Soldai (medieval), Sudak (Russian): port—K5c1: 1.
Solal town—see Suraj.
Soll (Greek): town, now abandoned—K3c5: 8.
Sopol (Bulgarian), Szenetvaro (medieval): town—J2d3: 3, 5.
Sann: district—see Schnell.
Speropolis (medieval), Apollonia (classical), Sperboll or Uluburtu (Turkish), Sze- "pol (Bulgarian): town—J3d3 3, 5.
Spain; Hispania (classical), España (Spanish): region south of the Pyrenees.
Sparalos (medieval), Split (Serbian): port—H2d2: 3.
Sparta or Lacedemon (Latin), Sparte or Lakädomon (classical Greek), Sparti (modern Greek): town—J3c3: 4.
Sporades; Sporadhes (medieval Greek): island group—L3c: 3, 4, 5.
Srdna Gora (Bulgarian): mountain range—J3d. 5.
Stallmen: island—see Lemnos.
Stampella, island—see Astypalaea.
Stanchio or Stankoi, island—see Cos.
Starkenburg: castle—see Montfort.
Sterving (medieval), Sarvdning (modern Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, Finnish): farmstead near Nicotera (K4e3: 8).
Strasbourg (German), Strasbourg (French): city—F3c2: 2, 3.
Strachini (modern Italian): island—J3c4: 5.
Strymon; Strymôn (classical Greek), Strumón (modern Greek), Struma (Bulgarian): river—J4d4 4.
Styria; Steiermark (German): region of southern Austria—GChc: 3.
Suchum (German), Suak, probably Sudheim, near Paderborn (F4b4: 3).
Sudak port—see Soudan.
Sudan, as-Súdán (Arabic the Negro lands): region south of Egypt—JKh: 1.
Suza; as-Suwais (Arabic): port—K3gl: 1.
Sultanie (medieval Turkish), Çanakkale (modern Turkish): port—J2d5 5.
Sultanyeh, Sulțānye (Persian), Kangurius (Mongol): town—N4e4: 1.
Summiso: port—see Summis.
Sin: port—see Tиру.
Surgat or Soljat (medieval): town, probably on the Crimea (K4c5. 3).
Swaziland (Russian): city—M24: 12.
Swabia, Schwaben (German): region of sw Germany—Pc 2. 3.
Sweden; Sverige (Swedish): region of Scandinavia, smaller than modern nation—
Ch 12. 13
Syhia (medieval): port, now unimportant—L44: 1.
Syria (classical), Ash-Sham or Suriyan (Arabic): region east of the Mediterranean—
L1. 4.
Szeged: city, now Szeged—K1c4: 3.
Tabor, Mount: Jebel Taabler or Jebel at-Tür (Arabic), Tavor (Israel)—L1f3 7.
Talgamun (Italian): river flowing into the Adriatic 12 miles east of Carole—C3c4: 3.
Tagu (classical), Tajo (Spanish), Tejo (Portuguese), Távha (Arabic): river—C3c1: 2.
Ta'in; at-Talef (Arabic): oasis—M2h5: 1.
Tana (medieval), Tanais (classical), Tanov (Russian): port—L5c3: 1.
Tannenberg (German), Stebacz (Polish): village—H1b2: 3.
Taraklı-Yenije: Taraklı-Yenije (Turkish): village—K1d5: 5.
Tarragona (Italian): port—H3d5: 3.
Tarsus (classical, Turkish), Tarhûs (Aramaean): city—K5c4: 1.
Tartar: area held by the Mongols at any given time.
Tashkent: Tashkent or Tashkand (Arabic): city—K5d4: 12, 18.
Tanrus (classical), Tereos Dağiari (Turkish): mountain range—L1e: 1.
Tepeldizhio (classical), Pendsaktylon (medieval Greek), Tepeliztos (medieval Greek): moun-
tain range—K3c3: 4.
Tbilisi, city—see Tiflis.
Tegua (classical): town, now abandoned for Tegua (formerly Piall) nearby—C3e3: 4.
Tekirdağ: port—see Modostu.
Tekke (Turkish): region of sw Anatolia, equivalent to classical Pamphyia—Je 5.
Tell Bashir, Tall Bâshir (Arabic), Tarbessel (medieval), Tilbeshar (Turkish): fortress—
Tembrui or Tumbria (Greek): village—K3c5: 6.
Temetvár (Hungarian): district of western Romania—Le 10. 11.
Temetvár (Hungarian), Temesvara (Rumanian): town—M2c5: 3.
Tenedos; Tenedos (medieval Italian), Bodja-açu (Turkish): island—Jte 5.
Tinos; Tinos (classical Greek), Tinos (medieval Italian), Tinos (medieval Greek): island—
Jte 5: 4.
Thebaurus; town—see Thebaus.
Thessalonsika (medieval), Thessalonica (classical): city, port—L3d5: 3, 4.
Tiberia: town—see Tiberias.
Thasos (medieval): port—S3f1: 13.
Thasos, Thasos (modern Greek): island—K3d5: 3, 5.
Thebes; Theben (classical Greek), Tebeus (medieval), Talvou (modern Greek): city—
L1e2: 3, 4.
Theurterre (French): village—L1f2: 7.
Thera, Thera (classical Greek), Santorin (medieval), Thira (modern Greek): island—
Jte 5.
Therasia, Therasia (modern Greek): island just sw of Thera (Jte 5).
Thermia: island—see Cythnos.
Thessalonika (medieval), Thessalonica (classical), Sôda (Macedonian), Saldonka (Italian),
Thessaloniki or Salonic (modern Greek): city, port—L3d5: 3, 4.
Thessaly; Thessalia (classical), Vinnaza (medieval), Thessalia (modern Greek); region of northern Greece—Le 3, 4

Thessy (French): probably Thex, 65 miles nw of Le Puy (E4c5. 2).

Thrace; Thrace (Latin), Thraké (classical Greek), Trakya (Turkish), Thraki (modern Greek); region south of Bulgaria—Jdt 1, 3, 5.

Thuringia. Thüringen (German); region of central Germany—Gis 2, 3.

Tiberias (classical), Thebaria (medieval), Tabariyyah (Arabic), Teyarya (Israel); town—L113: 1, 7.

Tiberias, lake—see Galilee, Sea of.

Tibet; region north of India—UVW1g: 12, 13.

Tibnis (Arabic); village jst west of Toron (L112: 7).

Tiflis, Tifliss (Persian), Tbilisi (Georgian); city—M8d4 1.

Tigris (classical), Djihab (Arabic), Djilic (Turkish); river—N2d4: 1.

Tikhv, Tikhil (Arabic); town—M6f 1.

Tine or Timos; island—see Temos.

Timovo; Ternovum (Latin), Timovos (Turkish), Timovo (Bulgarian); town—Jtd2: 1, 3, 5.

Toledo (Spanish), Toletum (classical), Tulaspalá (Arabic); city—D1c5: 2.

Tolentino (Italian); village 30 miles sw of Ascoli (G4d2: 3).

Torcello (Italian); town 6 miles nw of Venice (G3c5: 3).

Toron (medieval) fortress—L112: 7.

Torus; mountain range—see Thaurus.

Tortosa; Antarraduns (classical), Anzarits or Tarits (Arabic); port—L11f1: 1, 6.

Tortosa (Spanish), Tortosa (classical), Turçashah (Arabic); town—E9d5: 2.

Tout (French); town—F1c2: 2, 3.

Toulon (French); city—E2d2: 2.

Tounim (French), Doumnik (Flemish); town—E4b3: 2.

Tunas (French); town—E1c3: 2.

Transcaucasia; region including Georgia and parts of Armenia and Azerbaijan.

Transjordan, Quttirjuda al-mamluk (medieval French); region east of the Jordan.

Transoxiana region (QRde) as of the Aral Sea.

Transylvania; Siebenburgen (German), Erdély (Hungarian), Ardeal (Romanian); region as of medieval Hungary—Le 3.

Trench (medieval), Trogir (Serbian); port—G1d2: 3.

Trebizond; Trapezus (classical), Trapezun (medieval), Trabzon (Turkish), city, port—L5d5: 1.

Trebizond; empire—Ld 9.

Trebizond (medieval); district nw of Acre—L1f3: 7.

Trebizond (Italian); town 16 miles nw of Venice (G3c5: 3).

Trier (German), Trèves (French); city—F2c1: 2, 3.

Trinacria, Sicily—see Sicily.

Tripoli, Oes (classical), Ṭārāḥnīs as-Šīrīb (Arabic); port—G4f1: 3.

Tripoli, Tripoli (classical), Ṭārāḥūs (Arabic); city, port—L11f1 1, 6, 7.

Tripoli; see Trak.

Tróodos; Tróodos (modern Greek); mountain—K3f1: 8.

Troia; Ilion, Ilion, or Troia (classical); site of ancient city, at village of Hoiarh—J2c1: 3, 5.

Troyes (French); town—E5c2: 2.

Trikala; port—see Záduna.

Tudela (Spanish), Tiflet (classical), Tiflis (Arabic); town—D4c3: 2.

Tunis; Tunisia, Tūnis (Arabic); city—G1c4 2, 3.

Tunisia, Tiflis (Arabic); region of North Africa—F3f2: 2, 3.

Turbed; fortress—see Teši Bashur.

Turkestan region—see Transoxiana.
Turkey; Türkiye (Turkish): modern nation, comprising Anatolia and parts of Thrace, Armenia, and Kurdistan.

Tunis (Romanian): Drübeta (classically): town, now Tunis-Sevérine—13d1: 3
Tuscany; Toscana (Italian): region of central Italy—G6: 2, 3.
Tuscicum (Latin): town, now abandoned, 12 miles SE of Rome (G3d4: 3).
Tyllie (Greek): district in Gr Klissósou—K3c5: 8.
Tyre, Tyrus (classically); Sür (Arabic); Tyr (Hebrew): port—L1f2: 1, 7.
Tyrrhenian Sea—FG4a: 2.
Tzia, island—see Chio.

Udine (Italian) town—G4c4: 3.
Užlak (Croatian), Ilok (Turkish): village—H5c5: 3.
Ukraine, Ukraina (Russian): region of SW Russia—Kc: 1, 3.
Ultimare—see Outremere.
Upper Egypt, region along the Nile south of Cairo—Jk: 1.
Ur (city)—see Edessa.

Urgench, Urgence (Turkish), Urgan (Persian), al-Jārāniyyah (Arabic), now Khiva Urgench: city, now abandoned for Novo Urgench—Q4d4: 3.
Oskudar, port—see Scutari.

Valence (medieval), Baluniyās (medieval Arabic), Banūyās (modern Arabic): port—L1s5: 6.
Valence (French): town—E5d1: 2.
Valência (Spanish), Balašiyyah (Arabic): city, port—D5e1: 2.
Valona, port—see Avlona.
Van, Lake; Van Gölü (Turkish)—M3e2: 1.
Varna (medieval, Bulgarian): port, recently called Stara—J3d2: 1, 3, 5.
Venice, Venezia (Italian): city, port—G3c5: 2, 3.
Verdun (French): town—F3e1: 2, 3.
Venosa (Italian): city—G2c5: 2.
Vestal (medieval), Véroia (modern Greek), Fera or Kara Ferye (Turkish): town—J3d5: 4.
Via Egnatia (medieval): road across Balkans from Durazzo to Constantinople—H3d: 4, 5.
Vleenza (Italian) town—G3c5: 2, 3.
Vidin (Bulgarian): town—I3d2: 3.
Viena, Wien (German): city—H2c3: 2.
Vienne (French): town—E5c5: 2.
Vienne (French): district of SW France, now called Dauphine—Fc: 2.
Vilk (Serbian): district around the Lab valley.
Vilkoch (German): town—G4c4: 2, 3.
Villerchefluin (French): castle near Troyes (E5c2: 2).
Villegargnon: town—see Arnegah.
Vistula, Wisła (Polish), Weichsel (German): river—H5h3: 5.
Viterbo (Italian): town—G3d3: 2, 3.
Vitry-en-Artois (French): village 25 miles south of Lille (E4b5: 2).
Vittoria (Italian): town—G3e6: 3.
Vivar or Bivar or Viver (Spanish): town—D5e1: 2.
Vischau region—see Thesy and Wallachia.
Volga (Russian), Ul (Tatar): river—N3e4: 1.
Vonitsa (medieval Greek), Vouna (medieval), Vónitsa (modern Greek): town—Ile2: 3, 4.
Wadi al-Qilt (Arabic); valley sw of Jericho (Lit.: 7).
Wadi Khrum or Wadi al-Karn (Arabic); brook at Montfort (Lit.: 7).
Wadi Sa'di (Arabic); village—K4gt: 1.
Wadi i Ta'ma (Arabic); valley—Lit.: 7.
Wales; Cambria (Latin), Cymru (Welsh); region west of England—Db: 2.
Wallachia; Walachia (medieval), Walachia (Romanian), Eflak (Turkish); region north of Bulgaria—Eld: 1, 3.
Warwick; town—D4b3: 2.
Wavrin (French); town 18 miles west of Brussel (E4b5: 3).
Wendover; town 34 miles nw of London (D5b4: 2).
Westminster; abbey in London (D5b4: 2).
Wien city—see Vienna.
Willersleben or Wüllersleben (German); village 70 miles south of Bamberg (Gicl: 3).
Winchester city—D4b4: 2.
Worms (German); town—FscI: 2, 3.
Würzburg (German); city—FscI: 2, 3.

Yangchow or Yang-chou (Chinese); city, port—BB5f3: 13.
Yazna (Bulgarian); river—Kkd2: 5.
Yāmīḥ (Arabic); village—Lit.: 7.
Yayste; Jajce (Serbian); town—H3d1: 3.
Yemen; al-Yaman (Arabic; the right hand) region of sw Arabia—MN: 12, 13.
Ypres (French); town—Flemish; town 17 miles nw of Lille (E4b5: 2).

Zafarun (medieval), Tanikang or Chin-chuang (Chinese); port—BB4h1: 12, 13.
Zante (Italian), Zacynthos (Latin), Zákynthos (modern Greek); island—H1e3: 3, 4.
Zam (Italian), Jadern (classical), Zadar (Croatian); port—Hgd1: 3.
Zaragoza; city—see Saragossa.
Zag; island—see Cezar.
Zenonion, Lamia (classical), Otions or Clio (medieval), Zhoui (medieval Greek), Lami (modern Greek); town—13c2: 3, 4.
Zeltz (German); town—G3b4: 2, 3.
Zizh castle—see Casal Imbert.
Zichua (Greek); town—34d4: 4, 5.
Zion, Mount—see Zion, Mount. 
Znojmo (Czech), Znaim (German); town—H2c2: 3.
Zvornik (Serbian); town—H5d1: 3.
INDEX

Alexander IV [Reginald de Cumi de Segni], nephew of Gregory IX, pope 1254-1264, 237, 372n, 482n, 489

Alexandria, II, 12, 26, 29, 34, 40, 55, 155, 176, 180n, 292, 394-400, 405-407, 441, 442, 445, 446, 449, 467, 521, Coptic patriarch of, see also Hsaghib 810-830, Cyril II (a 1092), Cyril III 1235-1243, Melkite patriarch of, see Arz

Alexius III Angelus, brother of Isaac II, Byzantine emperor 1193-1203, 389, 410, 415

Alexius IV Angelus, son of Isaac II, Byzantine co-emperor 1203-1204, 413, 416, 419

Alexios Callerges, Cretan landowner and rebel (fl. ca. 1282-1296), 444

Alexius I Comnenus, Byzantine emperor 1081-1118, 34, 72, 154, 234, 300, 303, 336, 384, 385, 394

Alexius II Comnenus, son of Manuel I, Byzantine emperor 1180-1183, 408

Alexios X ["The Wise" or "the Learned"], king of Cilicia and Caele 1252-1264, of Germany 1256-1273, 448

Alexio Jordan, son of Raymond of St. Gilles; count of Toulouse 1112-1144, 201, 216n

Alharzar, see al-Harráz

Ali ("Haji Abbas") al-Majid ibn al-Abbás; Arabic physician (d. 994), 47, 48

Alice of Champagne-Jerusalem, daughter of Henry II and Isabel; wife of Hugh I of Cyprus 1206-1218, regent of Cyprus 1210-1232, 1st wife of Bohemond V of Amienc 1225-1228, 2nd wife of Ralph of Nole 1241-1246, regent of Jerusalem 1243-1244, 169, 189, 198, 204, 304, 316, 321, 271n, 297n

Aliquun-dá-Venú, 521, and see Benedict

Almalyk, 496n, 500, 303, 521, bishop of, see Richard of Burgundy

"Almohada", see Mawâlidi

"Almoravid", see Mawâlidi

Alp Arslan, nephew of Tughril 3, Seljuk sultan 1063-1072, 3

Alp, 301, 303, 448, 522

Alsace, 521, and see Thuring, Philip (1), dukes of, see Hohenstaufens

Ambati, 81, 155n, 171, 233, 316, 328, 380, 381, 383, 521


Ambric, son-in-law of Baldwin II of Ileuni, viceroy of Naubis 1168-76, 1187, 115n, 135

Ambric of Nablus, patriarch of Jerusalem 1157-1180, 160, 237, 242n

Amamus, mage, 234, 253, 521

Amboise (or Ambroise), Norman poet (fl. 1590), 257n, 260, 365, 278n

"Amideh Sayem" (Gahar Masqu), grandson of "Sebouin"; king of Ethiopia 1314-1344, 512

Amides, 82, 83, 521

Amigdalas, 521, and see Isaac

"Amirash", Banu, Arab tribes, 64n, 91

"Amirâzâdâ" (Phalanghâz), 63, 74n, 242, 321

"Amirâzâdâ, Banû"; Arab tribes, 33

Amorâs, 429, 331

Amuleth, 521, and see Jeremias

Amunâz, 363, 363, 366, 521

Amunâm (or John), Armenian bishop of Eedessa in 1144, 89

Amaphia, 483, 521

Amaléa, 7, 33, 94, 42, 65, 97, 206, 233, 279, 298, 305, 304, 309, 310, 314, 317, 383, 385, 445, 446, 470, 490, 491, 496, 317, 521, rulers of, see Seljukids of Rüm, Ottomans, see Raymond Aniaume

"Amurâzâdâ" (Phalanghâz), 63, 364, 423, 521

"Amursâzâdâ, Banû"; Arab tribes, 33

Andrew (Andrew) Dandolo, doge of Venice 1343-1354, 379n

Andrew Ghisi, lord of Tene and Myconos 1207-ca. 1260, 430-432

Andrew of Longjumeau, Dominican missionary and envoy (ca. 1245, d. 1253), 462n, 474-478, 480

Andrew of Perugia, Franciscan, bishop of Zellam 1322-ca. 1336, 493, 499

Andrew of Schirin, Latin bishop (fl. 1261), 350

Andrew Zane, Venetian podestà of Verona in 1361, 421

Andronikos I Komnenos, grandson of Alexios III, Byzantine co-emperor 1182-1183, co-emperor 1183-1185, emperor 1183-1185, 195, 408, 409, 411, 483

Andronikos II Palaeologos, son of Michael VIII, Byzantine co-emperor 1272-1282, co-emperor 1282-1286 (d. 1332), 481
Andrews, 415, 416, 428-431, 521, bishop of, see John; lord of, see Martinus Dandolo
Angelo, Byzantine imperial dynasty at Constantinople 1185-1204. 384a, and see Isaac II 1185-1193; crusader 1182-1204, Alexius III 1193-1203, Alexius IV 1183-1185; see also Michael I and Michael II Ducos (Lucasius) "Constatinouk"
Angelo Faller, Venetian prasenteur in 1209-1841
Angelo Partecipazio, doge of Venice 810-827
Angelo Sgouros, son of Manuel I, duke of the Archipelago ca. 1227-1262. 439
Angevins, French dynasty in Naples ("Sicily") 1266-1344, in Sicily, Apulia, Abruzzo, and Achaia, 266, 422, 423, and see Charles I of Anjou 1266-1268 in Hungary and Poland, see Louis I 1342 (1370-1382
Angoulême, 522, and see Feshches. Peter Anjou, 322, and see Charles I; comm. of, see Folke IV
Anna Comnena, daughter of Alexios I; Byzantine historian (d. after 1148), 264
Anne of Stagnerfels, master of the Teutonic Knights 1256-1273. 372-376
Annunciation, church at Nazareth, 67, 77
Anopoli, 290, 522
Ansaldo Cerino, Geneuso at Jubeil in 1104, 178, 181
Anschelm, burgom, viscount in 1225: 152a, 157a
Anselm, abbot of Bec 1078-1093, archbishop of Canterbury 1093-1109 (see also), 303a
Antioch, Franks in, 141a, 160, and see Nicholas Antiochus; Raymond "Antiochus"
Antilles, 283, 522
Arioch, city 3, 34, 46, 42, 43, 47, 50-52, 60, 83, 87, 89, 72-75, 77, 79, 80, 82, 84, 85, 90, 92, 93, 103, 110, 158, 164, 168, 175, 177 180, 181, 183, 184, 185, 197, 202, 215a, 231a, 234, 235a, 238-244, 246, 247, 252, 257, 260, 261, 263, 301, 303, 304, 306, 306, 309, 319, 349, 385, 389, 392, 393, 399, 402, 439, 455, 456, 467, 468a, 473, 476, 522, and see Bartholomew, George. Stephen, commencer of, 229, 230; Greek patriarchs of, see John "the Grecus" (to 1100), Soterius 1155-1157, Athanasius II 1165-1170, Symeon II 1196-1200, ca. 1200, David ca. 1224-1242 (after 1247), Euthymius I 1258-1264; Jacobite patriarchs at, see Athanasius VII 1160-1129. Michael "the Syrian" 1166-1199, Ignatius II 1222-1252; Latin patriarch of, see Bernard of Valencia 1100-1139, Ralph of Domfront 1135-1139, Amuray of Lusignan 1139-1193, Ralph U 1193-1196, Peter of Angoulême 1196-1206, Peter (of Loccense) 1209-1217, Albert (Rezzano) 1226-1243, Optez Franchis 1247-1268 (tutors 1268-1292)
Armenia, principality 35, 36, 42, 46-48, 61, 65, 67, 75, 76, 78, 106, 126-128, 131, 134, 140a, 149a, 155, 164, 169, 172, 178, 197, 199, 202, 203, 208, 210-212, 218, 220-225, 234, 239, 241, 246-250, 253, 255, 261, 264, 266, 289, 373, 374, 392, 393, 394; princes 81, see Beaufremond 1198-111, Behremond II 1126-1130, Raymond of Poitiers 1136-1140, Behremond III 1163-1201, Behremond IV 1210-1216, 1219-1233, Raymond Raupen 1216-1221, Beaufremond V 1215-1252, Behremond VI 1252-1265 (tutors 1265-1275), Behremond VII (tutors 1275-1287), John de Lampisage (tutors, d. 1375); regents of, see Theocredo 1181-1193, 1194-1192, Roger of Silerne 1192-1193, Constantin 1193-1195, 1160-1163, Raymond of Châtillon 1153-1160, Laylend 1252-1252; see also John, Mary, Philip, Piauine, Raymond
Aspangres, 429, 522
Asuvian, 522, bishop of, see John of Pian del Carpine
Antioch, lord of the Thebes 1204-1433, duke of Athens 1401-1415. 290
Athanostasios, Geneuso of the Notary (71. 1500), 282a
Asturias, 390a, 522
Athanasius, 49, 194a, 241-243, 249 522; archbishop of, see Otto
Apostolus (of Smyrna), Greek mathematician (fl. ca. 262 a.c., d. ca. 205 a.c.), 22
Aphrodite, 505, 522
Apologet, 111a, 230, 291, 232, 266, 183, 407, 449, 522; duchy of, see Robert Guiscard
Aquae mons at Jerusalem, 37, 71
Aquinas, 481, 522; patriarch of, see Wollher 1208-1214, Beaufremond of Andechs 1215-1251
Aquitanii, see Thomas Aquinas
Aquitaine, 91, 522
Aragon, 23, 38, 241, 242a, 253, 401, 522
Arab, Semitic peoples, xiv, xvii, 3-36, 41, 44-46, 62, 64a, 82, 98, 103, 111, 242, 259, 343, 345, 401
Aulrus, 523, and see Peter
Auer, 523, and see Eckhardt
Austria, 332, 449, 523; duke of, see Frederick I of Babenberg
Avignon, 1545, 523
Averroes (Ibn Rushd, abu-l-Walid Muhammad ibn-Ahmad), Spanish Arabic philosopher (b. 1126, d. 1198), 19, 20
Avvaz-te-Arefi, S. 523, and see James
Avicenna (Ibn Sin, Abu Ali Al Hozn Al-
Akh-Allah), Persian philosopher (b. 980, d. 1037), 20
Avignon, 514, 490, 492, 497–499, 500n, 504, 507–510, 512, 515, 523
Avlonia, 343, 462, 523
Ayas, 438, 438, 442, 523
Aybeg (al-Muizz Tedj-ul-Din), ruler of Damascus (1203–1232, 1235–1257, 16, 443; wife of, see Shajar-ad-Durr
Aymer (de) Corbusi, patriarch of Jerusalem (1194–1202, 322n
Azerbaijan, 491, 505, 523
al-Azhar, Islamic theological centre in Cairo, 32
al-Aziz Muhammad ibn-Salih, grandson of Saladin; Ayubi rulers of Aleppo (1236–1234
al-Aziz `Uthmân, `Isâd-ad-Din, son of Saladin; Ayubi governor of Egypt (1186–1193), sultan 1193–1198, ruler of Damascus 1196–1199
Azov, Sea of, 444, 451, 523
Baalbek, 4, 12, 307, 461, 462n, 523; ruler of, see Ayubiids
Bahia-Jalriân, gate in Damascus, 23
Babbel, kurpas (b. 1141), 152n
Bacon, see Roger Bacon
al-Badi `al-Asturlabi, abu-l-Qasim `Ali ibn al-Husn; Arabic astronomers (b. 1139/ 40), 21
Badi as Zaman al-Hamadhani, Persian author (b. 969 d. 1000), 51
Badr 523, battle of (624), 118
Badr, son of Mubarak, title of the Prophet
Jafer (12th C), 42
Bagdad, 3, 4, 9–11, 14, 21, 21, 26, 27, 29, 33–34, 56, 62, 66, 96, 298, 300, 301, 404, 454, 461, 464, 425, 476, 482, 483, 523; calligraphy at, see Abbasids
Baghirs, 125, treaty of, 229
Bagrat IV, king of Georgia (1027–1072, 87
Baha’-ud-Din Yaman ibn-Rafi` ibn-Shaddad, Arabic historian and biographer (b. 1165, d. 1234), 28, 29, 48
Bahaui, 52, 523
al-Bahuaq, abu-‘l-Hassan `Ali ibn Zaid; Persian biographer (b. 1105, d. 1169), 27
Balju, Mongol general (b. 1247), 476–476
Bam, 24nn, 523
Baldric of Deul, French chivalric (b. 1190, 338n
Baldwin, bishop of Beirut (1112–1121, 240
Baldwin of Le Bourg sur Rouvre, "SIEVOUR", count (b. Edessa 1100–1116, king (b. Jerusalem 1116–1119), 125, 132n, 149, 149, 172, 173n, 198, 201, 202, 201n, 205, 213, 218, 241, 248, 190, 350, 415, wife of, see Mortain
Baldwin IV ("the Emperor"), son of Amalric and Agnes; king of Jerusalem 1174–1185, 79n, 84, 115, 127, 199, 200, 203, 215, 229–279
Baldwin V, son of (William "Longsword") of Montferrat and Sibyl, king of Jerusalem 1185–1186: 199, 200, 203, 279n
Baldwin I, count (b. of Flanders 1144–1205 and (b. of Hauteville 1195–1205, Latin emperor of Constantinople 1204–1205, d. 1215, 417, 433, 436
Baldwin II (of Courtenay), Latin emperor of Constantinople 1229–1231, co-emperor 1221–1227, emperor 1227 (crrowned 1240–1245) (Buhara 1225–1227); count of Narbon 1217–1216, 421, 447, wife of, see Mary of Brienne
Baldwin II of Biclar, brother of Hugh, lord of Ramla 1124–1127, 115n, 207n
Baldwin of Piacqyly castellan of Jerusalem in 1223, 322n
Balex, 311, 524
Balrock, 311, 524
Baltrak, son of Ibelin, brother of Hugh; lord of Ramla ca. 1167–1193, 135; wife of, see Maria Comnena
Bancroft, see Norman Barkire
INDEX

Ball ans, 96, 298, 305, 384, 425, 426, 437, 524
Ball hast, Laus, 477, 524
Balbi Sen, 310, 312, 458, 524
Barnberg, 524; bishop of, see Bamberg
Bar find next name
Banias, 55, 63, 239, 243, 282, 524
Bar Andreae, Joannes, Jacobite bishop of Marabii 1129-1131, 1134-1148 (d. 1156), 79a
Bar Hebraeus, Gregory the, bishop of Emel-yahv
Jacobite patriarch at Aleppo 1232-1236; 47, 524, 78a, 80, 86a
Bar Mattai, Jacobite monastery near Mamlouk, 60
Bar Sauma, 77a, 80, 11, 524
Bar Samuel, Jacobite monk of Nisibis (d. by 496, canonized), 51
Bar Wahbeh, Jacobite man (fl. 181), 72a
Barbaro see Pietro Barbaro
Barcelona, 155a, 172, 444, 524
Barde "Harmenius," landowner (fl. 1154), 111
Bari, 383, 524
Barlet, 80a, 524
Barletta, 154a, 524
Barozzi, Venetian family, 432, and see Jacopo Barozzi
Barr ad-Dehím, 6a, 524
Barilla, Mouni, 460a, 524
Bari, see Henry (or Hermann) Bari
Bartholomew (?), archbishop of Cappadocia 1194-5/1196/9, 524n
Bartholomew, bishop of Hebron 1249-1263/7
Bartholomew, Dominican, bishop of Manamha (d. 1307), 509
Bartholomew Franciscan missionary (fl. 1259), 478, 479
Bartholomew (?), Latin archbishop of Martyr
1099-after 1108, 234, 239
Bartholomew Erntrudo, son of Bertinarius mayor of Tripoli 1287-1289; 287
Bartholomew (Master of Agast), bishop of Taranto 1263/4-after 1287, bishop of Tripoli 1275-1277, 212, 239
Bartholomew (?), archbishop of Jerusalem 1236-1260; 79, 464
Bartholomew, Jacobite bishop of Edessa 1143-1168, 61
Bartholomew, Greek Orthodox monastic order, 509, and see John of Quara
Basa, 19, 58, 524
Basch, 524, and see Ashland
Báthori, Istvánnócz, Bishop of Urg III, 15, 17, 18, 20
Bara, grandson of Chalgarh; khan of the Golden Horde 1243-1256, 478, 479
Barbara, 524; duke of, see Edward XII; "the Lion" (Welsh)
Baraham (Walham, "the Thunderbolt"), Ottoman sultan 1389-1402 (d. 1404), 41
Barbary (al-Barbaryi), an-Nasir Ruku
al-Din, Bahri Mamlik sultan of Egypt and Syria 1260-1277; 39, 56, 51, 138, 264, 310, 331, 354, 355, 364, 375
Bartholomew, (wife of William) of Shire 1112, 47
Bartholomew, lord of, see John 1 of Bohem, John II of Scotland
John IV, see of Andrew II, Archangel at Hungary 1325-1270; 456, 471
Beke, see Philip Beke
Bekass, Aramis ruler of Aleppo 1233-1234 and 390
Belloc, 12, 43, 63, 524, lord of, see Ugainul Comune
Bellacossa, 215, 524
B決め, see Oak of Bathashanite monastery), 43, 524
Bemmouros Lecpron, Comte; consul general in Syria (fl. 1309), 184
Berm-Mosson, (Jewish?) Syrian scribe (fl. 1175), 114
Benedict, Latin archbishop of Siena 1099-after 1104, 234, 239
Beneed XI (Nicholas Boccaccino), pope 1003-
1304, 496
Beneed XII (Antoine, or Jacques, Porrin), pope 1354-1362; 491, 499
Beneed of Albano, Franciscan, bishop of Manasles 1229-1266/7 (d. 1288), 72a
Beneed the Vinulavus, Polish Franciscan missionary (fl. 1247), 471
Benedict, monastic order, 73, 233, 267, 318, and see Arnold of Lubeck
Bennett, Taddeus Spanish; Jewish traveler and mathematic (fl. 1167), 60, 63, 91, 96
Bergen, Prussian province, 310
Berguier of Landerre, Dominican master general 1312-1317 (d. 1325), 515
INDEX

Capetians, continued
1117-1322, Louis XIV 1643-1715; see also
Robert (of Artois) and Angevins
Capharnaum, 110, 126
Capodistrias, see Gabriel Capodistrias
Capua, 526, and see Thomas, see also Peter
"Capua"
Caracotum, 112, 526
Cardinali, see Maurice 1100-1116, Alphonse
of Beauvais 1111-1148, John ca. 1150-ca.
1182, Conrad (of Wittelsbach) 1163-1200,
Soffredo 1192-1208, Peter ("Capua")
1192-1214, Leo (Brandeburger) 1200-ca. 1238,
Thomas of Capua 1216-1243, Oliver (Saxa)
1225-1227, John Haldrun 1227-1238, James
of Vitry 1228-1240/1, Odo (of Clisson) 1244-1279, William 1244-1258, Damouret
(John of Flanda) 1273-1274
Carmel, Mount, 527
Carmelites, religious order, 57
Carolingians, Frankish royal and imperial
dynasty in France (7th C) 751-997, 107; and see
Charlemagne (742); 771-808; emperror 880-
914
Carly, 492n, 527
Carson Niebuhr, Danish traveler (fl. 1373), 41
Caruthers, 419 327, and see Lintott
Caasal Imbert, 257n, 262, 527
Caesius, Mount, 17, 127
Capua, 480, 490, 504, 327
Castello, 327, and see Perugino; bishop of, 246
Cassiodorus, 354, 527
Caste, 310, 327, king of, see Alfons IV 1253-
1284
Catalonia, 56, 154n, 527; kings of, see Aragon
Cadiz, 390n, 395n, 127
Camara, range, 87, 496n, 527
Carny, 207n, 527
Cassiopea II (Guy de Castelli), pope 1143-1144
111 119
Cassiopea III (Hyacinthus Bobo Oranius), pope
1191-1198 237n, 330, 321, 349
Cassiopea V (Peter de Morroch), pope 1294-1299
(d. 1296, canonized), 486
Cebulon (Baleaun), 491, 493, 503, 527
Central Asian, 26, 29, 38, 56, 404, 402, 452n, 490,
496, 499, 500, 557
Celentano, 256, 385, 427, 527; count-palatine of,
see Muro Ordins
Cerigo, 431, 432, 527; lord of, see Marcus Venet
Cerinotto, 431, 432, 527, marquis of, see Jacob
Vladim
INDEX

Campos, 429, 328
Circassian, Caucausian people, 480, 506
Clarensia, monastic order, 272, 322, 362
Citron, 398n, 405, 407, 138
Clairvaux, 328, abbot of, see Bernard
Clarius, monk, chronicler (fl. 1130), 236n
Clement I (Pamphile Siculo), pope, 1187-1190, 320
Clement IV (Guy Foulcom), pope, 1265-1268
484, 313
Clement V (Bertrand de Got), pope, 1305-1314
490, 494, 493
Clement VI (Peter Roger), pope, 1342-1352, 502, 509, 110
Clement XII (Leonardo Corsi), pope, 1730-1740
14
Clermont, 42, 72, 295, 299, 300, 335, 128, Council of, 249
Cluny, 194, 128, abbot of, see Peter "the Venerable"
Coligny, 301, 128
Comacchio, 383, 128
Comana, 194, 138
Comment, Byzantine imperial dynasty at Constantinople 1057-1185, 294, and see Alexius I 1081-1118, John II 1118-1143, Manuel I 1143-1180, Alexius II 1180-1183, Andronicus I (regent 1182-1183) 1183-1185, see also Anna, Maria, and Theodore Cornern at Cyprus 1184-1191, see Isaac II
Compostela, 41, 528
Conches-en-Ouche, 328, and see Raymond, William
Conon of Béthune, French hero and poet, regent of Romania 1316-1217, 1289-1221, 435
Conrad (of Wittelsbach) archbishop of Mainz 1183-1200, cardinal-bishop of Sabina 1143-1200, 333n
Conrad (of Querfurt), bishop of Würzburg 1198-1202, chancellor of Germany, 333n
Conrad, chaplain to Frederick of Swabia (ca. 1190), 320
Conrad, duke of Masovia 1210-1247, 362, 363, 366
Conrad III, Hohenstaufen king of Germany 1138-1152, 319
Conrad IV, son of Frederick II and Isabel of Brienne; Hohenstaufen king of Jerusalem 1228-1254, of Germany and Sicily 1250-1254, 199, 201, 204, 205, 362, 372
Conrad, margrave of Landsberg 1190-1210, 323n
Conrad of Fischauangen, master of the Teutonic Knights 1291-1296/7, 339, 377, 378
Conrad of Landsberg, Teutonic Knight (fl 1226), 363
Conrad of Monserrato, son of William III; magnate of Montferrail 1188-1192, husband of Isabel and claimant to throne of Jerusalem 1190-1192, 167n, 184, 188, 201n, 202, 215, 392, 400, 411
Conrad of Steinsberg, Teutonic Knight, papal marshal (fl. 1237), 367
Conrad (landgrave) of Thuringia, master of the Teutonic Knights 1239-1240, 369
 Conrad, son of Conrad IV; Hohenstaufen duke of Swabia and titular king of Jerusalem 1255-1256, king of Sicily 1255-1258, 204, 372
Constance of Antioch, daughter of Bohemond II, wife of Raymond of Poitiers 1136-1149, regent of Antioch 1148-1151, 1st wife of Raymond of Calatian 1151-1163, regent of Antioch 1160-1163 (d. 1183), 139, 393
Constantine I, Armenian catholicus 1221-1267, 469
Constantine IV, Armenian catholicus 1222-1236, 507
Constantine VIII, brother of Basil II; Byzantine co-emperor 976-1021, emperor 1025-1028, 383
Constantine IX ("Monomachus"), son-in-law of Constantine VIII, Byzantine co-emperor 1042-1055, emperor 1050-1054, 87
Constantine, Hezoumiid lord of Lampron, regent of Cilician Armenia 1221-1236 (d. 1261), 87
Constantine III (Guy de Lusignan, grandson of Hugh III), king of Cilician Armenia 1342-1344, 11
Constantine, lord of Sarvanikur in 1371, 371
Constantine I, Roman emperor (fl. 337), 42
Couranesc, Venetian family, 182, and see Ro land Courandano
Courtrai, Venetian family, see Domenico, Henry, and Marco Costantini
Copts, Christian sect in Egypt and Ethiopia, 50, 54, 55, 66, 67, 77-79, 83, 466; patriarchs of (at Alexandria), see Yeşüb 810-830, Cyril II in 1082, Cyril III 1231-1243
INDEX

Cordova, 19, 20, 33, 510, 511, 528, caliph at, see Umayyads
Corfu, 286, 287, 290, 383, 398m, 399n, 415, 424–428, 522
Corinth, 385, 398m, 399n, 402, 402, 418, 427, 528
Corner (Corneal), 269, 272, 281a, 284, and see Philip Corner
Cornwall, 528, and see Richard
Corone, 285, 286n, 289, 383, 428, 444, 448, 528
Corso, see Ansaldo Corso
Cornell, 529, and see Elias
Cotelle, Saracen slave (in 1092), 400
Corino, 518m, 529
Courtenay, see Francesco Courton
Courtenay, 529, and see Agnes, Malcolm, John, Philip, Robert
Cracovia, 529, and see Gerard, Guillaume
Crete, 176, 289, 287m, 290, 290–293, 383, 383, 386, 398m, 519, 417–418, 422–424, 428, 429, 431, 432, 444, 448, 529; Venetian duke of, see Jacobo Tiepolo, Murone Saraceno
Crimea, 437, 438, 444, 448, 480, 491, 494, 496, 504, 505, 510, 529
Crisp, Venetian ducal family at Naama 1383–1586, 430
Croatia, Slavic people, 384, 400
Cumanes, see Kumans
Cunatl, 238, 247, 249, 529
Curzola, 383, 445, 529
Cyprus, 52, 56, 73, 77m, 106n, 118, 140, 141, 144, 156, 176, 187, 188, 221n, 228m, 227, 235, 245, 252, 255, 265, 267–285, 287, 288, 295, 294, 301, 302, 551, 363, 365, 373, 373–378, 393, 586, 412, 424, 449, 476, 529; dominion of, see Philip of Brescia, John of Trebizond, regency of, see Alice of Champagne, Phanarion of Antioch; ruler of, see Isaac Comnenus, Langobard, ‘de Lascaris’
Cyril II, Coptic patriarch of Alexandria 1092–1128, 78
Cyril III, Coptic patriarch of Alexandria 1235–1243, 79, 468
Cyril (Psaltes), Jacobite bishop of Jerusalem 1095–ca. 1103 (ed. on H153), 52
Cyprus, 243, 529
Cythnae, 429, 529

Dalmatia, Persia local group, 83
Dalmatia, see Frases, 499–501, 506, 529
Dalilah, Venetian family, 421, and see
Dame Carver, Venetian family, 421, and see
Henry, Leom, Ravenna, and Redeolando dalla Carceri
Dalmatia, 363, 384, 385, 394, 407, 414, 418, 424, 426, 437, 449, 529
Danemarcs, 5, 7–9, 11, 12, 15, 18, 22, 26, 27, 53, 55, 37–39, 42, 52, 57, 62, 82, 83, 100, 173, 196, 398, 306, 308, 514, 595, 401 461 529; caliphate at, see Umayyads, rulers of, see Dunkan, Fugitivus, Alifahis
Damasque, 5, 55, 84n, 140, 302, 310, 314, 358–361, 371, 572, 393, 397, 442, 529
Dandola, Venetian family, 183, and see Andrew, Enrico (2), John, Marino, Renier; at Anderos, see Marino; see also Maria Dona, Commissariaper, see Marino; at Syria, see James, John (2), and Marino Dandola
Danes, Scandinavian people, 41
Danel of Meatz, Manichean patriarch (d. 1282), 94
Danel of Kiev, Russian abbot and pilgrim (d. 1123), 72m, 80, 130n, 283
Danel of Tobriz, Armenian Franciscan, Bishop of Thebes by 1344–after 1347, 510
Daniel Barlow, Venetian chronicler (d. 1515), d. 1579, 400n, 434
Dandola, river, 147, 529
Darb Sarayasi (asper sapientia), 93, 199, 129
Darwall, 415, 435–437, 429
Darwesh (Banu), Arab tribe, 64
Darwin, 64, 131, 164n, 242n, 263, 529
David, Greek patriarch of Antioch ca. 1242–after 1247, 52, 73a, 234n, 467
David II ("the Restorer"), king of Georgia 1089–1125, 80
David IV (Maro), son of Rasulad, king of Georgia (1247) 1250–1259 (d. 1291), 470
David, legendary Christian ruler, 471, and see Pretexis John
David, Nestorian, Mongol envoy (in 1248), 476, 477

David Sea, 233, 260, 275, 529
Dubhthaicn, 493, 505, 506, 529
Dulbe Volkans, Getseman family, 191
Dumitrius, 385, 529
Dunis Persus, French traveler (fl. 1532), 467n, 268, 274, 277, 278, 280
Donal, 529; treaty of (1108), 194, 234
Dwetsin, see Moslem under Muslim rule, 14, 15, 23, 50, 54–56, 70n, 102, 103n, 108, 113, 114n
Diaspora, dispersed Jewish people, 94, 100
Dietrich I, margrave of Meissen 1187–1221, 323n
Diptn, 512, 511, 504, 529; vastum of, see William of Chaamplaine
INDEX

565

ad Damashq, Muhannad ibn-Tahirah: Arab.
dic geographer (b. 1256, d. 1327), 366a, 356a
Damashq, 93, 330, and see Jerash
Dionysius VII (Angier), Jacobite anti-patriarch
1293–1291 480
Dionysios, Jacobite bishop of Tiberias 1288:
484
Diyar Bakr 35, 530
Dobrussaro Sten, Croatian slave (in Illyria), 400
dulm, 496, 510
Dol-de-Bretagne, 530, and see Balaeric
Dolfin: see Jacob Dolfin
Dome of the Rock (Templum Domini, mosque of
'Umar, Qubbat as-Sakhrah), in Jerusalem
71
Domineco Acontari, Venetian at Tyre (fl. 1184):
183
Domineco Cervani, patriarch of Aquileia 1073–
1084 584
Domineco Constanzii, Venetian at Tyre (in 1192):
183e
Domineco Dulcius (Dulm), Venetian at Tyre (fl.
1211), 184
Domineco Michiel, doge of Venice 1188–1229
(d. ca. 1150), 390, 391, 393
Domineco Michiel, Venetian at Antioch (? in
1104), 183m
Domineco Moretini, doge of Venice 1148–1154:
585m
Domineco Selvo, doge of Venice 1070–1084:
584, 585, 387
Dornfahrt, 530, and see Ralph
Dominius, bishop of Chioggia by 1199–by 1218:
400
Dominius Guamani, Spanish founder of Dominici
can order (in 1216, d. 1223, canonized), 453, 457
Dominius al Aragona, papal envoy (ca. 1225):
462a, 469a, 472, 475
Dominicans (Frairs-Priests), missionary order,
xv, 52, 57, 527, 551a, 452a, 453, 457, 460–464,
468, 470, 473m, 474, 477, 478, 481–483, 486–489, 495–498, 500m, 502, 504–
516, founder of see Dominicus Guamanus (d.
1221), masters-general, see Jordan of Saxony
1222–1237, Raymond of Paarlburg 1238–
1240, Humbert al Romanus 1254–1263,
Berenger of Landrec 1312–1317; other Do-
micults, see Andrew of Longjumeau, Ascere-
tine, Bartholomew, Bernard of Piacenza,
Burchard of Mt. Sion, Christian, France of
Perugia, Guiscard of Cremoux, Guy of Blo-
lin, James of Alise, John of Piacenza, Jor-
dan Catalan of Sévèrac, Julian, Nerses Bar-
linantz, Nicholas, Nicholas of Pecuma, Pécho-
lus of Rome, Peter Gerald, Philip, Ricoldo
of Monte Croce, Simon at St. Quentin,
Théodore, Thomas Aquinas, Thomas Man
casole, Vassipace, William, William of
Cynes, William of Longjumeau, William of
Montfort, William of Tripoli
Don, river, 444, 474, 530
Dorothia, Greek patriarch of Jerusalem 1187–
1189: 235n
Drugo, Frank fl. (1154), 109
Drungary Street, at Constantinople, 385
Drusus, Syrian people and sect, 56, 63, 91
Ducic, Byzantine imperial family, at Nicea,
see John III Ducas Vatatzes 1222–1254; in
Epirus, see Michael I 1204–1213, Michael II
1231-ca. 1267 (both Ducas Angelus “Com-
rinor”)
Dukag, brother of Rikwan, Selçukid ruler of
Damascus 1098–1104
Dulce, Venetian family, 183, and see Domenico,
Manuanno, Pesc, and Thomas Dulce
Dufoub, 242, 243, 530
Durazzo, 384, 385, 399m, 415, 424–427, 530,
duke of, see Marino Vallasco; Latin bishop
of, see Manfred
Durazzo, 530, and see Pesc
Eberhard of Sayn, vice-master of the Teutonic
Knights in 1250: 524, 535, 591, 592
Edegae, city, 34, 55, 30, 51, 45, 77, 80, 82, 84,
96, 111a, 594, 198, 197, 230, 234, 245, 306–
309, 530, and see Marco, Matthew; Armenian
bishop of, see Ananias (?); Jacobite bishop
of, see Basil; Latin archbishop of, see
Benedict; lord of, see Toros
Edessa, county, 55, 47, 66, 68, 75, 71, 83, 193,
196, 198, 203, 215, 220, 243, 244m, 255, 309,
courts of, see Baldwin I 1176–1190, Wal-
den II 1180–1188, Joscelin II 1189–1191, Jos-
celin III 1191–1150 (knight 1150–1154), Jose-
celin III (titania 1191–1200); regent of, see
Baldwin III 1150–1155
Edward I ("Longshanks"), son of Henry III,
crusader 1270–1272, Plantagenet king of
England 1272–1307 265, 485
Egmont, 389m, 530
Egypt, 3, 6, 8–10, 12, 16, 23, 28, 29, 33, 39, 40,
45–47, 49, 50, 52, 54, 57, 60, 62, 64, 78m, 83,
86, 97, 98, 100, 111, 129m, 155, 196, 220,
227m, 228a, 250, 279, 280, 265, 273, 282,
283m, 284, 292, 298, 299, 302, 309, 310, 313,
314, 358–361, 575, 575, 576, 580, 383,
394–399, 401, 402, 414, 415, 422, 424, 426,
Henry II, king of Germany 1002-1014, emperor 1014-1024 (crowned), 509
Henry III, son of John, Plantagenet king of England 1216-1227: 367, 370
Henry (or 'Henry'), brother of Robert, & regent of Normandy 1208-1209, Languedoc 1208-1216: 195, 417, 420, 433, 437
Henry XI ("the Lion"), Welf duke of Brunswick 1129-1180, of Saxony 1142-1180, of Bavaria 1134-1180: 349
Henry IV, son of Henry "the Lion", Welf duke of Brunswick and count palatine of the Rhine 1185-1227: 323n
Henry (or Hermann) Kant, master of the Teutonic Knights 1209-1230: 357
Henry Courtenay, venerated as St (ca 1130), 1141-1159
Henry of Courtenay, bishop of Maastricht 1293-1296: 420n
Henry Cramoisy, son of Eustace Cramoisy (2)
Henry II, son of Hugh I, king of Cyprus 1205-1214, of Jerusalem 1202-1204 (successor 1204-1208) (killed 1208-1209): 140, 154, 168, 297n, 371, 376
Henry de Bethune, brother of Philip of Bethune, landowner ed. 1171, 229n
Henry of Bethune, master of the Teutonic Knights 1200-1201: 377
Henry of Bethune, master of the Teutonic Knights 1244-1246: 328, 371
Henry of Caldon, imperial marshal (II. 1198), 323n
Henry I, son of Hugh I, king of Cyprus 1198-1215, regent of Jerusalem 1209-1216: 304, 297n, 477n, 478; wife of see Plaisance de Antioch
Henry Palamare, German admiral, count of Malta ca 1212: 429n
Haraclastes, 345, 410, 436, 533
Humphrey, archbishop of Canterbury 1177-1189, Latin patriarch of Jerusalem 1189-1196: 76
Hertmant II, count of Thuringia 1147-1173: 323n, 349
Hermann of Kreutzheim, Teutonic Knight (ca. 1193), 321
Hermann of Salza (Longuemare), master of the Teutonic Knights 1208-1239: 366n, 367, 355, 357, 369
Humphrey (or Henry) Walpo, master of the Teutonic Knights 1197-1198: 340, 357
Humphrey, Montfau, 63, 91, 325
Humphrey I, son of Countess Eleanor, Humphreid king of Cibele Armenia 1220-1269: 1, 274n, 278, 279; wife of see Isabel (Humphrey)
Humphrey, royal dynasty in Cibele Armenia 1239-1259: 1256-1257: 91, and see Conan the Younger (regent 1234-1236), Ponsoun 1122-1259, Languedoc 1157: 420n, 423, 1295-1296, 1296-1304 (regent 1301-1307), Languedoc 1230-1241, 5: 368, 1107; see also Humphrey, Sir Philip, Archimandrite (of Constantinople), Orosco physician (c. 460 B.C.): 23
Humbert, 44, 503
Humboldt, 533, and see Henry
Humboldt, imperial dynasty in Armenia, and later 1198-1216, as king and emperor of Armenia, see Central III (king 1198-1199), Frederick I (king 1198-1199, 1199-1190), Henry VI (king 1190-1196), Philip (king 1190-1196), Frederick II (king 1212-1214), Frederick II (king 1220-1224), Henry VII (king 1224-1228), Conrad IV (king 1228-1254), and kings of Sicily, see Henry VII (1194-1197), Frederick I (king 1198-1199, 1224-1254, as kings of Jerusalem 1142, 1224-1254, as kings of Jerusalem 1142, 1204, 1208, 1209, 1238, 1272, 1274, 1292, 1190, and see Frederick I 1198-1199, 1199-1190, Henry VI (king 1190-1196), Philip (king 1190-1196), Frederick II (king 1198-1199, 1224-1254), Conrad IV (king 1228-1234), Edmund (killed 1244-1245), as dukes of Swabia and Adelz, see Henry VII (1198-1197), Philip (king 1190-1196), of Swabia, see Henry VII (1198-1199, 1224-1254), Conrad IV (1198-1228)
Holländ, 53t: see also, see Rapahel
Holy Cross, Georgen (regent in Jerusalem, 67
Holy Sepulchre, church at Acre, 375
Holy Sepulchre, (regent in Jerusalem, 1205, 1206, 1208, 77, 79, 75, 77, 68, 68, 353, 161, 162, 379n, 197, 200, 201, 202, 235, 244-246, 246, 249, 295, 364, 444, advocate of, see Gourdy of Fouquain, master of the Teutonic Knights 1216-1234, 149, 152n, 159, 162, 169, 225n, 237, 245, 246, prior of, see, see, see
Holy Spirit, Ionian in the eastern arm of Acre, 230
Holy Trinity, "congregation" for training Christian priapieum, 21tn
Hovin, 12, 56, 91, 306, 309, 314, 443, 463, 355; rubric of, see Antiphon
Humphrey II (Kambert of Fagneux), page 3154-1129: 246
Humphrey III (Canterbury, page 3156-1257, 244, 312, 313, 346-347, 353n, 354n, 359-365
Humphrey IV (regent Sicily), page 3165-1259, 449
Humphrey, 336, 533
Marco II Saundra, son of Angelos, duke of the Archipelago 1262–1203 430
Marco Venier, lord of Carga on 1207–1238 433
Marco Zeno, Venetian podestà of Verona in 1262–67 421
Marulina, 30, 92, 309, 476m, 533
Maruthas, 271n, 538
Margat, 43, 109, 110, 162n, 163n, 230
Marguerite (or Cecilia Dorca), daughter of William Rosting of Rebron) with of Pianinas from ca. 1180: 172, 184 230
Maria, niece of emperor Basil II (fl. ca. 980), 384
Maria Cornena, great-granddaughter of John II; 2nd wife of Amalric 1167–1174, wife of Italian II of Ibelin ca. 1176–1193 (fl. 1217), 204n
Maria Doro, sister of Marino Dandolo, of Andrea (fl. 1232), 430
Maria Palaeologina ("Despoina Mogulaina"), bastard daughter of Michael VIII, wife of Abaga 1263–1262, mother of Argha (d. 1308), 444
Maria of Ibelin, great-granddaughter of John I, wife of Guy of Ibelin, lord of Tristis, to ca. 1300. Ilia, count of Ibelin ca. 1300–after 1224. 202
Marlburg, 326, 327, 331, 278, 28
Maximilien, see John de Marignol
Marino Dandolo, nephew of doge Enrico, lord of Andrea 1207–1232: 429, 430, 432; wife of, see Belisa
Marino Dandolo, Venetian podestà at Constantinople in 1215 (d. 1233), 430n, 436
Marino Ghisi, brother of Andrew: Venetian merchant (fl. 121), 431
Marino Michiel, Venetian at Acre (fl. 1229), 182n
Marino Michiel, Venetian podestà at Constantinople in 1221 435
Marino Sanudo ("Torsello"), Venetian historian (d. 1270, d. 1337), 90, 239, 260, 289, 294
Mario Serena, Venetian duke of Crete in 1226 442
Marino Storito, Venetian podestà of Constantinople in 1222. 435
Marco Vallarese, Venetian duke of Durazzo 1205–1213, 426
Marco Zeno, Venetian podestà at Constantinople 1205–1207, 425, 433, 434
Mark 'Uyin, 64, 94, 538
Mark, see also Marco
Mark Cappadocianus, Greek titular patriarch of Jerusalem 1189–1195: 235n
Mark Dandolo, son of James: Venetian in Acre (fl. 1239), 183
Marchesa, see II, 387, 402, 412, 436, 437, 526
Mark, Syrian religious leader (d. 410, canonized), 90
Marc, John (Yulmara), Syrian theologian, founder of Maronites (ca. 700), 53, 90
Marc al-Edessa, Nestorian (d. 280), 90
Marcos, 218, 219, 538
Maronites, Christian sect in and around Syria, 34, 55, 55, 54, 56, 60, 65, 66, 84, 89–94, 235n, 238, 466, 469, 483, founder of, see Mark (ca. 700); patriarchs, see Jacob (fl. Rihim, in 1140), Jerusalem of Antioch 1199–1230, Daniel of Haciel (d. 1282), Jerusalem of Dimin (from 1282)
Marshall, 39, 125n, 182, 191, 192, 301, 444, 533, bishop of, see Benedict of Allignan
Marsh, see Adam Marsh
Marshak, see George Marshall
Masculine Zenel (Gregorio), Venetian viscount at Tyre 1240–1244, 182n, 185n, 189, 210, 244n, 264, 439
Martin de Cana, Venetian bailiff and chronicler (d. ca. 1272), 444
Martin Radia, Genoese (fl. 1211), 337n
Marriott, 239, and see Nicholas
Mauricius, unädyed caliph 744–750 21n
Mary of Antioch, daughter of Bohemond IV; claimant to Jerusalem 1269–1277 (d. after 1307), 204n, 202
Mary of Briennia, daughter of John, wife of Latin emperor Baldwin II 1231–1279 (fl. ca. 1272), 448
Mary of Montfort-Jerusalem, daughter of Conrad and Isabel; queen of Jerusalem and 1st wife of John of Brienna (ca. 1206) 1210–1222: 200, 204, 287n
Mazei, Jerome, see Nicholas IV
Mazar, 363, 239; duchy of, see Conrad
Mavromanes, see Otto Mavromanes al-Maqdissi, Abu'l-Hasan Ali ibn-al-Husain, Arabo geographer (d. ca. 1157), 80, 91
Masyal, 44, 239
Matilda of Schwaramberg, (widow of crusader Conrad,) pilgrim (fl. 1235), 257n
Matrenga, 471, 502, 229
Matthew of Asiatic, Armenian chronicler (d. ca. 1136), 61, 82, 84n
Matthew Orme, see Marco Grimn
Matthew Paris, English chronicler (d. 1251), 367, 371, 372, 462n
Matthew Polo, Venetian merchant (fl. 1271), 438
Marmaduke, 339, and see Philip, Simon
Maurice, cardinal-bishop of Porto 1100–by 1116: 236
Maurice, lord of Montriond in ca. 1161. 46
al-Mudarr, a 66-i Hamad Muhammad, Arabic geographer (b. 1000/1, d. 1169/70), 23
Maxim, Frankish family in Syria, 128
Meca, 6n, 10, 18, 23, 36, 37, 48, 252, 139
"Medes", Frankish name for a Syrian Christian sect, 60
Medina, 6n, 23, 36, 37, 48, 539
Mediterranean Sea, 9, 39, 192, 265, 283, 300.
  101, 412, 447, 450, 451, 479, 482, 139; sam-
  tern, xv, 3, 6a, 43, 13, 118, 131, 173, 379, 388,
  397, 399, 412, 422, 445–448; westem, 154, 361,
  407, 444
Meliton (II of Ravel deil), lord of Marsacan in
  1258, 216
Melchior, patriarch of Rothenburg, German rabbi
  (d. 1234), 98
Melches, 119; margrave of, see Dietrich I
Melchior, see Melchior, Greek bishop of Gaza
  (and Eueropolis) in 1173-74a, 235
Melchisedec of Jerusalem, daughter of Baldwin II;
  wife of Fulc 1131–1184, queen of Jeru-
  salem 1131–111 2d. 1161), 72, 115n, 135, 165n,
  199, 200, 202, 203, 213a, 244, 281, 287n
Melchite, 81, 119
Melkites (Orthodox Syrians), "Chalcedonians",
  Christian sect, 66, 67, 68a, 69, 72–75, 77, 78,
  80, 82, 104, 106, 113, 121, 154, 230, 221, 245,
  451, 466, 447, 472; patriarchs, at Jerusalem,
  see Athanasius II (in 1247); at Alexandria,
  see Athanasius III 1278–1308
Melos, 290, 429, 119
Mérimée, 119; and see Ralph
Merovingians, royal dynasty in France ca.
  47–711, 41
Merv, 22, 139
Mesopotamia, 39, 65, 66, 197, 475, 476, 491,
  139; rulers at, see Burenshah, Shabschah; see
  also Iraq
Mesopotamia, 286, 290, 339
Mesopotamia, 302, 399 411, 139
Mesopotamia, 139, and see William
Mesynes, Frankish family at Nophin, 244n
Mézières, 339, and see Philip
Michael, Greek archbishop of Leonno in 1136:
  187
Michael Syrusi us miler (fl. 1140s, 116
Michael I Ducas (Angelus) "Comnens", cousin of
  Isaac II Angelus, ruler of Epirus 1204–
  1211 426–428
Michael II Ducas (Angelus) "Comnens", bas-

  tand son of Michael I; ruler of Epirus 1231–
  4367-421
Michael of Cusa, Franciscan master-general
  1316–1328 (d. 1342), 502
Michael VIII Palaeologus, great-grandson of
  Alexius II Angelus; Byzantine co-emperor
  at Nicea 1259–1261, emperor at Const-
  antinople 1261–1282: 421, 422, 438, 444, 481
  484
Michael Scot, translator (d. ca. 1236), 21
Michael "the Syrian" Jacobite patriarch at
  Antioch 1166–1199 12, 77, 80–82, 211, 238
Michelle, falconer, author [115c, 211]
Michel, Venetian family, 434; and see Da-
  meres (2), John (2), Marino (2), and Vitale
  (2) Michael
Milan, 111, 449, 139
Milas of Planca, husband of Stephanie of Milly
  and lord of Montbel 1171–1174 201
Milky, 539, and see Phillip, Stephanie
Ming, Chinese dynasty 1368–1644 499
Mirdabel, 111, 164n, 221n, 119
Minor, Arab tribe, 44
Monte, 131, 119
Mousa, 41, 139
Mousa, 249, 284a, 289, 101, 402, 412, 427, 428,
  443, 444, 448, 139
Mohammed (Arabic, Muhammad), founder of
  islamic religion and community (b. ca.
  570, d. 632), xvi, 10, 26, 37, 460 461
Molopse, author (fl. ca. 1360), 281
Monomachos (Makrem), 289, 292, 140
Mongke, grandson of Chinggis; great khan of
  the Mongols 1231–1259, 470, 478
Mongol, or Tatars, Altaic people, 11, 56–58,
  97a, 100, 234, 239, 264, 110, 171, 437, 418,
  444, 445, 455, 457, 461, 463–467, 469–468,
  488, 490, 491, 494, 496, 499 101–106, 111–
  117: great khan of, see Chinggis (Genghis
  Khan) 1206–1227, Özgen 1227–1242, Ouyûk
  1246–1248, Mongke 1251–1258, Kubilin
  1260–1294, Öngör Ögedei 1293–1307, Toghrûn
  Temür 1112–1170; see also Oghul Kaimish
  (regent 1248–1211/2)
Monophysians, 11, 54, 66, 76–79, 215 411
  467, 469, 480, 510; see also Jacobites
Monseñor, Christian sect in Syria, 90, 21 8a,
  483
Mont Girard, 307, 540
Montisa-sur-Champan, 140, and see Garin,
  Peter
Montebello, 540, and see Odo
Monte Corvino, 540, and see John
Monte Croce, 140, and see Ricoldia
Napoleon (1) Bonaparte, French emperor 1800-1811 41
Napoleon III (Louis Napoleon Bonaparte), nephew of Napoleon I; "emperor" of France 1832-1870 (d. 1873), 54
Narbarone, 541 and see Peter
Naren't, river, 383, 541
Nasif al-Yazjji, Arabic author (d. 1877), 30
an-Nasir (al-din-Abiha), abu-l-Habba Ahmad, son of al-Muqaddam, Abban ibn caliph 1180-1224 B. 13, 13, 46
an-Nasir David, Salih-al-Din, son of al-
Muqaddam 'Abd, Al Bu-Akab ruler of Damascus 1227-1229, of Transjordan 1227-1249 (d. 1259), 346, 462
an-Nasir Muhammad (Mansur and Mu-
awwib), see Muhammad, an-Nasir
Nasir-I-Khusraw, abu-Mu-Adib-Al-Din, Luristan traveler (b. 1003/4, d. 1060/1) see Herat?, 10, 213, 259
Natalia Ghia, son of John, Venetian merchant (fl. 1313), 431
Nativivit, church at Bethlehem, 67, 72, 79, 87, 302, 466
Naumburg an der Saale, 540, bishop of, see Berthold
Nauplia, 303, 541
Navarre, 541, king of, see Theobald (f) 1224-
1233
Nazard, Venetian family in the Aegean, 431, 432 and see Filocalo Navazand
an-Nasawi, abu-Zakariya Yahya ibn-Sharaf; Arabic scholar (b. 1233, d. 1272), 19
Naxos, 260, 439, 450, 444, 447, 541
Naxarbeg, 22, 47, 60, 73, 74, 143, 242, 243, 249, 319, 541 bishops of, see Bertold 1019-1025, William ca. 1133-1138, archbishops of, see William 1128-ca. 1138, Robert 1158-1153, Achard 1153-1154, Nicholas 1196-1198
Negrópotes, island, see Euboea
Negrópotes, port, 290, 385, 402, 418-422, 433, 478, 484, 141
Najd, 37, 341
Naini, Venetian inlay, 183x
Naphim, 243, 244x, 541 lord of, see Robert
Narseh Rabiants, Armenian Dominican (ca. 1340), 310
Narseh al-Langston, Armenian archbishop of Tarsus (d. 1198?), 31
Nasir, 541 and see Amalric, Ralph
Nestorians, Christian sect, chiefly in Anma, 30, 60, 66, 69, 77a, 80, 233, 433, 464, 466, 466, 469, 471, 474-476, 479, 483-483, 493, 500, 501, 504, 511, cattaloceus, see Sepharvian 1226-
1257; see also, see Yabhalabash 111 (m 1294)
Nemily-sur-Marche, 541, and see Falk
Nerma, 64, 234a, 303, 421, 433, 436, 444, 541
Neschaber, Syrian miller (fl. 1140), 110
Neschouros Cangesamos, Byzantine historian (?), 1306, 335
Nicholas (?), archbishop of Nazareth 1196-
1198, 322
Nicholas, Armenian Dominican missionary (ca. 1335), 304
Nicholas IV (Giorgio Masi u' Ascari), Franciscan missionary-general 1274-1279, pope 1288-1292, 483-487, 493
Nicholas, Syrian miller (? 1140), 110
Nicholas Antilanus, jurist (fl. 1241), 341
Nicholas of Bethra, titular archbishop of Khan
bou (Kusky) 1333-ca. 1353, 499, 500
Nicholas of Jerusalem, Teutonic Knight (fl. ca. 1355), 321
Nicholas of Methoni, Carinthian nunnery and
agellou (in 1393), 267a, 273, 276, 376, 380
Nicholas of Pictola, Dominican missionary (in 1291), 493
Nicholas of Rome, Dominican missionary (fl. 1323), 313
Nicholas Piscatoff, Venetian merchant (fl. 1224), 438
Nicholas Pola, brother of Matthew, Venetian merchant (fl. 1271), 430
Nicholas Tresiani, Venetian chronicler (d. 1349), 409a, 4178
Pielino Moretai, son of James, Venetian at
Acco (on 1303), 180
Niccolao, 102a, 278, 272, 275, 278, 278, 541
Nicola, see Carsten Niebuhr
Nile, river, 12, 40, 38, 302, 310, 311, 541
Nilebri, 476a, 541; Jacobite bishop of, see Bar
Saruq. Nestorian archbishop of, see Hoyshab
Nishan-al-Mulk, abu-Ali al-Husayn ibn-Ali,
Seleucid vizard (fl. 1018, d. 1092), 12, 13
Nisirid, abadab in Baghdad 11-13, 29
Nogaret-sur-Marne, 541, and see Guilbert
Norns, see James de Norns
Normandy, 44, 127, 150, 151, 541, duke of, see Robert II
Normans, Scaredumviri people, 12, 103, 107, 117, 118, 236, 272, 194, 266, 311, 384-384, 407, 409, 410, 413
North Africa (Maghrib), 19, 21, 41, 97, 298, 299, 320, 311, 405, 443, 452, 437, 459, 488, 541
Noure Dame, church at Sarzennay, 42
Noure Dame, church at Tortosa, 17, 42, 43
INDEX

Papacy, continued

Paphos, 268, 275–277, 542
Pappos (of Alexandria), Greek mathematician. IT 3009, 22
Paris, 58, 98, 301, 303, 312, 313, 450, 479, 483, 489, 499, 516, 542; bishop of, see Galo
Paris, see Matthew Paris
Paris, 311, 542
Paros, 423, 542
Participazio, see Angelo and Giustannino Participazio
Paschal III (Rainer of Munich), pope 1099–1118: 217, 240
Paschal of Viterbo, Franciscan missionary (d. 1140), 500, 503
Panaerwitz, treaty of (1778), 424, 430, 542
Pamant, 542, bishop of, see Wolfgang
Parnaso, 511, 542
Pecoraro de' Pecorari de Menapese, jurist of Euboea 1201–1209?, podestà of Venice in 1215, 1223, 419, 421
Pediua, river, 369, 542
Pergolèsi, see Francesca Daldeo Pergolèsi
Pergamum, 421
Pernasia, 276, 542
Perforsco, 542, and see Raymond
Persia, 277, 542
Pescadrea, 142, and see Peter
Petr. 444 481, 492, 541
Petrarca d'Castello, Franciscan, bishop of Zaltun (d. 1322), 495, 501
Perchieronis, 105, 543
Perella, 26, 39, 50, 66, 69, 454, 451, 473, 477, 490 482, 481, 485, 493–496, 506b, 507–513, 516 543; rulers of, see Buonapole, Seljukids, D'Haurs, Timurids
Petrus Culli, 401, 543
Persian language, 19x, xx, 27, 28, 11, 476, 472, 493, 1 01, 111
Persians (Iranians), Indo-European people, 3, 27, 32, 16, 60, 63, 91, 463, 490
Perugia, 541; and see Andrew, Franciscan bishop of, see Salvio Salvi
Perugia, see Henry Perugia
Peter the Great, Russian autocrat, 1672–1725
Peter the Great, abbot of Camaldoli 1230–1239, 1272
Peter of Avila, Franciscan priest and writer (d. 1295), 150
Peter of Capistrano, Franciscan missionary bishop 1198–1205, 533
Peter ("Cosimo"), cardinal-archbishop 2192–2201, cardinal-priest 1201–1214 81
Peter II, 1 mg of Aragon-Catalonia 1196–1213: 112
Peter III, 1 mg of Aragon-Catalonia 1276–1285, (B) of Sicily 1282–1281. 40
Peter, prior of St Mark in 1134: 387
Peter, Russian bishop in Italy (ca. 1237), 471, 497
Peter Babia, Venetian bishop at Negròpolis 1216–1218 420
Peter II Candido, doge of Venice 832–939: 183
Peter III Candido, doge of Venice 942–939: 183
Peter IV Candido, son of Peter III, doge of Venice 959–976 383
Peter de Castaldu, Franciscan (fl. 1218), 456
Peter de La Stagno, son of Hugh IV king of Cyprus (crowned 1158) 1158–1169; of Cler- cian Armenia 1360–1369: 269, 272, 201
Peter Domen, Venetian at Acre (fl 1209) 111
Peter Embrisse, son of Guy II; lord of Jubil 1262–ca. 1292 84
Peter Fassarini, Venetian judge (fl. 1175) 406
Peter Gallo, Venetian at Verona (fl. 1246) 421
Peter Gerald, Dominican, bishop of Sal- tanopoli from 1250 506
Peter Lombardo, Italian theologian (b. ca. 1100 d. ca. 1160), 114
Peter Lucalonga, Genoese merchant (fl. 1291), 495
Peter Mayr, Venetian priest and notary (ca. 1180), 195
Peter Morcari, master of St. Mark (fl. 1157), 392
Peter Morcari, Venetian at Acre (12th C), 180
Peter of Ongulfhe, Latin patriarch of Ant- ioch 1196–1200 77a, 210c, 234 218, 219, 241
Peter of Asyllus, Provencal knight (fl. 1081), 194
Peter of Dusburg (Dulzburg), German chronicler (d. ca. 1336), 1 21
Peter of Florenc, Franciscan missionary bishop 1111–by 1136 495, 499
Peter of Loresco, archbishop of Cressana 1189–1237, 77a
Peter of Montaut, brother of Garin; master of the Templars 1219–1229: 118, 360, 361, 364, 365
Peter of Oultremer, bishop of Alben 1096–1119 233, 239, 241, 242
Peter of Pamfled, castellan of Jerusalem in 1242. 222a
Peter of Ormeso, doge of Venice 992–1009: 383, 384, 394
Peter Polus, doge of Venice 1130–1148, 385, 387
Peter Stradella, Genoese merchant (fl. 1249), 190a
Peter: "the Harlot", canonizing demagogue (fl. 1096), 147, 303
Peter Ziani, doge of Venice 1255–1259, 184, 420n, 425, 431, 433, 442
Peter Ziani, Venetian at Acre (in 1174), 183n
Pietro Daereti, 64, 242, 243, 543, archbishop of, see Guevara
Philip (of Remi), see Remi
Philip II ("Augustus"), Capetian king of France 1180–1223, 192, 611
Philip IV ("the Fair"), grandson of Louis IX; Capetian king of France 1285–1328, 483, 494
Philip V ("the Tall"), son of Philip IV; regent 1316–1317, Capetian king of France 1317–1322, 510n
Philip, Dominican provost (in 1237), 461, 462, 468, 469, 313
Philip, son of Frederick II; Hohenstaufen duke of Swabia and Aosta 1194–1208, king of Germany 1197–1204, 415
Phillip Haudeyn, Frankish juror (fl. 1240), 169
Philip Beleghii, Venetian podestà of Verona in 1263, 621
Philip Corner, Venetian bailie in Tyre in 1223, 183
Philip I of Alase, count of Flanders 1065–1113, 9
Philip of Antioch, son of Bohemond IV; prince of Cilician Armenia 1223–1224 (d. 1225), 47; wife of, see Isabel (Rossinian)
Philip of Courtenay, son of Baldwin II, titular Latin emperor of Romania 1273–1283, 448, 449
Philip of Ebelin, son of Baldwin II; bailie of Cyprus 1218–1227, 297a
Philip of Maugnolet, imperialist baron (fl. 1232), 205n
Philip al Menèrè, chancellor of Cyprus (in 1365), chronicler (d. 1405), 271, 284
Philip of Mully, lord of Nadius 1138–1161, 61
Tramajordian (Montreal) 1161–1165/67, master of the Templars 1169–1171, 115n, 218, 229b
Philip of Montfort, first cousin of Simon V; lord of Toron 1240–1260, of Tyre 1243–1270, 167n, 190a, 204n
Philip of Novara, Lombard chronicler (d. ca. 1195, d. ca. 1265), 112, 117a, 125, 126, 136, 140, 143, 144, 173, 199, 209n, 223
Philinka, 273, 277, 543
Phocas, 385, 543
Phocas, see John Phocas
Phocas, 38, 240, 241, 253, 543
Phocian, 429, 543
Poccius, 543, and see Bertrand
Pons da Carpina, 543, and see John Pons de San Marco, in Jerusalem, 390
Pons de San Marco, in Venice, 189n
Ponsale, 543, and see Baldwin, Gormond
Pons, 9, 39, 155n, 167n, 171–173, 175–177, 183, 190, 191, 244, 300, 381, 386, 389, 398, 410–412, 439 444, 543, archbishop of, see Alain
Ponsin, 38, 40, 47, 126, 155, 167n, 169, 182, 184
Pons, 186, 188, 224, 236, 244, 364, 376, 380, 386, 389, 396, 407–412, 458, 459, 463, 481
Poncin, 543, and see Nicholas
Ponsinus, daughter of Bohemond V; 3rd wife of Henry I of Lusignan 1250–1253, regent of Cyprus and Jerusalem 1253–1264, (1st wife of) Italian of Ibelin 1254–1259, 204
Ponsin, 543, and see Miles
Ponsineta, royal dynasty in England 1154–1485, 97; kings, see Richard I 1189–1199
John 1199–1216, Henry III 1216–1272, Edward I 1272–1307; princes, see Richard (d. 1272); princes, see John (d. 1191) Lusitania (d. 1241)
Pleboan, Pisan lord of Bonon or 1180 after 1009, 173, 184, 187, 210; wife of, see Matilda (see Cecilia) Dorel
Poitevi, 494, 543, and see Raymond
Poa, 154n, 543
Poccius, 383, 413, 543
Poland, 312, 480, 543, king of, see Louis I "the Great" 1370–1382
Polsani, see Peter Polani
Poles, Slavic people, 362, 492a
Polo, Venetian family, 437, 462, and see Marco Matthew, and Nicholas Polo
Pomerelu, 541, duke of, see Venceslau
Pons, bishop of Tripoli; after 1140–after 1119; 243n
Pons, son of Bertrand; count of Tripoli 1112–1137, 92a, 169, 190n, 297a, 393, 397
Pons-de-Fer, 233, 543
Ponsano, Franciscan missionary, titular archbishop of Seleucia from 1345, 507, 509
INDEX

Popes, continued

Poppa of Ostura, master of the Teutonic Knights 1232–1236: 372

Porcel, burgess (in 1141), 132a

Porcile, see Bertrand Portail

Porcheaux, 276, 543

Poremenes, 543, and see Choric

Porsico, 492a, 543

Porso, 543; cardinal-bishop of, see Maurice

Portugal, 510, 543, and see Lawrence

Portuguesa, 282, 502, 511, 512

Portmaia, 272, 275, 543

Potamides, 429, 543

Pouset, see Denis Perouas

Praslin, Byzantine family, 394

Prato in Tuscany, 544, and see William

Prayer John (or "David"), legendary Christian ruler 461, 471, 500a, 513, and see Yah-ih Taawish

Prokhor, Georgian monk (fl. 1036–1088), 83, 87

Provence, or Provencans, people of south-eastern France, 111, 122, 126, 345, 152, 167, 182, 190

Provernia, 146, 154a, 155, 301, 544; see also of, see Raymond of St. Gilles

Provins, 49, 544

Prussia, 310, 312, 324, 325, 331, 332, 339, 340, 342a, 357, 363, 368–372, 376, 377, 378, 544

Prussia, Slavic people, 332, 363, 366

Psammetichus, 267n, 269, 270, 272–275, 279, 544

Pydna, a city, 210

Pyla, Cape, 270, 544

Pythagoreans, philosophical and mathematical school, 25

al-Qaid al-Faqih, 'Abd-ar Rahman ibn 'Ali; Ayyubid vizier (b. 1135, d. 1200), 12, 31

al-Qadir (bi-llah), al-'AAbbás Ahmad ibn-Loša, 'Abbásid caliph 991–1051: 9

Qanari census, 9

Qandil, Muesen sect, 21, and see 'Abd-al-Qadir

al-Qasim, 44, 544

al-Qa'im (a.s.-amr-Allah), abū-Jarīf 'Abd-Allah, son of al-Qa'īf; 'Abbásid caliph 1031–1075: 5, 9

Qasim, 164a, 223a, 544

Qasim ibn 'Abd Allah, 544, lord of, see Mihik Barzrān

al-Qāshqānshāhī, Ahmad, Egyptian official (d. 1418), 40

Qaṣf, 164a, 223a, 375, 544

Qawas (Kammar; Sauduquez?), ahrismatic Jewish name, 60, 69, 71

al-Qawās, 44, 544

al-Qāwid, abū-l-Hasan 'Ali ibn-Yaṣūṣ, Ayyubid vizier (b. 1172, d. 1248), 24a, 46n

Quatem, 106, 544

Quas, 509, 544, and see John

Queen, Venetian family, 432, and see Iacob

Leonard, Ostura, and Roman Querini

Quèville, 511, 512, 544; titular bishop of, see Jordan Camerari

Rafailin, 90a, 544; Maronite archbishop of, see John

Rahwan, see Simon

Rahwan (Mihr Sa'ama), Nastarian bishop (d. 1294), 443, 454

Râbic, Banb, Arab tribe, 64

Râfâyeh, 164, 164, 230, 223, 241, 245, 544

Raffyeh, 95, 544

Râgame, 407, 424, 427, 443, 344

al-Ra'dun, 47, 544

Ralph II, Latin patriarch of Armoche 1193–1196: 230

Ralph of Caen, French chronicler (fl. 1112), 239n

Ralph of Cartimandua, Latin patriarch of Antioch 1135–1139: 236, 247

Ralph of Fontanella, knight (fl. 1215), 159

Ralph of Maresmont, archbishop of Jerusalem 1214–1225 77a, 237m

Ralph of Nesle (or "de Sossuza"), bailie of Jerusalem 1243–1243, 144, 231, wife of, see Alice of Champagne-Jerusalem

Ralph of Tiberias, brother of Hugh, jurist, titular lord of Tiberias 1197–1220: 141, 215m, 323n

Al-Ramlî, 154a, 544

Rasula, 64, 69, 71, 76n, 152, 160, 195, 197, 241, 244m, 306, 349, 544; lords of, see Hugh of Ibelin, Baldwin II of Ibelin, Baldwin II of Ibelin
Saint Giles, church in Acre, 245
Saint Gilles-the-Gard, 172, 544, and see Bertrand, Raymond (IV), Robert
Saint James, Armenian cathedral in Jerusalem, 68, 85, 96
Saint James, Spanish brotherhood in Syria, 230, 231
Saint James the Elder, Georgian church in Jerusalem, 85
Saint John, 76n, 543
Saint John, cathedral in Sebastac, 245
Saint John, church at Beroe (now Umayyad mosque), 17, 43
Saint John, monastery on Panea, 423
Saint John the Baptist, Greek monastery in Iuda, 76n
Saint Jonah, Greek church near Jaffa, 76n
Saint Lawrence, church in Acre, 244
Saint Lawrence, church in Tyre, 244
Saint Lazarus, 163, 162, 545
Saint Maron Cathara, church at Tripoli (now al-Khiide mosque), 71
Saint Mark, cathedral in Tyre, 244, 391, 392, 440
Saint Mark, church in Acre, 244
Saint Mark, monastery in Constantiopolis, 387, 388
Saint Maro, Maronite see at Kafarshab, 93
Saint Mary, abbey at Adrianople, 387; abbot of, see Hugo
Saint Mary, church at Rodessa, 387
Saint Mary, Jacobite church at Acrabat, 31
Saint Mary, Maronite see at Habbif, 92
Saint Mary, Maronite see at Mafqoua, 92
Saint Mary, Maronite see at Yarish, 92
Saint Mary Latina, Benedictine monastery at Latakia, 233, 245, 265
Saint Mary Magdalene, Jacobite church and monastery in Jerusalem, 77-79, 85, 447
Saint Mary of the Latins, church at Constantiopolis, 385
Saint Matthew, monastic outside Mosul, 483
Saint Menas, Georgian monastery in Jerusalem (later Armenian), as Saint James, 83, 87
Saint Moses, Greek hooseque in Jerusalem, 75
Saint Nicholas, establishment in Constantinople, 385
Saint Paul, abbey in Jadera, 248
Saint Paul, church at Tarsus, 43
Saint Peter, cathedral at Antioch, 75
Saint Peter, church in Acre, 244
Saint Peter church at Jaffa, 244
Saint Qrentin, 546, and see Simon
Saint Sabas, 75, 76a, 36a, 38a, 546
Saint Sabas, abbey in Acre, 372, 439; "son of" (1256-1264), 189, 216, 311, 372, 439, 444
Saint Sabina, church in Rome, 363, cardinal-priest of, see Thomas of Capua
Saint Sergius, Maronite monastery near Harfni, 93
Saint Shemun (Abu-Siyah), Armenian monastery near Jerusalem, 86
Saint Simeon the Stylite, Jacobite church in Jerusalem, 77
Saint Theodore, monastery at Karakhis, 492a, 507
Saint Theodore, Cistercian abbey at Nicasset, 272
Saint Theodosius, Greek church in Jerusalem, 76n
Saint Theodosius, monastery, 76n, 546
Saint Thomas, church at Barlett, 361
Saint Thomas, church in Quedin, 311
Saint Thomas, church in Jerusalem, 390
Saints Dael and Luke (Mil Nuhub). Maronite monastery near Subula, 93
Saints Peter and Paul, Greek church in "Zaviat" (Zabun?), 76n
Salhiyyah, or Najaryah, madrasa in Cairo, 12
Salamandra, 58, 489, 496
Salamanca, 411, 546
Salmanda, 341, 343, 344, 369, 546, and see Roger
Saliba, says of Acre (ca. 1264), 150n
Salih, Arab Christian family, 47
Sahl ibn Yahya, Arabic author (fl. 1437), 57, 94a, 268
Sahl ibn Yahya, Salmad-ad-Din, son of al-Kamil Muhammad, Ayyubid ruler of Damascus 1238-1229, 1243-1249, sultan of Egypt 1240-1249, ruler of Damascus 1246-1249; 15, 436, 443, 461, 462; wife of, see Sahni-ad-Durr
Sahl ibn Yahya, Sahl-ad-Din, son of al-Adil I al-Mu'ad-ad-Din, Ayyubid ruler of Damascus 1237-1237, 1239-1245, of Damascus 1237-1245 (fl. 1251), 461
Salamanca, 462, 463a, 507, 546
Salamanca Petit, French rabbin (fl. 1260), 100
Salamis, 511, 546
Salvianus, bishop of Aquilea 1231-1244, legate in Hungary (fl. 1237), 471
INDEX
INDEX

Sien, Venetian family of slave origin, 400, and see Dobranurco and Pancratia Sien
Stephanie of Milly, daughter of Philip; wife of Miles of Milies 1173–1174, wife of Raymond of Châtillon 1176–1187 (d. after 1197), lady of Montréal 1165/87–1187 (d: 1187–after 1197), 139
Stephen III, Árpád king of Hungary 1162–1173, 407
Stephen uncle of Henry II of Champagne; count of Sancerre 1152–1191; 229n
Stephen of Antoch, Latin translator, physician (fl. 1127), 47
Stephen of Blois, count of Chartres and Blois 1069–1102, 236n, chaplain to, see Alexander
Stephen of La Ferte, patriarch of Jerusalem 1128–1130; 246
Stephen of Sauveigny bishop of Jerusalem (ca. 1257), 231n
Stegunia, 272, 548
Stiarato, see Matteo Stiarato
Strazelli, Venetian family, 190n, and see John and Peter Strazelli
Strasbourg, 541, and see Conrad
Strobilo, 383, 548
Styria, 541, and see Osnak, Such, and see Ludolf
Stoffs, Moslem mystics, 21, 21, 35
Sultan, abu-l-'Asakil 'izz-ad Din ibn 'izz-ad-Daulah ibn-Munqidh, lord of Shazua 1137–1134: 297
Sultanibey, 492t, 495–497, 501–502, 508, 512, 548; archbishops of, see Franco of Perugia, William Adam, John of Mezze Corvino, William (Dominican)
Sunnilites, orthodox Moslem majority, 6, 3, 9, 17, 33, 35, 35, 62
Surgat, 502, 549
Su'a-dil, Arabic author (fl. 1401), 37
Svantepelk (or Svantepolk, Swietopelk), duke of Pomorza 1220–1266 371
Swabia, 549; dukes of, see Hochstattera Swordbearers, Livonian military order, 316n, 367–369; master of, see Volquins
Syria, 502, 349
Symeon II, Greek patriarch of Antioch 1206/7–1240. 73n, 234, 239
Symeon II, Greek patriarch of Jerusalem to 1099 52, 73, 234, 233
Syriac language, 49, 54, 56, 463, 465, 489
Syrians, see Melkites
Syros, 429, 549
Tabar, Mount, 69, 74, 75, 162, 163, 242, 245n, 254n, 549
Taben, 463, 474–476, 482, 483, 491, 492n, 493, 505, 508, 512, 549, and see Daniel Thomas, bishop; see William of Ciganis, Jacobite bishop of, see Dionysius
al-Tamurri, Abu-l-Fadl', Arabic preacher (d. 1429), 37
Taif, 10, 549
Tâ'if (or Ta'i), Banu-, Arab tribe, 64
Tâ'izz-ad Din as-Sabbi, Abu-Nasr 'Abd-al-Wahhâb ibn-'Ali, Arabic author (b. 1327, d. 1370), 1056
Tamar, queen of Georgia 1184–1212, 38
Tana, 444, 491, 491, 302, 349
Tarsus, 313, 549
Taranto, 360, 382, 549, and see Bohemond
Taras, 43, 234, 242, 385, 470, 548; Latin archbishops of, see Roger; Armenian archbishops of, see Nersis of Lampron
Tartary, 455, 549
Thana, see Mongoli
Tatians ("Estuatin the Thanes"), Byzantine general in 1098 194
Thaurun, range, 6n, 31, 548
Tepes, 290, 549
Teil Maslur, 79n, 218, 220, 242, 349
"Templars of Tyre", secretary (fl. 1280), 318n
Temur Olyentu (Ch'ing Ts'ung), grandson of
INDEX

Kublai, great Khan of the Mongols 1295-1307 494, 495

Teuton, 500n, 501, 514, 548; prince of, see George

Teuton, 286-288, 290, 430, 549; lord of, see Andrew Giau

Teutonic Knights, military order, 40, 49, 169,
256, 257, 259, 310, 112, 313, 315n, 316-370,
439; master of, see Hermann Walpert
1197-8 by 1200 Otto of Kerpum by 1200-1209
Henry Harl 1209-1209/10, Hermann of Salza 1209/10-1230, Conrad of Hessen
1239-1240, Conrad of Malberg 1241-1244,
Henry of Heidenhain 1244-1249, Gunther of Württemberg 1250-1252, Roger of Otsara 1252-1256, Anselm of Saarbrücken 1256-1275, Hermann of Ybelbronn 1277-1282, Burkhard of Schwendin 1283-1290, Henry of Beland 1290-1291, Conrad of Neuscharonn 1291-1296/7; grand masters, see Werner of Orseln 1324-1330, Luther von Brunkenstein 1331-1335; deputy masters, see Louis of Oetingen, vice-master, see Eberhard of Sayn; other knights, see Conrad of Landsburg, Conrad of Straßburg, Hermann of Kirchheim, Leonard, Nathanael of Jericho.

Teutons, Indo-European people, 169

Thabiti (Abū-l Ḥusayn, al-Harrari) ibn-Qarshah, Arab mathematician (b. ca. 836, d. 901), 23

Thaddeus, Armenian Dominican, bishop of Kaffa 1334-ca. 1357 504

Theodore of Naples, Italian poet and propagandist (fl. 1291), 377

Theon, 498, 511, 512, 549

Theoderic, 289, 385, 398a, 398b, 408, 420, 422, 549

Theodore, 108a, 549

Theobald, bishop of Acre 1180-1200 323a

Theobald, seneschal (IV) of Champagne 1201-1251, kng of Navarre 1224-1239 369, 370

Theobald of Tyre, burgess (fl. 1159), 160

Theoderich, pagan monk (from Hunsbut in 1172. 66a, 347

Theocles ("Irene") Comnena, niece of Manuel I, first wife of Bohemond III ca. 1161-ca. 1169 247

Theodore, Maronite bishop (ca. 1295), 94

Theodore I, Byzantine ruler of Ache

Then he lived at Caesarea, son-in-law of Alexius III

Angelo, Byzantine emperor at Nicæa 1208-1222 435

Theodulf, clerk of Acre (ca. 1240), 477

Theuma, 278a, 290, 432, 549 lord of, see Jacobo Barozza

Theonas, 432, 549

Thamalacasa, 6t, 385, 389b, 199n 407, 405,
409, 412, 419, 549; lord of, see Bonifacii (1 of Monteferrat)

Theophylact, 367, 402, 405, 435, 530

Theophy, 550, and see Herward

Thierry of Almain, count of Pianello 1128-1188 196

Thierry, pilgrim in 1217-60

Third Crusade, 113, 139, 194, 180, 257, 317, 392,
396, 418-412

Thomas (of Aquino), count of Avaroa, battle of Jerusalem 1226-1229 (cf. after 1245), 205, 364, 365

Thomas, Jacobite bishop of Ethiopia from 1238, 79, 468

Thomas Aquinas, Dominicans theologian (b.
1225, d. 1274, canonized), 501, 509, 514

Thomas Aquinas, Dominican theologian (b.
1225, d. 1274, canonized), 501, 509, 514

Thomas Becket, master of the Templars 1256-
1273 373, 374

Thomas Becket, Venerun in Tyre (ca. 1243), 383

Thomas Becket, Dominican missionary in 1230, bishop of Samarkand in 1342 313, 315

Thomas Becket, Latin patriarch of Constantinople 1205-1241 417, 423

Theodore of Capua, cardinal-priest 1216-1245 385

Theodore of Gabala, Armenian bishop of Nadjm-
van 1356-ca. 1373 510

Theodore of Jabuticaba, Franciscan missionary (d. ca. 1321), 494, 511

Thibeau, 418, 436, 550

Theoria, 530, landgraves of 357, and see Nar-
man II 1190-1217, Louis IV 1218-1227, see also Conrad

Tiberias, 56. 63, 64a, 130, 131n, 218 243, 306,
350, and see Falk, bishop of, see Geoffrey; principality of, see Galilee; local lords of, see Hugh II 1187-1197, Ralph 1197-1220, Gis of Mochéhard 1240-1244

Tiberias, 404, 550

Tirantas, 514a, 530

Tigabul, Venetian family, see Iacopo and Lo-
renzo Tampas.
INDEX

Tiffen, 470, 474, 482n, 496, 504, 550; Latin bishop of, see John of Florence; Russian archbishop of, see Timothy Gabracho

Tighe, river, xii, 3, 11, 550

Tikal, 485, 550

Timothy Gabracho, Russian Orthodox archbishop of Tiffen (16th c.), 87m

Timur ("Lenk", the Lance; Tamerlane), Timurid sungh-khan 1569-1405, 505, 510

Toghan Temür great khan of the Mongols 1532-1570; 498

Tokien, khan of the Golden Horde 1291-1312; 490

Tolstoi, 511, 550

Tolstoy, 550, 550, and see Thomas

Toqiz Khultan (Persian; Mongol, Toghan Qutan, peacock queen), wife of Hulagu (d. 1265), 55

Torcello, 550, and see Racisce

Torr, 219, 551, 550; notes of, see Humphrey II (d. 1179), Humphrey IV 1179-1196, Philip of Montfort 1240-1260

Toro, Armenian lord at Edessa (d. 1096), 34, 84, 197

Toro II, Roumanian prince of Cilician Armenia 1148-1168, 82, 86, 248m

Tortosa, in Spain, 28, 550

Tortosa, in Syria, 12, 42, 43, 164, 195m, 197, 240, 249, 259m, 260, 507, 550; bishop of, see Bartholomew

Tosaints, Talmudic scholars, 100

Toumanoff, 515, 502, 550

Toulouse, county, 202; counts of, see Raymond IV of St. Gilles 1088-1105, Bertrand 1105-1112, Alfonso Jordan 1112-1148

Tours, 154, 550, and see Geoffrey

Tower of David, in Jerusalem, 157m, 197, 222m

Transcassian, 474, 550

Transjordan, 44, 62, 64, 68, 74, 83, 115n, 129n, 111, 152, 218, 253, 254, 262, 263, 306, 550; lords of, see Roman of Le Puy, Philip of Mill; rulers of, see Argyras

Transoxiana, 26, 496, 550

Transylvania, 316m, 557, 238, 361, 362, 550

Trent, 407, 550

Treveson, 444, 482, 485m, 491-495, 550

Trelis, 552n, 554, 555

Treviran, see Nicholas Treviran

Treviso, 430m, 434, 449, 550

Trévoux, in Syria, 4, 10, 33, 34, 43, 48, 56, 57, 61, 65, 66m, 70, 76, 77, 79, 80, 89, 92-94, 103, 151n, 164, 168, 175, 180, 184, 197, 212, 220, 223, 232, 240, 242m, 243, 256, 257, 259-261, 305, 306, 308, 349, 391, 393, 412, 430, 458, 457, 475, 550, and see William; bishop of, see Pass

Trésoult, county, 34, 42, 48, 61, 85, 76, 90, 91, 103, 106, 126-128, 155, 154, 155, 164, 172, 187, 195-199, 201, 206m, 208, 211, 216, 217, 220, 222-225, 239-241, 253, 255, 256, 264, 266, 309, 373, 374, 592, count of, see Raymond of St. Gilles (truncated 1102-1105), Bertrand 1109-1112, Poas 1112-1137, Raymond 11137-1152, Raymond III 1152-1187, Bohemond IV 1187-1235, Bohemond V 1235-1252, Bohemond VI 1252-1275, Bohemond VII 1275-1287, regents of, see Lucienne of Segus 1252-1252, Silvyl 1275-1277; see also William Jordan (1103-1109)

Trinigné, countess, 267, 282, 550

Trigv, 550; count-palatine of, see Henry Tudorode, see Peter Tudorode

Trudela, 550, and see Benjamin of Taghriab, and Umbul al-Husain Ibn-Abi; Persian alchemist (d. ca. 1121), 23

Tughrul I, or Tughrul Beg, Seljukid ruler 1034-1063, 3: 5

Tughluk ("Dodekin"), Seljukid lord of Damascus 1104-1128; 63m

Tunis, 302, 436, 445, 511, 550

Tunisia, 515, 496, 443, 444, 550; rulers of, see Fattahida, Muradshahida, Halijh

Turcoman (or Turkmen, Turkman), Turkic people, 62, 227, 279

Turcoman, 55, 111, 120, 226, 327, 353, 338, 359, 341

Turkman, 438, 483, 486, 550; khan of, see Kaidu

Turkey, 291, 551

Turkish language, 9m, 51, 48, 486n, 483, 501, 503

Turkic, Alanie people, 8m, 4, 5, 13, 34, 55, 41, 42, 61, 62, 72, 81, 82, 92m, 104, 195, 235, 268, 278, 287, 290, 300, 303, 304, 514, 338, 409, 424, 430, 455, 478, 480, 493, 505, see also Kiewlianian Turks, Seljukids, Seljukids of Kazan, Osmanian, Timurid

at-Tūrān, and Bahr Muhammad ibn-al-Walid; Arabic author (d. 1059), 29

Tutuncu, Tutuncu, see Tuncun, Tuncun

Tuqatun, 552; cathedral-bishop of, see James of Vani 1228-1240/1, Odo (al Chatzuwurum) 1244-1273

Tyleria, 362, 551

Tyre, 38, 45, 46, 65, 69, 72, 80m, 96, 97, 100, 104, 106, 113, 131, 140, 154, 155m, 167m, 175, 176m, 177-180, 182-185, 187, 190, 203, 204m, 302, 210m, 218, 221, 224, 229, 239-241, 243, 244, 256-261, 264-266, 293, 506, 549-551,
Yanuh, 92, 552
Ya'qūb, Coptic patriarch of Alexandria 810-830: 77
Ya'qūb, Abu Yusuf al-Mansūr, Muslim caliph of Morocco and Andalusia 1184-1199: 97
Yeh-hi Ta-shih, gur-khan of the Kara-Khatai (d. 1047, d. 1143), possible prototype of Proctor John, 47ln
Yehiel ben-Joseph, French rabbi (d. 1206), 98
Yehiel ha-Zarladi, rabbi in Jerusalem (12th C.), 104n
Yehudah ha-Levi, Spanish Jewish poet (d. ca. 1085, d. after 1140): 96
Yemen, 27, 41, 552
Yusuf Temür, nephew of Iljigidur; khan of Chaghatai ca. 1330-ca. 1342: 500
Ypres, 552, and see John
Yüan, Mongolian dynasty in China 1260-1348: 499, and see Kubilai 1260-1294; Temur Öljatü 1295-1307, Toghan Temür 1332-1348

Zaharias, Jacobite monastery on Mount Lebanon, 31
Zaccharias, Armenian archbishop of Karekinos in 1321: 507
Zaccharias, pope 743-752: 400
Zahuriyah, library in Damascus, 27
Zamora, 495, 499, 552; bishops of, see Gerard Alberico (from 1308), Peregrine of Castello (d. 1322), Andrew of Perugia 1322-1336 (by 1336), James of Florence (d. 1362)
Zamani, Abu 'l-Qásim Mahmúd ibn 'Umar; Arabic author (d. 1075, d. 1144): 32
Zanzibar, 389, 393n, 415, 424, 425, 441, 552
Zanis, 552; bishop of, see Berthold
Zangi, Tāmil-ad-Dīn, Zengid ruler in Mosul and Syria 1127-1146, 9, 33, 61n 83, 98, 263, 309
Zengids, Turkish dynasty in Aleppo 1128-1183 and Mosul 1127-1234: 9, 11-13, 16-18, 26, 28, 83, and see Zengi 1127-1146 Nūr-ad-Dīn Mahmúd 1146-1174
Zeno, Venetian family, see Andrew, Marc, Marino, Renier, and Teodoro (2) Zeno
Ziam, see Peter (2) and Sebastian (2) Ziani
Zoroastrians, followers, mostly Persian, of Zoroaster, 61
Zorzi (Giorgio), see Marsaglia Zorzi
Zubair, Banū, Arab tribe, 64
Zu-Zuhri, Muhammad ibn-Abi-Allakr, Arabic geographer (fl. 1140), 23